Automation has a name.

FANUC

CNC CONTROLS

Functions • Communication • Software



FANUC Series
30*i*/31*i*/32*i*-MODEL B Plus

FANUC Series
0*i*-MODEL F Plus

FANUC
Power Motion *i*-A Plus

001
Table of Contents

Foreword 020

CNC 021

Functions 022

Controlled Axis 023

Designation of Machine Control Type 024

Designation of Controlled Axes 025

Designation of Machine Groups 033

Designation of Control Paths 035

Controllable Axes Expansion 037

Spindle Axes Expansion 038

Expansion of Servo Axes Number 039

Designation of Spindle Axes 040

Designation of Servo Axes for Spindle Use 042

Cs Contour Control 043

Loader Control Function 044

Addition of Loader Control Path 045

Peripheral Axis Control 046

Synchronous and Composite Control 047

Superimposed Control 048

Superimposed Control A 049

Superimposed Control for High-Speed Cycle Machining 050

Synchronous, Composite and Superimposed Control by Program Command 051

Flexible Path Axis Assignment 052

Axis Synchronous Control 053

Twin Table Control 054

Parallel Axis Control 055

Arbitrary Angular Axis Control 057

Inclined Rotary Axis Control 058

Pivot Axis Control 059

Tandem Disturbance Elimination Control 060

Pole Position Detection Function 061

Control Axis Detach 062

Dual Control Axes Switching 063

Chopping 064

002

Chopping Function by Flexible Synchronous Control..... 065
Chopping Setting Screen..... 066
High-Precision Oscillation Function..... 067
PMC Axis Control - Acceleration/Deceleration Specification Feed..... 068
Servo-On Synchronize Function..... 069
Multi-axes synchronous function..... 070
Multi-Axes High-Response Function..... 071
Skip Function for Multi-Axes High-Response Function..... 072
Position Definition Type Synchronous Function..... 073
Pressure and Position Control Function..... 074
Position Control Keep Function..... 075
Control Function for Link Type Press..... 076
Electronic Cam Function..... 077
Increment System D..... 078
Increment System E..... 079
Arbitrary Command Multiply..... 080
High-Precision Learning Control A..... 081
High-Precision Learning Control B..... 082
High-Precision Learning Control C..... 083
Learning Control for Parts Cutting A..... 084
Learning Control for Parts Cutting B..... 085
Spindle Learning Control..... 086
Spindle Learning Control in High-Precision Learning Control A/B..... 087
Learning Control - Memory Expansion..... 088
Learning Memory Size 10Mbyte..... 089
Dual Position Feedback..... 090
Position Feedback Dynamic Switching Function..... 091
HRV3 Control..... 092
HRV4 Control..... 093
Stored Stroke Check 1 Area Expansion..... 094
Stored Limit Check Before Move..... 095
Stroke Limit Area Changing Function..... 096
Stored Stroke Limit Range Switching Function by Signal..... 097
OT Area Access Avoidance Function..... 098
Chuck and Tail Stock Barrier..... 099

003

Interference Check for Each Path....100
Interference Check for Rotary Area....101
Interference Check Function for Automatic Lathe....102
Built-In 3D Interference Check....103
3D Interference Check with PC Function....106
Machining Simulation with PC Function....107
Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection Function....108
Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection for BETA i I/O-Link....109
Fine Torque Sensing....110
Rotary Axis Control....112
High-Speed Position Switch....113
Direction-Dependent Type of High-Speed Position Switch....114
Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark....115
Linear Scale I/F Expansion with Absolute Address Reference Mark....117
Temporary Absolute Coordinate Setting....118
Axis Immediate Stop Function....119
AI Feedforward....121
Servo Learning Oscillation....122
Spindle Synchronous Control for Guide Bush....123
Servo Learning Oscillation Multi-Turret Function....124
Reference Position Return Simultaneously Controlled Axes Expansion Function....125
PMC Axis Control Speed Command for ECU (M)....126
Angular Axis Synchronous Control....127
Angular Axis Switching Function in Arbitrary Angular Axis Control....128
Servo Learning Oscillation with Servo Rotation Axis....129
Servo Learning Oscillation Threading Function....130
Operation....131
Program Restart....132
Auxiliary Function Output in Program Restart....133
Quick Program Restart....134
Restart Point Keeping of Quick Program Restart....135
Tool Retract and Recover....136
Manual Intervention and Return....137
Retraction for Rigid Tapping....138
Retraction for 3-Dimensional Rigid Tapping....139

004

Manual 2nd/3rd/4th Reference Position Return....140
Reference Point Setting with Mechanical Stopper for Feed Axis Synchronization Control....141
Reference Point Setting with Mechanical Stopper by Grid Method....142
Manual Handle Feed 2/3 Units....143
Manual Handle Feed 4/5 Units....144
Manual Handle Feed - Multiple 10 Million....145
3-Dimensional Manual Feed....146
Manual Interruption of 3-D Coordinate System Conversion....147
Manual Handle Interface for BETA i Series with I/O-Link....148
Manual Numerical Command....149
Reference Position Signal Output....150
Retrace....151
Manual Handle Retrace....152
Editing for Manual Handle Retrace....153
Manual Handle Retrace for Multi-Path....154
Direction Change Movement in Auxiliary Function Output Block Function....155
Manual Linear/Circular Interpolation....156
Reverse Motion Function for Restart....157
Active Block Cancel....158
High-Speed Program Check....159
Dwell / Auxiliary Function Time Override Function....160
Pulse Superimposed Function....161
Interpolation Functions....162
Single Direction Positioning....163
Exponential Interpolation....164
Polar Coordinate Interpolation....165
Cylindrical Interpolation....166
Cylindrical Interpolation by Plane Distance Command....167
Helical Interpolation....168
Helical Interpolation B....169
Involutes Interpolation....170
Helical Involute Interpolation....171
Hypothetical Axes Interpolation....172
Conical/Spiral Interpolation....173
Smooth Interpolation....174

005

Nano Smoothing 175
High-Speed and High-Quality Machining Package 176
Smooth Tolerance Control 177
Polygon Turning 178
Polygon Machining with Two Spindles 179
Multi-Step Skip 180
High-Speed Skip 181
Floating Reference Position Return 182
Normal Direction Control 183
NURBS Interpolation 184
3-Dimensional Circular Interpolation 185
Balanced Cutting 186
Index Table Indexing 187
Continuous High-Speed Skip 188
Gentle Normal Direction Control 189
Continuous Dressing 190
Infeed Control 191
High-Speed Cycle Machining 192
High-Speed Cycle Machining Retract Function 193
High-Speed Cycle Machining Skip Function 194
High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables A 195
High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables B 196
High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables C 197
High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables D 198
High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables E 199
High-Speed Cycle Machining Operation Information Output Function 200
General Purpose Retract 201
Path Table Operation (PTO) 202
Spindle Speed Fluctuation Detection for Path Table Operation 203
Polygon Turning Function for Path Table Operation 204
Tool Offset Function for Path Table Operation 205
Cycle Table Operation Function for Path Table Operation 206
Delay Time Setting Function of Auxiliary Function Output for PTO 207
Path Table Direct Conversion Function 208
High-Speed Signal Output Function for Path Table Operation 209

006

Incremental Command for Path Table Operation 210
Sub-Table Call for Path Table Operation 211
Cutting/Rapid Switching Function for Path Table Operation 212
Path Table Operation Execution Format Data Capacity 60MB 214
Path Table Operation Execution Data Size 20Mbyte 215
Path Table Operation History Function 216
High-Speed Binary Program Operation 217
High-Speed Binary Program Operation on 2-Path Control 218
High-Speed Binary Program Operation Retract Function 219
Hypothetical Linear Axis Interpolation 220
Cross Rail Axis Control 221
Orbit Cutting 222
Eccentric Turning 223
Thread Cutting 224
Thread Cutting, Synchronous Cutting 225
Circular Thread Cutting 226
Circular Thread Cutting B 227
Variable Lead Thread Cutting 228
Thread Cutting Retract 229
Thread Start Position Compensation for Changing Spindle Speed 230
Threading Start Position Shift Function for Path Table Operation 231
Smart Corner Control 232
Eccentric Turning / Orbit Cutting Learning Control 233
Eccentric Grinding 234
Polygon Turning by Cs Contour Control 235
Feed Functions 236
Optimum Torque Acceleration/Deceleration 237
Positioning by Optimum Acceleration 238
2nd Feedrate Override 239
High-Speed Feedrate Override 240
One-Digit F-Code Feed 241
Inverse Time Feed 242
Rate Feed 243
External Deceleration 245
Feed Stop 246

007

Speed Control with Acceleration in Circular Interpolation ... 247
Advanced Preview Control ... 248
AI Contour Control I ... 249
AI Contour Control II ... 250
Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion of AICC II ... 251
Maximum Look-Ahead Blocks 400 ... 252
High-Speed Processing ... 253
Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion ... 254
Jerk Control ... 255
Optimum Torque Acceleration/Deceleration for Rigid Tapping ... 256
Programmable Rapid Traverse Overlap ... 257
Feedrate Change Function ... 258
Time Constant of Acc./Dec. After Interpolation Switching Function by Signal ... 259
Smart Spindle-Load Control ... 260
In-Acceleration/Deceleration Signal ... 261
Program Input ... 262
Optional Block Skip ... 263
Dynamic Switching of Diameter/Radius Specification ... 264
Plane Conversion Function ... 265
Polar Coordinate Command ... 266
Workpiece Coordinate System ... 267
Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System 48 Pairs ... 268
Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System 300 Pairs ... 269
Positioning in Machine Coordinate System with Feedrate ... 270
Direct Drawing Dimension Programming ... 271
G-Code System B/C ... 272
Lathe / Machining Center G-Code System Switching Function ... 274
Chamfering / Corner Rounding ... 275
Optional Chamfering / Corner Rounding ... 276
Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables 1000 ... 277
Custom Macro Variable Name 31 Characters ... 278
Number of Custom Macro Variable Name 1000 ... 279
Number of Custom Macro Variable Name 4000 ... 280
Interruption Type Custom Macro ... 281
Macro for Multi-Axes High-Response Function ... 282

008

Multi-Repetitive Cycles....283
Multi-Repetitive Cycles II....284
In-Position Check Switching Function for Drilling Canned Cycle....285
Mirror Image for Double Turret....286
Automatic Corner Override....287
Scaling....288
Scaling for each Axis....289
Coordinate System Rotation....290
3-Dimensional Coordinate System Conversion....291
Tilted Working Plane (TWP)....292
Programmable Mirror Image....294
Figure Copying....295
Tape Format for Series 15 CNC....296
Macro Executor....297
Extended Conversational Macro Function....299
Macro Executor + C-Language Executor....300
C Language Executor Additional SRAM....302
Middle-Level Task for C-Language Executor....303
Custom Software Size....304
Embedded Macro....306
Small Hole Peck Drilling Cycle....307
Canned Cycle for Grinding....308
Real Time Custom Macro....309
Dual Feedrate Command....311
Pattern Data Input....312
M-Code Protect Function....313
Groove Cutting Function by Continuous Circle Movement....314
Extended P-Code Variables Size....315
Execution Macro of Measurement Cycle....316
Punch Tapping Function....317
Integrated Operation & Programming Guidance Functions....318
iHMI....319
iHMI Basic Function....320
iHMI for Laser / Punch Press....321
iHMI Driver for IPC....322

009

iHMI Machining Cycle....323
iHMI Set-Up Guidance....324
iHMI Machining Program Preview....325
iHMI Machining Simulation Extension....326
iHMI Cutting Load Monitor....328
iHMI Remote Monitoring Function....329
MANUAL GUIDE....330
MANUAL GUIDE 0i....331
MANUAL GUIDE i Advanced Guidance Function....333
MANUAL GUIDE i Basic Software....334
MANUAL GUIDE i Extended Axis Name Function....336
MANUAL GUIDE i Handle Machining Function....337
MANUAL GUIDE i Material Position Check Cycle....338
MANUAL GUIDE i Multi-Path Support....339
MANUAL GUIDE i Tilted Working Plane (TWP) Machining Function....340
MANUAL GUIDE i Windows Call Function....342
iCAP T....343
Cycle Time Estimate for iHMI....345
TURN MATE i....346
TURN MATE i Basic Software....347
TURN MATE i Expanded Function....349
TURN MATE i Expansion of Machining Cycles....350
TURN MATE i MDI Key Operation Function....351
TURN MATE i NC Program Conversion Function....352
Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions....353
2nd Auxiliary Function....354
Auxiliary Function Output in Moving Axis....355
Waiting Function by Specifying Start Point....356
Spindle Serial Output....357
Spindle Analog Output....358
Constant Surface Speed Control....359
Actual Spindle Speed Output....360
Spindle Orientation....361
Spindle Orientation Expansion (Extended Spindle Orientation)....362
Spindle Synchronous Control....363

010

Simple Spindle Synchronous Control....364
Multi-Spindle Control....365
Serial/Analog Spindle Control....366
Rigid Tapping by Manual Handle....367
Arbitrary Position Reference Setting for Cs Axis....368
M-Code Group Check Function....369
Spindle Control with Servo Motor....370
Spindle Control with Cs Contour Control....372
Cs Contour Control Speed Command Switching Function....373
Flexible Path Spindle Assignment (Spindle Switching Function)....374
Spindle Control Switching Function for High-Speed Machining....375
Arbitrary Speed Threading....376
Tool Functions / Tool Compensation....377
Tool Offset Pairs....378
Tool Offset Memory B....380
Tool Offset Memory C....381
Tool Offset....382
Tool Center Point Control....383
Tool Posture Control....384
Cutting Point Command....385
Smooth TCP....386
High-Speed Smooth TCP....387
Expansion of Axis Command in Tool Center Point Control....388
Y-Axis Offset....389
4th/5th Axis Offset....390
Automatic Tool Nose Radius Compensation....391
3-Dimensional Tool Compensation....392
Cutting Point Interpolation for Cylindrical Interpolation....393
Tool Geometry/Wear Compensation....394
2nd Geometry Tool Offset....395
High-Speed Measuring Position Reach Signal Input....396
Tool Length / Work Zero Point Measurement....397
Automatic Tool Offset....398
Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B....399
Rotary Table Dynamic Fixture Offset....400

011

Wheel Wear Compensation....401
Changing Active Offset Value with Manual Move....402
Tool Length Compensation in Tool Axis Direction....403
3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation....404
Workpiece Setting Error Compensation....406
Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B for 2-Spindle Lathe....407
Tool Life Management....408
Addition of Tool Pairs for Tool Life Management....409
Spindle Unit Compensation....410
Nutating Rotary Head Tool Length Compensation....411
Automatic Alteration of Tool Position Compensation....412
Tool Offset for Milling and Turning Function....413
Tool Offset Conversion Function....415
Tool Geometry Size Data....416
Tool Geometry Size Data - Additional Tool Type....417
Tool Management Function....418
Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function....419
Tool Attachment/Detachment Management Function....421
Tool Management Expansion....422
Tool Management Expansion B....423
Tool Management Function for Multi-Edge Tools....424
Customized Data Expansion....425
Tool Posture Turning....426
Accuracy Compensation Functions....427
Stored Pitch Error Compensation....428
Interpolation Type Pitch Error Compensation....429
Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation....430
Extended Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation....431
Periodical Secondary Pitch Error Compensation....432
Inclination Compensation....434
Straightness Compensation....435
Interpolation Type Straightness Compensation....436
Interpolated Straightness Compensation 3072 Points....437
3-Dimensional Error Compensation....438
Thermal Growth Compensation Along Tool Vector....439

012

Linear Inclination Compensation Function....440
3-Dimensional Machine Position Compensation....441
3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation....442
AI Thermal Displacement Compensation....443
Multi-Point Compensation....445
Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box....446
Electronic Gear Box (EGB)....447
Skip Function for Electronic Gear Box (EGB) Axis....448
Electronic Gear Box (EGB) - 2 pairs....449
Electronic Gear Box (EGB) Automatic Phase Synchronization....450
Spindle Electronic Gear Box (EGB)....451
Flexible Synchronization Control....452
Automatic Phase Synchronization for Flexible Synchronous Control....454
Inter-Path Flexible Synchronization Control....455
Skip Function for Flexible Synchronization Control....456
Hob Command by Flexible Synchronous Control....457
U-Axis Control 2 Pairs....458
Grinding Functions....459
Punch Press Functions....460
C-Axis Control....461
T- and C-Axes Simultaneous Control....463
Safety Zone Check....464
Safety Zone Area Expansion....465
Clamp Zone Avoidance Function....466
RAM-Axis Control....467
Linear/Circular Punch Command....468
Y-Axis Crack Cancel....469
Multi-Piece Machining....470
Multi-Piece Machining End Area Command....471
Tool Data Setting Function....472
Multiple Tool Control....473
Tool Life Management....474
Laser Functions....475
Laser Control Function....476
Addition of Cutting Condition Data....477

013

Minimum Command 1% Duty Override ... 478
Laser High-Speed Control Function 2 ... 479
Laser Oscillator Communication Control (HSSB Connection) ... 480
Laser Oscillator Communication Control (FSSB Connection) ... 481
Gap Control for Laser ... 482
Buffer Expansion ... 483
Punch Press Function for Compound Cutting ... 484
Attitude Control ... 485
Interaction Control ... 486
W-Axis Gap Control ... 487
Bevel Cutting Compensation Function ... 488
Proximity Point Search ... 489
Spatial Corner Rounding ... 490
Two Laser Control Function ... 491
Laser Machining Package ... 492
Laser Trend Function ... 493
Laser Command External Input Function ... 494
Addition of Piercing Condition Data ... 495
Gap Control Axis Selection Function ... 496
Arbitrary Shape Specification in Work Support Axis Control ... 497
Gas Cutting Machine Functions ... 498
Functions for Gas Cutting Machine ... 499
Automatic Exact Stop Check ... 500
Torch Swing for Gas Cutting Machine ... 501
Gentle Curve Cutting ... 502
Corner Control by Feedrate ... 503
Tool Offset B ... 504
Gap Control ... 505
EDM Functions ... 506
Die Sinking EDM Function ... 507
EDM Power Supply Communication Control (HSSB) ... 508
Feed Control by EDM Power Supply ... 509
Transfer Line Functions ... 510
Machine Operation Panel Screen Display ... 511
Adjustable Type Embedded Safety Circuit ... 512

014

Editing Operation....513
Part Program Storage Size....514
Extended Program Memory (CF Card)....515
Extended Program Memory (PC)....516
Number of Registerable Programs Expansion....517
Key and Program Encryption....518
Machining Time Stamp....519
Memory Card Program Entry Count Extension....520
Template Program Function....521
Multi-Path Editing Function....523
Multi-Path Program Management Function....524
Setting and Display....525
Cycle Time Estimate Library Function....526
Cycle Time Estimation 2 Library....527
Machine Alarm Diagnosis....528
Servo/Spindle Waveform Data Output Function....530
Machine Operation Menu....531
FANUC Auto HMI-NC....533
FANUC Auto HMI-NC Screen Enhancement 1....535
Multi-Language Display....537
Selection of Five Optional Languages....543
Protection of Data at Eight Levels....544
Personal Authentication Function....545
CNC Lock Function....546
Machining Condition Selecting Function....547
Machining Quality Level Adjustment....548
Dynamic Graphic Display Function....549
Touch Panel Control....550
External Touch Panel Interface....551
Two Touch Panels Control for Stand-Alone Type CNC....552
Virtual MDI Key....553
Ethernet Display Function....554
Ethernet Display Sharing Function....555
Twin Display Function with Ethernet....556
CNC Screen Dual Display Function....557

015

CNC Screen Display for 19" LCD 558
Enlarged CNC Screen Display for 19" LCD 559
CNC Screen Web Server Function 560
Energy Saving Level Selection Function 561
Machine State Monitoring Function 562
Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance) 563
Machine Configuration Selecting Function 564
5-Axis Machining Condition Setting Function 565
Main Menu Screen Customizing Function 566
Warning Function Against Modification of Setting 567
MDI Reset Key Invalidation 568
Machine Setting Switching Function 569
Teaching Support Screen 570
Relocation Detection Support Function 571
Data Input/Output 573
RS232C Interface 574
RS232C Interface Expansion of Receiving Buffer 575
Fast Data Server 576
Data Server Explorer Connection 577
Power Mate CNC Manager 578
One Touch Macro Call 579
Automatic Data Backup 580
Continuous Positional Data Output Function 582
PMC System 583
PMC Ladder Function 584
Multi-Path PMC Function 586
PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion 588
Step Sequence Function 590
Nonvolatile PMC Extra Relay Function 592
Nonvolatile PMC Data Table Area Expansion (40kB) 593
Machine Safety Functions 594
Dual Check Safety (DCS) 595
Safety I/O Signal History Function 597
Safety Spindle Speed Limit Override 598
Test Mode Function for Dual Check Safety Acceptance Test 599

016

Option Packages and Kits ... 600
Basic Option ... 601
Turning Package 1 ... 603
Turning Package 2 ... 604
Milling Package ... 605
Grinder Package ... 607
Gear Cutting Package ... 608
Punching Package ... 610
Multi-Path Kit ... 611
TWP Kit ... 612
5-Axis Kit ... 613
iHMI Kit ... 614
Full Closed Kit ... 615
Tandem Kit ... 616
Rotary Table Kit ... 617
Live Tool Kit ... 618
Multitasking Kit ... 619
Interface Functions ... 620
CNC Status Notification Function ... 621
Communication ... 622
Fast Ethernet ... 623
PROFINET IO ... 625
PROFINET IO Controller ... 626
PROFINET IO Controller 2 ... 628
PROFINET IO Controller Safety Function ... 629
PROFINET IO Device ... 630
PROFINET IO Device Safety Function ... 631
PROFIBUS-DP ... 632
PROFIBUS-DP Slave ... 633
PROFIBUS-DP Master ... 634
EtherNet/IP ... 635
EtherNet/IP Adapter ... 636
EtherNet/IP Adapter Safety Function ... 638
EtherNet/IP Scanner ... 639
DeviceNet ... 641

017

DeviceNet Scanner (Master) 642
DeviceNet Adapter (Slave) 643
FL-net 644
FL-net Safety 646
CC-Link 648
CC-Link Remote Device 649
CC-Link IE Field 651
EtherCAT 653
Modbus/TCP Server 654
Robot Connection Function 656
Robot CONNECT 658
Robot G-CODE 659
Addition of Macro Variables for Robot Connection 660
QSSR AUTO PATH Manual Handle Feed 661
High Speed Serial Bus (HSSB) 662
MTConnect Server Function 664
Inter-Unit Synchronization (Power Motion i-A) 665

Software FA 666
PC Software 667
iHMI 668
iHMI Application SDK for PANEL iH 669
CNC GUIDE 670
Cycle Time Estimate Function for CNC GUIDE 672
CNC GUIDE Academic Package 674
CNC GUIDE 2 675
FANUC Smart Digital Twin 676
CNC Reflection Studio 677
Tool Path Optimizer 678
Robot Auto Path Generation (former name: QSSR AUTO PATH) 679
FANUC LADDER-III 680
FANUC SERVO GUIDE 682
FANUC SERVO VIEWER 684
Surface Estimation 685
AI Servo Tuning 686
CNC Application Development Kit 687

FANUC PICTURE....688
Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)....689
FOCAS Library....690
CNC Screen Display Function (SDF)....692
Basic Operation Package 2....693
LADDER Editing Package....694
Machining Status Monitor Package Disk....695
Machine Operation Menu Making Tool....696
Main Menu Screen Customization Tool....697
Guidance Table for Machine Alarm Diagnosis....698
Macro Library....699
C-Language Library for C-Language Executor....700
Acceptance Test Assist Tool....701
Electronic Cam Support Tool....702
Operation History Converter Tool....703
G-code Guidance Customization Tool....704
SERVO SIZER....705
CNC Startup Tool....706
CNC Setting Tool....707
CNC Parameter Setting Tool....708
EtherNet/IP Setting Tool....709
FL-net Setting Tool....710
PROFIBUS Setting Tool....711
PROFINET Configuration Tool....712
FANUC EtherCAT Setting Tool....713
CNC Data Management Tool....714
3D Error Compensation Setting Tool....715
Built-In 3D Interference Check Setting Tool....716
MACRO Compiler....717
Machine Remote Diagnosis Package....719
FANUC Auto HMI/T and Auto HMI-NC....721
AI Thermal Displacement Compensation Model Development Tool....722
CNC Lock Setting Data Preparation Tool....723
Disk for Cycle Time Estimate Function....724
Program Transfer Tool....725

019

Active G-Code Checker ... 726
Interactive Programming ... 727
iCAP T for PC ... 728
MT-LINKi - CNC Data Collection Software for PC ... 729
AI Servo Monitor ... 731
OPC Server ... 732
MTConnect Server ... 733
Parameter Conversion Support Tool ... 734
PC Tool for Memory Card Program Operation/Editing ... 735
Windows Embedded SDK ... 736
FANUC Connect ... 737
FANUC Customize Assist ... 738
Custom Macro Variable Listing Tool ... 739
Parameter Setting Tool for Power Consumption Monitor ... 740
Cutting Load Monitor Function ... 741

Datasheets ...

Foreword

You will find in this catalog an extensive selection of essential product information about FANUC components, functions and software. There are many FANUC products available to help you build the most competitive machine or automated system. This catalog contains a lot of information but cannot cover all subjects extensively; use it as a guide and do not hesitate to call your local FANUC representative for further information and assistance.

About controller functions

The descriptions of each function provided in this catalogue may contain information, descriptions, technical data as well as performance data which may not always apply as described. Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. The functions described are options and may not be installed on a given configuration. It is however mostly possible to purchase additional functions and hardware to retrofit an existing system to increase its productivity. In case of doubt or if you need additional information on functions, compatibility and retrofit, contact your FANUC representative.

Export control

The products listed in this catalogue may be subject to export control laws and regulations of Japan, the United States of America, the European Union, its Member States and any amendments thereof. Contact your FANUC representative for further information.

Notes

The illustrations, charts, sample programs and layout examples shown in this catalogue are intended solely for purposes of example. Availability and technical specifications are subject to change without notice.

Copyrights

Trademarks referenced herein are either owned by FANUC or are used solely for purposes of identifying compatibility with the products of FANUC and are owned by their respective companies. Copyright © 2026 FANUC Europe Corporation, 7 rue Benedikt Zender, L-6468 Echternach, Grand-Duché de Luxembourg. All rights reserved.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



CNC

FANUC develops and manufactures state-of-the-art automation products and solutions. The CNC product range includes both entry-level and complex CNC products with high-speed functions, digitally controlled servo motors and spindle motors, and user-friendly operator interfaces.

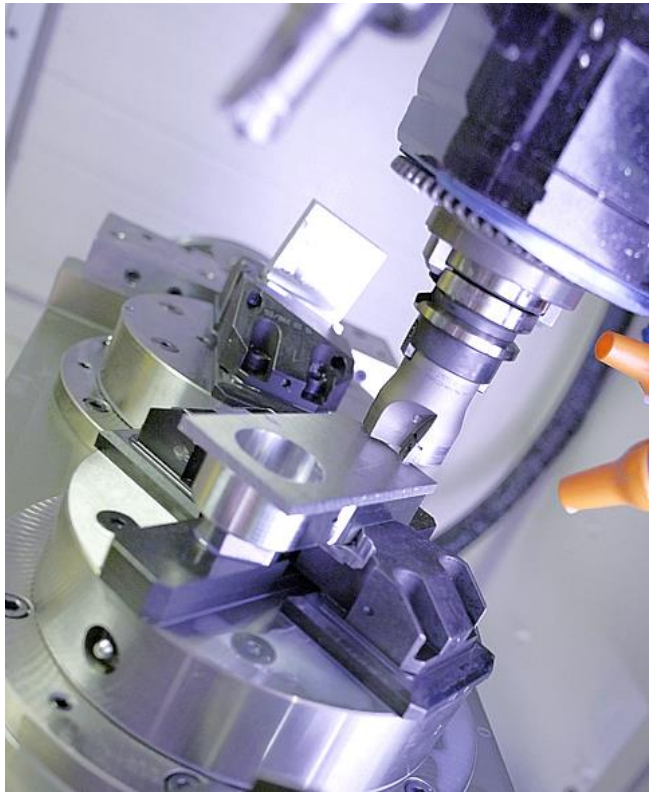
The FANUC CNC system is installed in the machine in the form of a productive CNC package complete with CNC, amplifier, motors, I/O modules and operator panel. Such a complete CNC concept promises that the components are coordinated to optimum effect, offering the highest performance and productivity.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

022
CNC



Functions

This section of the catalogue describes functions provided by the CNC software. They have been grouped by relevance to provide a better overview.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

023
Functions

Controlled Axis

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to axis control in the CNC, from the number of axes, paths and axes groups, via many other synchronization and precision and safety functions.

Some of the functions detailed in the catalogue:

- Designation of controlled axes, machine groups, path and technology
- Cs contouring control
- Synchronous / Composite control
- Tandem control
- Chopping
- High precision learning control
- HRV Control
- Interference check functions
- Built-in 3D interference check
- Unexpected disturbance torque detection function
- Dual Check Safety (DCS)
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

024

Controlled Axis

Designation of Machine Control Type

This function defines the machine type as controlled by the CNC. It can be chosen between Machining Center, Lathe or Multiple System, i.e. combination of Lathe and Machining Center functions.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S838#C	30i-BP Designation of Machine Control Type - Multiple System (Compound Machining)
A02B-0353-S838#M	30i-BP Designation of Machine Control Type - Machining Center System
A02B-0353-S838#T	30i-BP Designation of Machine Control Type - Lathe System
A02B-0356-S838#C	31i-B5P Designation of Machine Control Type - Multiple System (Compound Machining)
A02B-0356-S838#M	31i-B5P Designation of Machine Control Type - Machining Center System
A02B-0356-S838#T	31i-B5P Designation of Machine Control Type - Lathe System
A02B-0357-S838#C	31i-BP Designation of Machine Control Type - Multiple System (Compound Machining)
A02B-0357-S838#M	31i-BP Designation of Machine Control Type - Machining Center System
A02B-0357-S838#T	31i-BP Designation of Machine Control Type - Lathe System
A02B-0358-S838#C	32i-BP Designation of Machine Control Type - Multiple System (Compound Machining)
A02B-0358-S838#M	32i-BP Designation of Machine Control Type - Machining Center System
A02B-0358-S838#T	32i-BP Designation of Machine Control Type - Lathe System

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

025
Controlled Axis

Designation of Controlled Axes

This function specifies the maximum number of axes that the CNC can control. The number of maximum controlled axes is the sum of the number of machine controlled axes and the number of loader controlled axes.

The number of Cs and PMC axes is included in the number of machine controlled axes.

The maximum number of axes is also linked to the hardware configuration of the CNC.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J802#10	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 10 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#11	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 11 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#12	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 12 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#13	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 13 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#14	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 14 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#15	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 15 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#16	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 16 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#17	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 17 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#18	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 18 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#19	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 19 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#2	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 2 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#20	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 20 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#21	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 21 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#22	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 22 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#23	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 23 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#24	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 24 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#25	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 25 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#26	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 26 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#27	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 27 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#28	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 28 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#29	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 29 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#3	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 3 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#30	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 30 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#31	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 31 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#32	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 32 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#33	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 33 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#34	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 34 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#35	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 35 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#36	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 36 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#37	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 37 Axes

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

026

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J802#38	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 38 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#39	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 39 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#4	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 4 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#40	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 40 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#41	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 41 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#42	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 42 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#43	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 43 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#44	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 44 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#45	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 45 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#46	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 46 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#47	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 47 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#48	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 48 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#49	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 49 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#5	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 5 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#50	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 50 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#51	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 51 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#52	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 52 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#53	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 53 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#54	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 54 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#55	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 55 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#56	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 56 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#57	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 57 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#58	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 58 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#59	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 59 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#6	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 6 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#60	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 60 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#61	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 61 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#62	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 62 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#63	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 63 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#64	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 64 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#65	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 65 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#66	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 66 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#67	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 67 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#68	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 68 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#69	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 69 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#7	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 7 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#70	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 70 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#71	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 71 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#72	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 72 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#73	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 73 Axes

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

027

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J802#74	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 74 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#75	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 75 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#76	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 76 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#77	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 77 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#78	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 78 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#79	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 79 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#8	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 8 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#80	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 80 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#81	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 81 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#82	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 82 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#83	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 83 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#84	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 84 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#85	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 85 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#86	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 86 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#87	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 87 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#88	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 88 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#89	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 89 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#9	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 9 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#90	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 90 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#91	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 91 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#92	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 92 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#93	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 93 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#94	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 94 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#95	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 95 Axes
A02B-0353-J802#96	30i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 96 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#10	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 10 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#11	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 11 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#12	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 12 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#13	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 13 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#14	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 14 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#15	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 15 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#16	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 16 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#17	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 17 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#18	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 18 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#19	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 19 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#2	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 2 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#20	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 20 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#21	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 21 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#22	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 22 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#23	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 23 Axes

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

028

Specification	Description
A02B-0356-J802#24	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 24 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#25	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 25 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#26	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 26 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#3	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 3 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#4	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 4 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#5	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 5 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#6	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 6 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#7	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 7 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#8	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 8 Axes
A02B-0356-J802#9	31i-B5P Designation of Control Axes - 9 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#10	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 10 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#11	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 11 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#12	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 12 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#13	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 13 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#14	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 14 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#15	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 15 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#16	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 16 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#17	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 17 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#18	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 18 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#19	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 19 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#2	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 2 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#20	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 20 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#21	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 21 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#22	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 22 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#23	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 23 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#24	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 24 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#25	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 25 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#26	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 26 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#3	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 3 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#4	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 4 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#5	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 5 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#6	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 6 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#7	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 7 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#8	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 8 Axes
A02B-0357-J802#9	31i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 9 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#10	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 10 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#11	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 11 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#12	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 12 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#13	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 13 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#14	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 14 Axes

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

029

Specification	Description
A02B-0358-J802#15	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 15 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#16	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 16 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#17	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 17 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#18	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 18 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#19	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 19 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#2	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 2 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#20	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 20 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#3	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 3 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#4	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 4 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#5	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 5 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#6	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 6 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#7	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 7 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#8	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 8 Axes
A02B-0358-J802#9	32i-BP Designation of Control Axes - 9 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#10	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 10 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#11	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 11 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#12	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 12 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#13	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 13 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#14	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 14 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#15	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 15 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#16	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 16 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#17	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 17 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#18	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 18 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#19	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 19 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#20	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 20 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#21	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 21 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#22	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 22 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#23	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 23 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#24	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 24 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#25	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 25 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#26	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 26 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#27	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 27 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#28	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 28 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#29	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 29 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#3	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 3 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#30	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 30 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#31	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 31 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#32	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 32 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#4	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 4 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#5	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 5 Axes

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

030

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-J802#6	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 6 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#7	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 7 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#8	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 8 Axes
A02B-0359-J802#9	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 9 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#10	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 10 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#11	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 11 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#12	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 12 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#13	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 13 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#14	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 14 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#15	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 15 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#16	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 16 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#17	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 17 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#18	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 18 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#19	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 19 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#20	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 20 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#21	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 21 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#22	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 22 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#23	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 23 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#24	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 24 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#25	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 25 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#26	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 26 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#3	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 3 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#4	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 4 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#5	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 5 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#6	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 6 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#7	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 7 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#8	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 8 Axes
A02B-0360-J802#9	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 9 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#1	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 1 Axe
A02B-0362-J802#10	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 10 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#11	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 11 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#12	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 12 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#13	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 13 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#14	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 14 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#15	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 15 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#16	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 16 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#17	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 17 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#18	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 18 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#19	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 19 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#2	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 2 Axes

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

031

Specification	Description
A02B-0362-J802#20	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 20 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#21	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 21 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#22	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 22 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#23	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 23 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#24	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 24 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#25	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 25 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#26	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 26 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#3	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 3 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#4	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 4 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#5	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 5 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#6	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 6 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#7	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 7 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#8	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 8 Axes
A02B-0362-J802#9	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Axes - 9 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#1	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 1 Axis
A02B-0364-J802#10	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 10 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#11	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 11 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#12	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 12 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#13	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 13 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#14	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 14 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#15	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 15 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#16	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 16 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#17	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 17 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#18	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 18 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#19	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 19 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#2	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 2 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#20	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 20 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#21	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 21 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#22	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 22 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#23	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 23 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#24	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 24 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#25	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 25 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#26	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 26 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#27	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 27 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#28	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 28 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#29	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 29 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#3	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 3 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#30	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 30 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#31	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 31 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#32	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 32 Axes

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

032

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-J802#33	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 33 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#34	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 34 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#35	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 35 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#36	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 36 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#37	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 37 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#38	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 38 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#39	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 39 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#4	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 4 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#40	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 40 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#41	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 41 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#42	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 42 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#43	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 43 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#44	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 44 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#45	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 45 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#46	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 46 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#47	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 47 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#48	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 48 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#49	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 49 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#5	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 5 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#50	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 50 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#51	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 51 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#52	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 52 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#53	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 53 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#54	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 54 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#55	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 55 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#56	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 56 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#57	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 57 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#58	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 58 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#59	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 59 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#6	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 6 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#60	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 60 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#61	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 61 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#62	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 62 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#63	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 63 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#64	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes 64 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#7	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 7 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#8	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 8 Axes
A02B-0364-J802#9	PM i-A Plus Designation of Number of Axes - 9 Axes

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

033

Controlled Axis

Designation of Machine Groups

This function specifies the number of machine groups or axes groups that the CNC can control.

If multiple paths are used, several paths can be formed into a group. By doing so, the group can share data, and if an alarm is issued with a path, the other path(s) in the group can be stopped. A group of those paths is referred to as a machine group.

Up to three groups can be used, depending on the type of CNC.

The following items are impacted by the machine group configuration:

- Emergency stop signal
- RESET on the MDI
- Operation performed when an alarm is issued

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S836#1	0i-TFP Designation of Machining Groups: 1 Group
A02B-0349-S836#2	0i-TFP Designation of Machining Groups: 2 Groups
A02B-0349-S836#3	0i-TFP Designation of Machining Groups: 3 Groups
A02B-0350-S836#1	0i-MFP Designation of Machining Groups: 1 Group
A02B-0350-S836#2	0i-MFP Designation of Machining Groups: 2 Groups
A02B-0350-S836#3	0i-MFP Designation of Machining Groups: 3 Groups
A02B-0353-S836#1	30i-BP Designation of Machine Groups - 1 Group
A02B-0353-S836#2	30i-BP Designation of Machine Groups - 2 Groups
A02B-0353-S836#3	30i-BP Designation of Machine Groups - 3 Groups
A02B-0356-S836#1	31i-B5P Designation of Machine Groups - 1 Group
A02B-0356-S836#2	31i-B5P Designation of Machine Groups - 2 Groups
A02B-0356-S836#3	31i-B5P Designation of Machine Groups - 3 Groups
A02B-0357-S836#1	31i-BP Designation of Machine Groups - 1 Group
A02B-0357-S836#2	31i-BP Designation of Machine Groups - 2 Groups
A02B-0357-S836#3	31i-BP Designation of Machine Groups - 3 Groups
A02B-0358-S836#1	32i-BP Designation of Machine Groups - 1 Group
A02B-0358-S836#2	32i-BP Designation of Machine Groups - 2 Groups
A02B-0359-S836#1	30i-LB Plus Designation of Machine Groups - 1 Group
A02B-0359-S836#2	30i-LB Plus Designation of Machine Groups - 2 Groups
A02B-0359-S836#3	30i-LB Plus Designation of Machine Groups - 3 Groups
A02B-0360-S836#1	31i-LB Plus Designation of Machine Groups - 1 Group
A02B-0360-S836#2	31i-LB Plus Designation of Machine Groups - 2 Groups
A02B-0360-S836#3	31i-LB Plus Designation of Machine Groups - 3 Groups

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

034

Specification	Description
A02B-0362-S836#1	31i-PB Plus Designation of Machine Groups - 1 Group
A02B-0362-S836#2	31i-PB Plus Designation of Machine Groups - 2 Groups
A02B-0362-S836#3	31i-PB Plus Designation of Machine Groups - 3 Groups
A02B-0364-S836#1	PM i-A Plus Designation of Machine Groups, 1 Group
A02B-0364-S836#2	PM i-A Plus Designation of Machine Groups, 2 Groups
A02B-0364-S836#3	PM i-A Plus Designation of Machine Groups, 3 Groups

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

035

Controlled Axis

Designation of Control Paths

This function specifies the number of controlled path for the CNC.
A path represents a group of axes that are controlled by the same NC program.
Up to 10 paths can be used, depending on the type of NC system. A path for loader control is also counted as a path.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S801#1	0i-TFP Designation of Control Paths: 1 Path
A02B-0349-S801#2	0i-TFP Designation of Control Paths: 2 Paths
A02B-0350-S801#1	0i-MFP Designation of Control Paths: 1 Path
A02B-0350-S801#2	0i-MFP Designation of Control Paths: 2 Paths
A02B-0351-S801#2	0i-LFP Designation of Control Paths: 2 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#1	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 1 Path
A02B-0353-S801#10	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 10 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#11	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 11 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#12	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 12 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#13	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 13 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#14	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 14 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#15	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 15 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#2	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 2 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#3	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 3 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#4	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 4 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#5	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 5 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#6	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 6 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#7	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 7 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#8	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 8 Paths
A02B-0353-S801#9	30i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 9 Paths
A02B-0356-S801#1	31i-B5P Designation of Control Paths - 1 Path
A02B-0356-S801#2	31i-B5P Designation of Control Paths - 2 Paths
A02B-0356-S801#3	31i-B5P Designation of Control Paths - 3 Paths
A02B-0356-S801#4	31i-B5P Designation of Control Paths - 4 Paths
A02B-0356-S801#5	31i-B5P Designation of Control Paths - 5 Paths
A02B-0356-S801#6	31i-B5P Designation of Control Paths - 6 Paths
A02B-0357-S801#1	31i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 1 Path
A02B-0357-S801#2	31i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 2 Paths
A02B-0357-S801#3	31i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 3 Paths
A02B-0357-S801#4	31i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 4 Paths
A02B-0357-S801#5	31i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 5 Paths

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

036

Specification	Description
A02B-0357-S801#6	31i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 6 Paths
A02B-0358-S801#1	32i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 1 Path
A02B-0358-S801#2	32i-BP Designation of Control Paths - 2 Paths
A02B-0359-S801#1	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Paths - 1 Path
A02B-0359-S801#2	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Paths - 2 Paths
A02B-0359-S801#3	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Paths - 3 Paths
A02B-0359-S801#4	30i-LB Plus Designation of Control Paths - 4 Paths
A02B-0360-S801#1	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Paths - 1 Path
A02B-0360-S801#2	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Paths - 2 Paths
A02B-0360-S801#3	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Paths - 3 Paths
A02B-0360-S801#4	31i-LB Plus Designation of Control Paths - 4 Paths
A02B-0362-S801#1	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Paths - 1 Path
A02B-0362-S801#2	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Paths - 2 Paths
A02B-0362-S801#3	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Paths - 3 Paths
A02B-0362-S801#4	31i-PB Plus Designation of Control Paths - 4 Paths
A02B-0364-S801#1	PM i-A Plus Designation of Control Paths, 1 Path
A02B-0364-S801#10	PM i-A Plus Designation of Control Paths, 10 Paths
A02B-0364-S801#2	PM i-A Plus Designation of Control Paths, 2 Paths
A02B-0364-S801#3	PM i-A Plus Designation of Control Paths, 3 Paths
A02B-0364-S801#4	PM i-A Plus Designation of Control Paths, 4 Paths
A02B-0364-S801#5	PM i-A Plus Designation of Control Paths, 5 Paths
A02B-0364-S801#6	PM i-A Plus Designation of Control Paths, 6 Paths
A02B-0364-S801#7	PM i-A Plus Designation of Control Paths, 7 Paths
A02B-0364-S801#8	PM i-A Plus Designation of Control Paths, 8 Paths
A02B-0364-S801#9	PM i-A Plus Designation of Control Paths, 9 Paths

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

037

Controlled Axis

Controllable Axes Expansion

This function increases the maximum number of axes controllable by the CNC.
This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R689	0i-TFP Controllable Axes Expansion
A02B-0350-R689	0i-MFP Controllable Axes Expansion

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

038
Controlled Axis

Spindle Axes Expansion

Features

This option expands the max. number of spindle axes for 0i-F Plus. In a 1-path system of 0i-TF Plus, the max. number is expanded to 3 spindle axes. In a 2-path system of 0i-MF Plus, the max. number is expanded to 4 spindle axes in total. Up to 3 spindle axes can be used in one path. In a 2-path system of 0i-TF Plus, the max. number is expanded to 6 spindle axes in total. Up to 4 spindle axes can be used in one path.

Benefits

- Extends the application range of the FANUC 0i-F Plus series

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R604	0i-TFP Spindle Axes Expansion
A02B-0350-R604	0i-MFP Spindle Axes Expansion

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

039
Controlled Axis

Expansion of Servo Axes Number

Features

This function expands the number of servo axes of the following CNCs to 7 axes:

- 0i-TF/MF Plus Type 2
- 0i-TF/MF Plus Type 3
- 0i-TF/MF Plus Type 4
- 0i-TF/MF Plus Type 5
- 0i-TF/MF Plus Grinder Package
- 0i-MF Plus Hob Package

Benefits

- Expand the application range for 0i-F Plus

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R014	0i-TFP Expansion of Servo Axes Number (max. 7 Axes)
A02B-0350-R014	0i-MFP Expansion of Servo Axes Number (max. 7 Axes)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

040
Controlled Axis

Designation of Spindle Axes

Features

This function increases the total number of spindle axes that can be controlled by the CNC.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S837#1	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 1 Spindle
A02B-0353-S837#10	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 10 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#11	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 11 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#12	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 12 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#13	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 13 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#14	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 14 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#15	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 15 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#16	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 16 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#17	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 17 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#18	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 18 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#19	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 19 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#2	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 2 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#20	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 20 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#21	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 21 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#22	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 22 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#23	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 23 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#24	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 24 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#3	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 3 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#4	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 4 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#5	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 5 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#6	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 6 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#7	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 7 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#8	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 8 Spindles
A02B-0353-S837#9	30i-BP Designation of Spindles - 9 Spindles
A02B-0356-S837#1	31i-B5P Designation of Spindles - 1 Spindle
A02B-0356-S837#2	31i-B5P Designation of Spindles - 2 Spindles
A02B-0356-S837#3	31i-B5P Designation of Spindles - 3 Spindles
A02B-0356-S837#4	31i-B5P Designation of Spindles - 4 Spindles
A02B-0356-S837#5	31i-B5P Designation of Spindles - 5 Spindles
A02B-0356-S837#6	31i-B5P Designation of Spindles - 6 Spindles

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

041

Specification	Description
A02B-0356-S837#7	31i-B5P Designation of Spindles - 7 Spindles
A02B-0356-S837#8	31i-B5P Designation of Spindles - 8 Spindles
A02B-0357-S837#1	31i-BP Designation of Spindles - 1 Spindle
A02B-0357-S837#2	31i-BP Designation of Spindles - 2 Spindles
A02B-0357-S837#3	31i-BP Designation of Spindles - 3 Spindles
A02B-0357-S837#4	31i-BP Designation of Spindles - 4 Spindles
A02B-0357-S837#5	31i-BP Designation of Spindles - 5 Spindles
A02B-0357-S837#6	31i-BP Designation of Spindles - 6 Spindles
A02B-0357-S837#7	31i-BP Designation of Spindles - 7 Spindles
A02B-0357-S837#8	31i-BP Designation of Spindles - 8 Spindles
A02B-0358-S837#1	32i-BP Designation of Spindles - 1 Spindle
A02B-0358-S837#2	32i-BP Designation of Spindles - 2 Spindles
A02B-0358-S837#3	32i-BP Designation of Spindles - 3 Spindles
A02B-0358-S837#4	32i-BP Designation of Spindles - 4 Spindles
A02B-0358-S837#5	32i-BP Designation of Spindles - 5 Spindles
A02B-0358-S837#6	32i-BP Designation of Spindles - 6 Spindles
A02B-0358-S837#7	32i-BP Designation of Spindles - 7 Spindles
A02B-0358-S837#8	32i-BP Designation of Spindles - 8 Spindles
A02B-0364-S837#1	PM i-A Plus Designation of Spindle Axes, 1 Spindle
A02B-0364-S837#2	PM i-A Plus Designation of Spindle Axes, 2 Spindles
A02B-0364-S837#3	PM i-A Plus Designation of Spindle Axes, 3 Spindles
A02B-0364-S837#4	PM i-A Plus Designation of Spindle Axes, 4 Spindles
A02B-0364-S837#5	PM i-A Plus Designation of Spindle Axes, 5 Spindles
A02B-0364-S837#6	PM i-A Plus Designation of Spindle Axes, 6 Spindles

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

042

Controlled Axis

Designation of Servo Axes for Spindle Use

Features

Specify the number of servo axes for spindle use (movement command invalidity) in spindle control with servo motor. The number of servo axes for spindle use needs to be included in spindle axes specification. Spindle control with servo motor is required to use this option.

Benefits

- Simplification of the machine structure
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0358-R710#1	32i-BP Designation of Servo Axis for Spindle Use - 1 Axis
A02B-0358-R710#2	32i-BP Designation of Servo Axis for Spindle Use - 2 Axes
A02B-0358-R710#3	32i-BP Designation of Servo Axis for Spindle Use - 3 Axes
A02B-0358-R710#4	32i-BP Designation of Servo Axis for Spindle Use - 4 Axes

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

043

Controlled Axis

Cs Contour Control

Features

The Cs Contour Control function controls the position of the serial spindle using the spindle motor in conjunction with a dedicated detector mounted on the spindle.

Cs Contour Control provides a higher precision than the spindle positioning function and enables positioning with other servo axes. Namely, Cs Contour Control enables linear interpolation between the spindle and servo axes.

The speed of the serial spindle is controlled by the spindle speed control function, while the spindle positioning is controlled by Cs Contour Control ("spindle contouring control"). Spindle speed control rotates the spindle using the velocity command, while the spindle contour control rotates the spindle using the move command.

Switching between spindle speed control and Cs Contour Control is performed by signals set in the PMC. In Cs Contour Control mode, the Cs Contour Control axis can be operated either manually or automatically, in the same way as normal servo axes.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 0, Type 1) and 0i-TF Plus (all Types).

Benefits

- High-precision positioning of the spindle
- Interpolation between the spindle axis and the feed axes

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J852	0i-MFP CS Contour Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

044

Controlled Axis

Loader Control Function

Features

The Loader Control Function is used to control peripheral devices such as a loader that perform non-machining operations. With this function, the path for performing a loader control is added besides the machining paths. Up to 4 feed axes can be controlled in a loader path.

Benefits

- Simplifies programming of peripheral devices

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R417	0i-TFP Function for Loader Control
A02B-0350-R417	0i-MFP Function for Loader Control
A02B-0353-R417	30i-BP Function for Loader Control
A02B-0356-R417	31i-B5P Function for Loader Control
A02B-0357-R417	31i-BP Function for Loader Control
A02B-0358-R417	32i-BP Function for Loader Control
A02B-0359-R417	30i-LB Plus Function for Loader Control
A02B-0360-R417	31i-LB Plus Function for Loader Control
A02B-0362-R417	31i-PB Plus Function for Loader Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

045

Controlled Axis

Addition of Loader Control Path

Features

The Addition of Loader Control Path function enables to add a second loader control path for the control of peripheral axes. Up to 3 feed axes can be controlled in each loader path.

Note

The Loader Control Function is required to use this function.

Benefits

- Extend the application range of the Loader Control Function

Ordering Information

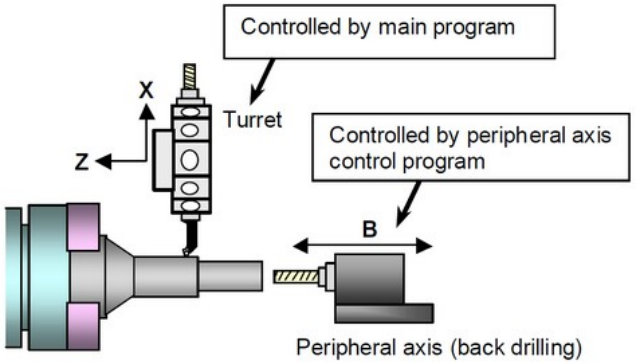
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R418	0i-TFP Addition of Loader Control Path
A02B-0350-R418	0i-MFP Addition of Loader Control Path
A02B-0353-R418	30i-BP Addition of Loader Control Path
A02B-0356-R418	31i-B5P Addition of Loader Control Path
A02B-0357-R418	31i-BP Addition of Loader Control Path
A02B-0358-R418	32i-BP Addition of Loader Control Path
A02B-0359-R418	30i-LB Plus Addition of Loader Control Path
A02B-0360-R418	31i-LB Plus Addition of Loader Control Path
A02B-0362-R418	31i-PB Plus Addition of Loader Control Path

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

046
Controlled Axis



Peripheral Axis Control

Features

In addition to a main program, another program can execute during the automatic operation of the CNC. In this case, peripheral axes such as loader and back drilling can be controlled in parallel with a main program.

The Peripheral Axis Control function has three control groups:

- Peripheral axis control group 1
- Peripheral axis control group 2
- Peripheral axis control group 3

Each group can run independently. Therefore, in a multi-path system, peripheral axis control can be applied to each path independently by assigning different control groups for each path.

Benefits

- Increase of machine efficiency and productivity
- Speed up programming and CNC commissioning
- Complex motion commands are easier and faster to programm

Ordering Information

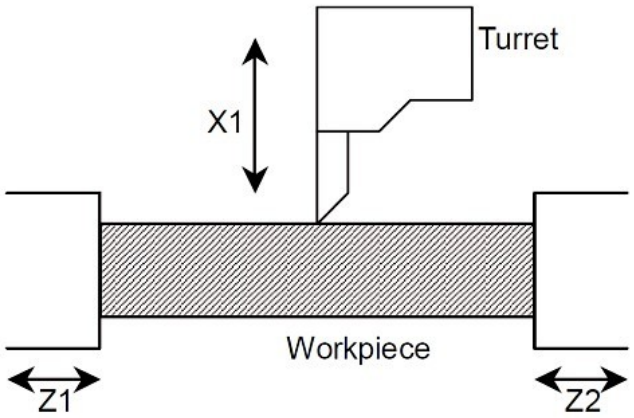
Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R725	30i-BP Peripheral Axis Control
A02B-0356-R725	31i-B5P Peripheral Axis Control
A02B-0357-R725	31i-BP Peripheral Axis Control
A02B-0358-R725	32i-BP Peripheral Axis Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

047
Controlled Axis



Synchronize Z2 in path 2 with Z1 in path1

Synchronous and Composite Control

Features

The Synchronous and Composite Control function enables an arbitrary axis of one path to be synchronized with an arbitrary axis of another path (synchronous control). In a multi-path control, movements are usually made on the axes of a path according to a move command for the path (independent control in each path).

With Synchronous and Composite Control, a move command for an arbitrary axis of one path and a move command for an arbitrary axis of another path can be exchanged with each other to make a movement on each axis (composite control).

By applying a move command for an axis (master axis) to a different arbitrary axis (slave axis), the movements on the two axes can be synchronized with each other. Whether to synchronize the movement on a slave axis with the move command for the master axis or make a movement on a slave according to the command for the slave can be chosen using the signal (synchronous control selection signal) from the PMC.

A move command for an arbitrary axis of one path and a move command for an arbitrary axis of another path can be exchanged with each other to make a movement on each axis.

Benefits

- Increase of machine efficiency and productivity
- Speed up programming and CNC commissioning
- Easier and faster programming
- Allows complex commands and synchronization between paths

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S816	0i-TFP Synchronous and Composite Control
A02B-0350-S816	0i-MFP Synchronous and Composite Control
A02B-0353-S816	30i-BP Synchronous / Composite Control
A02B-0356-S816	31i-B5P Synchronous / Composite Control
A02B-0357-S816	31i-BP Synchronous / Composite Control
A02B-0358-S816	32i-BP Synchronous / Composite Control
A02B-0359-S816	30i-LB Plus Synchronous / Composite Control
A02B-0360-S816	31i-LB Plus Synchronous / Composite Control
A02B-0362-S816	31i-PB Plus Synchronous / Composite Control

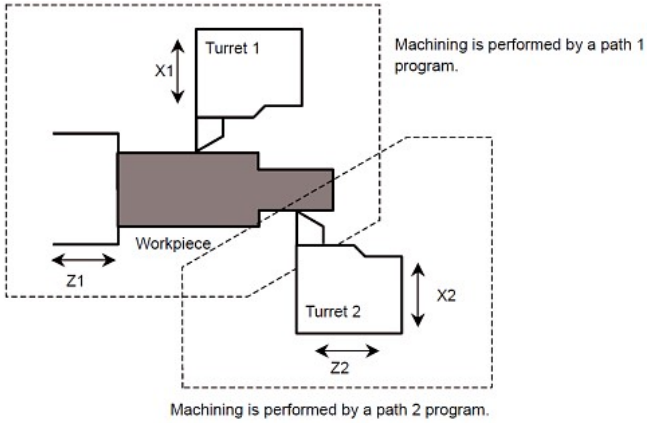
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

048

Controlled Axis



Superimposed Control

Features

Superimposed Control enables the travel distance on an arbitrary axis of one path to be superimposed on the travel distance on an arbitrary axis of another path. In multi-path control, usually, movements are made on the axes of path 1 according to a move command for path 1, and movements are made on the axes of path 2 according to a move command for path 2 (independent control in each path).

Superimposed control is very similar to synchronous control. In superimposed control however, a movement on the slave axis can be specified with a command for the path to which the slave axis belongs. The master axis and slave axis may belong to the same path, or the master axis may belong to one axis and the slave axis may belong to another. Moreover, multiple slave axes can be specified for one master axis. WIth the help of parameter settings, the move directions on the master axis and slave axis can be reversed from each other.

Example: in the image a move command for the Z1 axis of path 1 is superimposed on the travel distance on the Z2 axis of path 2.

Benefits

- Increase of machine efficiency and productivity
- Speed up programming and CNC commissioning
- Complex motion commands are easier and faster to programm

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S818	0i-TFP Superimposed Control
A02B-0350-S818	0i-MFP Superimposed Control
A02B-0353-S818	30i-BP Superimposed Control
A02B-0356-S818	31i-B5P Superimposed Control
A02B-0357-S818	31i-BP Superimposed Control
A02B-0358-S818	32i-BP Superimposed Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

049
Controlled Axis

Superimposed Control A

Features

For a slave axis under superimposed control, a travel distance specified by the program for the master axis path is added to a travel distance specified by the program for the slave axis path.

As a consequence, the actual speed on a slave axis is significantly higher than the ordinary speed ("ordinary speed" means a speed such as a parameter-set rapid traverse rate).

To prevent this, feedrates and a linear acceleration / deceleration time constant in rapid traverse can be set for use only during superimposed control with this function.

Benefits

- Simplifies the control in superimposed mode

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R538	0i-TFP Superimposed Control A
A02B-0350-R538	0i-MFP Superimposed Control A
A02B-0353-R538	30i-BP Superimposed Control A
A02B-0356-R538	31i-B5P Superimposed Control A
A02B-0357-R538	31i-BP Superimposed Control A
A02B-0358-R538	32i-BP Superimposed Control A

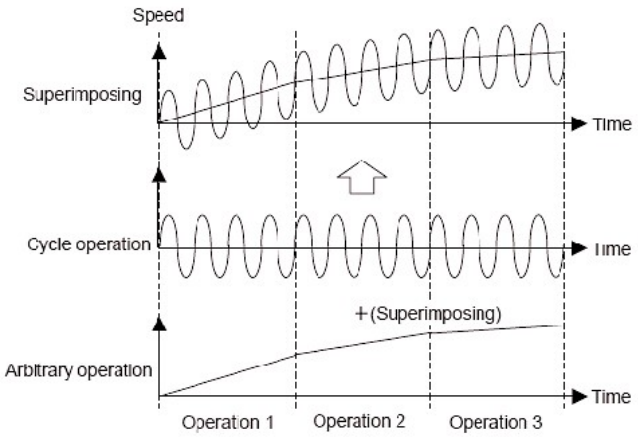
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

050

Controlled Axis



Superimposed Control for High-Speed Cycle Machining

Features

The Superimposed Control for High-Speed Cycle Machining function can perform superimposing upon an axis executing high-speed cycle machining or high-speed binary operation, from another path.

Independent arbitrary operation (cutting command) can be superimposed on a cycle operation that uses high-speed cycle machining (contour command or oscillation command).

Learning control can be used in high-speed cycle machining and high-speed binary operation.

Benefits

- Increase of machine efficiency and productivity
- Speed up programming and CNC commissioning
- Easier and faster programming
- Allows complex movements issued from the superimposition of arbitrary moves with high-speed operations

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R554	30i-BP Superimposed Control for High-Speed Cycle Machining
A02B-0356-R554	31i-B5P Superimposed Control for High-Speed Cycle Machining
A02B-0357-R554	31i-BP Superimposed Control for High-Speed Cycle Machining

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

051
Controlled Axis

Synchronous, Composite and Superimposed Control by Program Command

Features

The Synchronous, Composite and Superimposed Control function can be started or canceled using G-codes in the part program instead of being activated through digital input signals.
It is also possible to perform these controls using digital input signals in addition.

Example

- G51.4 P_ Q_ (L_); Start synchronous control
- G50.4 Q_ ; Cancel synchronous control
- G51.5 P_ Q_ ; Start composite control
- G50.5 P_ Q_ ; Cancel composite control
- G51.6 P_ Q_ ; Start superimposed control
- G50.6 Q_ ; Cancel superimposed control

Benefits

- Flexibility of the machine configuration
- Behaviour change without writing a specific PMC program
- Compatibility with Series 16i function

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S890	0i-TFP Synchronous, Composite, and Superimposed Control by CNC Program
A02B-0350-S890	0i-MFP Synchronous, Composite, and Superimposed Control by CNC Program
A02B-0353-S890	30i-BP Synchronous, Composite and Superimposed Conrol by Program Command
A02B-0356-S890	31i-B5P Synchronous, Composite and Superimposed Conrol by Program Command
A02B-0357-S890	31i-BP Synchronous, Composite and Superimposed Conrol by Program Command
A02B-0358-S890	32i-BP Synchronous, Composite and Superimposed Conrol by Program Command

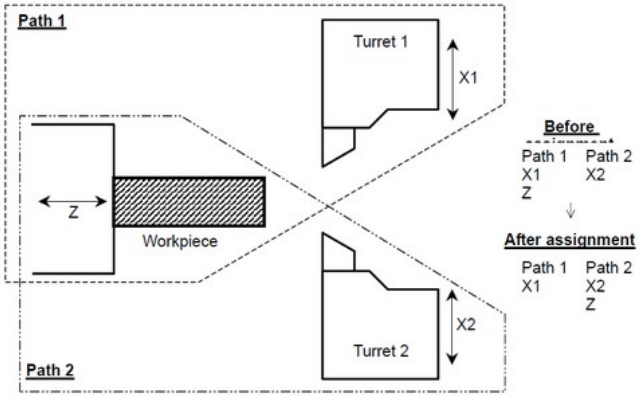
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

052

Controlled Axis



Flexible Path Axis Assignment

Features

The Flexible Path Axis Assignment function enables to disconnect each control axis from the control of each path and to assign the axis as a controlled axis to other path.

When using this function, an axis can be controlled in multiple paths.

The use of a dummy axis as intermediate is not required when using this function, as axis configuration can be changed directly.

Benefits

- High flexibility of the machine configuration and axis usage
- Increase of machine efficiency and productivity
- Speed up programming and CNC commissioning

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R607	0i-TFP Flexible Path Axis Assignment
A02B-0350-R607	0i-MFP Flexible Path Axis Assignment
A02B-0353-R607	30i-BP Flexible Path Axis Assignment
A02B-0356-R607	31i-B5P Flexible Path Axis Assignment
A02B-0357-R607	31i-BP Flexible Path Axis Assignment
A02B-0358-R607	32i-BP Flexible Path Axis Assignment

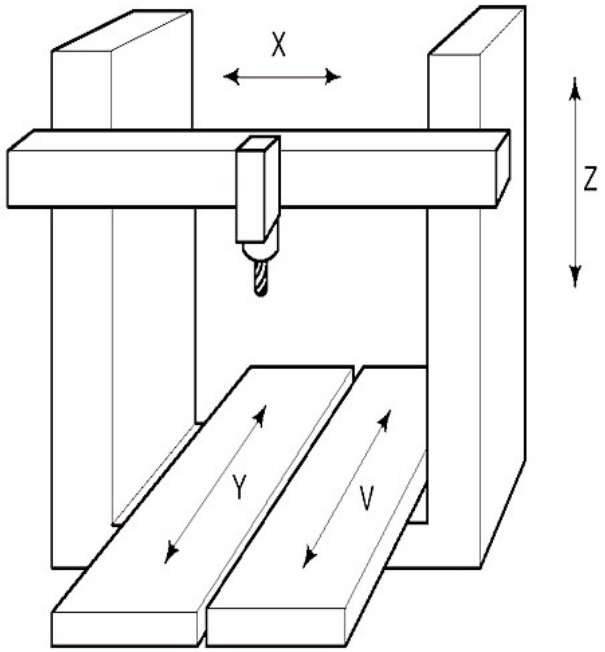
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

053

Controlled Axis



Axis Synchronous Control

Features

The Axis Synchronous function allows up to 4 master/slave servo motor pairs to perform synchronized motion. This feature is typically used on gantry or split table axes.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (Type 0, Type 1).

Benefits

- Machining of large work piece
- Each table can also be independently or synchronized controlled during normal operation
- Up to four axis can be synchronously controlled

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J843	0i-TFP Axis Synchronisation Control
A02B-0350-J843	0i-MFP Axis Synchronisation Control
A02B-0353-J843	30i-BP Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0356-J843	31i-B5P Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0357-J843	31i-BP Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0358-J843	32i-BP Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0359-J843	30i-LB Plus Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0360-J843	31i-LB Plus Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0362-J843	31i-PB Plus Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0364-J843	PM i-A Plus Axis Synchronisation Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

054

Controlled Axis

Twin Table Control

Features

The Twin Table Control function allows two specified axes to be switched between synchronous, independent, or normal operation, using the appropriate switches on the machine operator's panel.

Benefits

- Flexible operation selection
- Increase of machine efficiency and productivity
- Speed up programming and CNC comissioning

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J698	0i-MFP Twin Table Control
A02B-0353-J698	30i-BP Twin Table Control
A02B-0356-J698	31i-B5P Twin Table Control
A02B-0357-J698	31i-BP Twin Table Control
A02B-0358-J698	32i-BP Twin Table Control

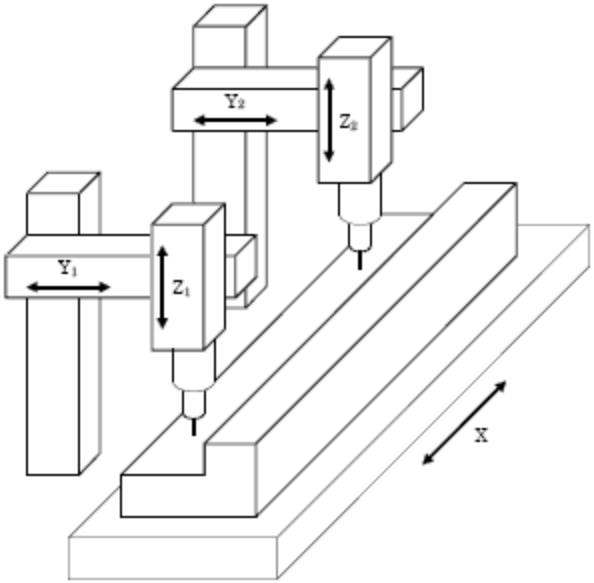
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

055

Controlled Axis



Parallel Axis Control

Features

When a machine tool is featuring multiple heads and multiple tables, machining multiple workpieces with the same shape at the same time on these multiple tables, multiple controlled axes having the same axis name can be operated at the same time by the use of a move command that specifies only one program axis.

This operation is called parallel operation. Two or more axes which operate in parallel at the same time upon the execution of a command that specifies only one program axis are called parallel axes.

The Parallel Axis Control function is effective in MEM mode, MDI mode, and manual numeric commands in machining center with one path. In manual operation, the parallel function can not be used. Each controlled axis operates independently.

In parallel operation, controlled axes related to one program axis operate in the same way. With the use of an input signal sent from the machine side, only the specified axis is selected among multiple parallel axes and operated (parking).

Notes:

Parallel axis control function is limited to machining center with one path only.

Parallel axis control function does not support the following motion functions:

- Smooth interpolation
- Nano smoothing
- 3-dimensional coordinate system conversion
- 3-dimensional tool compensation
- Tool length compensation in tool axis direction
- Tool center point control
- Tool posture control
- 3-dimensional cutter compensation
- Tilted working plane indexing
- Nano smoothing 2
- Workpiece setting error compensation
- Tandem control
- Feed axis synchronization control
- Twin table control
- Synchronous / Composite control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

- Superimposed Control

Benefits

- Simple and effective implementation of machines performing parallel machining or multiple boring / drilling stations
- Increase machine efficiency and productivity
- Simplified programming of the machining cycles
- Speeds up CNC and machine commissioning

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R509	30i-BP Parallel Axis Control
A02B-0356-R509	31i-B5P Parallel Axis Control
A02B-0357-R509	31i-BP Parallel Axis Control
A02B-0359-R509	30i-LB Plus Parallel Axis Control
A02B-0360-R509	31i-LB Plus Parallel Axis Control
A02B-0362-R509	31i-PB Plus Parallel Axis Control

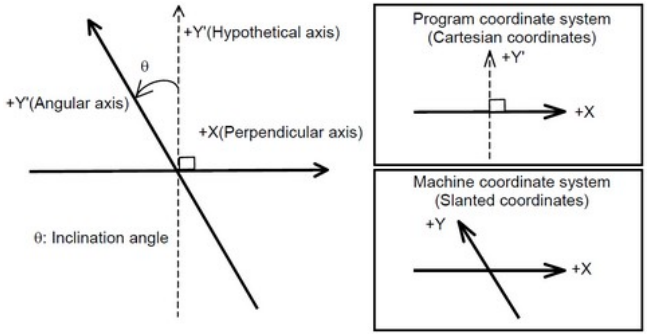
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

057

Controlled Axis



Arbitrary Angular Axis Control

Features

When the angular axis installed makes an angle other than 90° with the perpendicular axis, the angular axis control function can control the distance traveled along each axis according to the inclination angle, as if the angular axis makes and angle of 90° with the perpendicular axis.

Arbitrary axes can be specified as a set of an angular axis and perpendicular axis by parameter setting. The actual distance traveled is controlled according to an inclination angle. However, a program, when created, assumes that the angular axis and perpendicular axis intersect at right angles.

Benefits

- Increase machine efficiency and productivity
- Simplified programming of the machining cycles
- Speeds up CNC and machine commissioning

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J924	0i-TFP Angular Axis Control
A02B-0350-J924	0i-MFP Angular Axis Control
A02B-0353-J924	30i-BP Arbitrary Angular Axis Control
A02B-0356-J924	31i-B5P Arbitrary Angular Axis Control
A02B-0357-J924	31i-BP Arbitrary Angular Axis Control
A02B-0358-J924	32i-BP Arbitrary Angular Axis Control

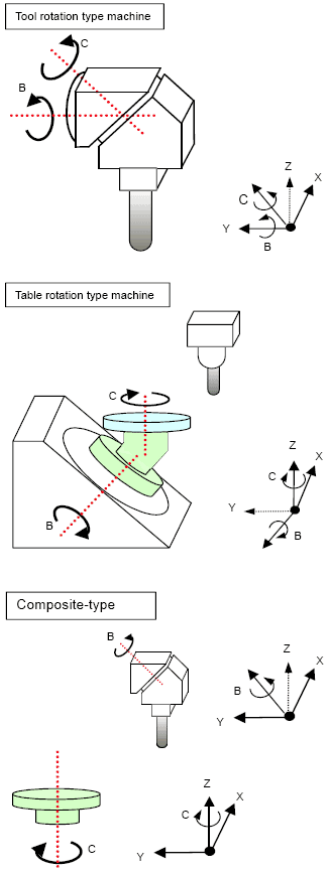
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

058

Controlled Axis



Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Inclined Rotary Axis Control

Features

The Inclined Rotary Axis Control function casn be used in conjunction with following 5-axes control capabilities:

- Tilted Working Plane Command (TWP)
- Tool Center Point Control (TCP)
- 3-Dimensional Cutter/Radius Compensation
- 3-Dimensional Manual Feed

This function can be used on machines where the tool rotation axis or the table rotation axis is inclined with respect to the X-Y plane, a Y-Z plane or a Z-X plane of the machine coordinate system.

Benefits

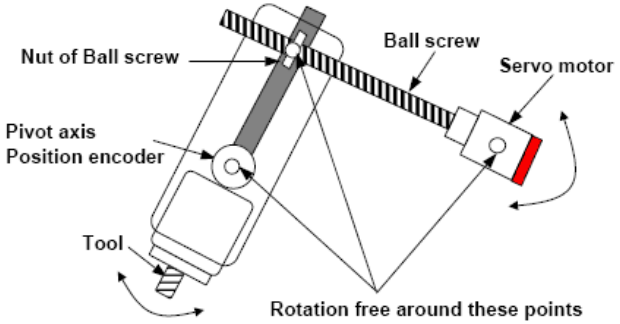
- Supports 5-Axes functions on machines with non-orthogonal primary linear axes

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-S688	0i-MFP Inclined Rotary Axis Control
A02B-0353-S688	30i-BP Inclined Rotary Axis Control
A02B-0356-S688	31i-B5P Inclined Rotary Axis Control
A02B-0357-S688	31i-BP Inclined Rotary Axis Control
A02B-0358-S688	32i-BP Inclined Rotary Axis Control

059

Controlled Axis



Pivot Axis Control

Features

The Pivot Axis Control function allows to control a pivot axis (B-axis) by a ball screw connected to a servo motor, which direction is free.

Generally, the relation between the rotating angle of motor and the position of rotation axis on the machine is proportional. When using this function, the rotation angle of the motor is not proportional to the rotation angle of the pivot axis (B-axis) on the machine.

The position command is output to drive the servo motor, and the position encoder is mounted to follow the rotation angle of pivot axis (B-axis). The speed of pivot axis (B-axis) may fluctuate; to decrease the fluctuation and keep the actual position gain constant, the function changes the position gain of the motor according to the position of pivot axis (B-axis).

Benefits

- Simple and effective implementation of complex pivotal systems
- Increase machine efficiency and productivity
- Simplified programming of the machining cycles
- Speeds up CNC and machine commissioning

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S665	30i-BP Pivot Axis Control
A02B-0356-S665	31i-B5P Pivot Axis Control
A02B-0357-S665	31i-BP Pivot Axis Control
A02B-0358-S665	32i-BP Pivot Axis Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

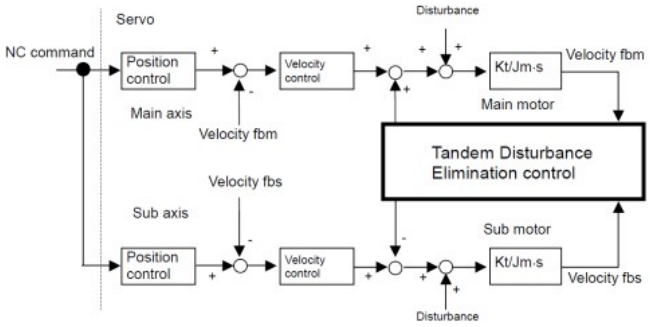
060
Controlled Axis

Tandem Disturbance Elimination Control

Features
This function suppresses vibration caused by interferences between the main axis and the sub-axis in a position tandem control (feed axis synchronization).

Note
The axis synchronous control function is required.

Benefits
- Simple and effective implementation of vibration suppression on a tandem machine
- Increase machining quality, efficiency and productivity



Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S660	0i-TFP Tandem Disturbance Elimination Control
A02B-0350-S660	0i-MFP Tandem Disturbance Elimination Control
A02B-0353-S660	30i-BP Tandem Disturbance Elimination Control
A02B-0356-S660	31i-B5P Tandem Disturbance Elimination Control
A02B-0357-S660	31i-BP Tandem Disturbance Elimination Control
A02B-0358-S660	32i-BP Tandem Disturbance Elimination Control
A02B-0359-S660	30i-LB Plus Tandem Disturbance Elimination Control
A02B-0360-S660	31i-LB Plus Tandem Disturbance Elimination Control
A02B-0362-S660	31i-PB Plus Tandem Disturbance Elimination Control
A02B-0364-S660	PM i-A Plus Tandem Disturbance Elimination Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

061
Controlled Axis

Pole Position Detection Function

Features

When FANUC DiS (torque) motors, FANUC LiS (linear) motors or 3rd party motors are driven by a FANUC servo system, the Pole Position Detection function allows the proper detection of the position of magnetic poles.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Notes

- This function cannot be used with a vertical axis to which force is applied at all times
- This function cannot be used with an axis when the axis is completely locked

Benefits

- Detection of magnetic poles of FANUC DiS (torque) and LiS (linear) servo motors
- Detection of magnetic poles of 3rd party servo motors with a FANUC servo amplifier system
- Speeds up CNC and machine commissioning

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S744	0i-TFP Pole Position Detection Function
A02B-0350-S744	0i-MFP Pole Position Detection Function
A02B-0359-S744	30i-LB Plus Pole Position Detection Function
A02B-0360-S744	31i-LB Plus Pole Position Detection Function
A02B-0364-S744	PM i-A Plus Pole Position Detection Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

062
Controlled Axis

Control Axis Detach

Features

With the Controlled Axes Detach function, an entire axis, including servo motor and feedback, can be "detached" or disabled from the machine and the control system without creating any alarm.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Typically used for fourth axis such as rotary table, right angle head
- Easy to implement a plug and play solution without operator intervention with the machine controller
- Position display shows the attached axis positions
- Easy to use for production adaptability and flexibility

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J807	0i-TFP Control Axis Detach
A02B-0350-J807	0i-MFP Control Axis Detach
A02B-0353-J807	30i-BP Control Axis Detach
A02B-0356-J807	31i-B5P Control Axis Detach
A02B-0357-J807	31i-BP Control Axis Detach
A02B-0358-J807	32i-BP Control Axis Detach
A02B-0359-J807	30i-LB Plus Control Axis Detach
A02B-0360-J807	31i-LB Plus Control Axis Detach
A02B-0362-J807	31i-PB Plus Control Axis Detach

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

063
Controlled Axis

Dual Control Axes Switching

Features
With the Dual Control Axes Switching function, it is possible to allocate two control axes to one motor. When the two allocated control axes are in controlled axes detach, the axes can be switched. As a result, one motor can have two independent axes settings such as parameters, compensation, and custom macro system variables.

Note
Dual Control Axes Switching cannot be used together with Dual Check Safety.
This function includes the Controlled Axes Detach function.

Benefits
- Use attachments with e.g. different gear ratios by one motor

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R390	0i-TFP Dual Control Axes Switching
A02B-0350-R390	0i-MFP Dual Control Axes Switching
A02B-0353-R390	30i-BP Dual Control Axes Switching
A02B-0356-R390	31i-B5P Dual Control Axes Switching
A02B-0357-R390	31i-BP Dual Control Axes Switching
A02B-0358-R390	32i-BP Dual Control Axes Switching

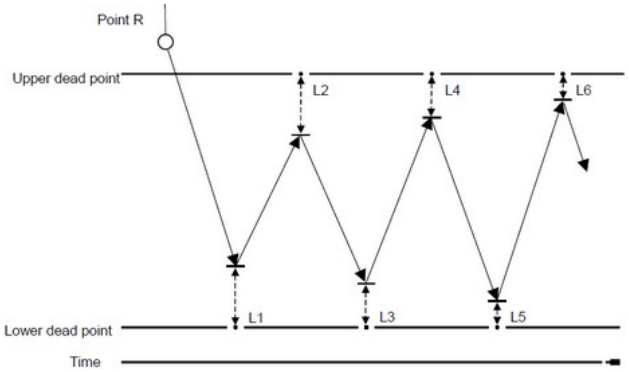
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

064

Controlled Axis



Chopping

Features

The Chopping function controls an up and down motion for side face grinding while servo delay compensation is used to minimize errors at upper and lower dead points (end points).

A chopping cycle is activated by the G81.1 command or a PMC signal; a G80 command cancels this chopping cycle. Parameters are used to specify the movement itself.

Benefits

- Allows complex gear cutting/grinding operations
- Simplifies programming

Ordering Information

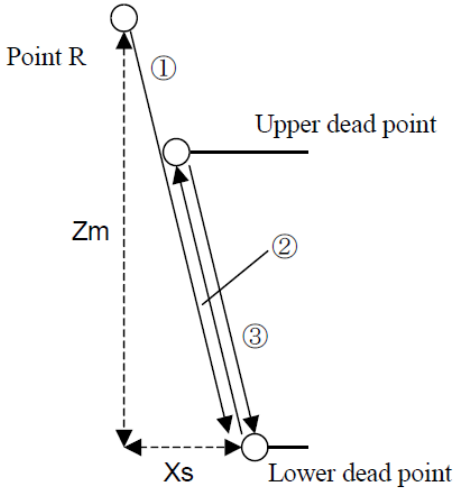
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J707	0i-TFP Chopping Function
A02B-0350-J707	0i-MFP Chopping Function
A02B-0353-J707	30i-BP Chopping Function
A02B-0356-J707	31i-B5P Chopping Function
A02B-0357-J707	31i-BP Chopping Function
A02B-0358-J707	32i-BP Chopping Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

065
Controlled Axis



Movement process :

(1): Movement from point R to lower dead point

(2): Movement from lower dead point to upper dead point

(3): Movement from upper dead point to lower dead point

After (1), repeat (2) and (3).

Chopping Function by Flexible Synchronous Control

Features

The Chopping Function by Flexible Synchronous Control allows to use the Chopping function together with Flexible Synchronization Control. This enables chopping on two axes simultaneously. It is possible to synchronize an axis with a chopping axis.

This function enables to override the commanded gear ratio of Flexible Synchronous Control. The actual gear ratio is obtained by multiplying the commanded gear ratio with an override signal. The range of the override signal is 0% to 254%.

Note

The options Flexible Synchronous Control and Chopping are not necessary to use this option. This function cannot be specified for Lathe systems.

Benefits

- Expands the application range of the chopping function
- Suitable for processing inclined surfaces with a grinder

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R547	30i-BP Chopping Function by Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0356-R547	31i-B5P Chopping Function by Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0357-R547	31i-BP Chopping Function by Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0358-R547	32i-BP Chopping Function by Flexible Synchronous Control

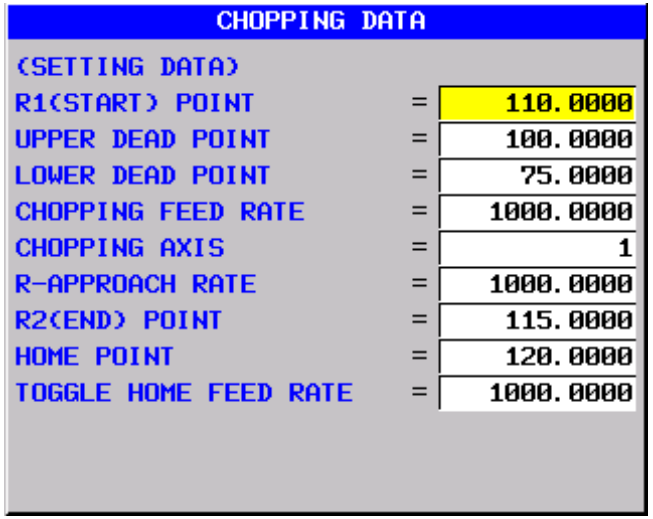
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

066

Controlled Axis



Chopping Setting Screen

Features

The Chopping Setting Screen extends the chopping function with additional features:

- Various chopping parameters can be set by the chopping setting screen.
- The feedrate from the start point to the chopping reference point (approach rate) can be set independently.
- The moving direction of the chopping axis can be changed during the chopping operation by direction change signals.
- The end position of the chopping axis (R2 point)can be set independently.
- An andditional servo delay compensation method is added, where the chopping feedrate is not changed.
- Chopping data such as stroke count etc. can be queried by the PMC.

The Chopping function or the Chopping Function by Flexible Synchronization Control is required to use this function.

Benefits

- Simplifies the operation of the chopping function
- Expands application range of the chopping function

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R614	30i-BP Chopping Function Setting Screen
A02B-0356-R614	31i-B5P Chopping Function Setting Screen
A02B-0357-R614	31i-BP Chopping Function Setting Screen
A02B-0358-R614	32i-BP Chopping Function Setting Screen

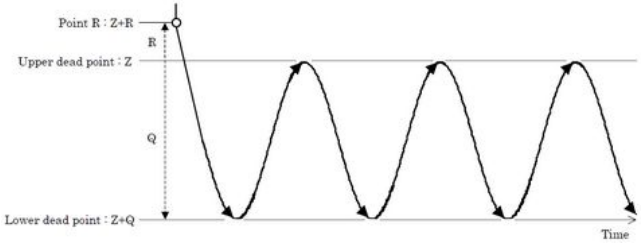
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

067

Controlled Axis



High-Precision Oscillation Function

Features

In this function, the feedrate of an oscillation axis (equivalent to a chopping axis that is moved vertically and repeatedly for grinding) changes along a sine curve.

This function is effective to improve the accuracy of movement between upper dead point and lower dead point.

In addition, the look-ahead feed forward function can be used with oscillation motion; in this case a higher accuracy can be achieved even if the oscillation feedrate or the upper or lower dead point are changed.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming
- Increase of the precision and productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R662	0i-TFP High Precision Oscillation Function
A02B-0350-R662	0i-MFP High Precision Oscillation Function
A02B-0353-R662	30i-BP High Precision Oscillation Function
A02B-0356-R662	31i-B5P High Precision Oscillation Function
A02B-0357-R662	31i-BP High Precision Oscillation Function
A02B-0358-R662	32i-BP High Precision Oscillation Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

068
Controlled Axis

PMC Axis Control - Acceleration/Deceleration Specification Feed

Features

The PMC Axis Control - Acceleration/Deceleration Specification Feed function allows to specify the acceleration and the deceleration of an PMC-controlled axis motion independently.
The Axis Control by PMC function is necessary to use this function.

Benefits

- Extends the application range of the Axis Control by PMC function

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R640	0i-TFP PMC Axis Control Acceleration / Deceleration Specification Feed
A02B-0350-R640	0i-MFP PMC Axis Control Acceleration / Deceleration Specification Feed
A02B-0353-R640	30i-BP PMC Axis Control Acceleration / Deceleration Specification Feed
A02B-0356-R640	31i-B5P PMC Axis Control Acceleration / Deceleration Specification Feed
A02B-0357-R640	31i-BP PMC Axis Control Acceleration / Deceleration Specification Feed
A02B-0358-R640	32i-BP PMC Axis Control Acceleration / Deceleration Specification Feed
A02B-0360-R640	31i-LB Plus PMC Axis Control Acceleration / Deceleration Specification Feed
A02B-0362-R640	31i-PB Plus PMC Axis Control Acceleration / Deceleration Specification Feed
A02B-0364-R640	PM i-A Plus PMC Axis Control Acceleration / Deceleration Specification Feed

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

069

Controlled Axis

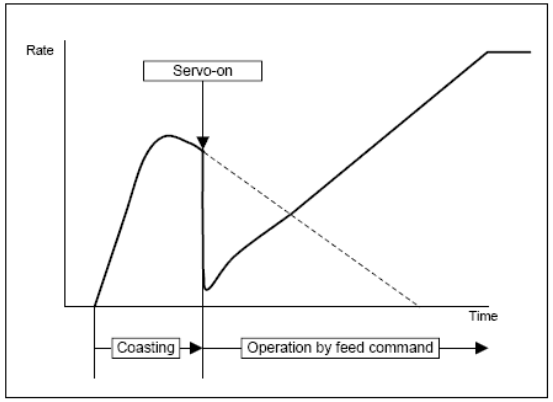


Fig. 1 Conventional Operation

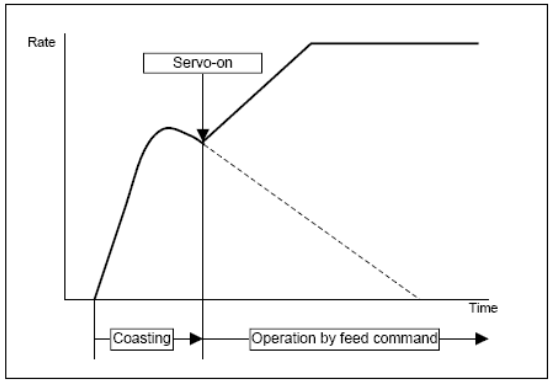


Fig. 2 Operation with Servo-on Synchronize Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Servo-On Synchronize Function

Features

Conventionally, for a coasting axis under a servo-off condition, when the servo-off signal is released to set a servo-on condition while a move command is entered, a step for canceling an accumulated amount of servo position error is triggered. The step involves abrupt deceleration and then acceleration, preventing a smooth start of the move command.

This feed function uses the actual rate at the instant of servo-on condition setting as an initial rate, thereby starting operation smoothly at a specified acceleration or deceleration.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R395	PM i-A Plus Servo-On Synchronize Function

070
Controlled Axis

Multi-axes synchronous function

Features

The Multi-Axes Synchronous Function allows axes (child axes) to synchronously follow up the operation of a reference axis (parent axis) with a certain speed ratio (gear ratio)

This function not only facilitates simplification of gears and other mechanism but also allows the speed ratio to be changed freely during operation, therefore enabling operations that could not be performed with conventional mechanisms.

Benefits

- Since the speed ratio (gear ratio) is determined by command data of the PMC axis control, operations that frequently change the gear ratio or the direction of movement can be performed.
- The speed ratio (gear ratio) is set by specifying the amount of a parent-axis movement and the amount of a child-axis movement separately rather than specifying a ratio directly, so the problem of fraction processing does not occur. As a result, the synchronization relationship does not deviate even after rotation is performed continuously.
- Axes can have a hierarchical structure not only having a parent-child relationship but also having grandchildren and further lower levels as long as the maximum allowable number of axes is not exceeded.
- The parent-child relationship of axes is established by setting parameters considering safety.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R403	PM i-A Plus Multi-Axes Synchronous Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

071
Controlled Axis

Multi-Axes High-Response Function

Features

The Multi-Axes High-Response Function adds a high-response mode to the control. The cycle time to check external signals in high-response mode is faster than in normal mode. Therefore, if a program is executed in high-response mode, the axes can be started or stopped with external signal faster than in normal mode. Programs have to be compiled before they can be executed in high-response mode. Up to 24 programs can be executed simultaneously.

Benefits

- Reduces cycle time and increases productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R396	PM i-A Plus Multi-Axes High-Response Function (Max. 1 Path / 24 Axes)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

072
Controlled Axis

Skip Function for Multi-Axes High-Response Function

Features
The Skip Function for Multi-Axes High-Response Function allows to use the skip function in the high-response mode. With this, it is possible to measure workpiece position and dimension in high-response mode.

Note
The Multi-Axes High-Response Function is necessary to use this function.

Benefits
- Extends the application range of the Multi-Axes High-Response Function

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R398	PM i-A Plus Skip Function for Multi-Axes High-Response Function (Max. 24 Skip Signals)

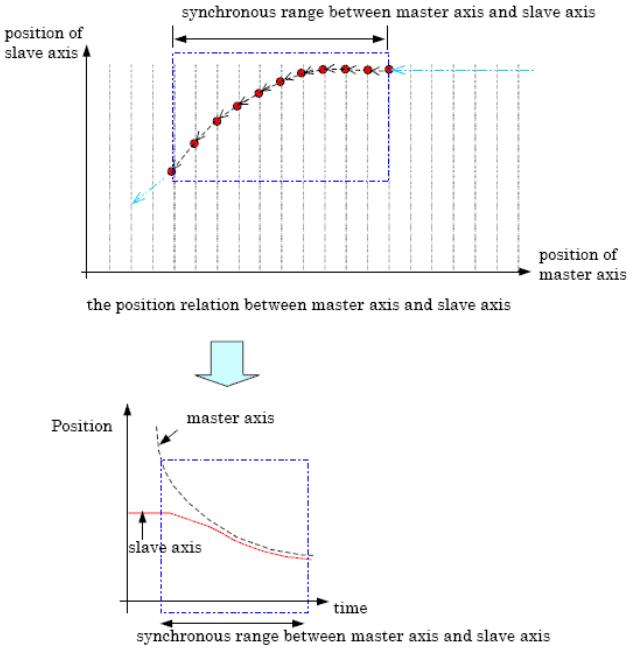
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

073

Controlled Axis



Position Definition Type Synchronous Function

Features

An axis may synchronize the movement with another axis only in the specific range.

This function enables that the slave axis synchronizes the movement with the master axis within the specified range of the master axis according to the data of the position relation between the master axis and the slave axis that had been defined beforehand. This function is executed in the high response mode.

Up to 8 kinds of position relation data can be registered. Multiple slave axes can be selected for the same position releation data at the same time. But different position releation data can not be selected for multiple slave axes at the same time. Only one master axis can be specified.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R399	PM i-A Plus Position Definition Type Synchronous Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

074
Controlled Axis

Pressure and Position Control Function

Overview

The pressure and position control function enables a positional control command and pressure control command to be executed at the same time. The function is an axis control function that automatically selects and exercises position control based on a positional control command when no force is applied to the tool in an axis direction, and automatically selects and exercises pressure control based on a pressure command when an external force is applied to the tool in an axis direction.

For example, the function enables the tool to approach a workpiece in an axis direction by using position control until the tool touches the workpiece. The function can then exercise pressure control with a specified pressure while the tool is touching the workpiece in the axis direction. When the tool is separated from the workpiece, the function can move the tool to a specified position by position control.

With the Power Motion i-A Plus , this function requires high-speed response characteristics, so that the optional function of the HIGH RESPONSE FUNCTION is needed.

Analog Monitor Unit

The 'Analog Monitor Unit' is connected to FSSB line to input an analog current signal to Power Motion i-A Plus in combination with the 'Pressure and Position Control Function'. There are 4 analog current input cahnnels available on the unit. The maximum total number of 'Analog Monitor Units' and 'Separate Detector Interface Units' that can be connected to an FSSB line is 4 for HRV2, and 2 for HRV3.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R460	30i-BP Pressure and Position Control
A02B-0356-R460	31i-B5P Pressure and Position Control
A02B-0357-R460	31i-BP Pressure and Position Control
A02B-0364-R327	PM i-A Plus Pressure and Position Control Bell-shaped Command for Pressurization / Depressurization
A02B-0364-R400	PM i-A Plus Pressure and Position Control Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

075
Controlled Axis

Position Control Keep Function

Features
With the Position Control Keep Function, it is possible to prevent the automatic switching from position control to pressure control when using the Pressure and Position Control Function. If a dedicated input signal is activated, the control will not switch the correspondent axis to pressure control mode and stay in position control mode.

Note
The Multi-Axes High-Response Function and the Pressure and Position Control Function are required to use this function.

Benefits
- Prevents unexpected switching to pressure control mode

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R401	PM i-A Plus Position Control Keep Function

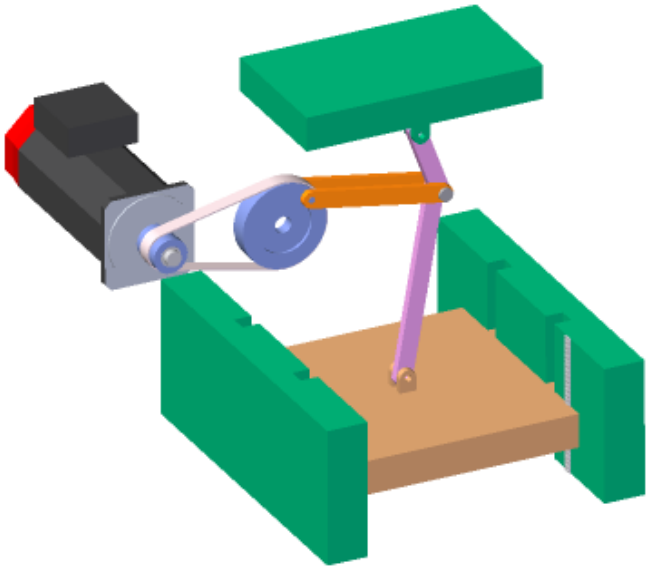
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

076

Controlled Axis



Control Function for Link Type Press

Features

In the rotary link type press mechanism, the deceleration ratio in the slider part changes according to the angle of the main gear. With the Control Function for Link Type Press, the internal value of the position gain is corrected by a gain multiplier according to the angle of the main gear in order to keep the effective position gain constant.

Two different control methods are available. In the rotation control method, the position control is performed based on the feedback of the main gear. In the reverse control method, the position control is performed based on the feedback of the slider.

Benefits

- Support of link type press mechanisms

Ordering Information

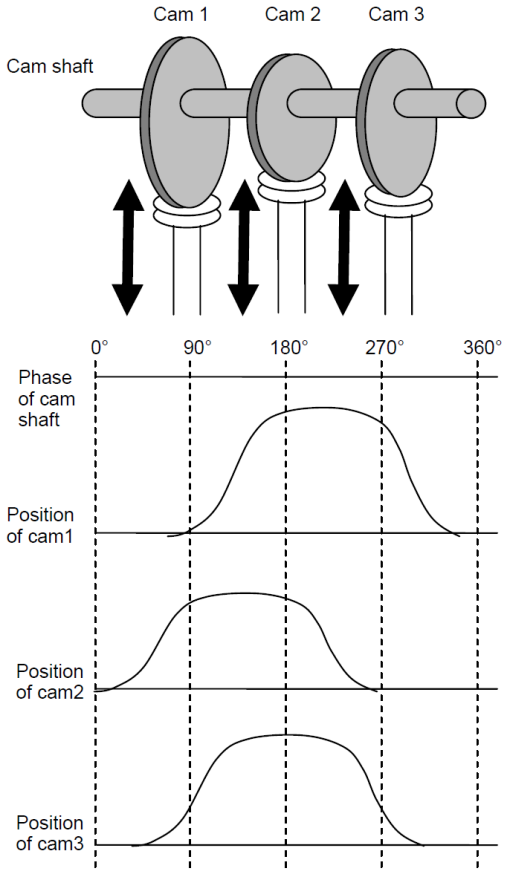
Specification	Description
A02B-0364-S603	PM i-A Plus Control Function for Link Type Press

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

077
Controlled Axis



Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Electronic Cam Function

Features

The Electronic Cam Function electronically creates a motion of the cam follower that is synchronized with the motion of the cam shaft. The shapes of the cams are registered in the CNC beforehand. The CNC reads the data and moves the cam follower synchronized with the motion of the cam shaft.

Up to 4 cam followers can be synchronized with a cam shaft. Three different kinds of cam shafts are available with this function:

- An externally controlled axis with a rotary pulse coder attached to it.
- A servo axis which is controlled by the CNC.
- A hypothetical axis which is controlled by the CNC.

With this function, it is possible to replace mechanical cam shafts.

Benefits

- Scales down the machine's size and reduces costs
- No wear, no lifetime issues of mechanical components
- No errors due to insufficient mechanical precision

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R402	PM i-A Plus Electronic Cam Function

078
Controlled Axis

Increment System D

Features

The Increment System D allows programming to 0.00001mm or 0.000001 inches or 0.00001 degrees.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S694	30i-BP Increment System D
A02B-0356-S694	31i-B5P Increment System D
A02B-0357-S694	31i-BP Increment System D
A02B-0358-S694	32i-BP Increment System D
A02B-0359-S694	30i-LB Plus Increment System D
A02B-0360-S694	31i-LB Plus Increment System D
A02B-0362-S694	31i-PB Plus Increment System D
A02B-0364-S694	PM i-A Plus Increment System D

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

079
Controlled Axis

Increment System E

Features
The Increment System E allows programming to 0.000001mm or 0.0000001 inches or 0.000001 degrees.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S805	30i-BP Increment System E
A02B-0356-S805	31i-B5P Increment System E
A02B-0357-S805	31i-BP Increment System E
A02B-0358-S805	32i-BP Increment System E
A02B-0359-S805	30i-LB Plus Increment System E
A02B-0360-S805	31i-LB Plus Increment System E
A02B-0362-S805	31i-PB Plus Increment System E
A02B-0364-S805	PM i-A Plus Increment System E

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

080

Controlled Axis

Arbitrary Command Multiply

Features

The Arbitrary Command Multiply function provides the flexibility to set the gearing between the position feedback device and the motor for a given axis.

When the detection unit assumes a special value, an arbitrary command multiply can be set using a ratio of n:m. The setting range is 1/9999 to 9999/1.

Benefits

- Increase of the flexibility and adpatation of the CNC to the machine structure
- Speeds up CNC and machine design and commissioning

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S806	30i-BP Arbitrary Command Multiply
A02B-0356-S806	31i-B5P Arbitrary Command Multiply
A02B-0357-S806	31i-BP Arbitrary Command Multiply
A02B-0358-S806	32i-BP Arbitrary Command Multiply
A02B-0359-S806	30i-LB Plus Arbitrary Command Multiply
A02B-0360-S806	31i-LB Plus Arbitrary Command Multiply
A02B-0362-S806	31i-PB Plus Arbitrary Command Multiply
A02B-0364-S806	PM i-A Plus Arbitrary Command Multiply

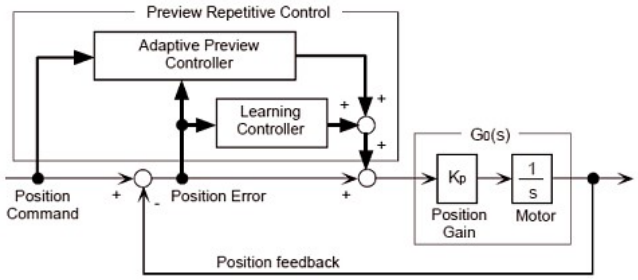
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

081

Controlled Axis



High-Precision Learning Control A

Features

The High-Precision Learning Control A function (formerly Preview Repetitive Control) is a function designed to allow high-speed and high-precision cutting by recovering previously saved cutting data from memory and utilizing that data during production for optimization purpose.

High-Precision Learning Control A, is used to increase the speed and accuracy of machining high volume parts.

Before employing this function in production, the axes involved in the prescribed machining operation must first be "taught" the desired path movements and related cutting data. This data is stored in memory and recovered for use as a template during production.

Compared to High-Precision Learning Control B (formerly Learning Control), this function reduces also the Following Error of the first cycle while using advanced previewing functionality of the control.

This function is ideal for camshaft grinding, crankshaft pin grinding, piston lathes or aspherical lens cutting applications.

Benefits

- Increased speed and accuracy when machining high volume parts
- Higher accuracy than the High-Precision Learning Control B function as it reduces the position error much faster
- Replaces an expensive mechanical cam with an electronic template that causes the axes to follow a virtual cam

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J706	30i-BP High Precision Learning Control A
A02B-0356-J706	31i-B5P High Precision Learning Control A
A02B-0357-J706	31i-BP High Precision Learning Control A

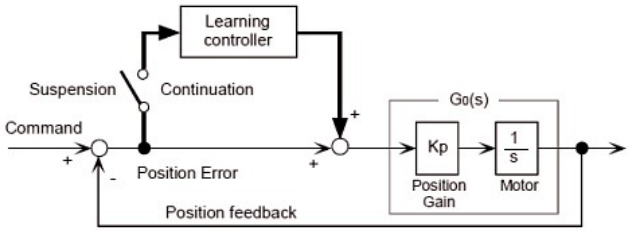
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

082

Controlled Axis



High-Precision Learning Control B

Features

The High-Precision Learning Control B function (formerly Learning Control) is a function designed to allow high-speed and high-precision cutting by recovering previously saved cutting data from memory and utilizing that data during production. The CNC works to eliminate the position error in the live cutting path versus the memorized data.

Before employing this function in production, the axes involved in the prescribed machining operation must first be "taught" the desired path movements and related cutting data. These are then stored in memory and recovered for use as a template during production.

Compared to the High-Precision Learning Function A, the High-Precision Learning Function B does not feature the Advanced Preview Control

This function is ideal for camshaft grinding, crankshaft pin grinding, piston lathes or aspherical lens cutting applications.

Benefits

- Learning Control is used to increase the speed and accuracy of machining high volume parts.
- Replace an expensive mechanical cam with an electronic template that causes the axes to follow a virtual cam.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J705	30i-BP High Precision Learning Control B
A02B-0356-J705	31i-B5P High Precision Learning Control B
A02B-0357-J705	31i-BP High Precision Learning Control B

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

083

Controlled Axis

High-Precision Learning Control C

Features

The High-Precision Learning Control C function (formerly Compact Learning Control) is a subset function of the High-Precision Learning Control B. It can be implemented on standard servo axis cards instead of the servo axes card with large memory (L24 servo cards).

This function provides an angle-base learning control for compact application without handling learning data.

The High-Precision Learning Control C function can be used for applications such as gear grinding, gear cutting and shaping as well as to control grinder oscillation.

Benefits

- Learning Control increases the speed and accuracy of the machining when producing parts in high volume.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R692	30i-BP High Precision Learning Control C
A02B-0356-R692	31i-B5P High Precision Learning Control C
A02B-0357-R692	31i-BP High Precision Learning Control C
A02B-0359-R692	30i-LB Plus High Precision Learning Control C
A02B-0360-R692	31i-LB Plus High Precision Learning Control C
A02B-0362-R692	31i-PB Plus High Precision Learning Control C

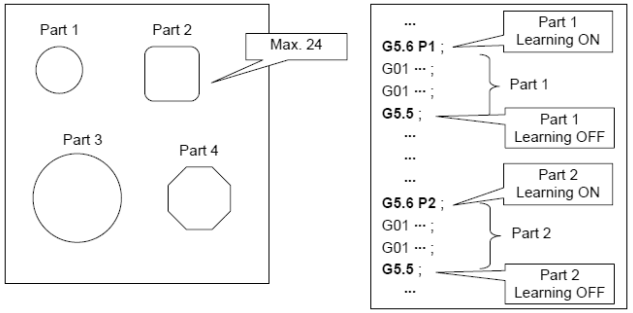
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

084

Controlled Axis



Learning Control for Parts Cutting A

Features

The Learning Control for Parts Cutting A function (formerly Learning Control for Parts Cutting) can achieve high precision machining when producing many items with an identical profile.

While machining such an item, there may be multiple identical operations that may be applied to each work-piece in succession. Each repeated path element (such as a drilling sequence or a pocketing sequence) may be treated as a path element to which Learning Control for Parts Cutting may be applied.

Benefits

- Allows the programmer to apply high-precision cutting to specified path elements within the part program.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R510	30i-BP Learning Control for Parts Cutting A
A02B-0356-R510	31i-B5P Learning Control for Parts Cutting A
A02B-0357-R510	31i-BP Learning Control for Parts Cutting A
A02B-0358-R510	32i-BP Learning Control for Parts Cutting A

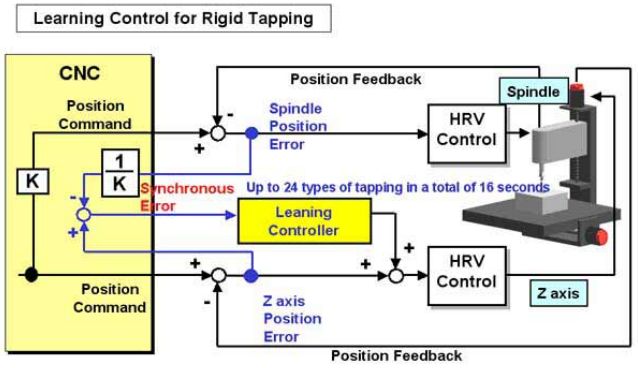
Notice

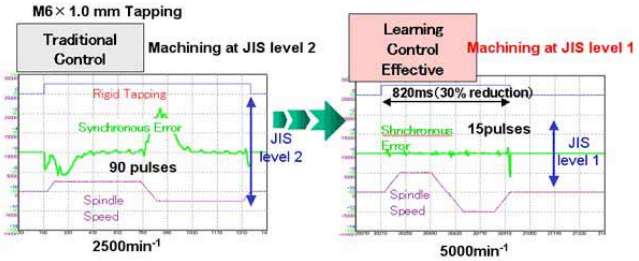
Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

085

Controlled Axis





Learning Control for Parts Cutting B

Features

The Learning Control for Parts Cutting B function (formerly Learning Control for Rigid Tapping) provides a superior controllability in repetitive command for rigid-tapping operation.

It features capabilities to realize high-speed and high-precision machining sequences by minimizing the synchronous error between spindle and tap feed axis during Rigid Tapping.

Benefits

- Synchronous error between the spindle axis and the z-axis learned at the z-axis to minimizes synchronous error, which enables the z-axis to follow the spindle axis completely, and produces higher precision in machining
- Does not require any special format programs. The only commands that have to be added to the rigid tapping program are Learning On (G5.6 P_ Q1) and Learning Off (G5.5 Q1)
- Uses standard servo cards for up to 24 types of tapping in a total of 16 seconds
- Maintains high precision while improving machining speed or reducing acceleration and deceleration time constant
- Most effective control to improve rigid tap precision and reduce cycle time

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R539	30i-BP Learning Control for Parts Cutting B
A02B-0356-R539	31i-B5P Learning Control for Parts Cutting B
A02B-0357-R539	31i-BP Learning Control for Parts Cutting B
A02B-0358-R539	32i-BP Learning Control for Parts Cutting B

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

086

Controlled Axis

Spindle Learning Control

Features

The Spindle Learning Control function is used to increase the speed and accuracy of machining high volume parts.

This function works like the servo-based Learning Control, except that the spindle control loop applies to the compensation mechanism instead of the servo control loop.

Notes

- A special software is required in the spindle amplifier
- The Cs Contouring Control function is required in the CNC

Benefits

- Increase the speed and accuracy of machining high volume parts

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S635	30i-BP Spindle Learning Control
A02B-0356-S635	31i-B5P Spindle Learning Control
A02B-0357-S635	31i-BP Spindle Learning Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

087

Controlled Axis

Spindle Learning Control in High-Precision Learning Control A/B

Features

The Spindle Learning Control in High-Precision Learning Control function is used to increase the speed and accuracy of machining high volume parts.

This function works like the servo-based Learning Control, except that the spindle control loop applies to the compensation mechanism instead of the servo control loop.

This function is applicable if Spindle Learning Control is used together with High-Precision Learning Control A or B.

Notes

- A special software is required in the spindle amplifier
- The Cs Contouring Control function is required in the CNC

Benefits

- Increase the speed and accuracy of machining high volume parts

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J386	30i-BP Spindle Learning Control in High Precision Learning Control A or B

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

088

Controlled Axis

Learning Control - Memory Expansion

Features

When using the High-Precision Learning Control function on the CNC, this function expands the maximum number of available profiles and learning steps.

	Max. number of profiles	Max. number of learning steps
Standard	5	2
With this function	24	5

Benefits

- Increased Learning Memory for complex profiles or where a long learning period is required

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J976	30i-BP Learning Memory Expanded Function
A02B-0356-J976	31i-B5P Learning Memory Expanded Function
A02B-0357-J976	31i-BP Learning Memory Expanded Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

089

Controlled Axis

Learning Memory Size 10Mbyte

Features

The standard learning memory for the High-Precision Learning Control and the Learning Control for Parts Cutting can be expanded from 5 Mbyte to 10Mbyte.

Benefits

- Expansion of the learning time or the combination learning time vs. number of learning axes

Ordering Information

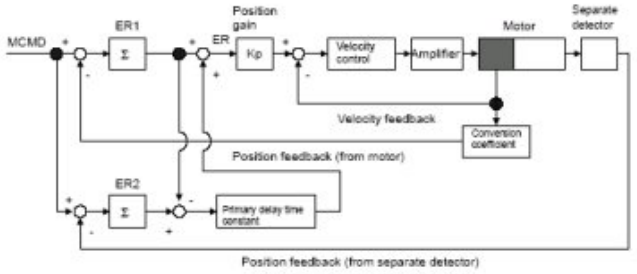
Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R720	30i-BP Learning Memory Size - 10 MB
A02B-0356-R720	31i-B5P Learning Memory Size - 10 MB
A02B-0357-R720	31i-BP Learning Memory Size - 10 MB
A02B-0358-R720	32i-BP Learning Memory Size - 10 MB

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

090
Controlled Axis



Dual Position Feedback

Features

In general, a machine with a large load inertia ratio or with a large backlash may operate stably with a semi-closed loop (motor feedback only) but may vibrate with a closed loop (separate encoder feedback).

The Dual Position Feedback function improves the control in such a way that a machine can operate stably with a closed loop as it would in the case of a semi-closed loop.

Benefits

- Increase machine stability and precision

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J704	0i-TFP Dual Position Feedback
A02B-0350-J704	0i-MFP Dual Position Feedback
A02B-0353-J704	30i-BP Dual Position Feedback
A02B-0356-J704	31i-B5P Dual Position Feedback
A02B-0357-J704	31i-BP Dual Position Feedback
A02B-0358-J704	32i-BP Dual Position Feedback
A02B-0359-J704	30i-LB Plus Dual Position Feedback
A02B-0360-J704	31i-LB Plus Dual Position Feedback
A02B-0362-J704	31i-PB Plus Dual Position Feedback
A02B-0364-J704	PM i-A Plus Dual Position Feedback

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

091
Controlled Axis

Position Feedback Dynamic Switching Function

Features

The Position Feedback Dynamic Switching function used when a single rotary table with turning capability (hereafter called a rotary table) is controlled by two different operations such as one turning operation and one milling operation.

In case of a turning operation, the rotary table is turned by a spindle motor and a separate position detector.

In case of a milling operation, the rotary table is rotated by a servo motor and a built-in pulse coder.

This function enables the management of the coordinate of the rotary axis even if the position detector is switched. According to the state of control, the position feedback of the rotary axis is dynamically switched between the separate position detector attached with a rotary table and the built-in pulse coder of servo motor using PMC signals.

Benefits

- Flexible configuration of machines
- Simpler control of advanced mill-turn machine architectures

Ordering Information

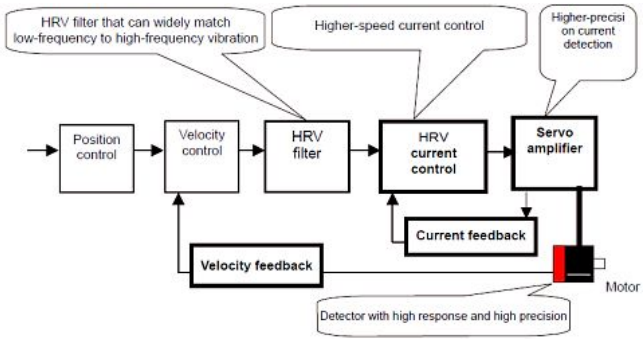
Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S747	30i-BP Position Feedback Dynamic Switching
A02B-0356-S747	31i-B5P Position Feedback Dynamic Switching
A02B-0357-S747	31i-BP Position Feedback Dynamic Switching
A02B-0358-S747	32i-BP Position Feedback Dynamic Switching
A02B-0364-S747	PM i-A Plus Position Feedback Dynamic Switching

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

092
Controlled Axis



HRV3 Control

Features

SERVO HRV control is a digital servo current control methods. When using this method of control, higher speed, higher precision and higher acceleration can be achieved.

There are three types of SERVO HRV control available:

- SERVO HRV2 control
- SERVO HRV3 control
- SERVO HRV4 control

SERVO HRV control has three main features.

1. A disturbance elimination filter which eliminates the low-frequency vibration of a machine with low rigidity
2. Achievement of smooth feed with a high-precision servo amplifiers and detectors
3. The use of high-speed Digital Signal Processor (DSP) which allow a current control period much shorter than the conventional period achieved with standard systems (high-speed HRV current control)

SERVO HRV2 features a current loop of 125 µs and is standard on the Series 30i-B Plus CNC.

SERVO HRV3 features a current loop of 62.5 µs and is particularly designed for demanding machining applications. It is standard on the Series 0i-F Plus CNC.

SERVO HRV4 features a current loop of 31.25 µs and has been designed for specific applications. It also features a faster position loop compared to the HRV2 and HRV3 functions.

Benefits

- Very performant and scalable axis control

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J398	30i-BP High-Speed HRV3 Function
A02B-0356-J398	31i-B5P High-Speed HRV3 Function
A02B-0357-J398	31i-BP High-Speed HRV3 Function
A02B-0358-J398	32i-BP High-Speed HRV3 Function
A02B-0359-J398	30i-LB Plus High-Speed HRV3 Function
A02B-0360-J398	31i-LB Plus High-Speed HRV3 Function
A02B-0362-J398	31i-PB Plus High-Speed HRV3 Function
A02B-0364-J398	PM i-A Plus High-Speed HRV3 Function

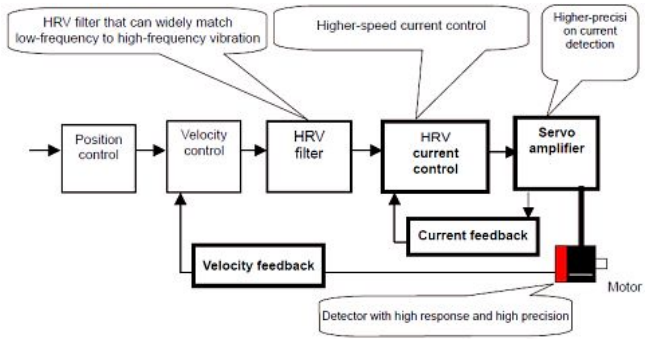
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

093

Controlled Axis



HRV4 Control

Features

SERVO HRV control is a digital servo current control methods. When using this method of control, higher speed, higher precision and higher acceleration can be achieved.

There are three types of SERVO HRV control available:

- SERVO HRV2 control
- SERVO HRV3 control
- SERVO HRV4 control

SERVO HRV control has three main features.

1. A disturbance elimination filter which eliminates the low-frequency vibration of a machine with low rigidity
2. Achievement of smooth feed with a high-precision servo amplifiers and detectors
3. The use of high-speed Digital Signal Processor (DSP) which allow a current control period much shorter than the conventional period achieved with standard systems (high-speed HRV current control)

SERVO HRV2 features a current loop of 125 µs and is standard on the Series 30i-B Plus CNC.

SERVO HRV3 features a current loop of 62.5 µs and is particularly designed for demanding machining applications. It is standard on the Series 0i-F Plus CNC.

SERVO HRV4 features a current loop of 31.25 µs and has been designed for specific applications. It also features a faster position loop compared to the HRV2 and HRV3 functions.

Benefits

- Very performant and scalable axis control

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J399	30i-BP High-Speed HRV4 Function
A02B-0356-J399	31i-B5P High-Speed HRV4 Function
A02B-0357-J399	31i-BP High-Speed HRV4 Function
A02B-0358-J399	32i-BP High-Speed HRV4 Function
A02B-0359-J399	30i-LB Plus High-Speed HRV4 Function
A02B-0360-J399	31i-LB Plus High-Speed HRV4 Function
A02B-0362-J399	31i-PB Plus High-Speed HRV4 Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

094
Controlled Axis

Stored Stroke Check 1 Area Expansion

Features

With the Stored Stroke Check function included in the Basic Function of the CNC, it is possible to switch the 2 checking areas with Digital Input signals.

The Stored Stroke Check 1 Area Expansion function expands the checking areas from 2 to 8.

It is easy to change the stored stroke check area in case of changes of the machine moving area such as during tool changing or tool measuring.

Benefits

- Increase of the machine flexibility

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R552	0i-TFP Stored Stroke Check 1 Area Expansion
A02B-0350-R552	0i-MFP Stored Stroke Check 1 Area Expansion
A02B-0353-R552	30i-BP Stored Stroke Check 1 Area Expansion
A02B-0356-R552	31i-B5P Stored Stroke Check 1 Area Expansion
A02B-0357-R552	31i-BP Stored Stroke Check 1 Area Expansion
A02B-0358-R552	32i-BP Stored Stroke Check 1 Area Expansion
A02B-0359-R552	30i-LB Plus Stored Stroke Check 1 Area Expansion
A02B-0360-R552	31i-LB Plus Stored Stroke Check 1 Area Expansion
A02B-0362-R552	31i-PB Plus Stored Stroke Check 1 Area Expansion

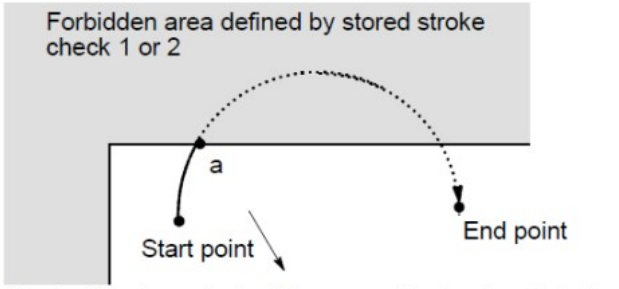
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

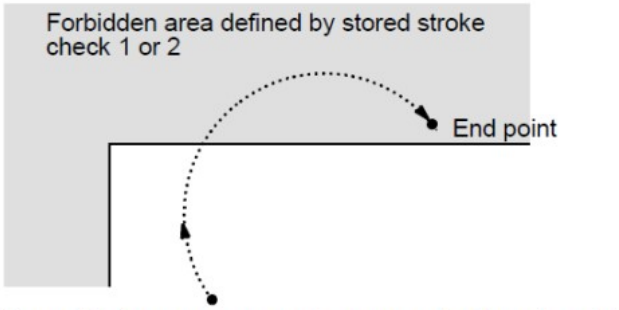
The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

095

Controlled Axis



The tool is stopped at point a according to stored stroke check 1 or 2.



Immediately upon movement commencing from the start point, the tool is stopped to enable a stroke limit check before moving to be performed before movement.

Stored Limit Check Before Move

Features

The Stored Limit Check before Move function calculates the movement end point at the start of movement in a block, during automatic operation, based on the current machine position and the specified amount of travel, to check whether the end point falls within the prohibited area for stored stroke limit 1, 2, or 3.

If the end point falls within a prohibited area, the movement for that block is stopped immediately upon the start of movement and an alarm is issued.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (all Types except 0i-TF Plus Type 5).

Benefits

- Avoid axis displacement if a movement is supposed to reach a prohibited machining zone

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J749	0i-TFP Stroke Limit Check before Move
A02B-0364-J749	PM i-A Plus Stroke Limit Check before Move

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

096

Controlled Axis

Stroke Limit Area Changing Function

Features

The Stroke Limit Area Changing function enables parameters setting that set the side boundary of the stroke limit during axis movement.

The setting of the parameters is available through the PMC window function (WINDW: SUB52), FOCAS2, and C language executor. The new forbidden area is enabled as soon as the writing parameters is completed.

Note

The Stroke Limit Area Changing function is disabled when automatic slave axis parameter setting on feed axis synchronization is enabled. In this case, the parameters can only be written when all axes are stopped.

Benefits

- The setting of the stroke limit can be customized, for instance through a specific HMI

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R585	0i-TFP Stroke Limit Area Changing Function
A02B-0350-R585	0i-MFP Stroke Limit Area Changing Function
A02B-0353-R585	30i-BP Stroke Limit Area Changing Function
A02B-0356-R585	31i-B5P Stroke Limit Area Changing Function
A02B-0357-R585	31i-BP Stroke Limit Area Changing Function
A02B-0358-R585	32i-BP Stroke Limit Area Changing Function
A02B-0360-R585	31i-LB Plus Stroke Limit Area Changing Function
A02B-0362-R585	31i-PB Plus Stroke Limit Area Changing Function

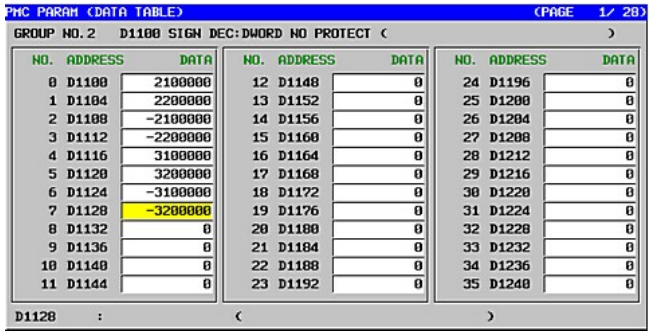
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

097

Controlled Axis



Stored Stroke Limit Range Switching Function by Signal

Features

With this function, the Range Stored Stroke Limit can be switched by an input signal of the PMC. It is then possible to set the limit easily.

The ranges are stored in data tables in the PMC and signals can be used for switching on and off the limits.

Benefits

- Simplified management of multiple zones directly from the PMC
- Protection of the machine and asset against destructive movements
- Overall improvement of the machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R849	0i-TFP Stored Stroke Limit Range Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0350-R849	0i-MFP Stored Stroke Limit Range Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0353-R849	30i-BP Stored Stroke Limit Range Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0356-R849	31i-B5P Stored Stroke Limit Range Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0357-R849	31i-BP Stored Stroke Limit Range Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0358-R849	32i-BP Stored Stroke Limit Range Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0359-R849	30i-LB Plus Stored Stroke Limit Range Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0360-R849	31i-LB Plus Stored Stroke Limit Range Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0362-R849	31i-PB Plus Stored Stroke Limit Range Switching Function by Signal

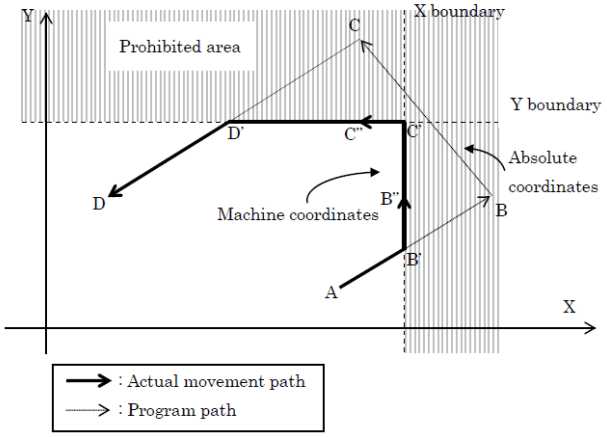
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

098

Controlled Axis



OT Area Access Avoidance Function

Features

If a rapid traverse command (G00) in automatic operation would cause the machine to enter the prohibited area of Stored Stroke Check 1, the respective axis is stopped before and set in machine lock state. No overtravel alarm is generated. Automatic operation continues after that, and the absolute and relative coordinates are updated during machine lock. When the coordinates leave the prohibited area, machine lock state is released.

OT Area Access Avoidance allows you to use programs on multiple machines with different stroke sizes without modification.

Benefits

- Use programs on multiple machines

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-R169	0i-MFP OT Area Access Avoidance Function
A02B-0353-R169	30i-BP OT Area Access Avoidance Function
A02B-0356-R169	31i-B5P OT Area Access Avoidance Function
A02B-0357-R169	31i-BP OT Area Access Avoidance Function
A02B-0358-R169	32i-BP OT Area Access Avoidance Function

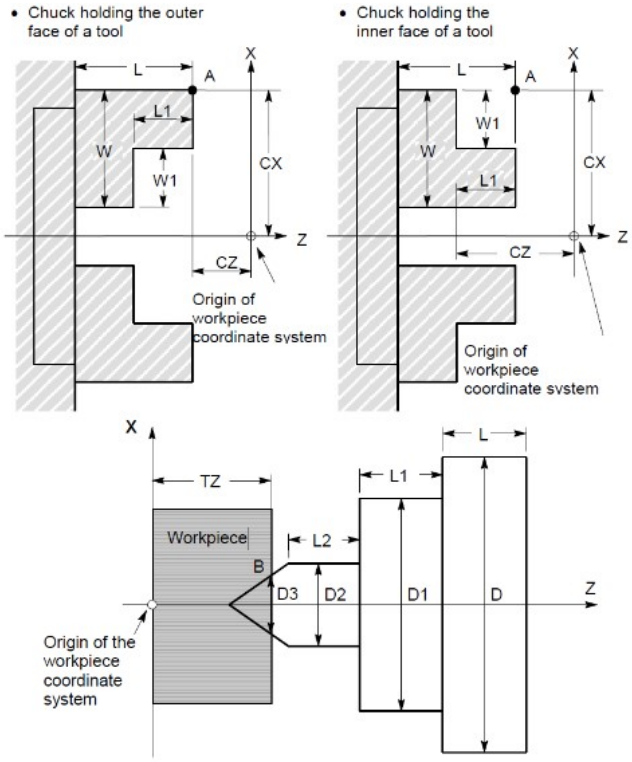
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

099

Controlled Axis



Chuck and Tail Stock Barrier

Features

The Chuck and Tail Stock Barrier function prevents damages to the machine by checking whether the tool tip interferes with either the chuck or tail stock.

This is realized when specifying an area into which the tool may not enter (entry-prohibition area). This is done using a special setting screen, according to the shapes of the chuck and tail stock.

If the tool tip would enter the set area during a machining operation, this function stops the tool and outputs an alarm message. The tool can be removed from the prohibited area only by retracting it in the direction from which the tool entered the area.

Note: when Stored Stroke Check 2 or 3 option and Chuck / Tail Stock Barrier option are used at the same time, the Chuck / Tail Stock Barrier option is valid and Stored Stroke Check 2 or 3 is ignored.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Protection of the machine work space
- Protection against programming errors

Ordering Information

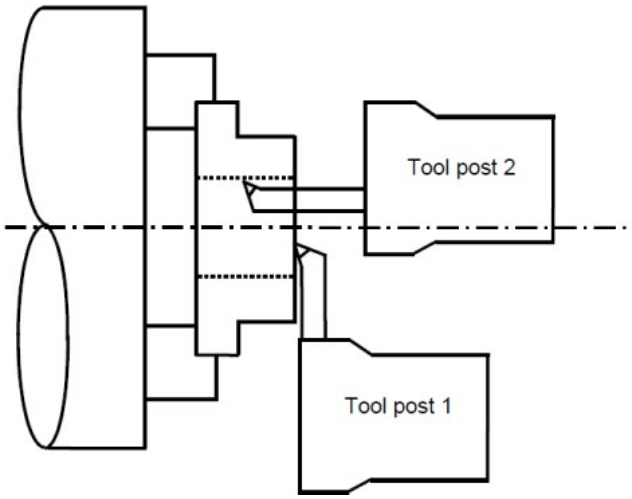
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J720	0i-TFP Chuck and Tail Stock Barrier
A02B-0353-J720	30i-BP Chuck and Tail Stock Barrier
A02B-0356-J720	31i-B5P Chuck and Tail Stock Barrier
A02B-0357-J720	31i-BP Chuck and Tail Stock Barrier
A02B-0358-J720	32i-BP Chuck and Tail Stock Barrier

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

100
Controlled Axis



Interference Check for Each Path

Features

The Interference Check function checks the tool posts of multiple paths for collision possibilities.

When tool posts on individual paths machine the same workpiece simultaneously, the tool posts can approach each other very closely. If the tool posts interfere with each other due to a program error or any other setting error, serious damage such as tool or machine destruction can occur.

If a command that could causes that the tool posts of paths to interfere with each other is specified, the function gradually stops the tool posts before the tool posts actually interfere with each other.

The contours and shapes of the tool posts on individual paths are checked to determine whether or not interference occurs. A tool post is modeled by the combination of 2 rectangular areas.

This function enables an interference check between two paths or interference check among multiple paths. The number of paths to check can be determined by parameter setting.

Benefits

- Protection of the machine
- Ease the programming of multi-path systems
- Reduction of the downtime

Ordering Information

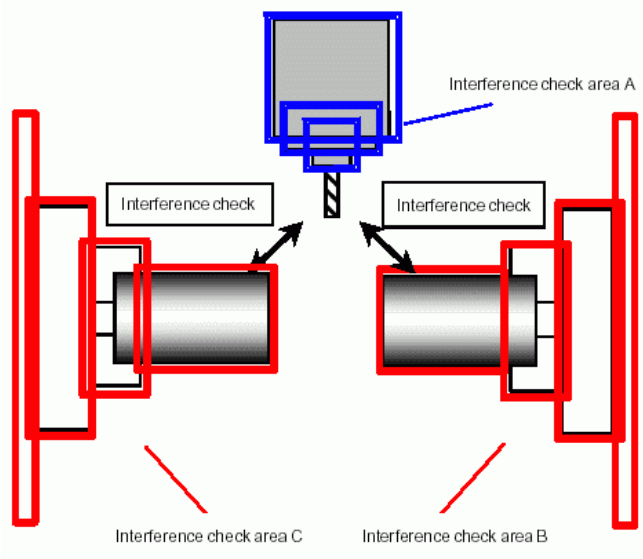
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J839	0i-TFP Interference Check for Each Path
A02B-0353-J839	30i-BP Interference Check for each Path
A02B-0356-J839	31i-B5P Interference Check for each Path
A02B-0357-J839	31i-BP Interference Check for each Path
A02B-0358-J839	32i-BP Interference Check for each Path

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

101
Controlled Axis



Interference Check for Rotary Area

Features

This function checks for interference among the tool post and chucks and stops the machine safely. Three major interference check areas can be set, each of which is specified by using rectangles. Two of the three interference check areas can be moved and rotated.

The following interference check areas can be set:

- Interference check area A and interference check area B with up to 4 rectangles. The entire area moves according to the movement along parameter–set two axes. In addition, the entire area can be rotated according to the rotation on a parameter–set axis.
- Interference check area C with up to 4 rectangles. The area cannot be moved and rotated.

Benefits

- Protection of the machine
- Reduction of the downtime

Ordering Information

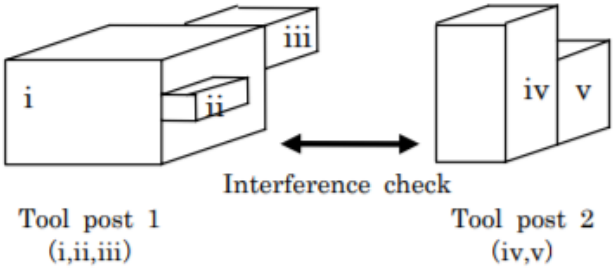
Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S643	30i-BP Interference Check for Rotary Area
A02B-0356-S643	31i-B5P Interference Check for Rotary Area
A02B-0357-S643	31i-BP Interference Check for Rotary Area
A02B-0358-S643	32i-BP Interference Check for Rotary Area
A02B-0360-S643	31i-LB Plus Interference Check for Rotary Area
A02B-0362-S643	31i-PB Plus Interference Check for Rotary Area

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

102
Controlled Axis



Interference Check Function for Automatic Lathe

Features

Especially automatic lathes are often equipped with multiple tool posts. The tool posts can move independently and may interfere with each other. If a collision happens due to a programming error, serious damage of the tool or the machine can occur.

The Interference Check Function for Automatic Lathe detects and avoids possible collisions between two tool posts. If the functions detects a possible collision, the axes are decelerated and stopped before the collision happens.

Up to three tool posts can be defined. Tool posts are modeled by a combination of max. 10 rectangular parallelepipeds.

Benefits

- Protection of the machine

Ordering Information

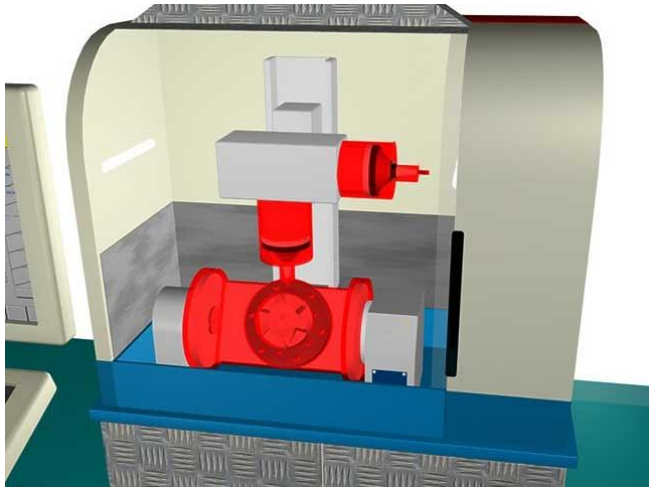
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R501	0i-TFP Interference Check Function for Automatic Lathe
A02B-0353-R501	30i-BP Interference Check Function for Automatic Lathe
A02B-0356-R501	31i-B5P Interference Check Function for Automatic Lathe
A02B-0357-R501	31i-BP Interference Check Function for Automatic Lathe
A02B-0358-R501	32i-BP Interference Check Function for Automatic Lathe

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

103
Controlled Axis

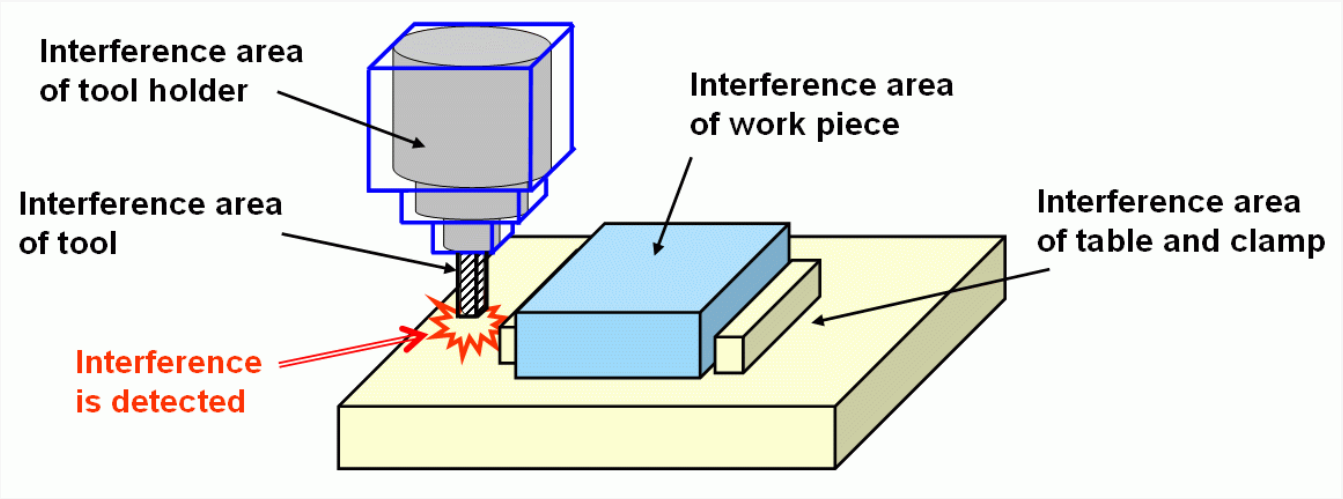


Built-In 3D Interference Check

Features

The 3D Interference Check function is an advanced anti collision function. The function is implemented directly into the CNC and has extremely rapid interference check in real time. The success in avoiding collisions is almost 100% - even when setting up or in manual mode. This function is available for both milling and turning machines and is particularly recommended for 5 axes machines or complex machines.

The critical working area of a machine can be emulated using geometric elements (planes, rectangular parallelepipedes and cylinders) that are defined using absolute dimensional data (to the micron) and work in conjunction with the programmed tool data taken from the normal CNC memory. The CNC will use this spatial data to determine whether any moving part of the machine may collide with fixed elements such as the table, fixtures and machine structure. All this occurs in realtime.



The collision can be checked by detecting the interference among machine parts such as tool, work-piece and table in three dimensional space in real time. This function is the measure for an expensive workpiece to be protected from being damaged. This function is also useful in manual operation, for example, for protection against malfunction during setup. Thus, the time required for setup can be reduced.

With the M series, the interference check targets include a tool, tool holder, workpiece, jig, and table. With the T series, the interference check targets include a single point tool + tip, tool post, workpiece, chuck, and spindle.

Key functions

- 3D Interference Check Among Objects Like Tool, Work Piece, Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

- Each Interference Area of Tool or Work Piece or Table, Etc. Consists of Rectangular Parallelepipeds
- The function is effective also with 5-axis Machining (Rotary Tool, Table, Etc.)
- The function is available in both Auto and Manual modes
- The function is embedded in the CNC Kernel (High-Speed CPU is required)
- Up to 4 paths are supported
- Easy definition of interference check figure on setting screen: each objects can be built up with up to 6 shapes (Parallelepipeds, Cylinders or Planes). The system provides database information for up to 150 Shapes, which can be arbitrary combined to built up to 10 registerable tool holder and 10 registerable objects
- Interference check figures can be switched by the Part Program
- Each tool specified by the Parts Program is automatically considered as rectangular parallelepiped or cylinder of the proper size
- Interference between tool and workpiece is checked in rapid traverse

The PC software "Built-in 3D Interference Check Setting Tool is available to create the shapes and the 3D model of the machine working zone, the tool, holders and workpieces. It can import 3D object from CAD-CAM systems as well as show the process in real-time when connected to the CNC over Ethernet.

Benefits

- **Near-Zero Collision Risk**
  Real-time 3D monitoring of tools, workpieces, fixtures, and machine structures helps prevent crashes before they occur. By protecting critical components and high#value parts, you avoid costly damage and preserve machine accuracy over the long term. This delivers stronger operational reliability and reduces unexpected expenses.
- **Shorter Setup and Changeover Time**
  The system validates movements during manual and automatic operation, allowing operators to set up confidently without trial#and#error. Visual 3D checks eliminate guesswork and reduce the time spent verifying clearances, positioning, and tool paths. As a result, you accelerate preparation for new jobs and increase machine availability.
- **Higher Productivity With No CNC Slowdown**
  Because the interference check is embedded directly in the CNC kernel, it operates at high speed without affecting machining cycle times. You gain continuous protection without sacrificing throughput or machine performance. This helps maximize output and keep production on schedule.
- **Flexible Protection for Complex Machining**
  The system supports multiple shapes, multiple axes, and up to four paths, making it ideal for 5#axis and multi#function machines. You can precisely model your tooling, holders, fixtures, and workpieces for accurate, application#specific protection. This flexibility improves process stability even in highly demanding machining environments.
- **Easy Configuration and Operator#Friendly Use**

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Intuitive tools allow quick creation of interference geometry and straightforward management of machine#area models. Operators can adjust or expand monitoring zones as needed—even in manual mode—supporting safe operation for both experts and less experienced users. This reduces setup errors, improves training efficiency, and strengthens overall shop#floor safety.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R541	0i-TFP Built-in 3-D Interference Check
A02B-0350-R541	0i-MFP Built-in 3-D Interference Check
A02B-0353-R541	30i-BP Built-in 3-D Interference Check
A02B-0356-R541	31i-B5P Built-in 3-D Interference Check
A02B-0357-R541	31i-BP Built-in 3-D Interference Check
A02B-0358-R541	32i-BP Built-in 3-D Interference Check

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

3D Interference Check with PC Function

Features

3D Interference Check with PC Function is a set of FOCAS2 functions. These Functions enable a CAD system on a PC to use its 3D animation to check for interference between the actual machine motion and a structure such as the tool, the workpiece, or the table. If a potential interference is detected, the machine can be stopped immediately before a collision occurs.

Benefits

- Prevent damage and downtime caused by machine collisions

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R542	0i-TFP 3-D Interference Check for CNC with PC Function
A02B-0350-R542	0i-MFP 3-D Interference Check for CNC with PC Function
A02B-0353-R542	30i-BP 3-D Interference Check for CNC with PC Function
A02B-0356-R542	31i-B5P 3-D Interference Check for CNC with PC Function
A02B-0357-R542	31i-BP 3-D Interference Check for CNC with PC Function
A02B-0358-R542	32i-BP 3-D Interference Check for CNC with PC Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Machining Simulation with PC Function

Features

Machining Simulation with PC is a set of FOCAS2 functions, similar to 3D Interference Check with PC. MTBs can create simulation software with this functions that performs an interference check. This check is performed prior to the actual machining, the machine itself does not move during the check.

Benefits

- Prevent damage and downtime caused by machine collisions

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R013	0i-TFP Machining Simulation with PC
A02B-0350-R013	0i-MFP Machining Simulation with PC

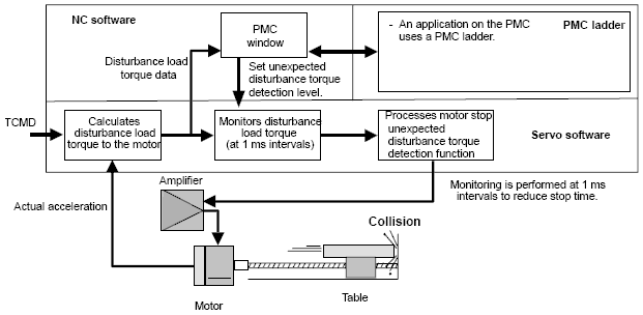
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

108

Controlled Axis



Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection Function

Features

Machine collisions, as well as defective and damaged cutters impose a large load torque on the servo and spindle motors, compared with normal rapid traverse or cutting feed.

The Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection function detects the disturbance torque on the motors and sends this value as an estimated load torque to the PMC.

If the detected disturbance torque value is outside of the specification / expected value (greater than the value specified in the corresponding parameter), the function either stops the servo motor as quickly as possible or reverses the motor by an appropriate value (as specified in another parameter), in order to minimize possible damage to the machine.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Detection of possible machine collision situations as well as other situations where damage may arise

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-J718	PM i-A Plus Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

109
Controlled Axis

Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection for BETA i I/O-Link

Features

Machine collisions, as well as defective and damaged cutters impose a large load torque on the servo and spindle motors, compared with normal rapid traverse or cutting feed.

The Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection function for BETA i I/O-Link provides this function on the separate amplifiers of the BETA i series which can be connected to the CNC using the I/O-Link network.

Benefits

- Detection of possible machine collision situations as well as other situations where damage may arise

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S812	0i-TFP I/O-Link BETA Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection
A02B-0350-S812	0i-MFP I/O-Link BETA Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection
A02B-0353-S812	30i-BP I/O-LINK BETA Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection
A02B-0356-S812	31i-B5P I/O-LINK BETA Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection
A02B-0357-S812	31i-BP I/O-LINK BETA Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection
A02B-0358-S812	32i-BP I/O-LINK BETA Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection
A02B-0360-S812	31i-LB Plus I/O-LINK BETA Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection
A02B-0362-S812	31i-PB Plus I/O-LINK BETA Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection
A02B-0364-S812	PM i-A Plus I/O-LINK BETA Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

110
Controlled Axis



Fine Torque Sensing

Features

The Fine Torque Sensing function stores the disturbance torque detected by a servo motor or a spindle motor in the internal memory of the CNC for later evaluation and analysis.

Following operations are available for the stored torque data:

- The stored torque data can be read via the window function of the PMC and be used in the PMC program for actions
- Statistics data (average, maximum, dispersion) of the stored torque is calculated by the CNC, and the results of these statistical calculation can also be read using the window function of the PMC
- The stored torque data can be displayed graphically on Torque Graph Screen of the CNC and displayed on the operation screen
- The detection level of the unexpected disturbance load torque alarm can be set on Torque Graph Screen. To use this capability, the Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection function must be set in the CNC
- The stored torque data can be saved into the F-ROM memory of the CNC as sample data, and it is possible to compare this stored values graphically with other reference torque data.
- The stored torque data can also be saved to the memory card.

Notes

- In the stand-alone type CNC and the 15 inch LCD mounted CNC of the Series 30i-B Plus, this function and the communication to Personal Computer or PANEL iH Pro via HSSB cannot be used at the same time.
- In the 10.4 inch LCD mounted type CNC Series, this function and the communication to Personal Computer or PANEL iH Pro via the 2nd HSSB channel cannot be used at the same time.

Benefits

- Advanced function to analyse the torque behaviour during machining
- Possibility to visualize and set limits for the Disturbance Load detection directly on the screen
- Possibility to monitor torque behaviour to find issues on the mechanical structure of the machine
- Analysis of the actual behaviour of the machine versus a stored reference profile

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J982	30i-BP Fine Torque Sensing
A02B-0356-J982	31i-B5P Fine Torque Sensing
A02B-0357-J982	31i-BP Fine Torque Sensing
A02B-0358-J982	32i-BP Fine Torque Sensing
A02B-0360-J982	31i-LB Plus Fine Torque Sensing
A02B-0362-J982	31i-PB Plus Fine Torque Sensing

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

112
Controlled Axis

Rotary Axis Control

Features

The Rotary Axis Control function controls a rotary axis as specified by an absolute command. With this function, the sign of the value specified in the command is interpreted as the direction of rotation, and the absolute value of the specified value is interpreted as the coordinates of the target end position.

This function is valid when rotary axis roll-over is enabled. If the parameter is set, an absolute command specified for the rollover rotary axis is interpreted as follows: the sign and absolute value of the value specified in the command represent the direction of rotation and the end position of movement respectively.

Benefits

- Simplifies the management of rotary axes

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J743	30i-BP Rotary Axis Control
A02B-0356-J743	31i-B5P Rotary Axis Control
A02B-0357-J743	31i-BP Rotary Axis Control
A02B-0358-J743	32i-BP Rotary Axis Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

113
Controlled Axis

High-Speed Position Switch

Features

The High-Speed Position Switch function monitors the current position at shorter intervals than the normal position switch function to output a high-speed precise position switch signal.

In the same way as for the normal position switch function, it is possible to set parameters to specify arbitrary controlled axes and machine coordinate operating ranges for which position switch signals are output.

Up to 6 high-speed position signals can be output. Additional settings are available to to use up to 16 high-speed position switch signals.

Benefits

- A high-speed signal can be sent to the machine at certain positions to initiate automatic actions
- No hardware to adjust to change "trip" positions of up to 6 switches - Just change coordinate value in parameters
- Improves machine reliability by simplifying machine wiring

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J987	0i-TFP High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0350-J987	0i-MFP High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0353-J987	30i-BP High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0356-J987	31i-B5P High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0357-J987	31i-BP High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0358-J987	32i-BP High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0359-J987	30i-LB Plus High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0360-J987	31i-LB Plus High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0362-J987	31i-PB Plus High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0364-R704	PM i-A Plus High-Speed Position Switch

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

114
Controlled Axis

Direction-Dependent Type of High-Speed Position Switch

Features

The High-Speed Position Switch function monitors the machine coordinates and move direction to output high-speed position switch signals to drive additional processes on the machine.

Two machine coordinates are monitored. When the tool passes through one coordinate in the specified direction, the high-speed position switch signal is set to 1. When it passes through the other coordinate in the specified direction, the signal is set to 0.

The output mode of high-speed position switch signals (normal type or direction-dependent type) is set using parameters.

Benefits

- A high-speed signal can be sent to the machine at certain positions to initiate automatic actions
- Actions can be set depending on the movement direction
- No hardware to adjust to change "trip" positions of the switches
- Improves machine reliability by simplifying machine wiring

Ordering Information

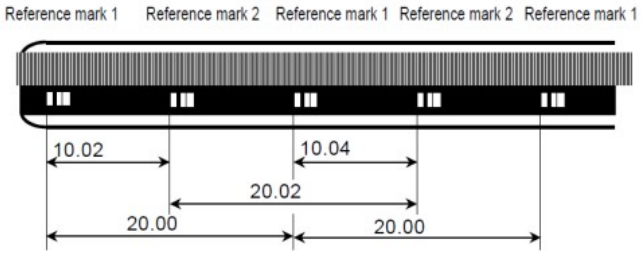
Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S721	30i-BP Direction-Dependent Type of High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0356-S721	31i-B5P Direction-Dependent Type of High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0357-S721	31i-BP Direction-Dependent Type of High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0358-S721	32i-BP Direction-Dependent Type of High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0359-S721	30i-LB Plus Direction-Dependent Type of High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0360-S721	31i-LB Plus Direction-Dependent Type of High-Speed Position Switch
A02B-0362-S721	31i-PB Plus Direction-Dependent Type of High-Speed Position Switch

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

115
Controlled Axis



Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark

Features

With the Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address (Distance Coded) Reference Mark function, an absolute position can be identified with a distance coded linear/rotary encoder.

For calculating the absolute position the axis must detect minimum 2 reference marks. In this case, a reference position can be established at any position of the axis by short distance movement.

A/B-phase Interface - Absolute Address Referenced Mark

- The encoder with Absolute Address Referenced Mark (A/B-phase) interface requires the SDU (Separate Detector Unit).
- The encoder is then used as separate feedback
- In this case a fully closed system is created

Serial type Interface - Distance Coded Reference Marks

- The encoder with Distance Coded Reference Marks and with sinusoidal 1Vpp interface requires the High Resolution Serial Output Circuit (type C)
- If the High Resolution Output Circuit is connected to the servo amplifier, then the encoder is used as motor feedback; in this case a semi-closed system is created
- If the High Resolution Output Circuit is connected to the SDU, then the encoder is used as separate feedback; in this case a fully closed system is created

Benefits

- Simplified integration of distance coded scales
- Increase of the precision of the machine tool

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J670	0i-TFP Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J670	0i-MFP Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark
A02B-0353-J670	30i-BP Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark
A02B-0356-J670	31i-B5P Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark
A02B-0357-J670	31i-BP Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark
A02B-0358-J670	32i-BP Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark
A02B-0359-J670	30i-LB Plus Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark
A02B-0360-J670	31i-LB Plus Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark
A02B-0362-J670	31i-PB Plus Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark
A02B-0364-J670	PM i-A Plus Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

117
Controlled Axis

Linear Scale I/F Expansion with Absolute Address Reference Mark

Features

With the Linear Scale Interface Expansion with Absolute Address Reference Mark, a reference position can be established without executing the reference position return operation if a distance coded encoder is used. If a G00 command or a move command based on jog feed is specified, this function enables a reference mark interval measurement to be made automatically in order to establish a reference position.

The Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark option is also neccessary to use this function.

Benefits

- Simplified integration of distance coded scales
- Increase of the precision of the machine tool

Ordering Information

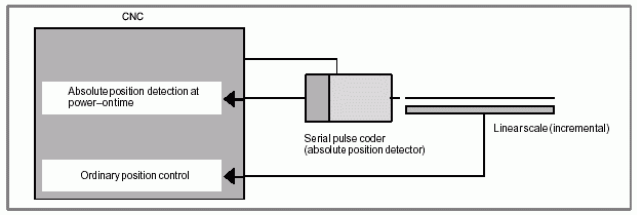
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S730	0i-TFP Linear Scale with Absolute Address Reference Mark Expansion
A02B-0350-S730	0i-MFP Linear Scale with Absolute Address Reference Mark Expansion
A02B-0353-S730	30i-BP Linear Scale with Absolute Address Reference Mark Expansion
A02B-0356-S730	31i-B5P Linear Scale with Absolute Address Reference Mark Expansion
A02B-0357-S730	31i-BP Linear Scale with Absolute Address Reference Mark Expansion
A02B-0358-S730	32i-BP Linear Scale with Absolute Address Reference Mark Expansion
A02B-0360-S730	31i-LB Plus Linear Scale with Absolute Address Reference Mark Expansion
A02B-0362-S730	31i-PB Plus Plus Linear Scale with Absolute Address Reference Mark Expansion
A02B-0364-S730	PM i-A Plus Linear Scale with Absolute Address Reference Mark Expansion

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

118
Controlled Axis



System using tentative absolute coordinate system setting

Temporary Absolute Coordinate Setting

Features

In a full–closed system with a built–in absolute position detector (serial pulse coder) and incremental linear scale, a coordinate system can be set up using the absolute position data received from the built–in absolute position detector when the power is switched on.

After the startup procedure, the position control is carried out using the linear scale with incremental data.

Since the machine position obtained immediately after the power is switched on is tentative, obtaining the accurate machine position requires making a manual reference position return.

For safety reasons and before a reference position return is made, this function enables a stroke limit, although the machine position obtained when the power is switched on is approximate.

Note that this function does not substitute to the use of a real absolute detection system as the main position measurement remains incremental.

Benefits

- Provides a simplified startup procedure for incremental scales

Ordering Information

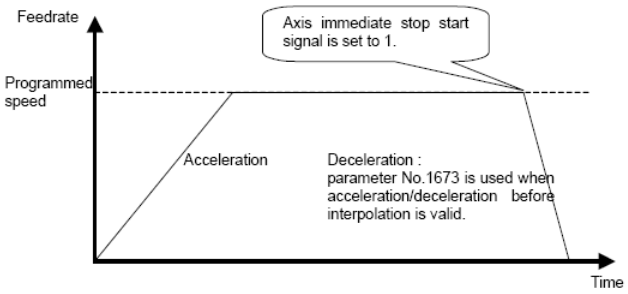
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J786	0i-TFP Temporary Absolute Coordinate Setting
A02B-0350-J786	0i-MFP Temporary Absolute Coordinate Setting
A02B-0353-J786	30i-BP Temporary Absolute Coordinate Setting
A02B-0356-J786	31i-B5P Temporary Absolute Coordinate Setting
A02B-0357-J786	31i-BP Temporary Absolute Coordinate Setting
A02B-0358-J786	32i-BP Temporary Absolute Coordinate Setting
A02B-0360-J786	31i-LB Plus Temporary Absolute Coordinate Setting
A02B-0362-J786	31i-PB Plus Temporary Absolute Coordinate Setting

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

119
Controlled Axis



Axis Immediate Stop Function

Features

The Axis Immediate Stop function can be used to stop motors immediately during AI Contour Control and control the position at the same time.

This mode of operation can be required on certain machine where the immediate stop by emergency stop is not sufficient, for instance since it does not control position.

Procedure

- Change of acceleration / deceleration before interpolation in AI contour mode
- Feed axes stop
- Output of an alarm message

Notes

- AI Contour Control I (S807) or AI Contour Control II (S808) option is required.

This function cannot be performed to an axis under the the control with following functions.

- PMC axis control
- Chopping function
- Polygon turning
- EGB function
- Live tool control with servo motor
- Spindle control of Cs contouring control

Benefits

- Reduction of the stop distance by changing the acceleration rate of the acceleration/deceleration before interpolation
- The position control remains valid during a series of stop sequence
- Safer and controlled stop to protect the machine

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Ordering Information

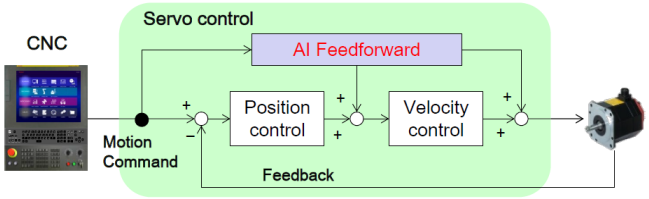
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R613	0i-TFP Axis Immediate Stop Function
A02B-0350-R613	0i-MFP Axis Immediate Stop Function
A02B-0353-R613	30i-BP Axis Immediate Stop Function
A02B-0356-R613	31i-B5P Axis Immediate Stop Function
A02B-0357-R613	31i-BP Axis Immediate Stop Function
A02B-0358-R613	32i-BP Axis Immediate Stop Function
A02B-0360-R613	31i-LB Plus Axis Immediate Stop Function
A02B-0362-R613	31i-PB Plus Axis Immediate Stop Function
A02B-0364-R613	PM i-A Plus Axis Immediate Stop Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

121
Controlled Axis



AI Feedforward

Features

AI Feedforward is an advanced feedforward function for FANUC's servo control. It improves machining precision by minimizing contouring error and eliminating machine vibration. The parameters of AI Feedforward are automatically optimized according to the machine characteristic by Machine Learning with SERVO GUIDE. No expert knowledge is necessary to tune the AI Feedforward function. This greatly simplifies startup of the AI Feedforward function, reducing time to market and saving R&D resources.

Benefits

- Reduce time to market
- Save R&D resources
- Improve machine accuracy

Ordering Information

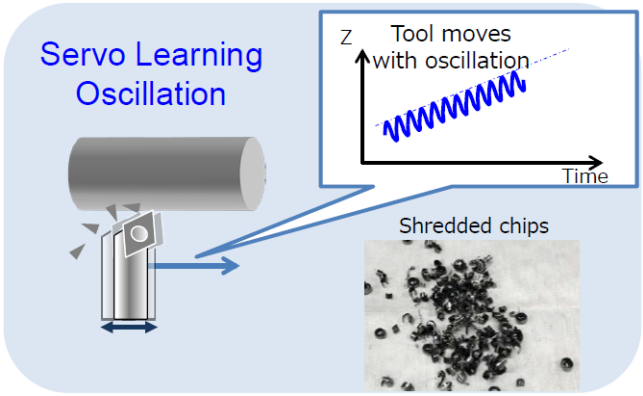
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R368	0i-TFP AI Feed Forward
A02B-0350-R368	0i-MFP AI Feed Forward
A02B-0353-R368	30i-BP AI Feed Forward
A02B-0356-R368	31i-B5P AI Feed Forward
A02B-0357-R368	31i-BP AI Feed Forward
A02B-0358-R368	32i-BP AI Feed Forward
A02B-0359-R368	30i-LB Plus AI Feed Forward
A02B-0360-R368	31i-LB Plus AI Feed Forward
A02B-0362-R368	31i-PB Plus AI Feed Forward
A02B-0364-R368	PM i-A Plus AI Feed Forward

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

122
Controlled Axis



Servo Learning Oscillation

Features

Servo Learning Oscillation allows you perform oscillation cutting in turning applications. The function lets the tool oscillate along the cutting direction. By applying Servo Learning Control, this is done without compromising accuracy.

The oscillating tool produces small chips and avoids entanglement of large, twisted chips to the tool or workpiece. As you do not have to unwind the chips from the tool or workpiece, downtime is minimized. The disposal of the chips is simplified as well.

Benefits

- Avoid entangled chips and minimize downtime
- Simplifies disposal of chips

Ordering Information

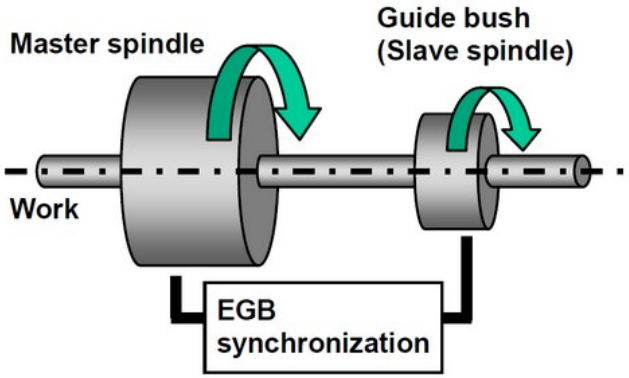
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R162	0i-TFP Servo Learning Oscillation (1 Axis)
A02B-0350-R162	0i-MFP Servo Learning Oscillation (1 Axis)
A02B-0353-R162	30i-BP Servo Learning Oscillation (1 Axis)
A02B-0356-R162	31i-B5P Servo Learning Oscillation (1 Axis)
A02B-0357-R162	31i-BP Servo Learning Oscillation (1 Axis)
A02B-0358-R162	32i-BP Servo Learning Oscillation (1 Axis)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

123
Controlled Axis



Spindle Synchronous Control for Guide Bush

Features

In order to control an axis (slave spindle axis) to follow an axis (master spindle axis) synchronously between two spindle axes, the function “Spindle Electronic Gear Box” called “Spindle EGB” or “Simple spindle EGB” can be used. Both functions require Cs contour control to the slave axis.

With the “Spindle Synchronous Control for Guide Bush”, a similar functionality as for the Simple Spindle EGB can be realized WITHOUT using Cs contour control for the slave axis.

When this function is used, the additional control axis is not necessary because there is no Cs contour control axis.

Benefits

- Simplification of the implementation of spindle synchronization for a rotary guide bush

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R420	0i-TFP Spindle Synchronous Control for Guide Bush
A02B-0350-R420	0i-MFP Spindle Synchronous Control for Guide Bush
A02B-0353-R420	30i-BP Spindle Synchronous Control for Guide Bush
A02B-0356-R420	31i-B5P Spindle Synchronous Control for Guide Bush
A02B-0357-R420	31i-BP Spindle Synchronous Control for Guide Bush
A02B-0358-R420	32i-BP Spindle Synchronous Control for Guide Bush

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Servo Learning Oscillation Multi-Turret Function

Features

Servo Learning Oscillation allows you perform oscillation cutting in turning applications. This option is an extension to Servo Learning Oscillation. The Servo Learning Oscillation Multi-Turret Function enables oscillation cutting to be performed on multiple turrets simultaneously.

Benefits

- Avoid entangled chips and minimize downtime
- Simplifies disposal of chips

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R088	0i-TFP Servo Learning Oscillation with Multiple-Turrets
A02B-0350-R088	0i-MFP Servo Learning Oscillation with Multiple-Turrets
A02B-0353-R088	30i-BP Servo Learning Oscillation with Multiple-Turrets
A02B-0356-R088	31i-B5P Servo Learning Oscillation with Multiple-Turrets
A02B-0357-R088	31i-BP Servo Learning Oscillation with Multiple-Turrets
A02B-0358-R088	32i-BP Servo Learning Oscillation with Multiple-Turrets

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

125
Controlled Axis

Reference Position Return Simultaneously Controlled Axes Expansion Function

Features

With this option, reference position return can be commanded for more than 4 axes at the same time. The tool path is interpolated non-linearly.

One reference position return command for all axes of a machine can be executed in one block regardless of the number of simultaneous controlled axes, which reduces cycle time.

Benefits

- Reduce cycle time

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0356-R084	31i-B5P Reference Position Return Simultaneously Controlled Axes Expansion Function
A02B-0357-R084	31i-BP Reference Position Return Simultaneously Controlled Axes Expansion Function
A02B-0358-R084	32i-BP Reference Position Return Simultaneously Controlled Axes Expansion Function
A02B-0364-R084	PM i-A Plus Reference Position Return Simultaneously Controlled Axes Expansion Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

PMC Axis Control Speed Command for ECU (M)

Features

In PMC axis control speed command, the motor is automatically accelerated from the current speed to the specified speed at releasing the emergency stop. This enables restart of operation in a short time at releasing emergency stop in case a buffering motor for energy charge unit (Mechanical) (ECU(M)) is used without dynamic brake module (DBM).

Benefits

- Cost reduction by removing DBM
- Fast restart of operation from the emergency stop

Ordering Information

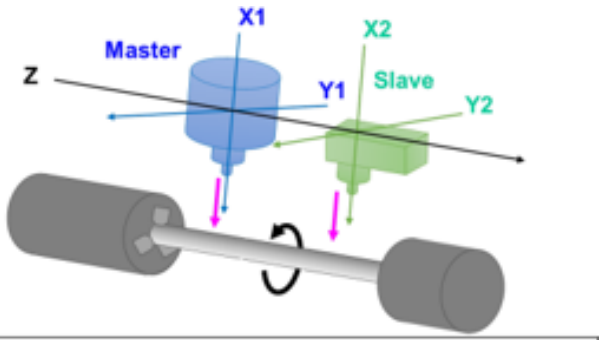
Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R339	PM i-A Plus PMC Axis Control Speed Command for ECU (M)

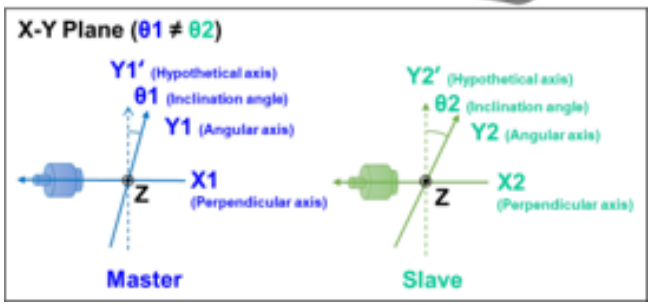
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

127
Controlled Axis





Angular Axis Synchronous Control

Features

Angular Axis Synchronous Control enables Synchronous Control between angular axes with different inclination angles. With this function, the slave axis is synchronous so that the distance of the cartesian coordinate system of the master axis is the same. This function facilitates control of multipath systems with multiple angular axes and reduces programming complexity.

Benefits

- Facilitates control of multipath systems with multiple angular axes
- Reduce programming complexity

Ordering Information

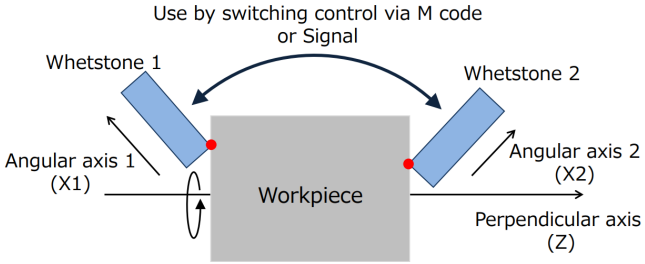
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R350	0i-TFP Angular Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0350-R350	0i-MFP Angular Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0353-R350	30i-BP Angular Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0356-R350	31i-B5P Angular Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0357-R350	31i-BP Angular Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0358-R350	32i-BP Angular Axis Synchronous Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

128
Controlled Axis



Angular Axis Switching Function in Arbitrary Angular Axis Control

Features

In the conventional Arbitrary angular axis control, the angular axis and the perpendicular axis had a one-to-one relationship. With this function, for a machine tool with two angular axes, the combination of angular axis and perpendicular axis can be switched by program command (M code) or switch signal (G signal).

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R061	0i-TFP Angular axis switching function in Arbitrary angular axis control
A02B-0350-R061	0i-MFP Angular axis switching function in Arbitrary angular axis control
A02B-0353-R061	30i-BP Angular axis switching function in Arbitrary angular axis control
A02B-0356-R061	31i-B5P Angular axis switching function in Arbitrary angular axis control
A02B-0357-R061	31i-BP Angular axis switching function in Arbitrary angular axis control
A02B-0358-R061	32i-BP Angular axis switching function in Arbitrary angular axis control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

129
Controlled Axis

Servo Learning Oscillation with Servo Rotation Axis

Features

The conventional Servo Learning Oscillation function can synchronize the oscillation motion with the rotation of a spindle motor, or a servo motor using the function Spindle Control with Servo Motor.

With this function, it is possible to oscillate in synchronization with the rotation axis driven by a servo motor. By using this function, Servo Learning Oscillation can be applied in drilling, in combination with a servo motor controlled by PMC axis control.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R109	0i-TFP Servo Learning Oscillation with Servo Rotation Axis
A02B-0350-R109	0i-MFP Servo Learning Oscillation with Servo Rotation Axis
A02B-0353-R109	30i-BP Servo Learning Oscillation with Servo Rotation Axis
A02B-0356-R109	31i-B5P Servo Learning Oscillation with Servo Rotation Axis
A02B-0357-R109	31i-BP Servo Learning Oscillation with Servo Rotation Axis
A02B-0358-R109	32i-BP Servo Learning Oscillation with Servo Rotation Axis

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Servo Learning Oscillation Threading Function

Features

Threading with Servo Learning Oscillation is a function that shreds chips by executing an oscillating motion during threading. Shredding of chips is achieved by intermediate air cutting. This is realized by executing the cutting path of both threading, in which the axis vibrates in the radial direction, and normal threading, in which the axis does not vibrate, alternately so that they overlap.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R106	0i-TFP Servo Learning Oscillation Threading Function
A02B-0350-R106	0i-MFP Servo Learning Oscillation Threading Function
A02B-0353-R106	30i-BP Servo Learning Oscillation Threading Function
A02B-0356-R106	31i-B5P Servo Learning Oscillation Threading Function
A02B-0357-R106	31i-BP Servo Learning Oscillation Threading Function
A02B-0358-R106	32i-BP Servo Learning Oscillation Threading Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

131
Functions

Operation

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to operation or ease of operation of the CNC system.

The CNCs feature powerful functions for programming and/or operating the machine. Some of these functions are specifically designed for Turning Machines, some are for Machining Centers and some can be used in both applications.

Some of the operation functions detailed in the catalogue:

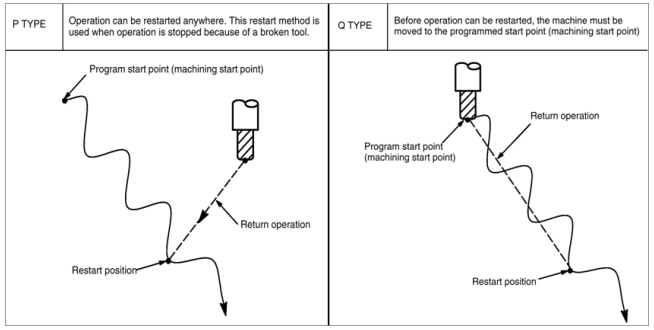
- Referencing
- Manual functions
- Assisted manual functions
- Program stop and restart
- Tool retract and recover
- 3-dimensional manual functions
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

132
Operation



Program Restart

Features

With the Program Restart function, the operator can restart machining from a desired block by specifying the sequence number of the desired block or by specifying the number of blocks from the beginning of the program to the block at which he wishes machining to restart.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Enables the operator to restart the program following an interruption such as a tool break or a tool change, or following cancellation of an emergency-stop
- Allows for safe restarting of the program when the machine has been left in an unknown state – following a shift change or a vacation break, for instance
- A programmer or operator can use this function as a mechanism to check out a new or revised part program. By specifying the restart at that block in the program where changes have been made, for instance, he can test out precisely the affected portion

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J838	30i-BP Program Restart
A02B-0356-J838	31i-B5P Program Restart
A02B-0357-J838	31i-BP Program Restart
A02B-0358-J838	32i-BP Program Restart

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

133
Operation

Auxiliary Function Output in Program Restart

Features

The Auxiliary Function Output During Program Restart function intercepts the M/S/T/B codes encountered during Program Restart (i.e. between the start of the program and the specified Program Restart block) and outputs those codes to the MDI screen in the correct sequence.

Benefits

- Relieves the operator of the task of re-keying the MDI codes currently displayed during Program Restart
- Ensures that all M/S/T/B codes encountered during Program Restart are output to MDI screen display and are executed in the correct sequence (current Program Restart function limits the number of codes displayed, which may cause the operator to miss some codes that may have fallen out of the display buffer)
- Macro call M-codes are executed properly when encountered

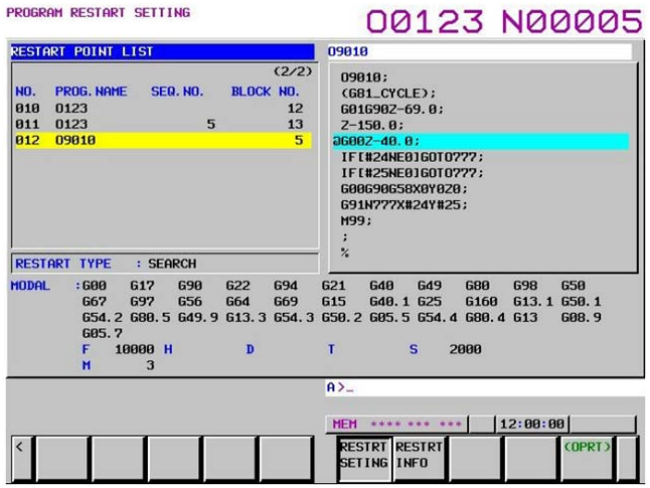
Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R576	30i-BP Auxiliary Function output in Program Restart Function
A02B-0356-R576	31i-B5P Auxiliary Function Output in Program Restart Function
A02B-0357-R576	31i-BP Auxiliary Function Output in Program Restart Function
A02B-0358-R576	32i-BP Auxiliary Function Output in Program Restart Function
A02B-0359-R576	30i-LB Plus Auxiliary Function Output in Program Restart Function
A02B-0360-R576	31i-LB Plus Auxiliary Function Output in Program Restart Function
A02B-0362-R576	31i-PB Plus Auxiliary Function output in Program Restart Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



Quick Program Restart

Features

The Quick Program Restart function includes the conventional Program Restart functionality and provides additionally multiple ways of efficient program restart based on program restart memory.

Appropriate information on a dedicated screen helps the operator to select the restarting block easily.

With the newer function "Quick Program Restart II" the restart processing time is shortened in long part program by using direct search method. Only machining center systems can use the "Quick Program Restart II" function.

Quick Program Restart is a basic function in 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Enables the operator to restart the program following an interruption such as a tool break or a tool change, or following cancellation of an emergency-stop
- Allows for safe restarting of the program when the machine has been left in an unknown state - following a shift change or a vacation break, for instance
- Allows for efficient restarting of the program when operating with large part programs and the machine state can be easily preset manually
- A programmer or operator can use this function as a mechanism to check out a new or revised part program. By specifying the restart at that block in the program where changes have been made, for instance, he can test out precisely the affected portion

Ordering Information

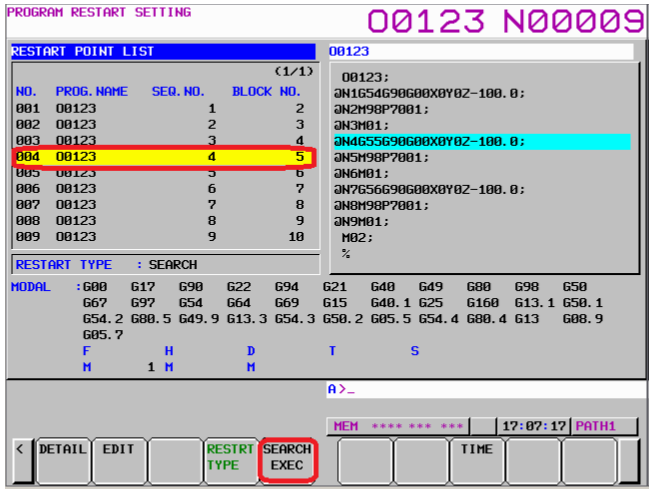
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R630	0i-TFP Quick Program Restart
A02B-0350-R630	0i-MFP Quick Program Restart
A02B-0353-R414	30i-BP Quick Program Restart II
A02B-0353-R630	30i-BP Quick Program Restart
A02B-0356-R414	31i-B5P Quick Program Restart II
A02B-0356-R630	31i-B5P Quick Program Restart
A02B-0357-R414	31i-BP Quick Program Restart II
A02B-0357-R630	31i-BP Quick Program Restart
A02B-0358-R630	32i-BP Quick Program Restart

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Restart Point Keeping of Quick Program Restart



Features

If the restart of a program using the “Search Method” is interrupted, parts of the program restart memory are deleted. This function maintains the content of the program restart memory even if the restart operation is interrupted.

Quick Program Restart (R630) is required.

Benefits

- Prevent loss of the restart point by unintenional operation

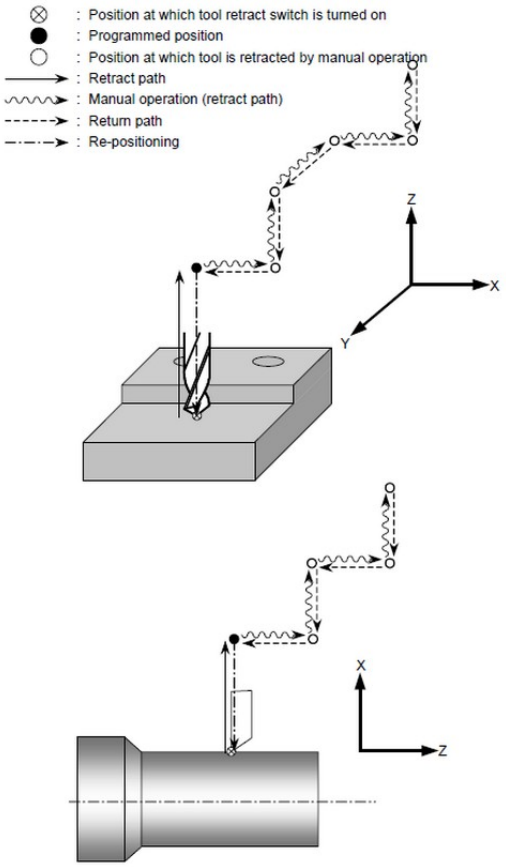
Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R325	0i-TFP Restart Point Keeping of Quick Program Restart
A02B-0350-R325	0i-MFP Restart Point Keeping of Quick Program Restart
A02B-0353-R325	30i-BP Restart Point Keeping of Quick Program Restart
A02B-0356-R325	31i-B5P Restart Point Keeping of Quick Program Restart
A02B-0357-R325	31i-BP Restart Point Keeping of Quick Program Restart
A02B-0358-R325	32i-BP Restart Point Keeping of Quick Program Restart

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



Tool Retract and Recover

Features

With the Tool Retract and Recover function the tool can be retracted from the workpiece when it is damaged, when it has to be replaced or when status of the machining has to be checked. The retraction position has to be specified with a program in advance. Afterwards the tool is returned to the workpiece and machining is restarted.

Example of sequence

1. When tool retraction signal is set during the execution of an automatic operation, the retraction is performed up to the retraction position specified in the program.
2. The operator switches to manual mode and moves the tool in manual operation (jog feed, incremental feed, handle feed and manual numeric command). Up to ten movement paths are automatically stored.
3. When the tool recovery signal is set, the tool automatically returns to the retraction position, moving backward along the paths along which it has moved with manual operations.
4. With cycle start, a recovery (repositioning) is performed up to the position at which the tool retraction signal was set.

Benefits

- Enables the operator to restart the program following an interruption such as a tool break or a tool change, or following cancellation of an emergency-stop
- Allows for safe restarting of the program when the machine has been left in an unknown state
- Reduction of time loss after tool break to restart operation

Ordering Information

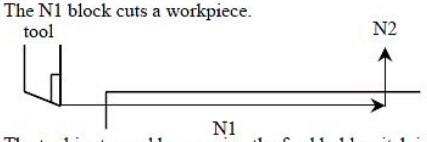
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J823	0i-TFP Tool Retract and Recover
A02B-0350-J823	0i-MFP Tool Retract and Recover
A02B-0353-J823	30i-BP Tool Retract and Recover
A02B-0356-J823	31i-B5P Tool Retract and Recover
A02B-0357-J823	31i-BP Tool Retract and Recover
A02B-0358-J823	32i-BP Tool Retract and Recover
A02B-0360-J823	31i-LB Plus Tool Retract and Recover
A02B-0362-J823	31i-PB Plus Tool Retract and Recover

Notice

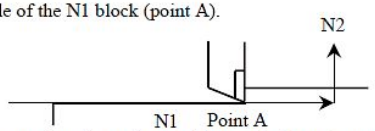
Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

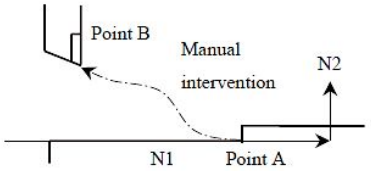
1. The N1 block cuts a workpiece.



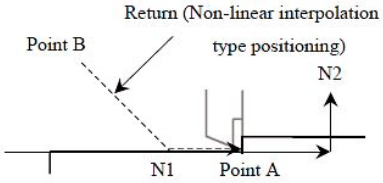
2. The tool is stopped by pressing the feed hold switch in the middle of the N1 block (point A).



3. After retracting the tool manually to point B, tool movement is restarted.



4. After automatic return to point A at the dry run feedrate by the non-linear interpolation type positioning, the remaining move command of the N1 block is executed.



Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Manual Intervention and Return

Features

With the Manual Intervention and Return function, if the tool movement is stopped by a feed hold during automatic operation, then restarted after manual intervention for the confirmation of the cutting surface etc, the tool moves back to the point before intervention and automatic operation is resumed.

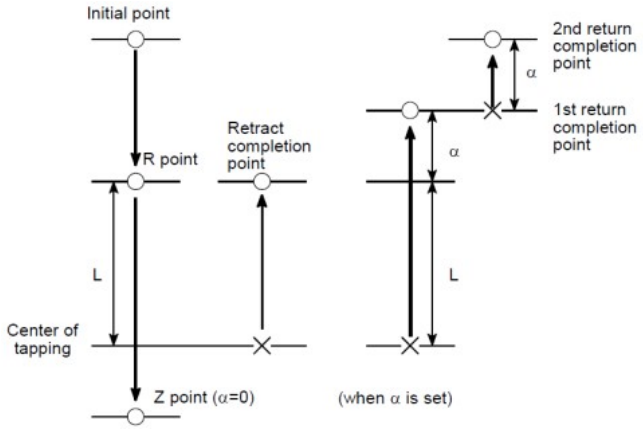
This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Simplifies operator intervention
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R623	0i-TFP Manual Intervention and Return
A02B-0350-R623	0i-MFP Manual Intervention and Return



Retraction for Rigid Tapping

Features

The Retraction for Rigit Tapping function provides a way to restart a tapping operation.

When rigid tapping is stopped, either as a result of an emergency stop or a reset, the tap may cut into the workpiece. To avoid this, the tap can be drawn out using a PMC signal. The function automatically stores information related to the tapping executed most recently. Then, when a tap retraction signal is given, the tap is removed from the hole, based on the stored information. The tap is pulled toward the R point.

When a retract value ALPHA is given as parameter, the retraction distance can be increased by ALPHA.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus.

Benefits

- Simplifies operator intervention on tapping operations
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J664	0i-TFP Retraction for Rigid Tapping

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Retraction for 3-Dimensional Rigid Tapping

Features

When the 3-dimensional rigid tapping or the rigid tapping during Tilted Working Plane (TWP) command is stopped by a result of the CNC power off, an emergency stop or a reset, the tap may cut into the workpiece. The tap can subsequently be drawn out by using a PMC signal or a program command.

This function automatically stores the information relating to the rigid tapping executed most recently. When a tap retraction signal is input or G30 program is commanded, the tap is removed from the hole, based on the stored information. The tap is pulled toward the R point.

When a retract value ALPHA is set in parameter, the retraction distance can be increased by ALPHA.

Benefits

- Simplifies operator intervention on tapping operations
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R575	0i-TFP Retraction for 3-Dimensional Rigid Tapping
A02B-0353-R575	30i-BP Retraction for 3-D Rigid Tapping
A02B-0356-R575	31i-B5P Retraction for 3-D Rigid Tapping
A02B-0357-R575	31i-BP Retraction for 3-D Rigid Tapping
A02B-0358-R575	32i-BP Retraction for 3-D Rigid Tapping

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

140
Operation

Manual 2nd/3rd/4th Reference Position Return

Features

The Manual 2nd/3rd/4th Reference Position Return function enables the 2nd, 3rd or 4th reference position return by JOG feed operation in manual reference position return mode.

Benefits

- Simplifies operator intervention
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R558	0i-TFP Manual 2nd / 3rd / 4th Reference Position Return Function
A02B-0350-R558	0i-MFP Manual 2nd / 3rd / 4th Reference Position Return Function
A02B-0353-R558	30i-BP Manual 2nd / 3rd / 4th Reference Position Return Function
A02B-0356-R558	31i-B5P Manual 2nd / 3rd / 4th Reference Position Return Function
A02B-0357-R558	31i-BP Manual 2nd / 3rd / 4th Reference Position Return Function
A02B-0358-R558	32i-BP Manual 2nd / 3rd / 4th Reference Position Return Function
A02B-0359-R558	30i-LB Plus Manual 2nd / 3rd / 4th Reference Position Return Function
A02B-0360-R558	31i-LB Plus Manual 2nd / 3rd / 4th Reference Position Return Function
A02B-0362-R558	31i-PB Plus Manual 2nd / 3rd / 4th Reference Position Return Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

141
Operation

Reference Point Setting with Mechanical Stopper for Feed Axis Synchronization Control

Features

This function enables the reference point setting with mechanical stopper method if the axis is under feed axis synchronization control. The reference point setting is performed to the master axis and the slave axis of the feed axis synchronization control.

Benefits

- Expand the application range of the reference point setting with mechanical stopper method

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R627	0i-TFP Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper for Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0350-R627	0i-MFP Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper for Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0353-R627	30i-BP Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper for Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0356-R627	31i-B5P Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper for Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0357-R627	31i-BP Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper for Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0358-R627	32i-BP Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper for Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0359-R627	30i-LB Plus Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper for Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0360-R627	31i-LB Plus Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper for Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0362-R627	31i-PB Plus Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper for Axis Synchronous Control
A02B-0364-R627	PM i-A Plus Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper for Axis Synchronous Control

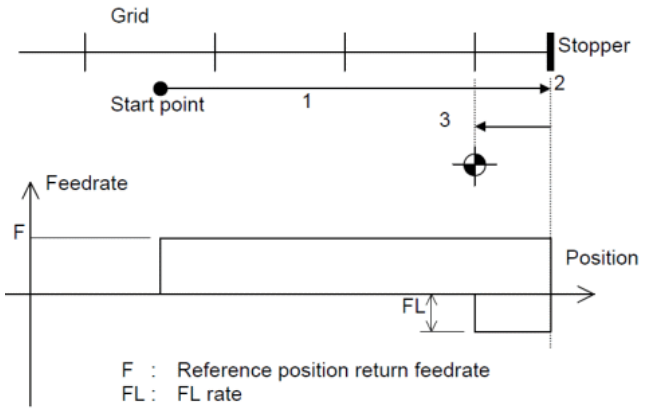
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

142
Operation

Reference Point Setting with Mechanical Stopper by Grid Method



Features

A reference position return for an axis can be made by pushing the axis against the mechanical stopper without using a limit switch or deceleration dog.

As this reference position setting uses a grid method, its precision is on the same level as for a manual reference position return.

Benefits

- Use with Absolute Pulse Encoders to quickly establish a reference point without slow-down switches

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S945	0i-TFP Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper by Grid Method
A02B-0350-S945	0i-MFP Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper by Grid Method
A02B-0353-S945	30i-BP Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper by Grid Method
A02B-0356-S945	31i-B5P Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper by Grid Method
A02B-0357-S945	31i-BP Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper by Grid Method
A02B-0358-S945	32i-BP Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper by Grid Method
A02B-0359-S945	30i-LB Plus Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper by Grid Method
A02B-0360-S945	31i-LB Plus Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper by Grid Method
A02B-0362-S945	31i-PB Plus Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper by Grid Method
A02B-0364-S945	PM i-A Plus Reference Position Setting with Mechanical Stopper by Grid Method

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Manual Handle Feed 2/3 Units

Features

The Manual Handle Feed 2/3-Units function allows the connection of up to two additional manual pulse generators for the Manual Handle Feed function.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Simplifies operator intervention
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-J836	PM i-A Plus Manual Handle Feed 2/3 Units

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Manual Handle Feed 4/5 Units

Features

The Manual Handle Feed 4/5-Units function allows the connection of up to two additional manual pulse generators for the Manual Handle Feed function.

Benefits

- Simplifies operator intervention
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S858	0i-TFP Manual Handle Feed 4 / 5 Units
A02B-0350-S858	0i-MFP Manual Handle Feed 4 / 5 Units
A02B-0353-S858	30i-BP Manual Handle Feed - 4 / 5 Units
A02B-0356-S858	31i-B5P Manual Handle Feed - 4 / 5 Units
A02B-0357-S858	31i-BP Manual Handle Feed - 4 / 5 Units
A02B-0358-S858	32i-BP Manual Handle Feed - 4 / 5 Units
A02B-0359-S858	30i-LB Plus Manual Handle Feed - 4 / 5 Units
A02B-0360-S858	31i-LB Plus Manual Handle Feed - 4 / 5 Units
A02B-0362-S858	31i-PB Plus Manual Handle Feed - 4 / 5 Units
A02B-0364-S858	PM i-A Plus Manual Handle Feed - 4 / 5 Units

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Manual Handle Feed - Multiple 10 Million

Features

With the Manual Handle Feed - Multiple 10 Million, machines using small least input increment such as IS-D and IS-E can obtain more amounts of the movement when using manual handle feed.

This function extends the magnification of feed amount on manual handle feed, up to 10 million times of least input increment per pulse.

Benefits

- High-precision coasting movements in manual mode
- Improves precision

Ordering Information

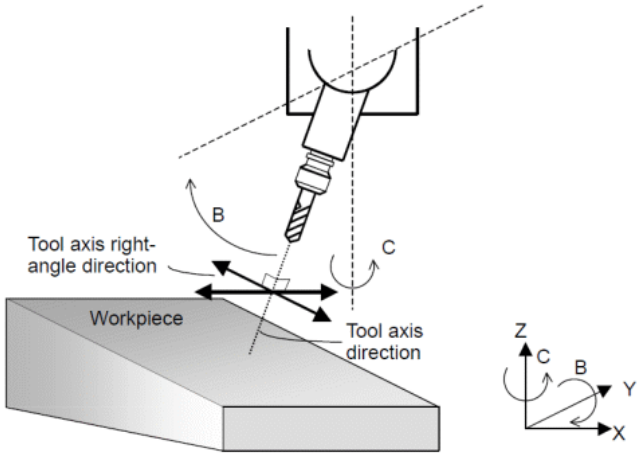
Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R600	30i-BP Manual Handle Feed Multiple 10 Million
A02B-0356-R600	31i-B5P Manual Handle Feed Multiple 10 Million
A02B-0357-R600	31i-BP Manual Handle Feed Multiple 10 Million
A02B-0358-R600	32i-BP Manual Handle Feed Multiple 10 Million
A02B-0359-R600	30i-LB Plus Manual Handle Feed Multiple 10 Million
A02B-0360-R600	31i-LB Plus Manual Handle Feed Multiple 10 Million
A02B-0362-R600	31i-PB Plus Manual Handle Feed Multiple 10 Million

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

146
Operation



3-Dimensional Manual Feed

Features

The function 3-Dimensional Manual Feed (previously Manual Handle Feed for 5-Axis Machining), allows the machine operator to retract the tool along its machining direction when pressing a button and even move the tool in parallel to the tilted working plane.

On a 3-axis machining process, it is realtively easy to move the Z-axis only to free the tool; on a 5-axis machining process, an smart solution such as the 3D Manual Feed function greatly helps the machine operator.

Benefits

- Manual intervention options in the event of emergencies, for example, after a tool break
- Simplifies operation of 5-axis machine manual movements relative to the machining plane or tool direction vector
- Perform setup and adjustments of part location on machines with rotary axes that tilt the workpiece or rotate the tooling axis vector
- Safely remove the tool from a part when operating in 5-axis mode
- Broken tool recovery
- Manually move a tool normal to the feature coordinate system
- Ability to retract a tool on a vector
- Consolidated package of 5-axis features related to Manual Handle Feed usage

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S679	0i-TFP 3-Dimensional Manual Feed
A02B-0350-S679	0i-MFP 3-Dimensional Manual Feed
A02B-0351-S679	0i-LFP 3-Dimensional Manual Feed
A02B-0353-S679	30i-BP 3-Dimensional Manual Feed (5-Axis Machine)
A02B-0356-S679	31i-B5P 3-Dimensional Manual Feed (5-Axis Machine)
A02B-0357-S679	31i-BP 3-Dimensional Manual Feed
A02B-0358-S679	32i-BP 3-Dimensional Manual Feed
A02B-0359-S679	30i-LB Plus 3-Dimensional Manual Feed (5-Axis Machine)
A02B-0360-S679	31i-LB Plus 3-Dimensional Manual Feed
A02B-0362-S679	31i-PB Plus 3-Dimensional Manual Feed

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

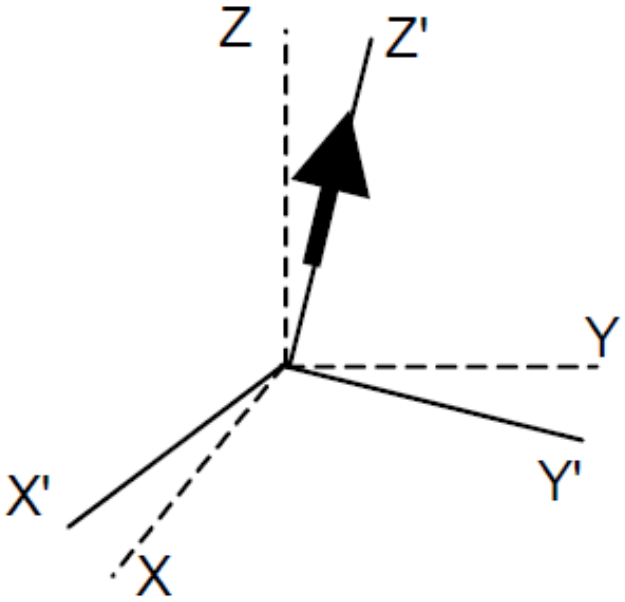
The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

147
Operation

Manual Interruption of 3-D Coordinate System Conversion

Features

By this function, it is possible to use a handwheel to move axes in automatic operation mode if the 3-dimensional coordinate conversion function is active. The handwheel motion is added to the programmed axes motion. The handwheel motion is performed in the direction of the selected axis in the rotated coordinate system.



Benefits

- Allows the operator to adjust the axes positions in automatic mode without changing the program
- Reduces set-up time

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S949	0i-TFP Manual Interruption of 3-Dimensional Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0350-S949	0i-MFP Manual Interruption of 3-Dimensional Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0353-S949	30i-BP Manual Interruption of 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0356-S949	31i-B5P Manual Interruption of 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0357-S949	31i-BP Manual Interruption of 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0358-S949	32i-BP Manual Interruption of 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0359-S949	30i-LB Plus Manual Interruption of 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0360-S949	31i-LB Plus Manual Interruption of 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0362-S949	31i-PB Plus Manual Interruption of 3-D Coordinate System Conversion

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Manual Handle Interface for BETA i Series with I/O-Link

Features

The Manual Handle Interface for BETA i series amplifier function controls manual handle feed for BETA i servo amplifiers connected through I/O-Link to the CNC with a manual pulse generator connected on the CNC directly (instead of on the amplifier).

Pulses from manual pulse generator are transferred from the CNC side to the BETA i servo amplifier through the I/O-Link network. Furthermore, this function can control the magnification of pulses by changing the parameter.

Note

Power Mate CNC manager (-J674) is required.

Benefits

- Simplifies manual operator intervention
- Reduce wiring for remote servo amplifiers
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S722	0i-TFP Manual Handle Interface with I/O-Link BETA Series Servo Motors
A02B-0350-S722	0i-MFP Manual Handle Interface with I/O-Link BETA Series Servo Motors
A02B-0353-S722	30i-BP Manual Handle Interface with I/O-LINK BETA Servo
A02B-0356-S722	31i-B5P Manual Handle Interface with I/O-LINK BETA Servo
A02B-0357-S722	31i-BP Manual Handle Interface with I/O-LINK BETA Servo
A02B-0358-S722	32i-BP Manual Handle Interface with I/O-LINK BETA Servo
A02B-0360-S722	31i-LB Plus Manual Handle Interface with I/O-LINK BETA Servo
A02B-0362-S722	31i-PB Plus Manual Handle Interface with I/O-LINK BETA Servo
A02B-0364-S722	PM i-A Plus Manual Handle Interface with I/O-LINK BETA Servo

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Manual Numerical Command

Features

The Manual Numerical Command function allows the operator to execute data programmed through the MDI in jog mode. Whenever the system is ready for jog feed, a manual numerical command can be executed.

The following eight functions are supported:

1. Positioning (G00)
2. Linear interpolation (G01)
3. Automatic reference position return (G28)
4. 2nd/3rd/4th reference position return (G30)
5. M codes (miscellaneous functions)
6. S codes (spindle speed functions)
7. T codes (tool functions)
8. B codes (second auxiliary functions)

Benefits

- Simplifies operator intervention
- Simplifies programming
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J667	0i-TFP Manual Numerical Command
A02B-0350-J667	0i-MFP Manual Numerical Command
A02B-0353-J667	30i-BP Manual Numerical Command
A02B-0356-J667	31i-B5P Manual Numerical Command
A02B-0357-J667	31i-BP Manual Numerical Command
A02B-0358-J667	32i-BP Manual Numerical Command

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Reference Position Signal Output

Features

The Reference Position Signal Output function provides the capability for the CNC to output a signal to the PMC after the establishment of the reference position on each axis and when the coordinates in the machine coordinate system match the reference position.

In addition, if the coordinates in the machine coordinate system matches a second reference position, the function outputs an additional signal to the PMC.

Benefits

- Simplifies operator intervention
- Simplifies programming
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

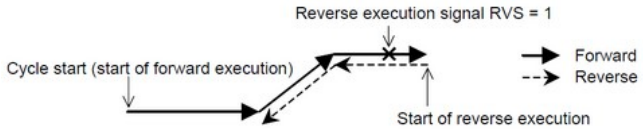
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S629	0i-TFP Reference Position Signal Output
A02B-0350-S629	0i-MFP Reference Position Signal Output
A02B-0353-S629	30i-BP Reference Position Signal Output
A02B-0356-S629	31i-B5P Reference Position Signal Outout
A02B-0357-S629	31i-BP Reference Position Signal Outout
A02B-0358-S629	32i-BP Reference Position Signal Output
A02B-0360-S629	31i-LB Plus Reference Position Signal Outout
A02B-0362-S629	31i-PB Plus Reference Position Signal Outout

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

151
Operation



Retrace

Features

The Retrace Function is available for milling operations only. It provides a comfortable way for the operator to move the tool in the reverse direction, during automatic operation, using the REVERSE switch.

This causes the CNC to retrace (i.e. reverse) the programmed path. The tool may subsequently be moved forward again, along the programmed path, to resume cutting.

Benefits

- Convenient mechanism for backing the tool up from the current position, should the need arise, then returning to that position and resuming cutting.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J730	0i-MFP Retrace Function
A02B-0351-R882	0i-LFP Retrace Function During Retract
A02B-0353-J730	30i-BP Retrace Function
A02B-0356-J730	31i-B5P Retrace Function
A02B-0357-J730	31i-BP Retrace Function
A02B-0358-J730	32i-BP Retrace Function
A02B-0362-J730	31i-PB Plus Retrace Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Manual Handle Retrace

Features

The Manual Handle Retrace function allows, during automatic operation, that the operator debugs execution of the part program by simple and intuitive manipulation of the Manual Pulse Generator (MPG).

Using forward and reverse directions, the operator can isolate the problem area and observe the tool path; it can be done at a speed appropriate for accurate observation.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus.

Benefits

- Operating the machine via the MPG allows the operator to check for errors in the part program.
- The operator controls the speed of program execution via simple and intuitive manipulation of the MPG hand-wheel and multiplier switch, and controls direction of execution via the MPG polarity switch. This allows for close observation of the path at a suitable speed.
- Manual Handle Retrace may be used to isolate and check out a specific portion of the part program: it is not required that the entire program be subjected to Manual Handle Retrace operation.
- Manual Handle Retrace allows the operator to halt execution close to a problem spot in his program. It is not necessary to stop at a precise block, since forward and reverse execution is available to zone in on the problem.

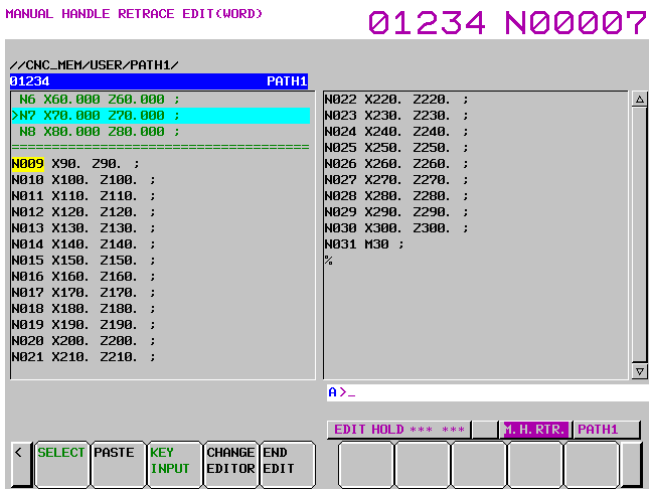
Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J998	0i-TFP Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0351-J998	0i-LFP Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0353-J998	30i-BP Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0356-J998	31i-B5P Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0357-J998	31i-BP Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0358-J998	32i-BP Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0359-J998	30i-LB Plus Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0360-J998	31i-LB Plus Manual Handle Retrace

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



Editing for Manual Handle Retrace

Features

An operator can debug part programs during automatic operation with the Manual Handle Retrace function by using the Manual Pulse Generator. Editing for Manual Handle Retrace is an extension which allows the operator to correct found mistakes in the program easily during Manual Handle Retrace.

Benefits

- Correct found mistakes easily during Manual Handle Retrace

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R409	0i-TFP Editing for Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0350-R409	0i-MFP Editing for Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0353-R409	30i-BP Editing for Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0356-R409	31i-B5P Editing for Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0357-R409	31i-BP Editing for Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0358-R409	32i-BP Editing for Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0359-R409	30i-LB Plus Editing for Manual Handle Retrace
A02B-0360-R409	31i-LB Plus Editing for Manual Handle Retrace

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Manual Handle Retrace for Multi-Path

Features

In the Manual Handle Retrace for Multi-Path function, when the operation of re-forward movement is performed after backward movement, it is possible to adjust the timing of all path's movement to that of original forward movement.

In manual handle retrace function, when backward movement is prohibited to in a path, and other paths continue the backward movement, if re-forward movement is performed later, all paths start the re-forward movement immediately, therefore the timing of block movement in each path is different from original forward movement.

In this function, when re-forward movement is performed after backward movement, the path in which backward movement is prohibited doesn't start re-forward movement immediately. After other paths reach the position where the backward movement is prohibited, the re-forward movement of this path is performed. Therefore, in multi path, block movement of each path in re-forward movement can be performed at the same timing in forward movement.

Benefits

- Provides the Manual Hande Retrace benefits to a complex Multi-Path system
- Operating the machine via the MPG allows the operator to check for errors in the part program.
- The operator controls the speed of program execution via simple and intuitive manipulation of the MPG hand-wheel and multiplier switch, and controls direction of execution via the MPG polarity switch. This allows for close observation of the path at a suitable speed.
- Manual Handle Retrace may be used to isolate and check out a specific portion of the part program: it is not required that the entire program be subjected to Manual Handle Retrace operation.
- Manual Handle Retrace allows the operator to halt execution close to a problem spot in his program. It is not necessary to stop at a precise block, since forward and reverse execution is available to zone in on the problem.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R606	0i-TFP Manual Handle Retrace Function for Multi-Path
A02B-0350-R606	0i-MFP Manual Handle Retrace Function for Multi-Path
A02B-0353-R606	30i-BP Manual Handle Retrace Function for Multi-Path
A02B-0356-R606	31i-B5P Manual Handle Retrace Function for Multi-Path
A02B-0357-R606	31i-BP Manual Handle Retrace Function for Multi-Path
A02B-0358-R606	32i-BP Manual Handle Retrace Function for Multi-Path

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Direction Change Movement in Auxiliary Function Output Block Function

Features

With this function and in manual handle retrace mode, when movement command and auxiliary function (M,S,T,B-code) are commanded within the same block, the direction change movement can be evaluated within the PMC and appropriate action can be taken.

Parameter: it is possible to allow or prohibit direction change during manual handle retrace operation while setting the corresponding parameter accordingly.

Signal: in manual handle retrace, when both movement command and auxiliary function (M,S,T,B-code) are commanded in a block at a time, a signal notifies direction change of movement performed by the manual handle.

Benefits

- Simplifies operator work and effectivity in manual / handle mode
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

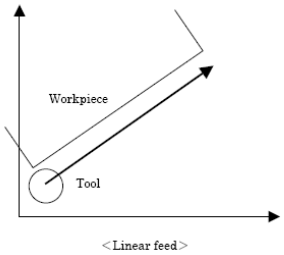
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S628	0i-TFP Direction Change Movement in Auxiliary Function Output Block Function
A02B-0350-S628	0i-MFP Direction Change Movement in Auxiliary Function Output Block Function
A02B-0351-S628	0i-LFP Direction Change Movement in Auxiliary Function Output Block Function
A02B-0353-S628	30i-BP Direction Change Movement in Auxiliary Function Output Block Function
A02B-0356-S628	31i-B5P Direction Change Movement in Auxiliary Function Output Block Function
A02B-0357-S628	31i-BP Direction Change Movement in Auxiliary Function Output Block Function
A02B-0358-S628	32i-BP Direction Change Movement in Auxiliary Function Output Block Function
A02B-0359-S628	30i-LB Plus Direction Change Movement in Auxiliary Function Output Block Function
A02B-0360-S628	31i-LB Plus Direction Change Movement in Auxiliary Function Output Block Function

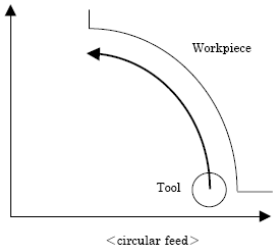
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Manual Linear/Circular Interpolation





Features

In manual handle feed or jog feed, the following types of feed operations are enabled along with conventional single axis feed operation:

- Feed along a tilted straight line in the XY plane or YZ plane or ZX plane based on simultaneous 2-axis control (linear feed)
- Feed along a circle in the XY plane or YZ plane or ZX plane based on simultaneous 2-axis control (circular feed)

Note: when using the Manual Linear / Circular Interpolation function, the option 'Manual handle feed 1-unit' is required. When using 2nd or 3rd Manual handle, the option 'Manual handle feed 2/3-unit' or 'Manual handle feed 4/5-unit' is required. When using 4th or 5th Manual handle, the option 'Manual handle feed 4/5-unit' is required.

Benefits

- Simplifies operator work and effectivity in manual / handle mode
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J774	0i-TFP Manual Linear / Circular Interpolation
A02B-0350-J774	0i-MFP Manual Linear / Circular Interpolation
A02B-0351-J774	0i-LF Plus Manual Linear / Circular Interpolation
A02B-0353-J774	30i-BP Manual Linear / Circular Interpolation
A02B-0356-J774	31i-B5P Manual Linear / Circular Interpolation
A02B-0357-J774	31i-BP Manual Linear / Circular Interpolation
A02B-0358-J774	32i-BP Manual Linear / Circular Interpolation
A02B-0359-J774	30i-LB Plus Manual Linear / Circular Interpolation
A02B-0360-J774	31i-LB Plus Manual Linear / Circular Interpolation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Reverse Motion Function for Restart

Features

The machining can be restarted very easlily by using this function after the machining stopped due to a reset, an emergency stop or a power failure.

The function consists of the following three features:

- When machining stops because of an interruption and the tool runs off the machining path, the function enables the tool to go back to the point on the machining path where the machining was interrupted.
- After the tool has returned to the interruption point, the CNC calls the interrupted program, searches for the interrupted block and holds there.
- After the recovery, maximum 100 blocks of the machining process can be reversed along the programming path, in order to retract the tool safely from the workpiece.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R529	30i-BP Reverse MotionFunction for Restart
A02B-0356-R529	31i-B5P Reverse MotionFunction for Restart
A02B-0357-R529	31i-BP Reverse MotionFunction for Restart
A02B-0358-R529	32i-BP Reverse MotionFunction for Restart

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Active Block Cancel

Features

The Active Block Cancel function is used to cancel the executing block by a signal from the PMC, and to stop.
The distance remaining is cleared, and the execution is restarted from the next block of canceled block by cycle start.

Benefits

- Possibility to check the part program for a short time.
- Simplifies operator work
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S627	0i-TFP Active Block Cancel
A02B-0350-S627	0i-MFP Active Block Cancel
A02B-0353-S627	30i-BP Active Block Cancel
A02B-0356-S627	31i-B5P Active Block Cancel
A02B-0357-S627	31i-BP Active Block Cancel
A02B-0358-S627	32i-BP Active Block Cancel

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

High-Speed Program Check

Features

The High Speed Program Check function provides the following features:

- The program format check and the stroke limit check are available without axes movements.
- The program check is executed with the maximum feedrate of CNC system and without the acceleration / deceleration regardless of the specified data.
- After the program check is completed, the reference position return is not necessary because the workpiece coordinate system preset is executed automatically at the end of the high speed program check mode.
- In case that the parameter PGR (No.3454#3) is set to "1", the data, which are changed during the high speed program check mode, are restored to the data at the start of the high speed program check mode when ending the high speed program check mode. By this, after ending the high speed program check mode, the automatic operation can be executed with the data before the start of the high speed program check mode.

Benefits

- Possibility to accelerate the check of the programs
- Time saving

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S880	0i-TFP High-Speed Program Check
A02B-0350-S880	0i-MFP High-Speed Program Check
A02B-0353-S880	30i-BP High-Speed Program Check
A02B-0356-S880	31i-B5P High-Speed Program Check
A02B-0357-S880	31i-BP High-Speed Program Check
A02B-0358-S880	32i-BP High-Speed Program Check
A02B-0360-S880	31i-LB Plus High-Speed Program Check

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

160
Operation

Dwell / Auxiliary Function Time Override Function

Features

The Time Override Function for Dwell/Auxiliary Function applies override to the dwell and auxiliary (M/S/T/B) function in the range of 0% to 100% in steps of 1%.

If the override is applied to auxiliary (M/S/T/B) function, the next block is executed after a shortage of time. The actual processing time is considered to be 100%, and the shortage is calculated from the time.

Benefits

- Simplifies the operation of the machine
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R500	0i-TFP Dwell / Auxiliary Function Time Override Function
A02B-0350-R500	0i-MFP Dwell / Auxiliary Function Time Override Function
A02B-0353-R500	30i-BP Dwell / Auxiliary Function Time Override Function
A02B-0356-R500	31i-B5P Dwell / Auxiliary Function Time Override Function
A02B-0357-R500	31i-BP Dwell / Auxiliary Function Time Override Function
A02B-0358-R500	32i-BP Dwell / Auxiliary Function Time Override Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Pulse Superimposed Function

Features

The Pulse Superimposed Function enables pulse superimposed control in cutting mode that have been specified by the PMC in automatic operation mode (MDI operation, DNC operation, and memory operation) and in memory edit mode.

The maximum number of superimposed axes at the same time is two on each path (twice the number of paths in the entire system).

This function requires the following option:

- Manual handle interrupt
- Manual handle feed, 1 unit
- Manual handle feed, 2/3-units
- (or manual handle feed, 4/5-units)

Benefits

- Simplifies the operation of the machine
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R559	30i-BP Pulse Superimposed Function
A02B-0356-R559	31i-B5P Pulse Superimposed Function
A02B-0357-R559	31i-BP Pulse Superimposed Function
A02B-0358-R559	32i-BP Pulse Superimposed Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

162
Functions

Interpolation Functions

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to the interpolation capabilities and functions of the CNC system.

Interpolation functions control how the CNC will move the axes. Simple positioning, linear and circular interpolation are standard features of the controllers. Other forms of interpolation are optional and depend on the purpose of the machine tool. They can ease drastically the programming of complex geometric shapes, as well as optimize the part programs size and improve the accuracy of the machine.

Some of the interpolation functions detailed in the catalogue:

- Exponential Interpolation
- Polar Coordinate Interpolation
- Cylindrical Interpolation
- Helical Interpolation
- Involute Interpolation
- Hypothetical Axes Interpolation
- Conical/Spiral Interpolation
- Smooth Interpolation
- Nano Smoothing
- Thread cutting, synchronous cutting, complex threading
- NURBS Interpolation
- 3 Dimensional Circular Interpolation
- High-speed cutting
- Path Table Operation
- High-speed binary program operation
- Etc.

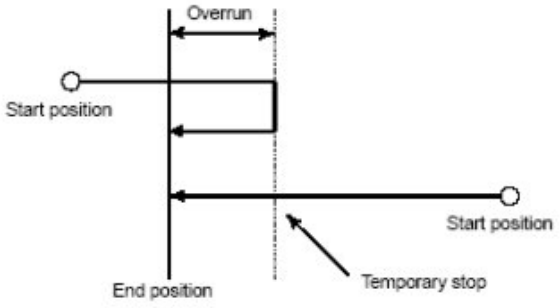
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

163

Interpolation Functions



Single Direction Positioning

Features

When using the Single Direction Positioning function, the CNC automatically approaches specific locations always from the same direction.

Accurate positioning without backlash can be performed and final positioning from one direction is possible as well.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus.

Benefits

- Minimize backlash error by using unidirectional positioning
- Improves accuracy in bolt hole patterns with minimized backlash error

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J812	30i-BP Single Direction Positioning
A02B-0356-J812	31i-B5P Single Direction Positioning
A02B-0357-J812	31i-BP Single Direction Positioning
A02B-0358-J812	32i-BP Single Direction Positioning

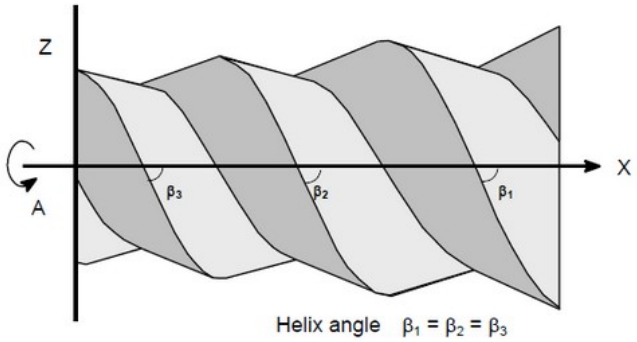
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

164

Interpolation Functions



Exponential Interpolation

Features

The Exponential Interpolation function is used to coordinate linear and rotary axis movement.

Exponential interpolation exponentially changes the rotation of a workpiece with respect to movement on the rotary axis. Furthermore, exponential interpolation performs linear interpolation with respect to another axis.

This enables tapered groove machining with a constant helix angle (constant helix taper machining). This function is best suited for grooving and grinding tools such as taper end mills.

Benefits

- Adds special interpolation type to the CNC
- Provides interpolation specialized for grooving and grinding tools
- Improves overall machining productivity

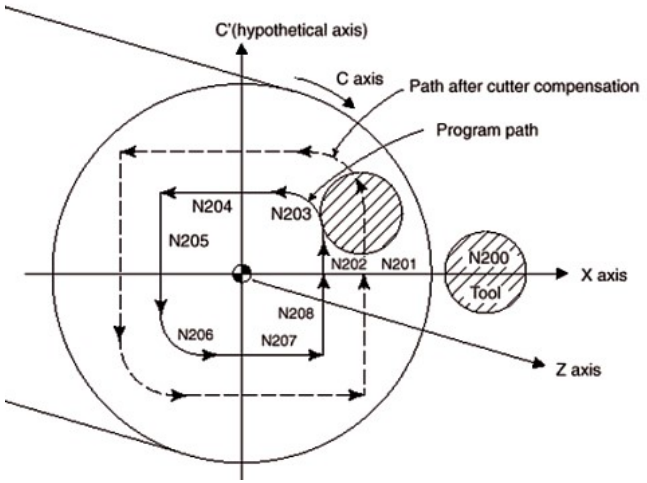
Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J711	30i-BP Exponential Interpolation
A02B-0356-J711	31i-B5P Exponential Interpolation
A02B-0357-J711	31i-BP Exponential Interpolation
A02B-0358-J711	32i-BP Exponential Interpolation
A02B-0359-J711	30i-LB Plus Exponential Interpolation
A02B-0360-J711	31i-LB Plus Exponential Interpolation
A02B-0362-J711	31i-PB Plus Exponential Interpolation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



Polar Coordinate Interpolation

Features

The Polar Coordinate Interpolation function allows a designated pair of axes (one rotary and one linear) to be programmed like two linear axes.

The function converts a command programmed in the Cartesian coordinate system to the movement of a linear axis (movement of a tool) and the movement of a rotary axis (rotation of a workpiece).

Examples of use include cutting grooves in face side of rotary workpiece and grinding a camshaft.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus.

Benefits

- Simplifies programming when a linear movement and a rotational movement have to be coordinated.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J815	30i-BP Polar Coordinate Interpolation
A02B-0356-J815	31i-B5P Polar Coordinate Interpolation
A02B-0357-J815	31i-BP Polar Coordinate Interpolation
A02B-0358-J815	32i-BP Polar Coordinate Interpolation
A02B-0359-J815	30i-LB Plus Polar Coordinate Interpolation
A02B-0360-J815	31i-LB Plus Polar Coordinate Interpolation
A02B-0362-J815	31i-PB Plus Polar Coordinate Interpolation
A02B-0364-J815	PM i-A Plus Polar Coordinate Interpolation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Cylindrical Interpolation

Features

The Cylindrical Interpolation function allows the programmer to program a shape on the surface of a cylinder, using linear and circular interpolation commands.

The programmer can visualize the surface of the cylinder being worked as if it had been rolled out on a flat plane.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 0, Type 1) and 0i-TF/LF Plus (all Types).

Benefits

- Simplifies programming for machining the curved surface of a cylinder.
- Programs such as those for grooving cylindrical cams can be easily created.

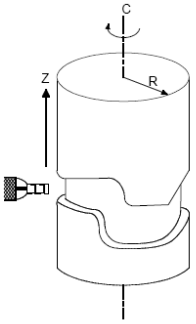
Ordering Information

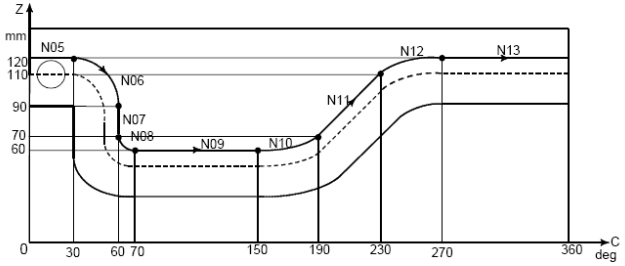
Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J816	0i-MFP Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0353-J816	30i-BP Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0356-J816	31i-B5P Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0357-J816	31i-BP Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0358-J816	32i-BP Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0359-J816	30i-LB Plus Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0360-J816	31i-LB Plus Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0362-J816	31i-PB Plus Cylindrical Interpolation

Example of a cylindrical interpolation programs

```
O0001 (CYLINDRICAL INTERPOLATION);
N01 G00 G90 Z100.0 C0 ;
N02 G01 G91 G18 Z0 C0 ;
N03 G07.1 C57299 ;
N04 G90 G01 G42 Z120.0 D01 F250 ;
N05 C30.0 ;
N06 G03 Z90.0 C60.0 R30.0 ;
N07 G01 Z70.0 ;
N08 G02 Z60.0 C70.0 R10.0 ;
N09 G01 C150.0 ;
N10 G02 Z70.0 C190.0 R75.0 ;
N11 G01 Z110.0 C230.0 ;
N12 G03 Z120.0 C270.0 R75.0 ;
N13 G01 C360.0 ;
N14 G40 Z100.0 ;
N15 G07.1 C0 ;
N16 M30 ;
```

Note) Sample program where the C axis is parallel to the X-axis.





Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

167

Interpolation Functions

Cylindrical Interpolation by Plane Distance Command

Features

Normally, a program command for the rotary axis in the cylindrical interpolation was given by rotary angle of the rotary axis.

The Cylindrical Interpolation by Plane Distance Command function enables a command for the rotary axis in the cylindrical interpolation by the cylindrical plane distance according to a parameter setting.

Benefits

- Provide an additional method of programming the cylindrical interpolation
- Increases the programming flexibility

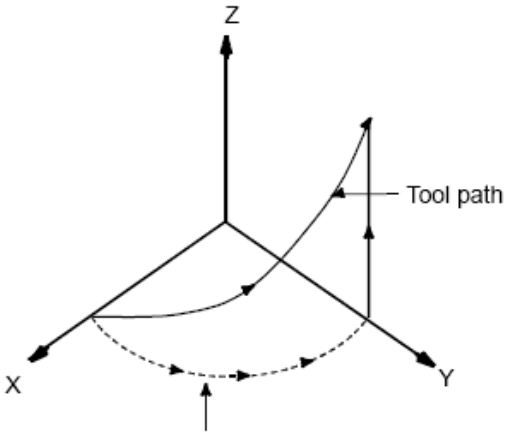
Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R578	0i-TFP Cylindrical Interpolation by Plane Distance Command
A02B-0350-R578	0i-MFP Cylindrical Interpolation by Plane Distance Command
A02B-0353-R578	30i-BP Cylindrical Interpolation by Plane Distance Command
A02B-0356-R578	31i-B5P Cylindrical Interpolation by Plane Distance Command
A02B-0357-R578	31i-BP Cylindrical Interpolation by Plane Distance Command
A02B-0358-R578	32i-BP Cylindrical Interpolation by Plane Distance Command
A02B-0359-R578	30i-LB Plus Cylindrical Interpolation by Plane Distance Command
A02B-0360-R578	31i-LB Plus Cylindrical Interpolation by Plane Distance Command
A02B-0362-R578	31i-PB Plus Cylindrical Interpolation by Plane Distance Command

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



The feedrate along the circumference of two circular interpolated axes is the specified feedrate.

Helical Interpolation

Features

Helical Interpolation permits the programmer to command a move in which up to two axes are moved in a linear fashion at the same time as the basic two axes that are performing circular interpolation. This results in a helical cut.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series and 0i-MF/LF Plus.

Benefits

- Provides a simple way to program helical cuts
- Increases the programming flexibility of the CNC

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J819	0i-TFP Helical Interpolation
A02B-0364-J819	PM i-A Plus Helical Interpolation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Helical Interpolation B

Features

Helical Interpolation B permits the programmer to command a move in which up to four axes are moved in a linear fashion at the same time as the basic two axes that are performing circular interpolation.

Benefits

- Provides additional methods to realize advanced helical cuts
- Increases the programming flexibility of the CNC

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J655	30i-BP Helical Interpolation B
A02B-0359-J655	30i-LB Plus Helical Interpolation B

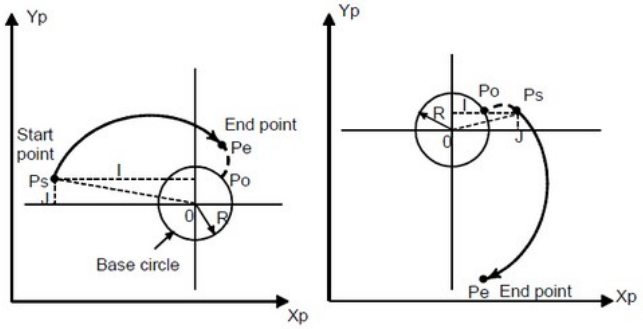
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

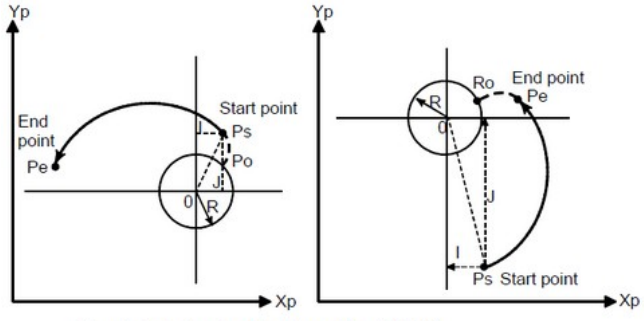
The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

170

Interpolation Functions



Clockwise involute interpolation (G02.2)



Counterclockwise involute interpolation (G03.2)

Involutes Interpolation

Features

The Involutes Interpolation function performs the machining of complex involute curves. Involute interpolation eliminates the need for approximating an involute curve with minute segments or arcs, and continuous pulse distribution is ensured even in high-speed operation of small blocks.

Accordingly, high-speed operation can be performed smoothly. Furthermore, machining programs can be created easily and efficiently, reducing the required length of program. Involutes interpolation is useful for tool grinding.

The Helical Involute Interpolation function performs on two axes involute interpolation and on up to four other axes linear interpolation simultaneously.

When using only "Helical Involute Interpolation (S853)", this function performs two axes involute interpolation and up to two other axes linear interpolation simultaneously.

To enable the function to perform two axes involute interpolation and more than three other axes linear interpolation simultaneously, Helical Interpolation B (J655) option is required.

Benefits

- Adds special interpolation type to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J710	0i-MFP Involute Interpolation
A02B-0353-J710	30i-BP Involute Interpolation
A02B-0356-J710	31i-B5P Involute Interpolation
A02B-0357-J710	31i-BP Involute Interpolation
A02B-0358-J710	32i-BP Involute Interpolation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Helical Involute Interpolation

Features

The Helical Involute Interpolation function is similar to Involutes Interpolation in that it performs machining of complex involute curves. But in addition to 2 axes involute interpolation, up to 4 other linear axes can be interpolated simultaneously. If 3 or 4 linear axes are interpolated simultaneously, the Helical Interpolation B option is required additionally.

Benefits

- Adds special interpolation type to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S853	30i-BP Helical Involute Interpolation
A02B-0356-S853	31i-B5P Helical Involute Interpolation
A02B-0357-S853	31i-BP Helical Involute Interpolation
A02B-0358-S853	32i-BP Helical Involute Interpolation

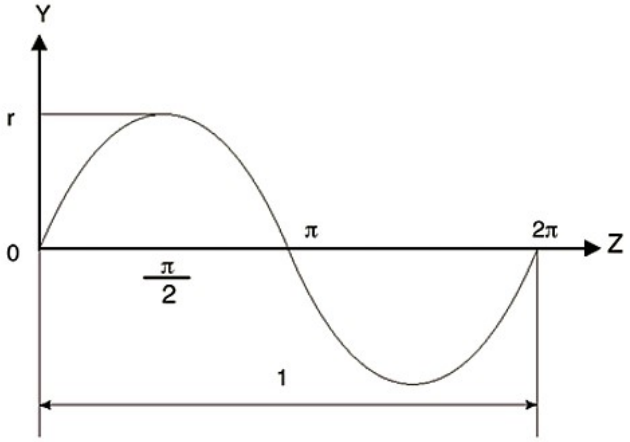
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

172

Interpolation Functions



Hypothetical Axes Interpolation

Features

In helical interpolation when one of the circular interpolation axes is defined as a hypothetical axis then the tool path follows a sinusoidal path.

The Hypothetical Interpolation function is used for threading with a fractional lead. The axis to be set as the hypothetical axis is specified with G07.

Benefits

- Adds special interpolation type to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J652	30i-BP Hypothetical Axis Interpolation
A02B-0356-J652	31i-B5P Hypothetical Axis Interpolation
A02B-0357-J652	31i-BP Hypothetical Axis Interpolation
A02B-0358-J652	32i-BP Hypothetical Axis Interpolation
A02B-0359-J652	30i-LB Plus Hypothetical Axis Interpolation
A02B-0360-J652	31i-LB Plus Hypothetical Axis Interpolation
A02B-0362-J652	31i-PB Plus Hypothetical Axis Interpolation
A02B-0364-J652	PM i-A Plus Hypothetical Axis Interpolation

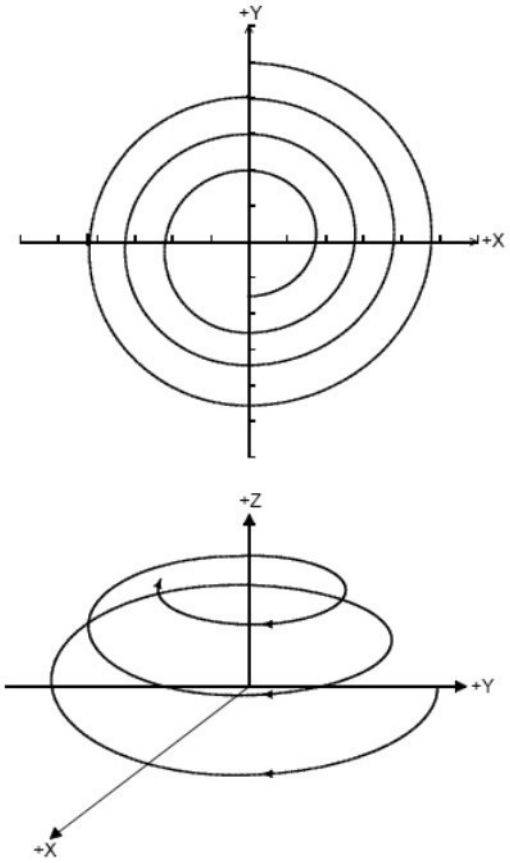
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

173

Interpolation Functions



Conical/Spiral Interpolation

Features

The Conical/Spiral Interpolation function allows the CNC programmer to command, in a single block, a spiral move in a plane (two axes) or a conical move in three dimensions.

Benefits

- Simple command block for spiral interpolation.
- Simple command block for conical interpolation.
- Common command structure for conical/spiral interpolation.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J780	0i-MFP Conical / Spiral Interpolation
A02B-0353-J780	30i-BP Conical / Spiral Interpolation
A02B-0356-J780	31i-B5P Conical / Spiral Interpolation
A02B-0357-J780	31i-BP Conical / Spiral Interpolation
A02B-0358-J780	32i-BP Conical / Spiral Interpolation

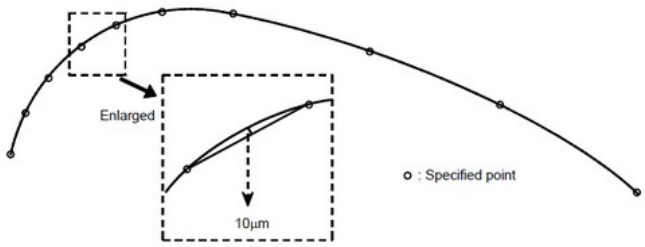
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

174

Interpolation Functions



Smooth Interpolation

Features

The Smooth Interpolation function can be used to enhance the surface finish of the part being machined, such as die cutting, where the part program is typically large and consists of many small moves. The CNC automatically determines when to select one of two types of machining:

- For those portions where the accuracy of the figure is critical, such as at corners, machining will be performed exactly as specified by the program command.
- For those portions having a large radius of curvature, where a smooth figure is desired, points along the machining path will be interpolated with a smooth curve, calculated from the polygonal lines specified in successive program commands.

Benefits

- Smooth surface finish, where dwell marks might otherwise have been a problem.
- Simple programming, with the CNC automatically determining when to apply smooth interpolation and when to ignore it.
- High-speed, high-precision machining can be performed.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J777	30i-BP Smooth Interpolation
A02B-0356-J777	31i-B5P Smooth Interpolation
A02B-0357-J777	31i-BP Smooth Interpolation
A02B-0359-J777	30i-LB Plus Smooth Interpolation
A02B-0360-J777	31i-LB Plus Smooth Interpolation
A02B-0362-J777	31i-PB Plus Smooth Interpolation

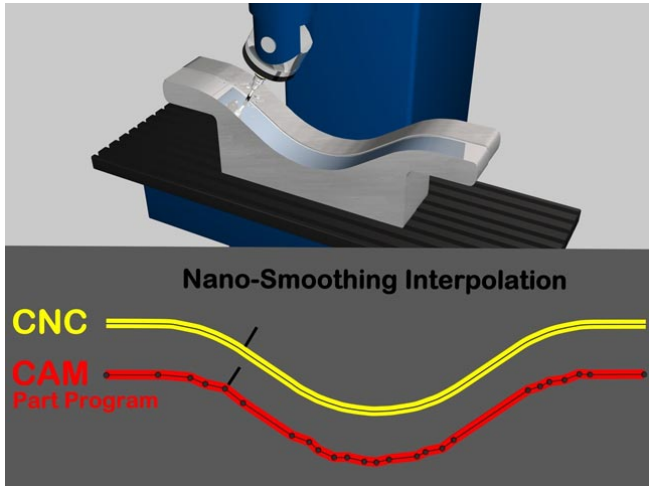
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

175

Interpolation Functions



Nano Smoothing

Features

The Nano Smoothing function allows linear segmented programs developed either for 3-axis or 5-axis machines to be automatically converted into continuous free-forms using the CNCs inbuilt NURBS technology. When a desired, sculptured surface is approximated by minute segments, the nano smoothing function generates a smooth curve inferred from the programmed segments and performs the necessary interpolation.

The conventional Nano Smoothing function (S687) is limited to the three basic axes (X, Y, and Z) whereas the Nano Smoothing II function (R512), former Nano Smoothing for 5-Axis Machining, does additionally consider two rotary axes.

Benefits

- Exceptional surface finish, better part quality
- Extremely “Fluid” motion, less tool wear
- Less requirement to process later the cut surface with grinding or polishing
- Significant increase of the machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S687	30i-BP Nano Smoothing
A02B-0356-S687	31i-B5P Nano Smoothing
A02B-0357-S687	31i-BP Nano Smoothing, 3 Axis Nano Smoothing
A02B-0358-S687	32i-BP Nano Smoothing
A02B-0359-S687	30i-LB Plus Nano Smoothing, 3 Axis Nano Smoothing
A02B-0360-S687	31i-LB Plus Nano Smoothing, 3 Axis Nano Smoothing
A02B-0362-S687	31i-PB Plus Nano Smoothing, 3 Axis Nano Smoothing

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

High-Speed and High-Quality Machining Package

Features

This function is a package for the FANUC 0i-MF series that contains the relevant options suitable for high-speed and high-quality machining, particularly for die/mold machining. The following options are combined in the package:

- AI Contour Control II
- Smooth Tolerance Control
- Jerk Control
- Machining Quality Level Adjustment Function

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Select the necessary options for high-speed and high-quality machining easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-R660	0i-MFP High-Speed and High-Quality Machining Package (Fine Mould Machining Package)

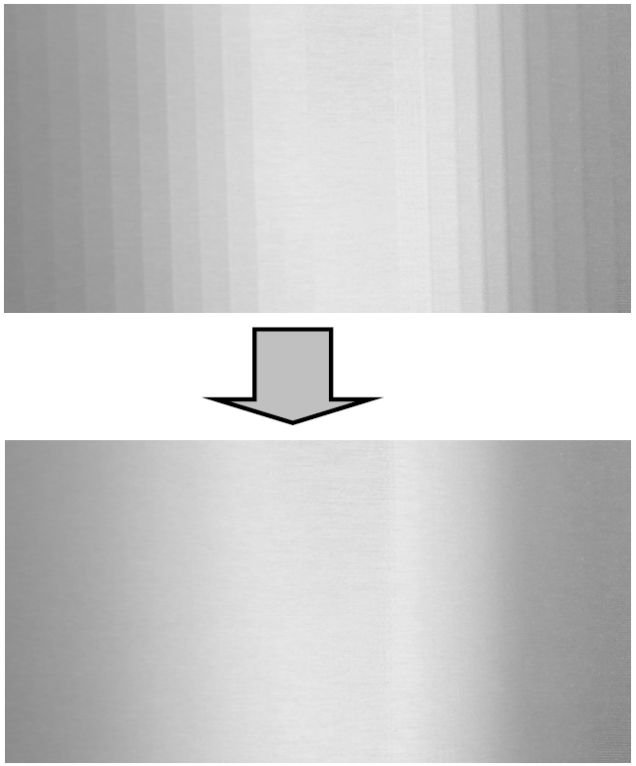
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

177

Interpolation Functions



Smooth Tolerance Control

Features

Smooth Tolerance+ Control improves the surface quality and accuracy of parts with free-form surfaces, which are often found in die/mold machining. Free-form surfaces are usually approximated by a sequence of multiple small linear elements. This leads to the undesired consequence that the transitions between linear blocks are visible on the surface of the workpiece after machining.

Smooth Tolerance+ Control has a sophisticated algorithm which converts a sequence of multiple small blocks automatically into a smooth curve which approximates that sequence within a given tolerance. This eliminates the surface artifacts and leads to a smoothly finished surface.

Smooth Tolerance+ Control detects corners in the path automatically. If a corner is detected, it is also converted into a smooth curve within a distinct tolerance. High-quality and high-precision machining is achieved with this feature.

Users can machine a workpiece that meets individual specifications by simply defining the two tolerances stated above. This saves time spent on fine-tuning the machined surface. Whether the path to be machined belongs to a free-form surface where a smooth finish is required, or to a corner where the priority is set on precision is determined automatically, meaning that both requirements ca be fulfilled simultaneously.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3) and 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Enhance surface quality of machined parts
- Simplify fine-tuning of surface quality

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R696	30i-BP Smooth Tolerance+ Control
A02B-0356-R696	31i-B5P Smooth Tolerance+ Control
A02B-0357-R696	31i-BP Smooth Tolerance+ Control
A02B-0358-R696	32i-BP Smooth Tolerance+ Control

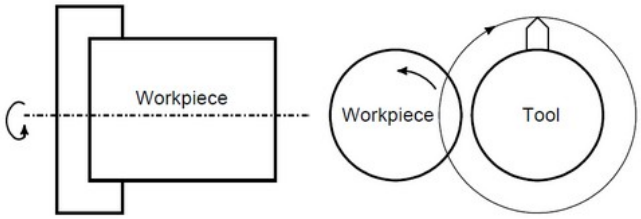
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

178

Interpolation Functions



Polygon Turning

Features

The Polygon Turning function allows the programmer to machine (turn) a workpiece into a polygonal figure by rotating the workpiece (spindle axis) and tool (rotary tool axis) at a certain ratio.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus.

Benefits

- Provides the capability to machine square and / or hexagonal heads on bolts or hexagonal nuts.
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J817	30i-BP Polygon Turning
A02B-0356-J817	31i-B5P Polygon Turning
A02B-0357-J817	31i-BP Polygon Turning
A02B-0358-J817	32i-BP Polygon Turning

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Polygon Machining with Two Spindles

Features

The Polygon Turning with Two Spindles function allows the programmer to machine (turn) a workpiece into a polygonal figure by rotating the workpiece and the tool at a certain ratio. Both axes must be spindle axes, each controlled by a Serial Spindle.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus (Type 0, Type 1).

Benefits

- Polygon Turning with Two Spindles is used for machining square and/or hexagonal heads on bolts, or for hexagonal nuts, where the two synchronized axes are spindle axes
- Important feature on lathes with mill-turn capability
- With a multiple path system, polygon turning is possible on each path

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J708	0i-TFP Polygon Machining with Spindle
A02B-0353-J708	30i-BP Polygon Machining with 2 Spindles
A02B-0356-J708	31i-B5P Polygon Machining with 2 Spindles
A02B-0357-J708	31i-BP Polygon Machining with 2 Spindles
A02B-0358-J708	32i-BP Polygon Machining with 2 Spindles

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

180

Interpolation Functions

Multi-Step Skip

Features

Multi-Step Skip, activated in a block by specifying P1 to P4 after G31, stores coordinates in a custom macro variable, when a skip signal, (4-point or 8-point; 8-point when a high-speed skip signal is used) is turned on.

In the block where Q1 to Q4 are specified after G04, dwell can be skipped when skip signals (four or eight signals, or eight signals when high-speed skip signals are used) are input. A skip signal from equipment such as a fixed-dimension measuring instrument can be used to skip programs being executed.

In plunge grinding, for example, a series of operations from rough machining to spark-out can be performed automatically by applying a skip signal each time rough machining, semi-fine machining, fine-machining, or spark-out operation is completed.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus.

Note

Multi-Step Skip requires the Custom Macro B option to be able to access the stored variables.

Benefits

- Adds special skip functions to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J849	0i-TFP Multi-Step Skip
A02B-0353-J849	30i-BP Multi-Step Skip
A02B-0356-J849	31i-B5P Multi-Step Skip
A02B-0357-J849	31i-BP Multi-Step Skip
A02B-0358-J849	32i-BP Multi-Step Skip
A02B-0359-J849	30i-LB Plus Multi-Step Skip
A02B-0360-J849	31i-LB Plus Multi-Step Skip
A02B-0362-J849	31i-PB Plus Multi-Step Skip

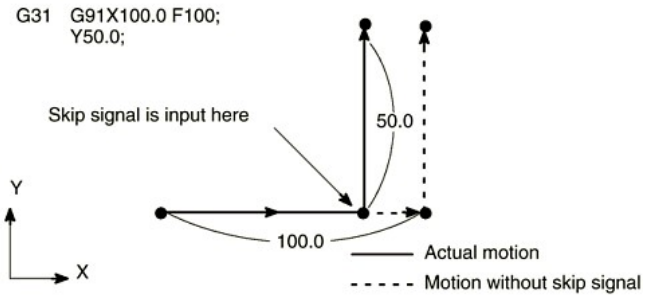
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

181

Interpolation Functions



High-Speed Skip

Features

High-Speed Skip allows the skip function to operate based on a high-speed skip input signal, connected directly to the CNC; not via the PMC like the ordinary skip signal.

Up to eight high-speed signals can be input for the Series 30i-B, up to four high-speed signals can be input for the Series 0i-F.

The response time of the skip signal input is 2 msec at the CNC side (not considering those at the PMC side). High-Speed Skip keeps this value to 0.1 msec or less, thus allowing high precision measurement.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Faster response improves accuracy at higher feed rates
- Improves cycle time

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-J848	PM i-A Plus High-Speed Skip

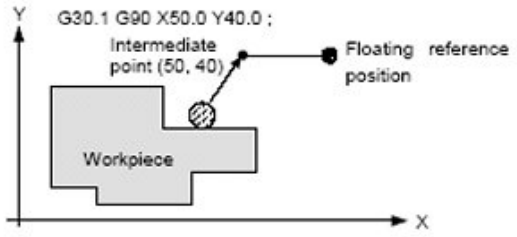
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

182

Interpolation Functions



Floating Reference Position Return

Features

With the Floating Reference Position Return function, tools can be returned to the floating reference position.
A floating reference position is a position on a machine tool, and serves as a reference position for machine tool operation.
A floating reference position does not always need to be fixed, but can be moved as required.

Benefits

- Adds flexibility to the machine
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J831	30i-BP Float Reference Position Return
A02B-0356-J831	31i-B5P Float Reference Position Return
A02B-0357-J831	31i-BP Float Reference Position Return
A02B-0358-J831	32i-BP Float Reference Position Return
A02B-0359-J831	30i-LB Plus Float Reference Position Return
A02B-0360-J831	31i-LB Plus Float Reference Position Return
A02B-0362-J831	31i-PB Plus Float Reference Position Return

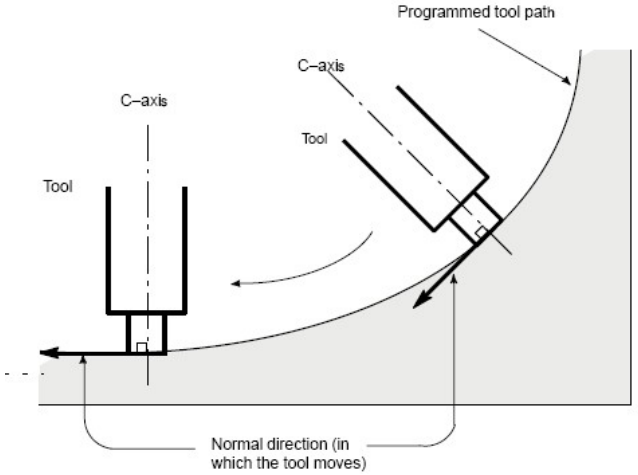
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

183

Interpolation Functions



Normal Direction Control

Features

In the Normal Direction Control, the rotary axis (C axis) can be commanded so that the tool constantly faces the advancing workpiece and is always perpendicular to the plane of the workpiece during cutting.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 0, Type 1) and 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Used on precision Jig Grinders to rotate the C Axis to keep it normal (perpendicular) to a position in the X-Y plane.

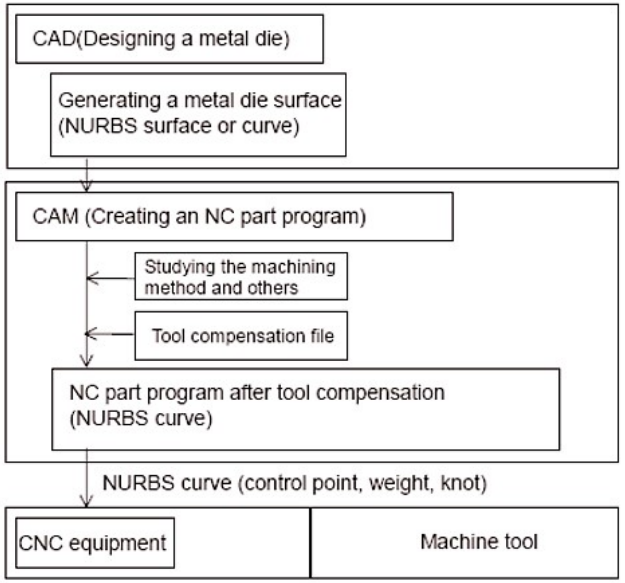
Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J813	0i-TFP Normal Direction Control
A02B-0350-J813	0i-MFP Normal Direction Control
A02B-0353-J813	30i-BP Normal Direction Control
A02B-0356-J813	31i-B5P Normal Direction Control
A02B-0357-J813	31i-BP Normal Direction Control
A02B-0358-J813	32i-BP Normal Direction Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



NURBS Interpolation

Features

Many Computer-Aided Design (CAD) systems used to design metal dies or complex shapes utilize Non-Uniform Rational B Spline (NURBS) to express a sculptured surface or curve for the metal dies.

The NURBS Interpolation function provides the operator with the ability to execute a NURBS program once it has been transferred to the CNC.

The CNC is capable of compensating for tool variations etc., then running the NURBS program.

Benefits

- CNC compatibility with the widely accepted CAD/CAM NURBS format.
- NURBS part programs are smaller programs than the equivalent conventional piece-wise linear block segments, are processed more quickly by the CNC, and therefore reduce the likelihood of dwell marks in the workpiece.
- Due to the smaller NURBS part program size, the need for high-speed transfer between the CNC and an external PC may be avoided (normally required for conventional part programs of large size).

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J669	30i-BP NURBS Interpolation
A02B-0356-J669	31i-B5P NURBS Interpolation
A02B-0357-J669	31i-BP NURBS Interpolation
A02B-0359-J669	30i-LB Plus NURBS Interpolation
A02B-0360-J669	31i-LB Plus NURBS Interpolation
A02B-0362-J669	31i-PB Plus NURBS Interpolation

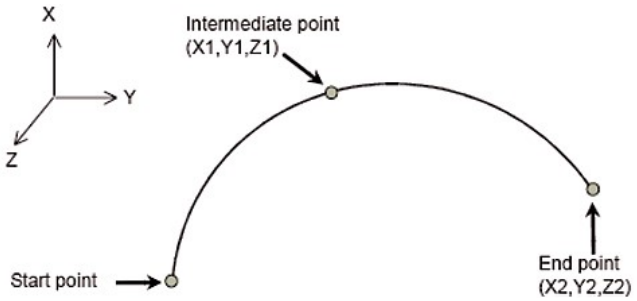
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

185

Interpolation Functions



3-Dimensional Circular Interpolation

Features

The 3-Dimensional Circular Interpolation function allows the programmer to specify an arc in 3-D space, using the current position as the start point.

Benefits

- Permits the programmer to describe an arc, using the current position as the start point, and specifying any intermediate point, plus the end point.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-S673	0i-LFP 3-D Circular Interpolation
A02B-0353-S673	30i-BP 3-D Circular Interpolation
A02B-0356-S673	31i-B5P 3-D Circular Interpolation
A02B-0357-S673	31i-BP 3-D Circular Interpolation
A02B-0358-S673	32i-BP 3-D Circular Interpolation
A02B-0359-S673	30i-LB Plus 3-D Circular Interpolation
A02B-0360-S673	31i-LB Plus 3-D Circular Interpolation
A02B-0362-S673	31i-PB Plus 3-D Circular Interpolation

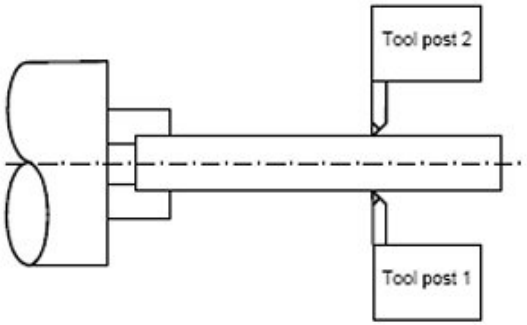
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

186

Interpolation Functions



Balanced Cutting

Features

The Balanced Cutting function can be used when machining a single part with two turrets at the same time.

If a thin workpiece needs to be machined a precision machining can be achieved by machining each side of the workpiece with a tool simultaneously; this function can prevent the workpiece from warpage that can result when only one side is machined at a time (see the figure below).

When both sides are machined at the same time, the movement of one tool must be in phase with that of the other tool. Otherwise, the workpiece can vibrate, resulting in poor machining. With this function, the movement of one tool post can be easily synchronized with that of the other tool post.

Benefits

- Adds special function to machine thin parts to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J834	0i-TFP Balanced Cutting
A02B-0353-J834	30i-BP Balanced Cutting
A02B-0356-J834	31i-B5P Balanced Cutting
A02B-0357-J834	31i-BP Balanced Cutting
A02B-0358-J834	32i-BP Balanced Cutting

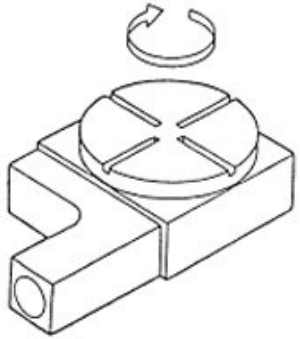
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

187

Interpolation Functions



Index Table Indexing

Features

The Table Indexing function can be used to control rotary axes that index between predefined locations. By specifying indexing positions (angles) for the indexing axis (one arbitrary axis), the index table of the machining center can be indexed.

It is not necessary to command the exclusive M code in order to clamp or unclamp the table, the CNC will automatically send signals to the PMC to do this, and therefore programming will be easier.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Simplifies the integration of a rotary table in the machine
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J822	0i-MFP Index Table Indexing
A02B-0353-J822	30i-BP Index Table Indexing
A02B-0356-J822	31i-B5P Index Table Indexing
A02B-0357-J822	31i-BP Index Table Indexing
A02B-0358-J822	32i-BP Index Table Indexing

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

188

Interpolation Functions

G31 P90 α__ F__

α__: Skip axis address and amount of travel
Only one axis can be specified. G31 is a one–shot G code.

Continuous High-Speed Skip

Features

The Continuous High–Speed Skip function enables the reading of absolute coordinates by using the high–speed skip signal.

Once a high–speed skip signal has been input in a G31 P90 block, the absolute coordinates are read into custom macro variables #5061 to #5068.

The input of a skip signal does not stop axial movement, thus enabling reading of the coordinates of two or more points. The rising and falling edges of the high–speed skip signal can be used as a trigger, depending on the parameter setting.

Benefits

- Adds advanced skip capabilities to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

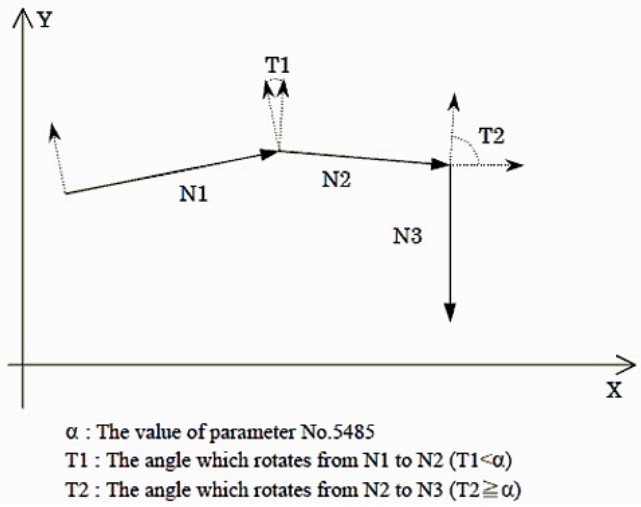
Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J770	0i-TFP Continuous High-Speed Skip
A02B-0350-J770	0i-MFP Continuous High-Speed Skip
A02B-0353-J770	30i-BP Continuous High-Speed Skip
A02B-0356-J770	31i-B5P Continuous High-Speed Skip
A02B-0357-J770	31i-BP Continuous High-Speed Skip
A02B-0358-J770	32i-BP Continuous High-Speed Skip
A02B-0360-J770	31i-LB Plus Continuous High-Speed Skip
A02B-0362-J770	31i-PB Plus Continuous High-Speed Skip

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



Gentle Normal Direction Control

Features

On a machine where a rotary axis controls the tool direction (typically the C-axis) Normal Direction Control function will automatically position the 'C' tool-axis in order to maintain the same angular relationship of the tool with respect to any programmed path direction change in the X-Y coordinate system.

In regular normal-direction control mode (J813), the rotation of the normal-direction controlled tool-axis (C-axis) is inserted between any axes (X/Y axis) direction changes. The X/Y axes always stop while the C-axis rotates to the new normal position for the next program block.

Sometimes, for small angle X/Y direction changes, it is not desirable to stop the X/Y axes while the in C-axis (Tool-axis) rotates to position. In Gentle Normal Direction Control mode, providing the C-axis rotation angle is less than a parametrically set angle, the X/Y axes do not stop while the C-axis rotates to the new normal position.

Benefits

- Used on precision Jig Grinders to rotate the C-Axis to keep it normal (perpendicular) to a position in the X-Y plane.
- Useful for servo-controlled grinding diamond wheel dresser. Maintains the angle of diamond tip angle with respect to grinding wheel dress form.
- Gentle function prevents dwells where over-cutting could occur.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J986	0i-MFP Gentle Normal Direction Control
A02B-0353-J986	30i-BP Gentle Normal Direction Control
A02B-0356-J986	31i-B5P Gentle Normal Direction Control
A02B-0357-J986	31i-BP Gentle Normal Direction Control
A02B-0358-J986	32i-BP Gentle Normal Direction Control
A02B-0359-J986	30i-LB Plus Gentle Normal Direction Control
A02B-0360-J986	31i-LB Plus Gentle Normal Direction Control
A02B-0362-J986	31i-PB Plus Gentle Normal Direction Control

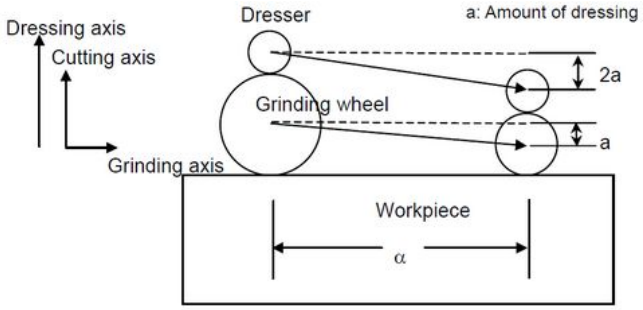
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

190

Interpolation Functions



Continuous Dressing

Features

The Continuous Dressing function allows continuous dressing during grinding canned cycles (G75, G77, G78, G79). Grinding and dresser cutting are compensated continuously according to the amount of continuous dressing set by parameters.

Benefits

- Automated production for large volume grinding
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J630	30i-BP Continuous Dressing
A02B-0356-J630	31i-B5P Continuous Dressing
A02B-0357-J630	31i-BP Continuous Dressing
A02B-0358-J630	32i-BP Continuous Dressing

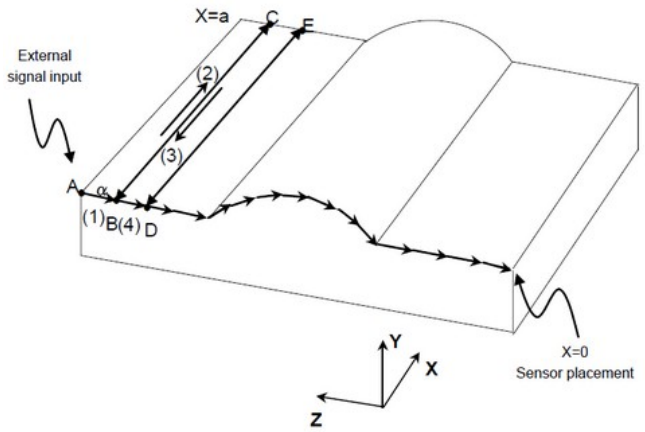
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

191

Interpolation Functions



Infeed Control

Features

The Infeed Control function can be used on grinding machines. Every time an external signal is input, the machine is moved by a fixed amount along the programmed profile in the specified Y-Z plane.

Benefits

- Automatically repeat cutting motion from an external signal such as push button from operator panel
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J631	30i-BP Infeed Control
A02B-0356-J631	31i-B5P Infeed Control
A02B-0357-J631	31i-BP Infeed Control
A02B-0358-J631	32i-BP Infeed Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

High-Speed Cycle Machining

Features

The High-Speed Cycle Machining function (also called High-Speed Cycle Cutting) is a function that accepts as input machining profil data consisting of command data for each involved axis based selected time interval, then distributes that data immediately to the motors controlling up to six designated axes.

Preparing the cycle data requires the use of the macro compiler and macro executor. The resulting cycle data must be operated on by the G05 command in the part program.

Benefits

- By virtue of being command data without interpolation, the CNC needs minimal overhead to deliver the required cycle data to the affected axes.
- Faster execution of the part program results, leading to higher productivity for the machine tool.
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J832	30i-BP High-Speed Cycle Machining
A02B-0356-J832	31i-B5P High-Speed Cycle Machining
A02B-0357-J832	31i-BP High-Speed Cycle Machining

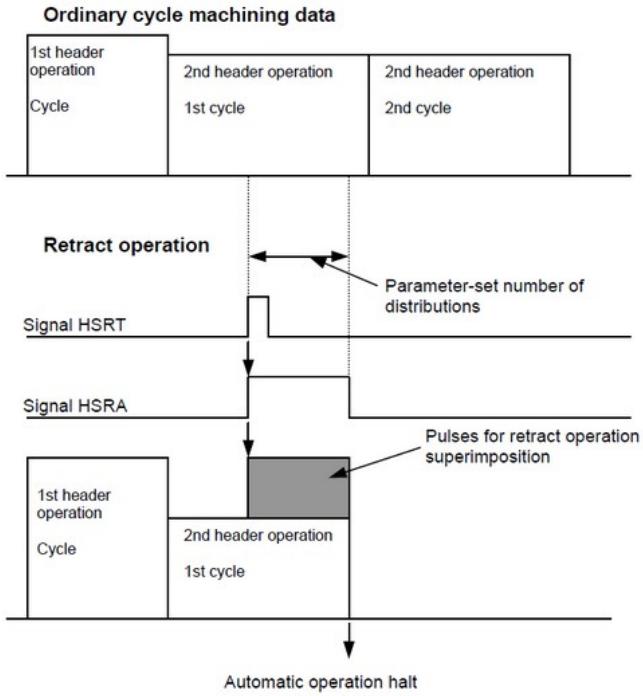
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

193

Interpolation Functions



High-Speed Cycle Machining Retract Function

Features

When machining based on the high-speed cycle machining function needs to be stopped for a reason, the High-Speed Cycle Machining Retract function enables a retract operation to be performed by setting the retract selection signal HSRT (Gn065.3) to 1.

By registering a retract cycle in the high-speed cycle header, a cycle for performing an operation such as a special retract operation after a retract operation can be specified and executed.

Benefits

- Simplifies repetitive cycle programming in the CNC
- Improves overall machining productivity

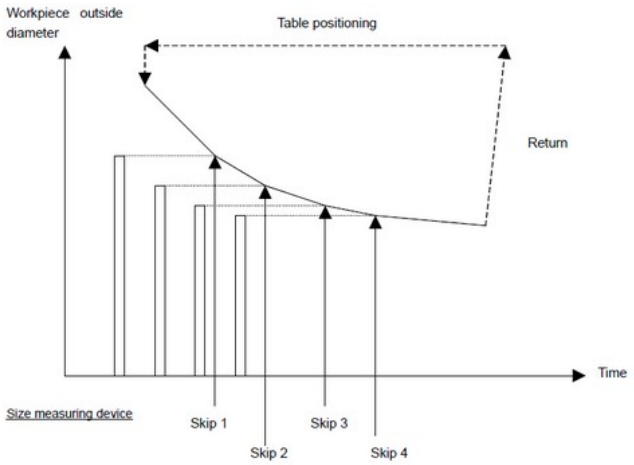
Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J663	30i-BP High-Speed Cycle Machining Retract Function
A02B-0356-J663	31i-B5P High-Speed Cycle Machining Retract Function
A02B-0357-J663	31i-BP High-Speed Cycle Machining Retract Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



High-Speed Cycle Machining Skip Function

Features

The High-Speed Cycle Machining Skip function cancels a repetition cycle operation in high–speed cycle machining and causes a skip to the header information connected next.

Skip signals (HCSK1 to HCSK4) sent from a size measuring device (sensor) can be used to skip a currently executed machining cycle.

For continuous high–speed high–precision machining with a cylindrical grinding machine, for example, skip signals from the size measuring device are used when slight tool wear is detected.

Benefits

- Adds advanced skip functions to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S662	30i-BP High-Speed Cycle Machining Skip Function
A02B-0356-S662	31i-B5P High-Speed Cycle Machining Skip Function
A02B-0357-S662	31i-BP High-Speed Cycle Machining Skip Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

195

Interpolation Functions

High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables A

Features

Variables #200000 to #331071 (131,072 points) are assigned to the High-Speed Cycle Machining function, and may not be used for any other purpose.

Benefits

- Larger amounts of cycle data are made available to the High-Speed Cutting Command (G05).
- Enhances machine programming capabilities
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J745	30i-BP High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables A
A02B-0356-J745	31i-B5P High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables A
A02B-0357-J745	31i-BP High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables A

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables B

Features

Variables #200000 to #462143 (262,144 points) are assigned to the High-Speed Cycle Machining function, and may not be used for any other purpose.

Benefits

- Larger amounts of cycle data are made available to the High-Speed Cutting Command (G05).
- Enhances machine programming capabilities
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J746	30i-BP High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables B
A02B-0356-J746	31i-B5P High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables B
A02B-0357-J746	31i-BP High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables B

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables C

Features

Variables #200000 to #986431 (786,432 points) are assigned to the High-Speed Cycle Machining function, and may not be used for any other purpose.

Benefits

- Larger amounts of cycle data are made available to the High-Speed Cutting Command (G05).
- Enhances machine programming capabilities
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S640	30i-BP High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables C
A02B-0356-S640	31i-B5P High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables C
A02B-0357-S640	31i-BP High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables C

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables D

Features

Variables #2000000 to #3999999 (2,000,000 points) are assigned to the High-Speed Cycle Machining function, and may not be used for any other purpose.

Benefits

- Larger amounts of cycle data are made available to the High-Speed Cutting Command (G05).
- Enhances machine programming capabilities
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R513	30i-BP High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables D
A02B-0356-R513	31i-B5P High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables D
A02B-0357-R513	31i-BP High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables D

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

199

Interpolation Functions

High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables E

Features

Variables #2000000 to #4999999 (3,000,000 points) are assigned to the High-Speed Cycle Machining function, and may not be used for any other purpose.

Benefits

- Larger amounts of cycle data are made available to the High-Speed Cutting Command (G05).
- Enhances machine programming capabilities
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R469	30i-BP High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variable E
A02B-0356-R469	31i-B5P High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variable E
A02B-0357-R469	31i-BP High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables E

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

200

Interpolation Functions

High-Speed Cycle Machining Operation Information Output Function

Features

This function allows to output operation information to a PMC internal relay during high-speed cycle machining. The information can be used to coordinate subsequent processes and reduce the overall cycle time. The following operation information can be output to the PMC internal relay:

- Starting cycle no.
- Remaining count of repetitions per machining cycle
- Current cycle no.
- Remaining count of repetitions per cycle
- Current P-code variable no.
- Number of data items per cycle (setting data)
- Remaining number of data items per cycle

Benefits

- Reduce overall cycle time

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R609	30i-BP High-Speed Cycle Machinng Operation Information Output Function
A02B-0356-R609	31i-B5P High-Speed Cycle Machinng Operation Information Output Function
A02B-0357-R609	31i-BP High-Speed Cycle Machinng Operation Information Output Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

201

Interpolation Functions

General Purpose Retract

Features

In automatic operation mode or in manual operation mode, setting the retract signal RTRCT to 1 causes the General Purpose Retract function to capture the rise of this signal, causing the tool to move (retract) along the axis for which a retract amount is specified by parameter. After the end of retraction, the retract completion signal RTRCTF is output.

This function is intended to retract the tool from the workpiece immediately when a tool breakage is detected.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series and 0i-F Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Adds special retract function to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J997	0i-TFP General Purpose Retract
A02B-0350-J997	0i-MFP General Purpose Retract
A02B-0364-J997	PM i-A Plus General Purpose Retract

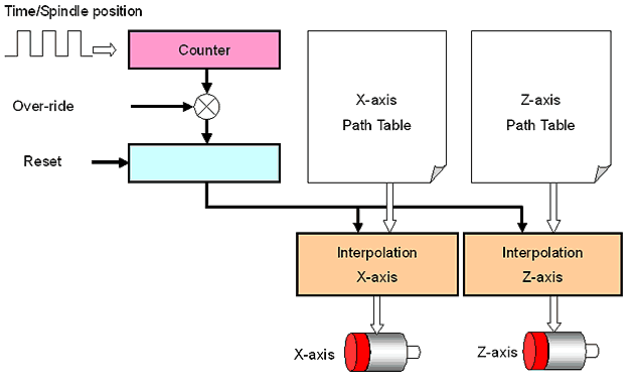
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

202

Interpolation Functions



Path Table Operation (PTO)

Features

The Path Table Operation function is an advanced machining method which interpolates each axis synchronized with the spindle, axis position or the time based on Tables.

It realizes free motions unbound from the NC program block, and can be used in applications such as swiss lathes or crankshaft pin-milling machines.

Benefits

- Adds advanced Path Table Operation function to the CNC
- Allows complex interpolations for advanced machining operations
- Provides a high surface quality on complex parts
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S886	30i-BP Path Table Operation
A02B-0356-S886	31i-B5P Path Table Operation
A02B-0357-S886	31i-BP Path Table Operation
A02B-0358-S886	32i-BP Path Table Operation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

203

Interpolation Functions

Spindle Speed Fluctuation Detection for Path Table Operation

Features

The conventional spindle speed fluctuation detection can be enabled or disabled by G code when executing an NC program, but it cannot be switched in Path Table Operation.

The Spindle Speed Fluctuation Detection for Path Table Operation enables or disables spindle speed fluctuation detection by commanding G code. As a result, the cutting failure caused by spindle speed fluctuation in Path Table Operation can be prevented.

Benefits

- Adds the capability to monitor spindle speed fluctuation to Path Table Operation
- Reduces the risk to produce bad parts without knowing it
- Simplifies startup and test of programs
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R605	30i-BP Spindle Speed Fluctuation Detection for Path Table Operation
A02B-0356-R605	31i-B5P Spindle Speed Fluctuation Detection for Path Table Operation
A02B-0357-R605	31i-BP Spindle Speed Fluctuation Detection for Path Table Operation
A02B-0358-R605	32i-BP Spindle Speed Fluctuation Detection for Path Table Operation

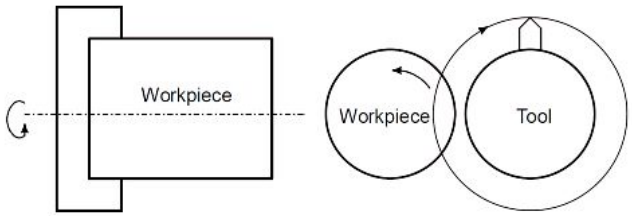
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

204

Interpolation Functions



Polygon Turning Function for Path Table Operation

Features

The Polygon Turning Function for Path Table Operation enables the polygon turning by the spindle and the tool rotating axis (servo axis).

Polygon turning means machining a workpiece to a polygonal figure by rotating the workpiece and tool at a certain ratio. By changing conditions that are rotation ratio of workpiece and tool and number of cutters, the workpiece can be machined to a square or hexagon. The machining time can be reduced as compared with polygonal figure machining using the polar coordinate interpolation. The machined figure, however, is not exactly polygonal.

Generally, polygon turning is used for the heads of square or hexagon bolts or nuts.

This function uses the spindle as the workpiece axis and the servo axis as the tool rotation axis.

Benefits

- Provides the polygon turning function to a lathe using Path Table Operation
- Simplifies the programming of lathe producing bolts and nuts
- Increases the productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R598	30i-BP Polygon Turning Function for Path Table Operation
A02B-0356-R598	31i-B5P Polygon Turning Function for Path Table Operation
A02B-0357-R598	31i-BP Polygon Turning Function for Path Table Operation
A02B-0358-R598	32i-BP Polygon Turning Function for Path Table Operation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Tool Offset Function for Path Table Operation

Features

This function provides the capability to specify Tool Offset with the path table operation of X-axis, Z-axis and Y-axis.

The value of tool geometry offset and tool wear offset in total is compensated when both tool geometry offset number and tool wear offset number are specified. When one side of the tool geometry offset number or the tool wear offset number is specified, only the specified tool offset is done.

Benefits

- Provides tool offset function to Path Table Operation
- Simplifies the programming
- Increases the productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R524	30i-BP Path Table Operation Position Compensation
A02B-0356-R524	31i-B5P Path Table Operation Position Compensation
A02B-0357-R524	31i-BP Path Table Operation Position Compensation
A02B-0358-R524	32i-BP Path Table Operation Position Compensation

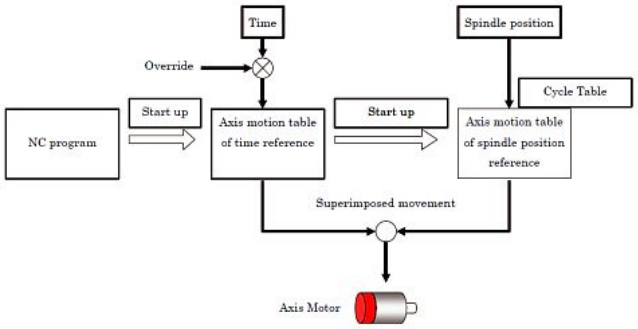
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

206

Interpolation Functions



Cycle Table Operation Function for Path Table Operation

Features

The axis motion table of spindle position reference can be started up as a "Cycle Table" from the axis motion table of time reference.

The movement commanded by the cycle table and the movement commended by the axis motion table of time reference are superimposed.

One cycle table can be specified in one axis motion table of time reference.

Benefits

- Provides interaction between axis and spindle movements
- Simplifies the programming
- Increases the productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R526	30i-BP Cycle Table Operation Function in Path Table Operation
A02B-0356-R526	31i-B5P Cycle Table Operation Function in Path Table Operation
A02B-0357-R526	31i-BP Cycle Table Operation Function in Path Table Operation
A02B-0358-R526	32i-BP Cycle Table Operation Function in Path Table Operation

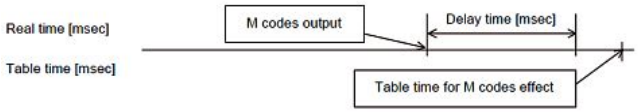
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

207

Interpolation Functions



Delay Time Setting Function of Auxiliary Function Output for PTO

Features

The Path Table Operation can output M codes, based on the Auxiliary Function Table synchronized with the time, the axis position or the spindle position.

When the Auxiliary Function Table is synchronized with the time, the output of the M codes are realized in real-time since the M codes outputted can be commanded with a "Delay Time".

The Path Table Operation outputs M codes earlier compared to the table time which takes in consideration the "Delay Time". Three M-codes can be output at once. The ordered M code is outputted according to each delay time.

Benefits

- Provides additional time synchronization for the auxiliary function
- Simplifies the programming
- Increases the productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R528	30i-BP Delay Time Setting Function of Auxiliary Function Output in Path Table Operation
A02B-0356-R528	31i-B5P Delay Time Setting Function of Auxiliary Function Output in Path Table Operation
A02B-0357-R528	31i-BP Delay Time Setting Function of Auxiliary Function Output in Path Table Operation
A02B-0358-R528	32i-BP Delay Time Setting Function of Auxiliary Function Output in Path Table Operation

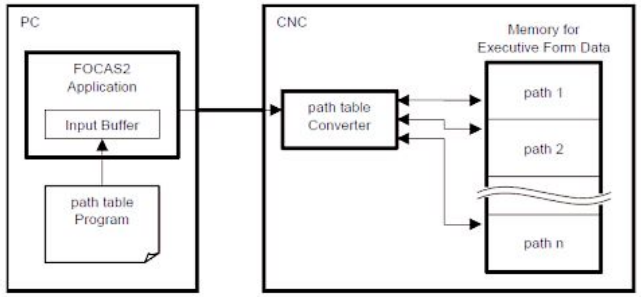
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

208

Interpolation Functions



Path Table Direct Conversion Function

Features

When a path table program in being executed on the machine, the Path Table Direct Conversion function can directly convert a path table program into another machining process.

It is not necessary to convert all path table programs for all planned machining process before the start of the operation; incremental path table programs can be converted at the same time the machining takes place. This reduces set-up time for the machine operation.

In addition, since it is also possible to delete path table program of a process that finished execution, the data memory of the CNC can be used efficiently.

Benefits

- Efficient management of path programs
- Reduction of memory requirement in the CNC
- Increase of machine efficiency and productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R545	30i-BP Path Table Operation Edit Support
A02B-0356-R545	31i-B5P Path Table Operation Edit Support
A02B-0357-R545	31i-BP Path Table Operation Edit Support
A02B-0358-R545	32i-BP Path Table Operation Edit Support

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

209

Interpolation Functions

High-Speed Signal Output Function for Path Table Operation

Features

This function enables to control outputs at a 0.5msec intervals as high-speed signal to the external equipments connected with I/O-Link i in Path Table Operation mode.

It is possible to control external equipments at high-speed in parallel to the Path Table Operation with this function.

Items	Specification
Output cycle	0.5 msec
Number of usable I/O-Link i channels	1
Maximum number of output signals	64 points in total for all paths
Maximum number of simultaneously output signals	20 points for all paths

Benefits

- High-speed control of external devices during Path Table Operation
- Possibility to design complex system combining high-speed outputs with complex PTO cycles

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R564	30i-BP High-Speed Signal Output Function for Path Table Operation
A02B-0356-R564	31i-B5P High-Speed Signal Output Function for Path Table Operation
A02B-0357-R564	31i-BP High-Speed Signal Output Function for Path Table Operation
A02B-0358-R564	32i-BP High-Speed Signal Output Function for Path Table Operation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

210

Interpolation Functions

Incremental Command for Path Table Operation

Features

In Path Table Operation, reference value or axis position are only specified in absolute commands.

The Incremental Command for Path Table Operation function provides the possibility to specify the reference values and each axis position corresponding to the reference values (time, axis position or spindle position) in incremental commands.

Benefits

- Possibility to change the mode of definition of the table
- Increases programming flexibility
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R580	30i-BP Path Table Operation Time Compensation
A02B-0356-R580	31i-B5P Path Table Operation Time Compensation
A02B-0357-R580	31i-BP Path Table Operation Time Compensation
A02B-0358-R580	32i-BP Path Table Operation Time Compensation

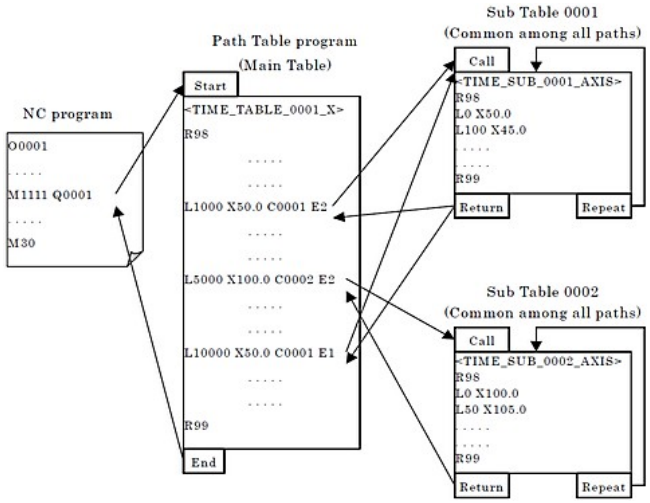
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

211

Interpolation Functions



Sub-Table Call for Path Table Operation

Features

When the same shape is machined repeatedly in Path Table Operation (PTO), it can be separated as a Sub Table by this function.

A Sub Table can be called from Path Table programs (Main Table) in arbitrary paths. Moreover, it is possible to execute the same Sub Table repeatedly by specifying the repeat count when the Sub Table is called.

The function simplifies the way Path Table programs are made and also reduces the memory usage allocated to Path Table programs.

Benefits

- Reduction of the memory usage allocated to Path Tables
- Simplifies the programming of repetitive operations
- Increase of the flexibility of Path Table Operation for complex systems
- Increase of the productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R618	30i-BP Path Table Operation - Table Expansion
A02B-0356-R618	31i-B5P Path Table Operation - Table Expansion
A02B-0357-R618	31i-BP Path Table Operation - Table Expansion
A02B-0358-R618	32i-BP Path Table Operation - Table Expansion

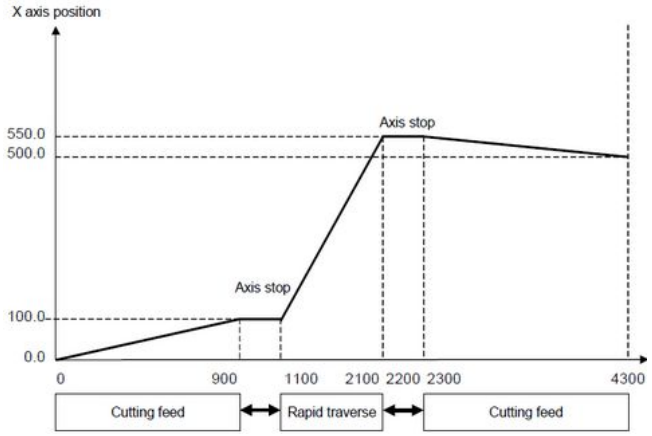
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

212

Interpolation Functions



Cutting/Rapid Switching Function for Path Table Operation

Features

In a regular NC program, separate parameters can be used to define cutting feed and rapid traverse. The parameters are switched according to the state of cutting feed / rapid traverse.

In the standard Path Table Operation (PTO) mode, parameters cannot be switched between cutting fieed and rapid traverse since only one cutting feed is supported.

In Path Table Operation mode, this function enables a switching between cutting feed and rapid traverse.

In path table operation, parameters such as backlash compensation can be switched because this function enables switching between cutting feed and rapid traverse. Both high-accuracy in cutting feed and high-speed in rapid traverse can be achieved as a consequence of an optimal parameter settings.

Cutting feed is specified by R60 command, and rapid traverse is specified by R61 command.

Example of program

```
TIME_TABLE_0001_X
R98;
L0 X0.0;
L900 X100.0;
L1100 X100.0 R61;
L2100 X550.0;
L2300 X550.0 R60;
L4300 X500.0;
:
R99;
```

Benefits

- Higher accuracy in Path Table Operation mode
- Decrease of the cycle time in Path Table Operation
- Overall increase of the productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R668	30i-BP Path Table Operation Axis Control Expansion

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0356-R668	31i-B5P Path Table Operation Axis Control Expansion
A02B-0357-R668	31i-BP Path Table Operation Axis Control Expansion
A02B-0358-R668	32i-BP Path Table Operation Axis Control Expansion

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

214
Interpolation Functions

Path Table Operation Execution Format Data Capacity 60MB

Features

This option expands the size of the DRAM area that stores Path Table Execution data from 7 MB to 60MB. This allows the operation of large path table programs, especially for high precision parts.
This option is only available on CPU Card G.

Benefits

- Expands the application range of the path table operation function

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R081	30i-BP Path Table Operation Execution Format Data Capacity 60MB
A02B-0356-R081	31i-B5P Path Table Operation Execution Format Data Capacity 60MB
A02B-0357-R081	31i-BP Path Table Operation Execution Format Data Capacity 60MB

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

215

Interpolation Functions

Path Table Operation Execution Data Size 20Mbyte

Features

This function expands the DRAM area size which stores the data for path table operation from 7 MB to 20 MB. This allows the operation of large path table programs.

Benefits

- Expands the application range of the path table operation function

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R727	30i-BP Path Table Operation Execution Data Size 20 MB
A02B-0356-R727	31i-B5P Path Table Operation Execution Data Size 20 MB
A02B-0357-R727	31i-BP Path Table Operation Execution Data Size 20 MB
A02B-0358-R727	32i-BP Path Table Operation Execution Data Size 20 MB

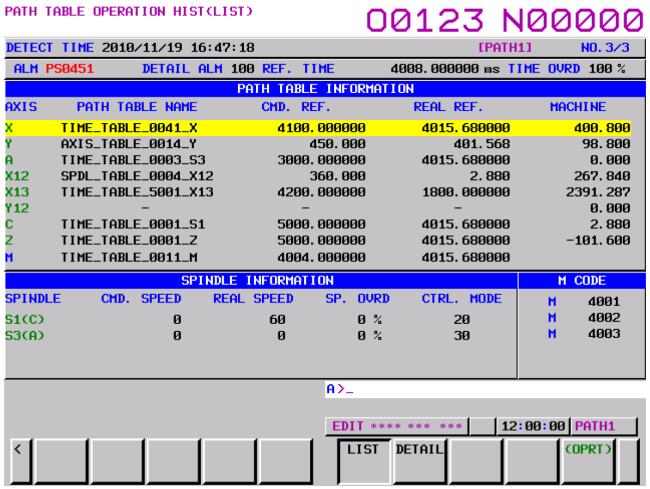
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

216

Interpolation Functions



Path Table Operation History Function

Features

This function enables to save information related to path table operation as history data in the moment an alarm is issued. The saved history data can be displayed to a CNC screen and can be output to an external device. The data can be accessed by FOCAS2 library functions and C-language library functions. This function facilitates the investigation of an alarm cause that is issued during path table operation.

Benefits

- Simplifies root cause investigation of failures and reduces down time

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R525	30i-BP Path Table Operation History Function
A02B-0356-R525	31i-B5P Path Table Operation History Function
A02B-0357-R525	31i-BP Path Table Operation History Function
A02B-0358-R525	32i-BP Path Table Operation History Function

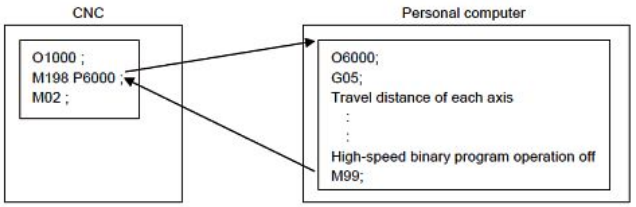
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

217

Interpolation Functions



High-Speed Binary Program Operation

Features

The high-speed binary program operation is the function to execute an external program written in binary format and stored on an external device (Data Server or a Personal Computer connected to the CNC via HSSB).

DNC operation or external subprogram call (M198) can be used to use the function.

The number of axes, paths and the execution time depend on the CNC type and configuration. Refer to the function manual for additional information.

Benefits

- Provides the capability to execute binary programs
- Possibility to transfer complex shapes and programs with high-speed to the CNC
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R516	30i-BP High-Speed Binary Program Operation
A02B-0356-R516	31i-B5P High-Speed Binary Program Operation
A02B-0357-R516	31i-BP High-Speed Binary Program Operation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

218

Interpolation Functions

High-Speed Binary Program Operation on 2-Path Control

Features

This function allows to execute the high-speed binary program operation on 2 paths. It is possible to start the high-speed binary program operation on both paths at the same time.

Benefits

- Expands the application range of the high-speed binary program operation function

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S814	30i-BP High-Speed Binary Program Operation on 2-Path Control
A02B-0356-S814	31i-B5P High-Speed Binary Program Operation on 2-Path Control
A02B-0357-S814	31i-BP High-Speed Binary Program Operation on 2-Path Control

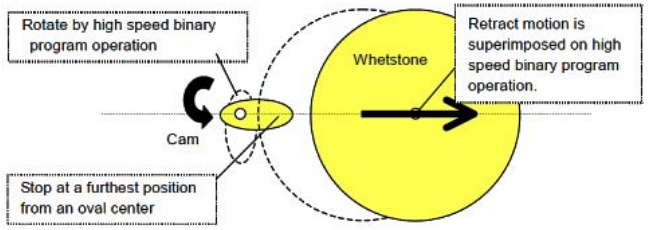
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

219

Interpolation Functions



High-Speed Binary Program Operation Retract Function

Features

This function allows, in case of sudden and unexpected machine problem, to stop the machining process safely during the execution of high-speed binary program.

The retract operation is done on each axis when the retract signal is received during execution of the high speed binary program operation; it forces the high speed binary program operation to stop with a controlled deceleration. After this, the program is reset after retraction.

Benefits

- Provides the capability to stop safely and smoothly a high-speed binary operation
- Improves the protection of tools and fixtures
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S658	30i-BP High-Speed Binary Program Operation Retract Function
A02B-0356-S658	31i-B5P High-Speed Binary Program Operation Retract Function
A02B-0357-S658	31i-BP High-Speed Binary Program Operation Retract Function

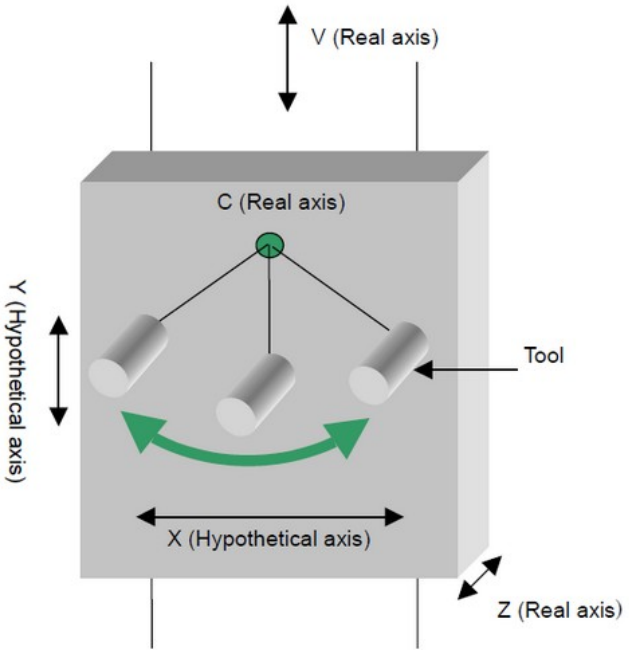
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

220

Interpolation Functions



Hypothetical Linear Axis Interpolation

Features

With the Hypothetical Linear Axis Interpolation function, a machine having two linear axes and one rotary axis can be controlled as a normal X-Y-Z axes machine.

In this case, 3-dimensional positioning and interpolation functions are available. The linear axis not having a real axis becomes a hypothetical axis and it is necessary that hypothetical axis is set as one of CNC controlled axes.

Example

On the figure, the machine pictured needs two hypothetical axes and three real axes, so the number of CNC control axes is five. X-Y-Z command in direct coordinate is available in the hypothetical axis command mode and the command for the real axis, for example V-Z-C command, is available in real axis command mode.

The hypothetical axis command mode signal IMMD provides the possibility to switch between the hypothetical axis command mode and real axis command mode. Both modes are effective in both automatic operation mode and manual mode. The rotation axis cannot be set to Cs contouring control axis.

Benefits

- Simplifies the programming of complex machine configuration
- Overall increase of the machine productivity and effciency

Ordering Information

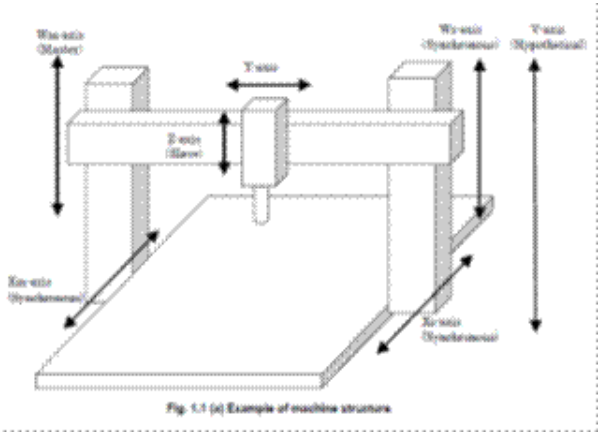
Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S968	30i-BP Hypothetical Linear Axis Control
A02B-0356-S968	31i-B5P Hypothetical Linear Axis Control
A02B-0357-S968	31i-BP Hypothetical Linear Axis Control
A02B-0358-S968	32i-BP Hypothetical Linear Axis Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

221
Interpolation Functions



Cross Rail Axis Control

Features

This function controls two parallel axes, coupled directly (e.g. telescopic axis) or indirectly (e.g. via cross rail). Such architecture is controlled by a single axis command.

Benefits

- Support of special axes architectures comprising two linked, parallel axes.
- Easy Programming by single axis command
- Supports most features including 5-axis features
- This function cannot be specified together with Parallel Axis Control (-R509)

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-R415	0i-MFP Cross Rail Axis Control
A02B-0353-R415	30i-BP Cross Rail Axis Control
A02B-0356-R415	31i-B5P Cross Rail Axis Control
A02B-0357-R415	31i-BP Cross Rail Axis Control
A02B-0358-R415	32i-BP Cross Rail Axis Control
A02B-0359-R415	30i-LBP Cross Rail Axis Control
A02B-0360-R415	31i-LBP Cross Rail Axis Control

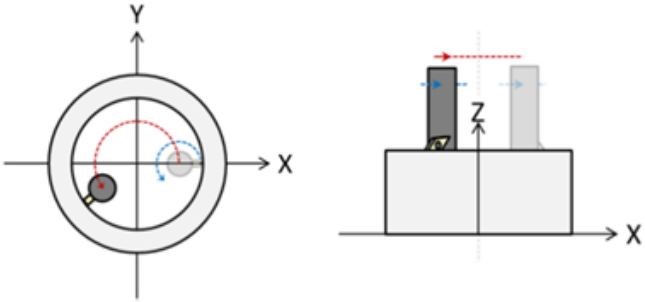
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

222

Interpolation Functions



Orbit Cutting

Features

Orbit Cutting adds turning functionality to machining centers. It synchronizes the orientation of the tool with the tool position on the XY plane. Orbit Cutting keeps the cutting edge of the tool always perpendicular to the surface of the workpiece.

Orbit Cutting enables you to machine your part on one machine, no transfer from a machining center to a lathe is necessary anymore. You can achieve the required surface quality with Orbit Cutting on a machining center.

Benefits

- Milling and turning on one machine
- Perform boring machining of different diameters with just one tool
- Simplifies programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R083	0i-TFP Orbit Cutting
A02B-0350-R083	0i-MFP Orbit Cutting
A02B-0353-R083	30i-BP Orbit Cutting
A02B-0356-R083	31i-B5P Orbit Cutting
A02B-0357-R083	31i-BP Orbit Cutting
A02B-0358-R083	32i-BP Orbit Cutting

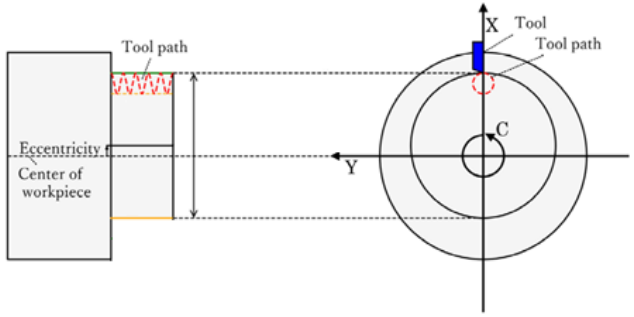
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

223

Interpolation Functions



Eccentric Turning

Features

Eccentric Turning controls a spindle and two linear axes so that the cirular interpolation of the linear axes are synchronized with the spindle rotation. With this function, it is possible to turn e.g. a pin that is not centered on the center of the workpiece. Eccentric turning can be realized easily with a G code, simplifying the programming for eccentric turning.

Benefits

- Simple programming of eccentric features on lathes

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R082	0i-TFP Eccentric Turning
A02B-0353-R082	30i-BP Eccentric Turning
A02B-0356-R082	31i-B5P Eccentric Turning
A02B-0357-R082	31i-BP Eccentric Turning
A02B-0358-R082	32i-BP Eccentric Turning

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

224

Interpolation Functions

Thread Cutting

The following section contains functions related to Thread Cutting.

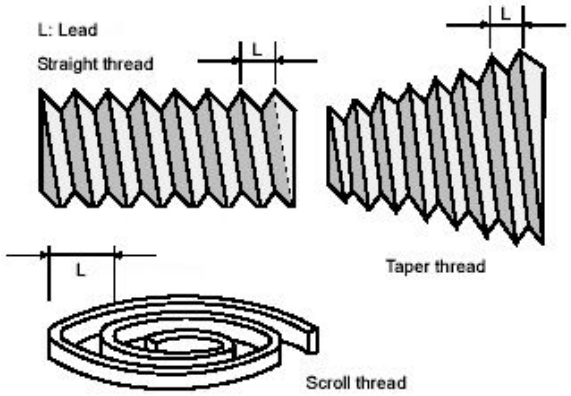
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

225

Thread Cutting



Thread Cutting, Synchronous Cutting

Features

When feeding the tool in synchronization with the spindle rotation a threading of the specified lead can be performed with the Thread Cutting / Synchronous Cutting function.

In addition to straight threads, taper threads and scroll threads can be cut with equal leads. The spindle encoder is used to accurately initiate axis motion.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (all Types except 0i-MF Plus Type 5).

Benefits

- Allows thread cutting on large holes, with single point tooling
- Accurate machining on multiple threading passes

Ordering Information

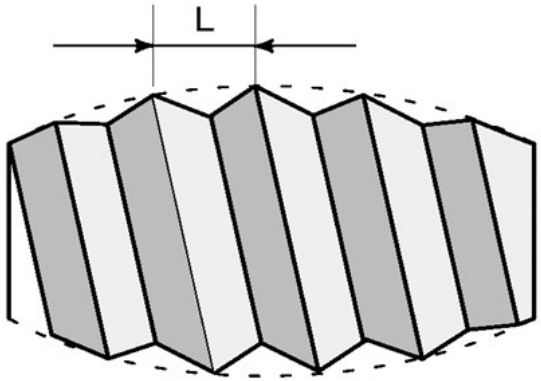
Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J824	0i-MFP Thread Cutting, Synchronous Cutting
A02B-0353-J824	30i-BP Thread Cutting / Synchronous Cutting
A02B-0356-J824	31i-B5P Thread Cutting / Synchronous Cutting
A02B-0357-J824	31i-BP Thread Cutting / Synchronous Cutting
A02B-0358-J824	32i-BP Thread Cutting / Synchronous Cutting

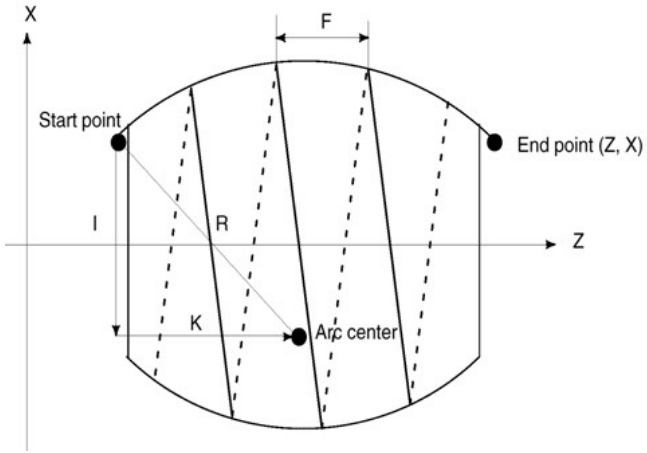
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

226
Thread Cutting





Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Circular Thread Cutting

Features

Allows threading of circular surfaces such as cylinder. Easy to program with simple G code (G35 and G36)

Benefits

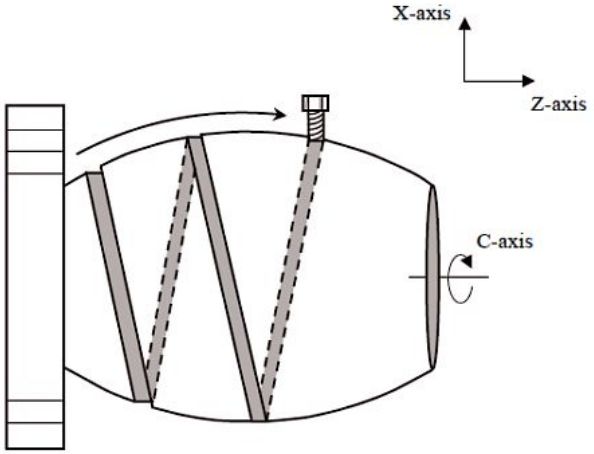
- Adds advanced capabilities for thread cutting to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J731	0i-TFP Circular Thread Cutting
A02B-0353-J731	30i-BP Circular Thread Cutting
A02B-0356-J731	31i-B5P Circular Thread Cutting
A02B-0357-J731	31i-BP Circular Thread Cutting
A02B-0358-J731	32i-BP Circular Thread Cutting

227

Thread Cutting



Circular Thread Cutting B

Features

The Circular Thread Cutting B function performs circular interpolation according to the feed rate of the major axis, which has longer travelling distance. At the same time, up to two axes can be interpolated in proportion to the feed rate of the major axis.

This circular threading function does not move a tool in synchronization with the rotation of the spindle(workpiece) using the spindle motor.

This function controls workpiece rotation using a servo motor(rotation axis) to perform threading at equal pitches along cylindrical material, grooving, and tool grinding.

Benefits

- Adds additional advanced thread cutting capabilities to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R631	30i-BP Circular Thread Cutting B
A02B-0356-R631	31i-B5P Circular Thread Cutting B
A02B-0357-R631	31i-BP Circular Thread Cutting B

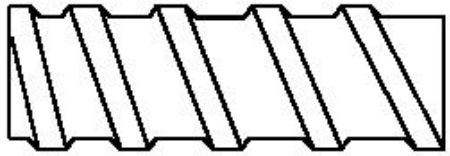
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

228

Thread Cutting



Variable lead screw

Variable Lead Thread Cutting

Features

This function allows while specifying an increment or a decrement value for a lead per screw revolution a variable lead threading to be performed.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus.

Benefits

- Adds additional advanced threading capabilities to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J827	30i-BP Variable Lead Thread Cutting
A02B-0356-J827	31i-B5P Variable Lead Thread Cutting
A02B-0357-J827	31i-BP Variable Lead Thread Cutting
A02B-0358-J827	32i-BP Variable Lead Thread Cutting

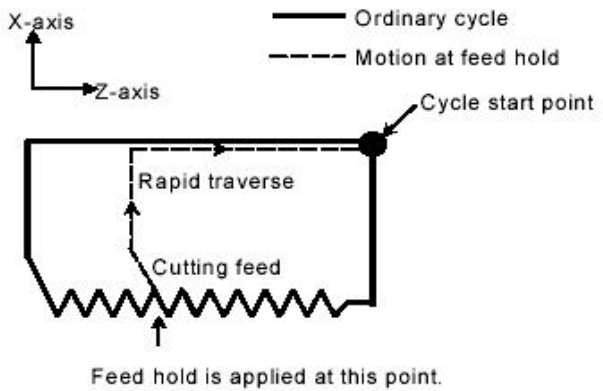
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

229

Thread Cutting



Thread Cutting Retract

Features

Threading Retract (Canned Cycle)

Feed hold may be applied during threading. In this case, the tool immediately retracts with chamfering and returns to the start point on the second axis (X-axis), then the first axis (Z-axis) on the plane.

The amount of chamfering during retraction is the same as that of chamfering at the end point.

Threading Retract (Multiple Repetitive Cycle)

If feed hold is applied during threading in the multiple repetitive threading cycle (G76), chamfering for threading is performed and the tool returns to the threading cycle start point and stops. If a cycle start operation is performed here, machining restarts with the threading cycle to which feed hold was applied.

The amount of chamfering during retraction is the same as that of chamfering at the end point.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus.

Benefits

- Adds additional modes to the thread cutting operation
- Simplifies programming and restart
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J825	30i-BP Thread Cutting Retract
A02B-0356-J825	31i-B5P Thread Cutting Retract
A02B-0357-J825	31i-BP Thread Cutting Retract
A02B-0358-J825	32i-BP Thread Cutting Retract

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

230
Thread Cutting

Thread Start Position Compensation for Changing Spindle Speed

Features

The thread cutting is correctly performed by this function even if the spindle override is changed in the interval of the thread cutting performing.

The spindle override can be changed only while the thread cutting is not performed.

Benefits

- Reduction of the cycle time
- Increase of the machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S946	30i-BP Thread Start Position Compensation in Changing Spindle Speed Function
A02B-0356-S946	31i-B5P Thread Start Position Compensation in Changing Spindle Speed Function
A02B-0357-S946	31i-BP Thread Start Position Compensation in Changing Spindle Speed Function
A02B-0358-S946	32i-BP Thread Start Position Compensation in Changing Spindle Speed Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

231
Thread Cutting

Threading Start Position Shift Function for Path Table Operation

Features

In Path Table Operation, this function can command the spindle position at the start of threading with a custom macro common variable.

In this case, the spindle position can be changed simply by changing a variable value, and it is unnecessary to reconvert the Path Table programs.

Benefits

- Adds the capability to use macro variable position the spindle on threading operation
- Simplifies programming and avoids the conversion of the table when a value is changed
- Increases productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

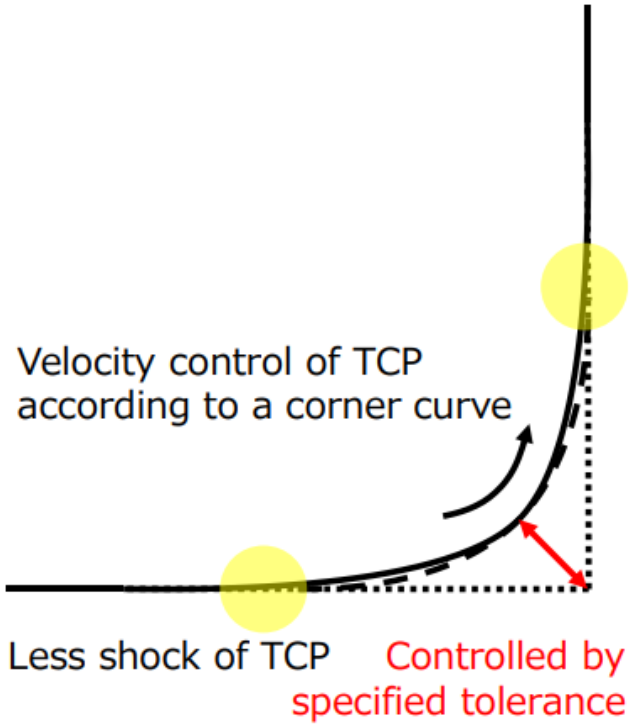
Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R599	30i-BP Threading Start Position Shift Function for Path Table Operation
A02B-0356-R599	31i-B5P Threading Start Position Shift Function for Path Table Operation
A02B-0357-R599	31i-BP Threading Start Position Shift Function for Path Table Operation
A02B-0358-R599	32i-BP Threading Start Position Shift Function for Path Table Operation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Smart Corner Control



Features

Smart Corner Control smoothly connects program command paths by inserting smooth curves at corners and at connections to circular interpolation segments. There are two modes for Smart Corner control: In Tolerance Specified Mode, the deviation between the program command path and the inserted curve can be specified directly as parameter or by program command. In Tolerance Auto-setting Mode, the tolerance is determined automatically. The tolerance maintains the same degree of deviation as the Acceleration/Deceleration after Interpolation function.

This function allows machining with higher speed, higher precision and less shock at corners, especially in the field of laser processing and high-speed parts processing.

Benefits

- Allows machining with higher speed, higher precision and less shock at corners

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-R054	0i-MFP Smart Corner Control
A02B-0353-R054	30i-BP Smart Corner Control
A02B-0356-R054	31i-B5P Smart Corner Control
A02B-0357-R054	31i-BP Smart Corner Control
A02B-0359-R054	30i-LBP Smart Corner Control
A02B-0360-R054	31i-LBP Smart Corner Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

233

Interpolation Functions

Eccentric Turning / Orbit Cutting Learning Control

Features

Eccentric Turning / Orbit Cutting Learning Control applies angle-based Learning Control to Eccentric Turning or Orbit Cutting. This improves machining precision, because periodic disturbances are suppressed by Learning Control. Learning Control can be tuned manually, or using the tuning navigator of SERVO GUIDE Plus.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R349	30i-BP Eccentric Turning / Orbit Cutting Learning Control
A02B-0356-R349	31i-B5P Eccentric Turning / Orbit Cutting Learning Control
A02B-0357-R349	31i-BP Eccentric Turning / Orbit Cutting Learning Control
A02B-0358-R349	32i-BP Eccentric Turning / Orbit Cutting Learning Control

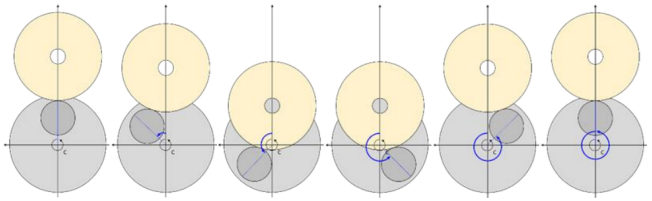
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

234

Interpolation Functions



Eccentric Grinding

Features

Eccentric Grinding allows you to grind eccentric workpieces, like e.g. crankshafts. It is also possible to grind eccentric workpieces with a taper. Programming of Eccentric Grinding can be done easily with a dedicated G-code.

Benefits

- Simple programming of eccentric features on grinding machines

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R108	0i-TFP Eccentric Grinding Function
A02B-0353-R108	30i-BP Eccentric Grinding Function
A02B-0356-R108	31i-B5P Eccentric Grinding Function
A02B-0357-R108	31i-BP Eccentric Grinding Function
A02B-0358-R108	32i-BP Eccentric Grinding Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

235

Interpolation Functions

Polygon Turning by Cs Contour Control

Features

Polygon Turning For Cs Contour Control enables the following feature: Polygon Turning by ISO program (G51.2) is available on the condition that tool rotary axis is controlled by a servo motor and workpiece axis is controlled by a serial spindle motor, which is controlled by Spindle Control with Cs Contour Control.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R570	30i-BP Polygon Turning by CS Contour Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Feed Functions

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to the CNC motion (feed functions) enabling the control of the movement of the axes in the machine.

Feed functions, like Advanced Preview Control, AI Contour Control I and II provide high-speed contouring capabilities. Acceleration / deceleration options protect the machine from the shocks of sudden starts and stops. They work in concert with the AI Contour Control functions to provide high-speed, high-precision machining capabilities.

Some of the feed functions detailed in the catalogue:

- Optimum torque acceleration / deceleration
- Positioning by optimum acceleration
- Bell-shaped acc / dec after cutting feed interpolation
- Advanced Preview Control
- AI Contour Control
- High Speed Processing
- Jerk Control
- Etc.

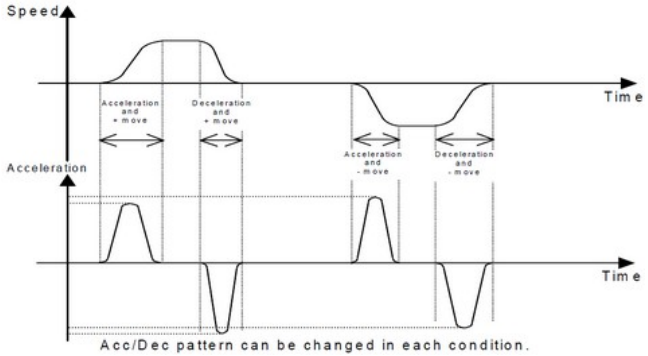
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

237

Feed Functions



Optimum Torque Acceleration/Deceleration

Features

This Optimum Torque Acceleration / Deceleration function enables optimal Rapid Traverse acceleration / deceleration during AI Contour Control I (AICC-I), AI Contour Control II (AICC-II), AI High Precision Contour Control (AI HPCC) and AI Nano High Precision Contour Control (AI Nano HPCC) modes.

The machine axis friction, gravity, and servomotor characteristics all have an impact on the acceleration / deceleration performance of each machine axis. In addition, the servomotor torque required for axis acceleration / deceleration differs according to the axis movement direction and whether the axis is accelerating or decelerating.

With this function, it is possible to set appropriate CNC parameters defining individual axis direction-dependant acceleration and deceleration limits. During AICC-I, AICC-II, AI HPCC and AI NANO HPCC modes, the CNC automatically optimizes the rapid traverse acceleration and deceleration rates in accordance to these parameters settings, and the current direction and acceleration mode of the machine axes. The Optimum Torque Acceleration/ Deceleration function optimizes the capability of each motor / axis performance resulting in faster axis positioning (rapid traverse) and reduced overall cycle time.

Benefits

- Optimization of the rapid traverse performance of each axis
- Reduction of the axis positioning time and overall machining time.
- Overall improvement of the machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S675	0i-TFP Optimum Torque Acceleration / Deceleration
A02B-0350-S675	0i-MFP Optimum Torque Acceleration / Deceleration
A02B-0353-S675	30i-BP Optimum Torques Acceleration / Deceleration
A02B-0356-S675	31i-B5P Optimum Torques Acceleration / Deceleration
A02B-0357-S675	31i-BP Optimum Torques Acceleration / Deceleration
A02B-0358-S675	32i-BP Optimum Torques Acceleration / Deceleration
A02B-0359-S675	30i-LB Plus Optimum Torques Acceleration / Deceleration
A02B-0360-S675	31i-LB Plus Optimum Torques Acceleration / Deceleration
A02B-0362-S675	31i-PB Plus Optimum Torques Acceleration / Deceleration
A02B-0364-S675	PM i-A Plus Optimum Torques Acceleration / Deceleration

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Positioning by Optimum Acceleration

Features

When a rapid traverse command is specified during automatic operation, the Positioning by Optimum Acceleration function can be used to adjust the rapid traverse rate, time constant, and loop gain, according to the amount of travel for the block.

This reduces the time required for positioning and position check, therefore reducing the overall cycle time.

Benefits

- Optimization of rapid traverse (G00) positioning
- Reduction of machining cycle time
- Improvement of the productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J693	0i-TFP Positioning by Optimum Acceleration
A02B-0350-J693	0i-MFP Positioning by Optimum Acceleration
A02B-0353-J693	30i-BP Position by Optimum Acceleration
A02B-0356-J693	31i-B5P Position by Optimum Acceleration
A02B-0357-J693	31i-BP Position by Optimum Acceleration
A02B-0358-J693	32i-BP Position by Optimum Acceleration
A02B-0359-J693	30i-LB Plus Position by Optimum Acceleration
A02B-0360-J693	31i-LB Plus Position by Optimum Acceleration
A02B-0364-J693	PM i-A Plus Plus Position by Optimum Acceleration

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

239

Feed Functions

2nd Feedrate Override

Features

The Second Feedrate Override function allows cutting feedrates that have been overridden once to be overridden a second time.

The override is done in a percentage from 0 to 254% in increments of 1%. The value is set from the PMC. No override can be performed on functions such as threading and tapping in which override is inhibited. This function is used for controlling feedrate in adaptive control, etc.

Benefits

- Adds additional override capabilities to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J810	0i-TFP 2nd Feedrate Override
A02B-0350-J810	0i-MFP 2nd Feedrate Override
A02B-0353-J810	30i-BP 2nd Feedrate Override
A02B-0356-J810	31i-B5P 2nd Feedrate Override
A02B-0357-J810	31i-BP 2nd Feedrate Override
A02B-0358-J810	32i-BP 2nd Feedrate Override
A02B-0359-J810	30i-LB Plus 2nd Feedrate Override
A02B-0360-J810	31i-LB Plus 2nd Feedrate Override
A02B-0362-J810	31i-PB Plus 2nd Feedrate Override

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

240
Feed Functions

High-Speed Feedrate Override

Features

This function allows to apply a feedrate override with an accelerated response. The CNC reads the high-speed feedrate override signals directly from the machine side without using the PMC. This function is useful for applications that demand a quick response, e.g. press machines.

Benefits

- Improves the response time to feedrate change commands

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R536	PM i-A Plus High-Speed Feedrate Override

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

241
Feed Functions

One-Digit F-Code Feed

Features

The One-Digit F-Code Feed function provides the ability to preset 9 feed rates that are stored in parameters and activated by programming F1 through F9.

The feed rate corresponding to the specified number is set. When F0 is commanded, rapid traverse rate is set. If the manual pulse generator is rotated with the one-digit F code feed selection signal set to 1, the feed rate corresponding to the currently selected number is increased or decreased. A set or modified feed rate is preserved while the power is turned off.

The current feed rate is displayed on the screen.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3) and 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Adds preset capabilities to manage/control easily feedrates sets to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J820	0i-MFP One-Digit F-Code Feed
A02B-0353-J820	30i-BP F1-Digit Feed
A02B-0356-J820	31i-B5P F1-Digit Feed
A02B-0357-J820	31i-BP F1-Digit Feed
A02B-0358-J820	32i-BP F1-Digit Feed

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

242

Feed Functions

Inverse Time Feed

Features

The G code for inverse time feed is a modal G code and belongs to group 05 (includes G code for feed per revolution and G code for feed per minute). The Inverse Time Feed function (G93 mode) allows the feedrate of the tool to be specified by the move distance of the block and inverse time (FRN) where:

- **Linear interpolation (G01)**
  FRN=1/Time (min) = Speed/Distance
  Speed: mm/ min (metric input), inch/ min (inch input)
  Distance: mm (metric input), inch (inch input)
- **Circular interpolation (G02, G03)**
  FRN=1/Time (min) = Speed/Circle radius
  Speed: mm/ min (metric input), inch/ min (inch input)
  Circle radius: mm (metric input), inch (inch input)

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 0, Type 1).

Benefits

- Adds inverse time capabilities to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J715	0i-MFP Inverse Time Feed
A02B-0353-J715	30i-BP Inverse Time Feed
A02B-0356-J715	31i-B5P Inverse Time Feed
A02B-0357-J715	31i-BP Inverse Time Feed
A02B-0358-J715	32i-BP Inverse Time Feed

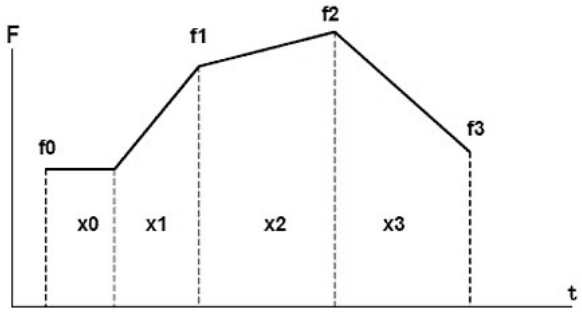
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

243

Feed Functions



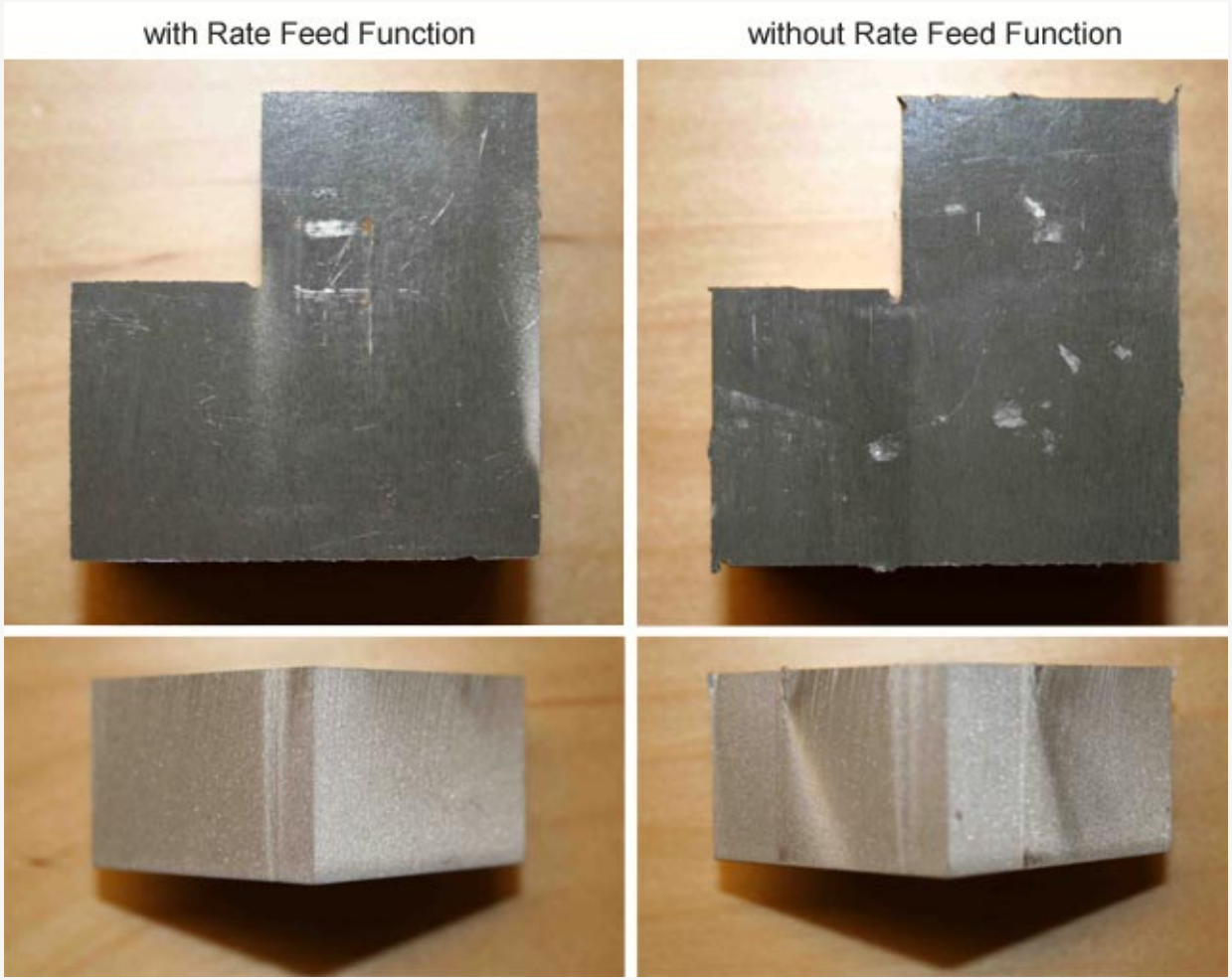

```
N10   G01    Xx0   Ff0   ;
N20   G93.2  Xx1   Ff1   ;
N30          Xx2   Ff2   ;
N40          Xx3   Ff3   ;
```

Rate Feed

Features

This function enables to continually increase / decrease (linear) the feedrate within a block. While considering the feedrate of the previous block as the start value and specifying the value of the feedrate at the end of the block, the feedrate is changed linearly from start value to the end value within the block commanded.

Example of application



Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

244

On water jet cutting machines, the water jet following error is essential to smoothly adjust the feedrate / to take corners and thus improve the cutting behaviour. Without this function it would be necessary to command a lot of tiny blocks to adapt the feedrate profile as needed.

Benefits

- Possibility to program continuously smooth speed characteristics depending on the curvature of the workpiece to be machined
- Improvement of the cutting behaviour for water jet applications
- Improvement of the slide motion resulting in bether part quality for press forming applications
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R635	30i-BP Rate Feed Function
A02B-0356-R635	31i-B5P Rate Feed Function
A02B-0357-R635	31i-BP Rate Feed Function
A02B-0358-R635	32i-BP Rate Feed Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

External Deceleration

Features

The External Deceleration function provides the ability for the PMC to decelerate a controlled axis.

The feed rate is decelerated by external deceleration signals from the machine. The deceleration rate is set by parameters. External deceleration signals are provided for each axis and direction. Three types of deceleration condition settings can be dynamically selected by the PMC.

External deceleration can be applied to the rapid traverse rate, cutting feed rate, and manual handle feed rate.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Addition of controlled deceleration profiles to the CNC
- Simplifies programming
- Improves overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-J842	PM i-A Plus External Deceleration

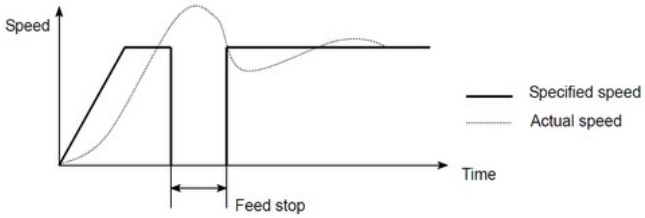
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

246

Feed Functions



Feed Stop

Features

The Feed Stop function can avoid shocks to the machine, caused by the overshoot of a large servo motor accelerating in rapid traverse mode.

During axis motion, the feed stop function checks a position deviation amount continuously. When the amount exceeds the "feed stop position deviation amount", the function suspends pulse distribution and acceleration / deceleration control during such a period of time, and terminates the move command for the positioning control circuit.

Thus the function can minimize any overshoot that may occur with a large servo motor in rapid traverse acceleration operation.

Benefits

- Reduction of the shocks to machine and process
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J847	30i-BP Feed Stop Function
A02B-0356-J847	31i-B5P Feed Stop Function
A02B-0357-J847	31i-BP Feed Stop Function
A02B-0358-J847	32i-BP Feed Stop Function
A02B-0359-J847	30i-LB Plus Feed Stop Function
A02B-0360-J847	31i-LB Plus Feed Stop Function
A02B-0362-J847	31i-PB Plus Feed Stop Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

247
Feed Functions

Speed Control with Acceleration in Circular Interpolation

Features

When high-speed cutting is performed in circular, helical or spiral interpolation, the actual tool path has an error with respect to the programmed path.

The feedrate of circular interpolation is automatically clamped by the permissible acceleration specified by the parameter for decreasing the shape error of radius direction.

Benefits

- Diminution of the tool-path error in circular, helical and spiral interpolation
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J809	30i-BP Speed Control with Acceleration in Circular Interpolation
A02B-0356-J809	31i-B5P Speed Control with Acceleration in Circular Interpolation
A02B-0357-J809	31i-BP Speed Control with Acceleration in Circular Interpolation
A02B-0358-J809	32i-BP Speed Control with Acceleration in Circular Interpolation
A02B-0364-J809	PM i-A Plus Speed Control with Acceleration in Circular Interpolation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Advanced Preview Control

Features

The Advanced Preview Control function is designed for high–speed precise machining. With this function, the delay due to acceleration / deceleration and the delay in the servo system that increases as the feed rate becomes higher can be suppressed.

The tool can then follow specified values accurately and errors in the machining profile can be reduced. In advanced preview control mode, the following functions are available:

- Linear acceleration / deceleration before interpolation
- Automatic corner deceleration function

Benefits

- Optimization of the machining speed using smooth acceleration / deceleration to minimize axis-overshoot errors.
- Decrease of the part-form tolerances suppressing acceleration / deceleration delays and servo lag
- Elimination of corner-clipping errors that typically increase as the feedrate increases

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0362-R678	31i-PB Plus Advanced Preview Control
A02B-0364-R678	PM i-A Plus Advanced Preview Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

AI Contour Control I

Features

AI Contour Control I^{+} (AICC-I^{+}) is used to realize high-precision machining at optimal machining speeds. This function suppresses path errors due to acceleration/deceleration delay, servo positioning delay, and mechanical and electro-mechanical machine performance constraints.

Without this function machining profile errors would increase proportionally with the programmed path feedrate.

In practice, this function is useful when cutting on complex part forms involving sudden cutter direction changes such as are found in die/mold machining.

Benefits

- Optimization of the machining speeds using smooth acceleration / deceleration to minimize axis-overshoot errors.
- Decrease of the part-form tolerances suppressing acceleration / deceleration delays and servo lag
- Elimination of corner-clipping errors that typically increase as the feedrate increases

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J665	0i-TFP AI Contour Control I
A02B-0353-S807	30i-BP AI Contour Control I (AICC I)
A02B-0356-S807	31i-B5P AI Contour Control I (AICC I)
A02B-0357-S807	31i-BP AI Contour Control I (AICC I)
A02B-0358-S807	32i-BP AI Contour Control I (AICC I)
A02B-0362-S807	31i-PB Plus AI Contour Control I (AICC I)
A02B-0364-S807	PM i-A Plus AI Contour Control I (AICC I)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

250
Feed Functions

AI Contour Control II

Features

AI Contour Control II^{+} is used to enable high-precision machining at optimal machining speeds. This function suppresses path errors due to acceleration / deceleration delay, servo positioning delay, and mechanical and electro-mechanical machine performance constraints.

Without this function, machining profile errors would increase proportionally with the programmed path feedrate. In practice, this function is useful when cutting on complex part forms involving sudden cutter direction changes such as are found in die / mold machining.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3) and 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Optimization of machining speeds using smooth acceleration / deceleration to minimize axis-overshoot errors
- Decrease of part-form tolerances suppressing acceleration / deceleration delays and servo lag
- Elimination of corner-clipping errors that typically increase as the feedrate increases.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S808	0i-TFP AI Contour Control II
A02B-0353-S808	30i-BP AI Contour Control II (AICC II)
A02B-0356-S808	31i-B5P AI Contour Control II (AICC II)
A02B-0357-S808	31i-BP AI Contour Control II (AICC II)
A02B-0358-S808	32i-BP AI Contour Control II (AICC II)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

251
Feed Functions

Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion of AICC II

Features

This function expands the number of look-ahead blocks for AI contour control II from 200 blocks to 400 blocks. This function cannot be specified together with the high-speed processing option.

Benefits

- Enables high-precision machining on cutting complex part-forms that are defined by many, tiny, program blocks such as are found in die/mold machining.
- The more look-ahead blocks the control can preview, the greater the chance it has of predicting a cutter direction change.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R468	30i-BP Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion of AI Contour Control II
A02B-0356-R468	31i-B5P Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion of AI Contour Control II
A02B-0357-R468	31i-BP Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion of AI Contour Control II
A02B-0358-R468	32i-BP Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion of AI Contour Control II

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Maximum Look-Ahead Blocks 400

Features

This option expands the number of look-ahead blocks for AI contour control II from 200 blocks to 400 blocks. This option is only applicable to FANUC 0i-MF Plus series.

Benefits

- Enables high-precision machining on cutting complex part-forms that are defined by many, tiny, program blocks such as are found in die/mold machining.
- The more look-ahead blocks the control can preview, the greater the chance it has of predicting a cutter direction change.
- In a 2-path system, the number of look-ahead blocks is 400 blocks in path 1 and 5 blocks in path 2

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-R386	0i-MFP Look-Ahead Blocks 400

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

253

Feed Functions

High-Speed Processing

Features

The High-Speed Processing function improves both the CNC Block Processing Time and the NC block look-ahead capability of the option AI Contour Control II.

Benefits

- Enables higher precision machining of complex free-form surfaces described by minute micro-block moves.
- Optimization of the machining speed of complex free-form surfaces described by minute micro-block moves.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S809	30i-BP High-Speed Processing
A02B-0356-S809	31i-B5P High-Speed Processing
A02B-0357-S809	31i-BP High-Speed Processing
A02B-0358-S809	32i-BP High-Speed Processing

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion

Features

When performing High-Speed Processing with AI Contour Control II, this function expands the CNC look-ahead capability to 1,000 CNC Part Program Blocks.

Benefits

- Enables a higher-precision machining on cutting complex part-forms that are defined by many, tiny, program blocks such as are found in die/mold machining.
- The more look-ahead blocks the control can preview, the greater the chance it has of predicting a cutter direction change.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S815	30i-BP Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion
A02B-0356-S815	31i-B5P Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion
A02B-0357-S815	31i-BP Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion

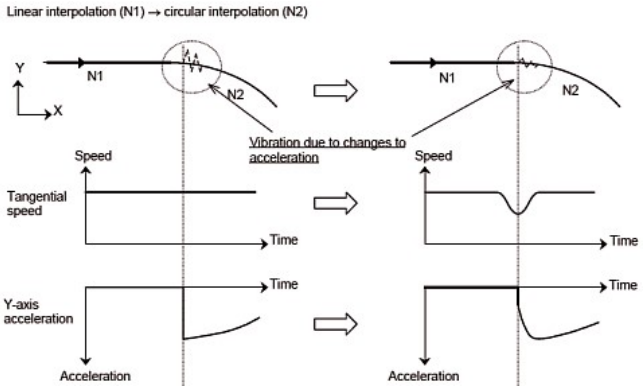
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

255

Feed Functions



Jerk Control

Features

Whereas the rate-of-change of velocity is referred to as Acceleration, the rate-of-change of acceleration is technically known as Jerk. Jerk is therefore the third derivative of Position, with Acceleration the second and Velocity the first.

Wherever a part program causes a significant change in cutter-path direction, such as in a transition from a straight line to curve, any axis acceleration that is required to maintain a constant cutter-path vector feedrate through that transition may cause vibration or shock to be induced into the machine structure.

The Jerk Control function can be used to reduce shock and any resultant position error from sudden axis acceleration. Jerk Control temporarily modifies the cutter-path vector feedrate by applying a smoothing effect progressively modifying the rate-of-change of acceleration (Jerk).

Without using Jerk Control, Bell-Shaped Acceleration alone would apply a harsher, constant rate-of-change, acceleration profile. The permissible rate-of-change of acceleration (Jerk) is set by CNC parameters for each machine axis; these limits are usually set in advance by the machine-tool-builder. Any velocity adjustments applied by the Jerk Control function are calculated as true positional commands and hence incur only minimal acceleration or deceleration delays (Acc/Dec Before Interpolation).

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3) and 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Reduction of machining errors caused by shock and vibration induced into the machine structure that result of sudden changes in axis acceleration

Ordering Information

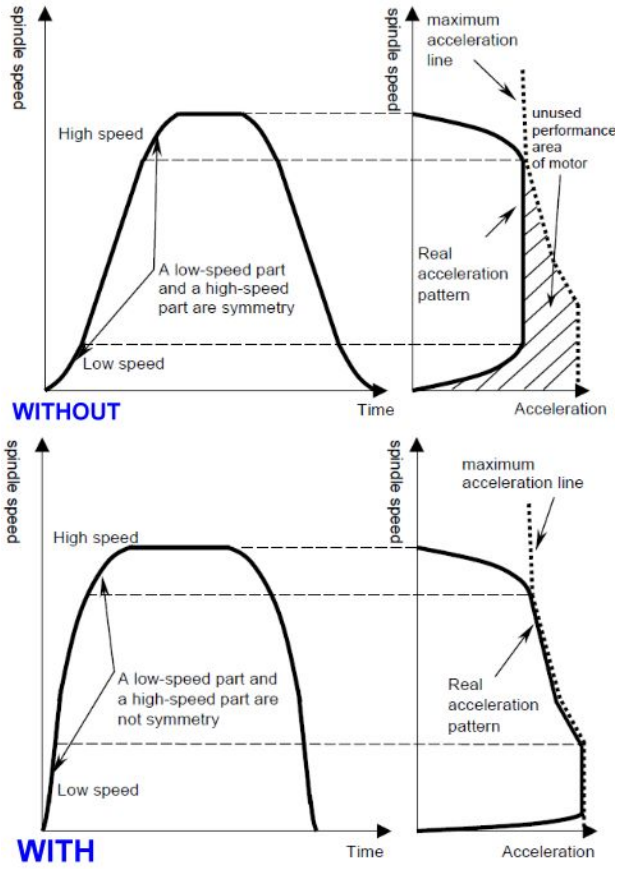
Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S678	30i-BP Jerk Control
A02B-0356-S678	31i-B5P Jerk Control
A02B-0357-S678	31i-BP Jerk Control
A02B-0358-S678	32i-BP Jerk Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

256
Feed Functions



Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Optimum Torque Acceleration/Deceleration for Rigid Tapping

Features

The Optimum Torque Acceleration / Deceleration for Rigid Tapping function can flexibly set the acceleration and deceleration of the cutting in the rigid tapping according to the torque characteristic of the spindle motor and the machine characteristic such as the friction.

The acceleration and deceleration performance (hereafter the maximum acceleration line) which can be output is usually not symmetric in a low-speed part and a high-speed part because of the torque characteristic of the spindle motor and the machine characteristic.

The conventional acceleration and deceleration (linear / bell-shaped) has a symmetric acceleration and deceleration. The acceleration/deceleration of this function is realized so that the real acceleration pattern may approach the maximum acceleration line as much as possible. The performance of the motor is drawn out to its maximum by this, and the cutting time can be shortened.

However, when the rigid tapping is used in an acceleration constant range of the spindle motor, shortening the cutting time cannot be expected. It is possible to execute the rigid tapping with the acceleration and deceleration along the maximum acceleration line by setting the acceleration line pattern in the parameter of each gear. The acceleration and deceleration of pulling out uses the same acceleration line pattern as them of the cutting.

Benefits

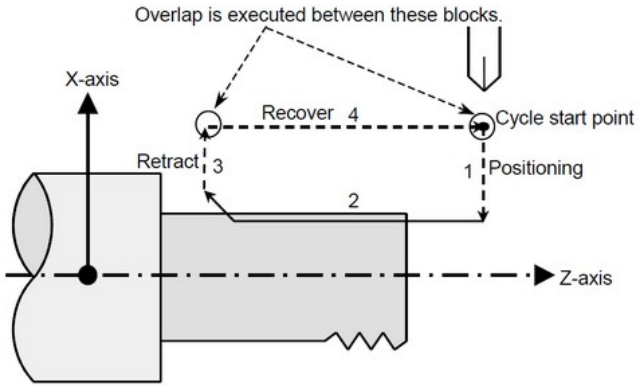
- Optimization of the rigid tapping processing
- Increase of the tapping and cutting performation of the machine
- Increase of the overall productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R533	0i-TFP Optimum Acceleration / Deceleration for Rigid Tapping
A02B-0350-R533	0i-MFP Optimum Acceleration / Deceleration for Rigid Tapping
A02B-0353-R533	30i-BP Optimum Acceleration / Deceleration for Rigid Tapping
A02B-0356-R533	31i-B5P Optimum Acceleration / Deceleration for Rigid Tapping
A02B-0357-R533	31i-BP Optimum Acceleration / Deceleration for Rigid Tapping
A02B-0358-R533	32i-BP Optimum Acceleration / Deceleration for Rigid Tapping

257

Feed Functions



Programmable Rapid Traverse Overlap

Features

Rapid Traverse Overlap function reduces cycle time by starting the next rapid traverse block before the previous rapid traverse block ends, when continuous blocks with rapid traverse command are given.

Here is an overview to the two added functions of Programmable Rapid Traverse Overlap:

- Programmable rapid traverse overlap: the amount of rapid traverse overlap can be changed by setting the feed rate reduction ratio to a system variable in a part program. This enables an optimal overlapping effect for each rapid traverse path of the machining program.
- Rapid traverse overlap between threading cycle blocks: shortened cycle times become possible by overlapping rapid traverse blocks during the threading cycle. As shown in the right figure, rapid traverse overlap is executed between "3.Retract and 4.Return" and between "4.Return and 1.Positioning".

Benefits

- Opitimization of the cycle time of high volume production machines
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R502	0i-TFP Programmable Rapid Traverse
A02B-0350-R502	0i-MFP Programmable Rapid Traverse
A02B-0353-R502	30i-BP Programmable Rapid Traverse Overlap
A02B-0356-R502	31i-B5P Programmable Rapid Traverse Overlap
A02B-0357-R502	31i-BP Programmable Rapid Traverse Overlap
A02B-0358-R502	32i-BP Programmable Rapid Traverse Overlap
A02B-0359-R502	30i-LB Plus Programmable Rapid Traverse Overlap
A02B-0360-R502	31i-LB Plus Programmable Rapid Traverse Overlap
A02B-0362-R502	31i-PB Plus Programmable Rapid Traverse Overlap
A02B-0364-R502	PM i-A Plus Programmable Rapid Traverse Overlap

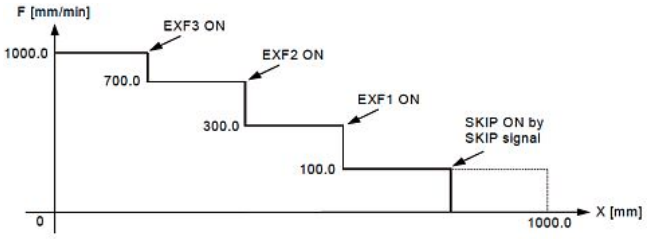
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

258

Feed Functions



Feedrate Change Function

Features

With Feed Rate Change function, when an external signal is input, the cutting feed rate of G31 and G01 is changed to the value which is set by a parameter.

Program example (mm input)

G31 X1000.0 F1000.0;
M30;

Parameters:

- No.1481 = 100.0
- No.1482 = 300.0
- No.1483 = 700.0

When the feed rate change signals EXF3, EXF2, and EXF1 are turned on in this order during executing the above program, feed rate is changed as in the cycle shown in the illustration.

Benefits

- Possibility to change feedrates without programming
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R716	PM i-A Plus Feed rate Change Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

259
Feed Functions

Time Constant of Acc./Dec. After Interpolation Switching Function by Signal

Features

This function enables to switch the time constant of acceleration/deceleration after interpolation for rapid traverse and cutting feed by input signals of the PMC. It is possible to switch between three different time constants for rapid traverse and three different time constants for cutting feed.

Benefits

- Use the proper time constant for acceleration/deceleration after interpolation according to the current processing conditions

Ordering Information

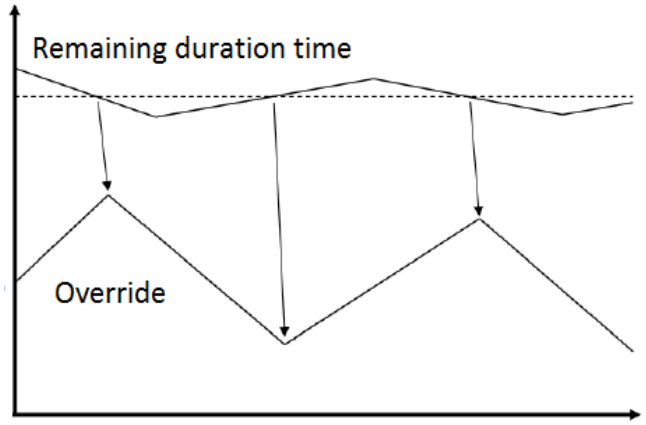
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S992	0i-TFP Time Constant of aAceleration / Deceleration after Interpolation Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0350-S992	0i-MFP Time Constant of aAceleration / Deceleration after Interpolation Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0353-S992	30i-BP Time Constant of Acc. / Dec. after Interpolation Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0356-S992	31i-B5P Time Constant of Acc. / Dec. after Interpolation Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0357-S992	31i-BP Time Constant of Acc. / Dec. after Interpolation Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0358-S992	32i-BP Time Constant of Acc. / Dec. after Interpolation Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0359-S992	30i-LB Plus Time Constant of Acc. / Dec. after Interpolation Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0360-S992	31i-LB Plus Time Constant of Acc. / Dec. after Interpolation Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0362-S992	31i-PB Plus Time Constant of Acc. / Dec. after Interpolation Switching Function by Signal
A02B-0364-S992	PM i-A Plus Time Constant of Acc. / Dec. after Interpolation Switching Function by Signal

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

260
Feed Functions



Smart Spindle-Load Control

Features

The Function Smart Adaptive Control optimizes the feed rate during machining depending on the load and the temperature of the spindle. The spindle motor power can be exploited optimally that way, especially at roughing operations. The feed rate is optimized by three different types of control:

Constant spindle load control:
The feed rate increases if the spindle load (as detected by the spindle load meter) is below a specified threshold and vice versa. This reduces cycle time on the one hand and prevents tool damage on the other hand.

Overheat avoidance control (type A):
The feed rate decreases if the spindle temperature is going to exceed its maximum temperature. Overheat alarms are avoided, leading to less down time.

Overheat avoidance control (type B) (Constant duration time control):
The feed rate decreases if the remaining duration time of the spindle is shorter than a specified threshold and vice versa. The available spindle motor power is utilized effectively while keeping a small performance buffer at the same time.

Benefits

- Reduce cycle time
- Prevent damage to machine and tools
- Minimize downtime

Ordering Information

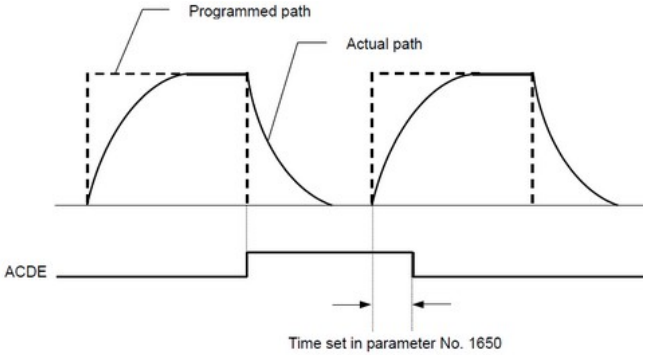
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R361	0i-TFP Smart Spindle Load Control Function
A02B-0350-R361	0i-MFP Smart Spindle Load Control Function
A02B-0353-R361	30i-BP Smart Spindle Load Control Function
A02B-0356-R361	31i-B5P Smart Spindle Load Control Function
A02B-0357-R361	31i-BP Smart Spindle Load Control Function
A02B-0358-R361	32i-BP Smart Spindle Load Control Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

261
Feed Functions



In-Acceleration/Deceleration Signal

Features

The In-Acceleration/Deceleration Signal function During deceleration in a block for cutting feed, the in-acceleration/deceleration signal is output to the machine.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-R519	0i-MFP In-Acceleration / Deceleration Signal
A02B-0353-R519	30i-BP In-Acceleration / Deceleration Signal
A02B-0356-R519	31i-B5P In-Acceleration / Deceleration Signal
A02B-0357-R519	31i-BP In-Acceleration / Deceleration Signal
A02B-0359-R519	30i-LB Plus In-Acceleration / Deceleration Signal
A02B-0360-R519	31i-LB Plus In-Acceleration / Deceleration Signal
A02B-0362-R519	31i-PB Plus In-Acceleration / Deceleration Signal

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

262
Functions

Program Input

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to the programming and operation of the CNC.
Some of the functions detailed in the catalogue:

- Skip functions
- Coordinate systems
- Custom Macro
- Special cycles
- Tilted Working Plane
- Macro Executor and C-Executor
- FANUC PICTURE
- FANUC Auto HMI
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

263

Program Input

Optional Block Skip

Features

The Optional Block Skip function allows the operator to select whether a block in the part program that starts with a '/ n', where n=1, is executed or skipped. Setting a bit in the PMC is required to activate this function. The 1st level, n=1, of Optional Block Skip is standard in the 30i/31i/32i-B Plus and 0i-F Plus controls.

Example 1:

/1 N12345 G00 X100.Z200.;

There is also a feature called Additional Optional Block Skip. This adds the levels 2 through 9 to the valid numbers for n, where n is level of the Optional Block Skip, '/n' at the beginning of the block. It requires setting PMC bits to activate these levels of Optional Block Skip.

Example 2:

/3 N12345 G00 X100.Z200.;
where n=3 for the 3rd level of Optional Block Skip

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Additionnal levels of Block Skip can be added to the CNC
- Higher flexibility of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J955	0i-TFP Optional Block Skip
A02B-0350-J955	0i-MFP Optional Block Skip

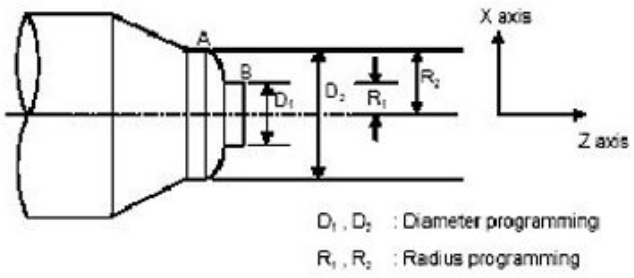
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

264

Program Input



Dynamic Switching of Diameter/Radius Specification

Features

The Dynamic Switching of Diameter/Radius Specification function enables the user to switch between diameter and radius programming by using a PMC signal or G code.

When turning is performed, the cross section of a workpiece is usually a circle. The size of the circle may be specified by its diameter or radius. When the diameter is specified, it is called diameter programming and when the radius is specified, it is called radius programming. Whether to use radius programming or diameter programming is chosen for each axis by setting a parameter.

There may be cases where some coordinates or program items for an axis in diameter programming mode should preferably be handled in radius programming mode. This function enables the user to switch between diameter programming and radius programming by using a signal or G code command. The user can thus handle coordinates, program items, and other settings for an axis in diameter programming mode as well as in radius programming mode.

Benefits

- Addition of flexibility to the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S630	0i-TFP Dynamic Switching of Diameter / Radius Specification
A02B-0353-S630	30i-BP Dynamic Switching of Diameter / Radius Specification
A02B-0356-S630	31i-B5P Dynamic Switching of Diameter / Radius Specification
A02B-0357-S630	31i-BP Dynamic Switching of Diameter / Radius Specification
A02B-0358-S630	32i-BP Dynamic Switching of Diameter / Radius Specification

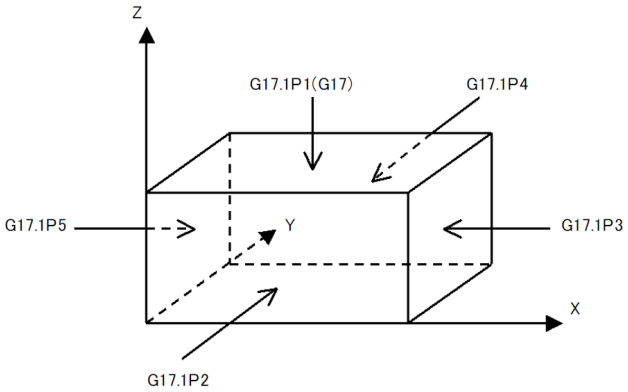
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

265

Program Input



Plane Conversion Function

Features

This function converts a machining program created on the G17 plane in the right-hand cartesian coordinate system into a program for another plane specified by G17.1Px commands.

Benefits

- Simplifies programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0362-R701	31i-PB Plus Plane Conversion Function

Notice

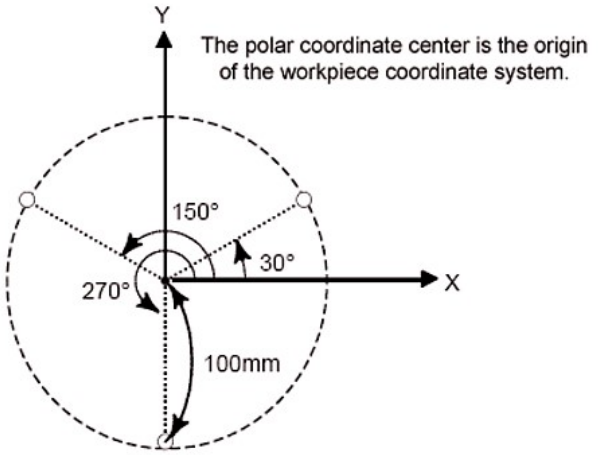
Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

266

Program Input

Polar Coordinate Command



Features

When machining using arc based coordinates, it is usually easier to specify a move in terms of an angular displacement and a radius.

By turning on the Polar Coordinate Command function, the programmer can choose to command moves that employ polar coordinates in any segment of his program. He can also cancel polar coordinate commands and revert to the traditional Cartesian command system when those are more appropriate.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus and 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Ease of programming coordinates on arcs and circles.
- Transposition of angles and radii dimensions direct from blueprints.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J818	30i-BP Polar Coordinate Command
A02B-0356-J818	31i-B5P Polar Coordinate Command
A02B-0357-J818	31i-BP Polar Coordinate Command
A02B-0358-J818	32i-BP Polar Coordinate Command

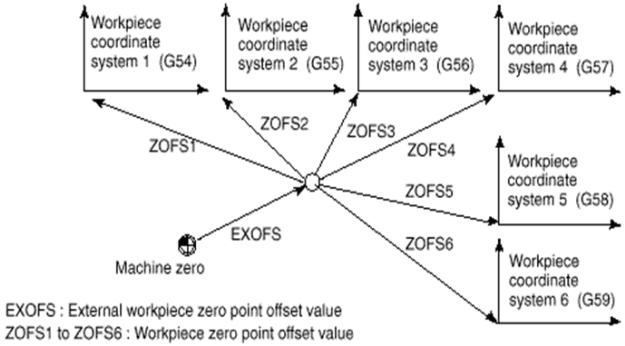
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

267

Program Input



EXOFS : External workpiece zero point offset value
ZOFS1 to ZOFS6 : Workpiece zero point offset value

Workpiece Coordinate System

Features

Coordinate system used for machining a workpiece is referred to as a workpiece coordinate system.
This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Six standard work coordinate systems (G54-G59)
- Part program reflects part print dimensions
- Fixture location inaccuracies compensated
- Additional adjustment using common offset

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-J894	PM i-A Plus Workpiece Coordinate System

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

268

Program Input

Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System 48 Pairs

Features

Besides the six workpiece coordinate systems based on G54 to G59 (standard workpiece coordinate systems), up to 48 additional workpiece coordinate systems can be used optionally. As with the workpiece coordinate system based on G54 to G59, the following workpiece origin offset setting and modification methods are available:

- MDI-based method
- Program-based method
- Setting based on programmable data input (G10L2Pp)
- Setting based on custom macros

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus and 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Increase of the flexibility of the machining
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J895	0i-TFP Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System - 48 Pairs
A02B-0353-J895	30i-BP Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System - 48 Pairs
A02B-0356-J895	31i-B5P Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System - 48 Pairs
A02B-0357-J895	31i-BP Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System - 48 Pairs
A02B-0358-J895	32i-BP Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System - 48 Pairs
A02B-0364-J895	PM i-A Plus Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System - 48 Pairs

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

269

Program Input

Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System 300 Pairs

Features

Besides the six workpiece coordinate systems based on G54 to G59 (standard workpiece coordinate systems), up to 300 additional workpiece coordinate systems can be used optionally. As with the workpiece coordinate system based on G54 to G59, the following workpiece origin offset setting and modification methods are available:

- MDI-based method
- Program-based method
- Setting based on programmable data input (G10L2Pp)
- Setting based on custom macros

Benefits

- Increase of the flexibility of the machine
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J919	0i-MFP Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System 300 Pairs
A02B-0353-J919	30i-BP Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System - 300 Pairs
A02B-0356-J919	31i-B5P Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System - 300 Pairs
A02B-0357-J919	31i-BP Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System - 300 Pairs
A02B-0358-J919	32i-BP Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System - 300 Pairs
A02B-0360-J919	31i-LB Plus Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System - 300 Pairs
A02B-0362-J919	31i-PB Plus Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System - 300 Pairs
A02B-0364-J919	PM i-A Plus Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System - 300 Pairs

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

270
Program Input

Positioning in Machine Coordinate System with Feedrate

Features

Conventionally machine coordinate system setting (G53) is performed only at a rapid traverse rate.
With this function, the machine coordinate system setting is available at a feed rate.

Example:

G53.2 G01 IP_ F_;
IP_: Dimension word
F_: Feed rate

Benefits

- Increase of the setting of coordinate system
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R553	0i-TFP Positioning in Machine Coordinate System with Feedrate
A02B-0350-R553	0i-MFP Positioning in Machine Coordinate System with Feedrate
A02B-0353-R553	30i-BP Positioning in Machine Coordinate System with Feedrate
A02B-0356-R553	31i-B5P Positioning in Machine Coordinate System with Feedrate
A02B-0357-R553	31i-BP Positioning in Machine Coordinate System with Feedrate
A02B-0358-R553	32i-BP Positioning in Machine Coordinate System with Feedrate
A02B-0360-R553	31i-LB Plus Positioning in Machine Coordinate System with Feedrate
A02B-0362-R553	31i-PB Plus Positioning in Machine Coordinate System with Feedrate

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

271
Program Input

Direct Drawing Dimension Programming

Features

The Direct Drawing Dimension Programming is a function that simplifies part programming on the shop floor.

Angles of straight lines, chamfering values, corner rounding values, and other dimensional values on machining drawings can be programmed by directly inputting these values.

In addition, chamfering and corner rounding can be inserted between straight lines having an arbitrary angle.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus.

Benefits

- Addition of programming functions to the CNC
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J870	30i-BP Direct Drawing Dimension Programming
A02B-0356-J870	31i-B5P Direct Drawing Dimension Programming
A02B-0357-J870	31i-BP Direct Drawing Dimension Programming
A02B-0358-J870	32i-BP Direct Drawing Dimension Programming

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

272

Program Input

G-Code System B/C

Features

This option allows to choose between three types of G-code systems that are available for lathe system CNC: A, B and C. The G-code system can be selected by parameter setting. The following table outlines the differences between the G-code systems.

G-Code System			Function
A	B	C	
G20	G20	G70	Inch input
G21	G21	G71	Metric input
G32	G33	G33	Thread cutting
G50	G92	G92	Coordinate system setting or max. spindle speed clamp
G50.3	G92.1	G92.1	Workpiece coordinate system preset
-	G50	G50	Scaling cancel
-	G51	G51	Scaling
G70	G70	G72	Finishing cycle
G71	G71	G73	Stock removal in turning
G72	G72	G74	Stock removal in facing
G73	G73	G75	Pattern repeating cycle
G74	G74	G76	End face peck drilling cycle
G75	G75	G77	Outer diameter / internal diameter drilling cycle
G76	G76	G78	Multiple-thread cutting cycle
G71	G71	G72	Traverse grinding cycle
G72	G72	G73	Traverse direct sizing/ grinding cycle
G73	G73	G74	Oscillation grinding cycle
G74	G74	G75	Oscillation direct sizing/ grinding cycle
G90	G77	G20	Outer diameter / internal diameter cutting cycle
G92	G78	G21	Threading cycle
G94	G79	G24	End face turning cycle
G98	G94	G94	Feed per minute
G99	G95	G95	Feed per revolution
-	G90	G90	Absolute programming

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

273

G-Code System			Function
A	B	C	
-	G91	G91	Incremental programming
-	G98	G98	Canned cycle: return to initial level
-	G99	G99	Canned cycle: return to R point level

If G-code system A is used, absolute or incremental programming is specified not by G-code (G90/G91), but by address word (X/U, Z/W, C/H, Y/V). Only the initial level is provided at the return point of canned cycle for drilling.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus.

Benefits

- Increase of the programming flexibility of the CNC
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J871	30i-BP G-Code System B / C
A02B-0356-J871	31i-B5P G-Code System B / C
A02B-0357-J871	31i-BP G-Code System B / C
A02B-0358-J871	32i-BP G-Code System B / C

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

274

Program Input

Lathe / Machining Center G-Code System Switching Function

Features

This function switches over G code system of each path for lathe and machining center by certain programming commands (M codes).The optimum program command and function for each processing, the turning processing and the milling processing, is available by switching mode.

Note: tool offset for Milling and Turning function (R595) and Designation of Designation of Machine Control, Type Multiple System (S838/C) is required.

Benefits

- Increase of the programming flexibility
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R597	30i-BP Lathe / Machining Center G-Code System Switching Function
A02B-0356-R597	31i-B5P Lathe / Machining Center G-Code System Switching Function
A02B-0357-R597	31i-BP Lathe / Machining Center G-Code System Switching Function
A02B-0358-R597	32i-BP Lathe / Machining Center G-Code System Switching Function

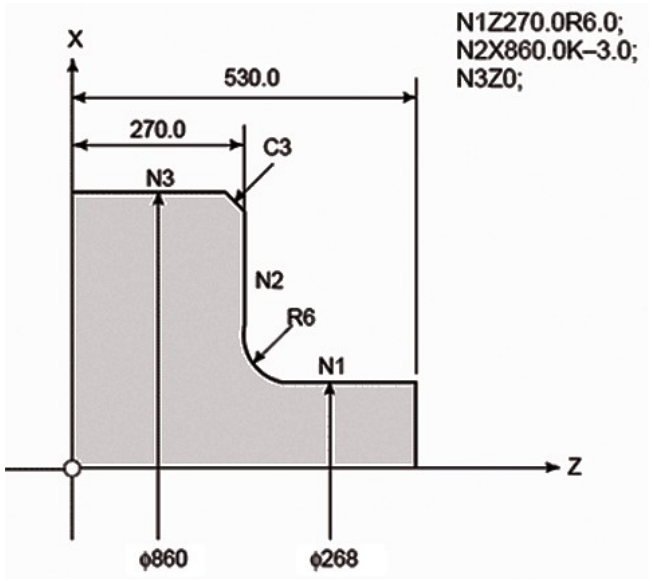
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

275

Program Input



Chamfering / Corner Rounding

Features

The Chamfering / Corner Radius function is used on turning ('T' type) controls to insert a defined 45-degree chamfer or radius between two single-axis linear move program blocks that intersect at right angles.

It allows the programmer to enter the hypothetical corner intersection coordinates without having to calculate the start and end points of the chamfer or radius.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus.

Benefits

- Simplifies programming of chamfers and radii between right angle linear moves
- Simplifies blueprint programming
- Easy shop-floor changes to add radii and chamfers to existing programs

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J875	30i-BP Chamfering / Corner R
A02B-0356-J875	31i-B5P Chamfering / Corner R
A02B-0357-J875	31i-BP Chamfering / Corner R
A02B-0358-J875	32i-BP Chamfering / Corner R

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

276

Program Input

Optional Chamfering / Corner Rounding

Features

The Optional Chamfering / Corner Radius function is used on milling ('M' type) controls to insert a defined chamfer or radius between any two linear or circular program moves.

It allows programming of geometry end-coordinates is if chamfer or corner rounding were not required. Then, chamfers or radii can easily be applied by appending to the first of the program blocks either a (comma),C_ %value% or (comma),R_ %value%.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus and 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Simplifies programming of chamfers and radii
- Simplifies blueprint programming
- Easy shop floor changes to add or change radii and chamfers on existing programs without changing the program block end-coordinates.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S615	30i-BP Optional Chamfering / Corner R
A02B-0356-S615	31i-B5P Optional Chamfering / Corner R
A02B-0357-S615	31i-BP Optional Chamfering / Corner R
A02B-0358-S615	32i-BP Optional Chamfering / Corner R

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

277

Program Input

Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables 1000

Features

The Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables 1000 function provides the possibility to use the custom macro common variables #150-#199, #550-#999, and #98000-#98499 in addition to custom macro common variables #100-#149 and #500-#549.

Benefits

- Allows permanent data retention
- No need to re-write data
- Keep calibration data with the job
- No need to use same variable numbers for interim calculations
- Facilitates debugging of Macro B program

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R687	0i-TFP Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables, 1000
A02B-0350-R687	0i-MFP Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables, 1000
A02B-0353-R687	30i-BP Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables - 1000
A02B-0356-R687	31i-B5P Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables - 1000
A02B-0357-R687	31i-BP Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables - 1000
A02B-0358-R687	32i-BP Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables - 1000
A02B-0360-R687	31i-LB Plus Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables - 1000
A02B-0362-R687	31i-PB Plus Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables - 1000
A02B-0364-R687	PM i-A Plus Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables - 1000

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

278

Program Input

Custom Macro Variable Name 31 Characters

Features

Variable names enhance the readability of custom macro programs. As a standard, a variable name can consist of up to 8 characters. This option lets you set Custom macro variable names consisting of up to 31 characters. You can choose descriptive variable names without being resticted by the variable name length, enhancing the readability of Custom macro programs even more.

Benefits

- Enhance the readability of Custom macro programs by choosing descriptive variable names

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R583	0i-TFP Custom Macro Variable Name with 31 Characters
A02B-0350-R583	0i-MFP Custom Macro Variable Name with 31 Characters
A02B-0353-R583	30i-BP Custom Macro Variable Name with 31 Characters
A02B-0356-R583	31i-B5P Custom Macro Variable Name with 31 Characters
A02B-0357-R583	31i-BP Custom Macro Variable Name with 31 Characters
A02B-0358-R583	32i-BP Custom Macro Variable Name with 31 Characters
A02B-0360-R583	31i-LB Plus Custom Macro Variable Name with 31 Characters
A02B-0362-R583	31i-PB Plus Custom Macro Variable Name with 31 Characters
A02B-0364-R583	PM i-A Plus Custom Macro Variable Name with 31 Characters

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

279

Program Input

Number of Custom Macro Variable Name 1000

Features

This function increases the maximum number of custom macro variable names. It is possible to set up to 1000 variable names with the SETVN command. Variable names enhance the readability of custom macro programs, they can be set to any custom macro variable including local variables, system variables etc.

Benefits

- Improve the development and maintenance of custom macro programs

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R323	0i-TFP Number of Custom Macro Variable Name 1000
A02B-0350-R323	0i-MFP Number of Custom Macro Variable Name 1000
A02B-0353-R323	30i-BP Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 1000
A02B-0356-R323	31i-B5P Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 1000
A02B-0357-R323	31i-BP Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 1000
A02B-0358-R323	32i-BP Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 1000
A02B-0360-R323	31i-LB Plus Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 1000
A02B-0362-R323	31i-PB Plus Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 1000
A02B-0364-R323	PM i-A Plus Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 1000

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

280

Program Input

Number of Custom Macro Variable Name 4000

Features

This function increases the maximum number of custom macro variable names. It is possible to set up to 4000 variable names with the SETVN command. Variable names enhance the readability of custom macro programs, they can be set to any custom macro variable including local variables, system variables etc.

Benefits

- Improve the development and maintenance of custom macro programs

Ordering Information

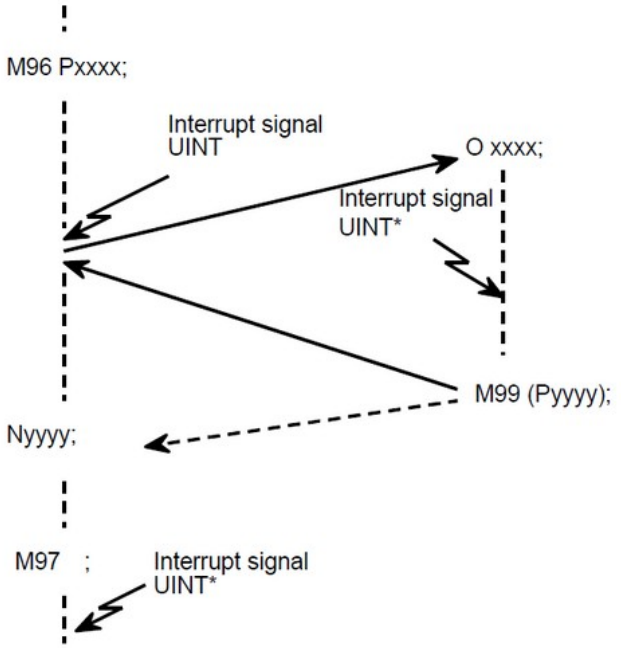
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R324	0i-TFP Number of Custom Macro Variable Name 4000
A02B-0350-R324	0i-MFP Number of Custom Macro Variable Name 4000
A02B-0353-R324	30i-BP Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 4000
A02B-0356-R324	31i-B5P Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 4000
A02B-0357-R324	31i-BP Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 4000
A02B-0358-R324	32i-BP Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 4000
A02B-0360-R324	31i-LB Plus Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 4000
A02B-0362-R324	31i-PB Plus Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 4000
A02B-0364-R324	PM i-A Plus Number of Custom Macro Variable Names - 4000

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

281
Program Input



Interruption Type Custom Macro

Features

When custom macro interruption signal is input during automatic operation, the block currently under execution is interrupted and the specified custom macro is activated.

After execution of this custom macro, it returns to the interrupted block and continues execution of the remaining commands.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Allows macro program to jump to specific instructions depending on conditions

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J874	0i-TFP Interruption Type Custom Macro
A02B-0350-J874	0i-MFP Interruption Type Custom Macro
A02B-0364-J874	PM i-A Plus Interruption Type Custom Macro

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

282

Program Input

Macro for Multi-Axes High-Response Function

Features

With the Macro for Multi-Axes High-Response Function, it is possible to use macro statements and custom macro variables in the high-response mode.

Note

The Multi-Axes High-Response Function is required to use this function

Benefits

- Extends the application range of the Multi-Axes High-Response Function

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R397	PM i-A Plus Macro for Multi-Axes High-Response Function

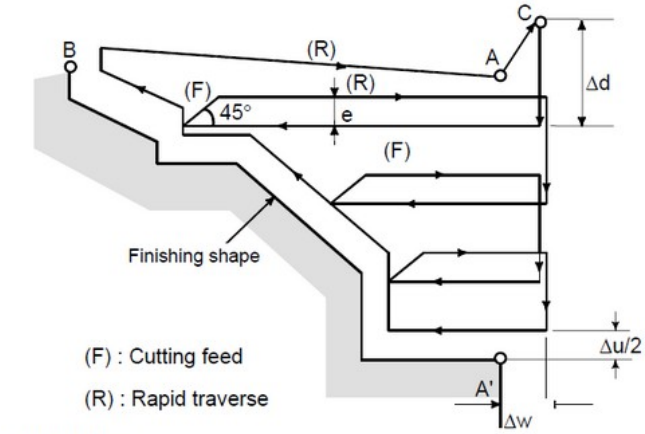
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

283

Program Input




```
G71 U(Δd) R(e);
G71 P(ns) Q(nf) U(Δu) W(Δw) F(f) S(s) T(t);
N(ns). . . .
 . . . . . .
    F_
    S_
    T_
N(nf) . . . . ;
```

The move command of a finished shape of A to A' to B is specified in the blocks from sequence number ns to nf.

Multi-Repetitive Cycles

Features

Multiple Repetitive Cycles are a series of seven additional Canned Cycles for Turning applications.
G70, G71, G72, G73, G74, G75 and G76 ease the programming of complex machining cycles.

- G71 - Stock Removal in Turning. Type I figures only, no pockets.
- G72 - Stock Removal in Facing. Type I figures only, no pockets.
- G73 - Pattern Repeating.
- G70 - Finishing
- G74 - End Face Peck Drilling Cycle.
- G75 - Outer Diameter / Internal Diameter Drilling Cycle.
- G76 - Multiple Threading Cycle.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus.

Benefits

- Simplification of the CNC Programming
- Increase of the productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J877	30i-BP Multiple Repetitive Cycles
A02B-0356-J877	31i-B5P Multiple Repetitive Cycles
A02B-0357-J877	31i-BP Multiple Repetitive Cycles
A02B-0358-J877	32i-BP Multiple Repetitive Cycles

Notice

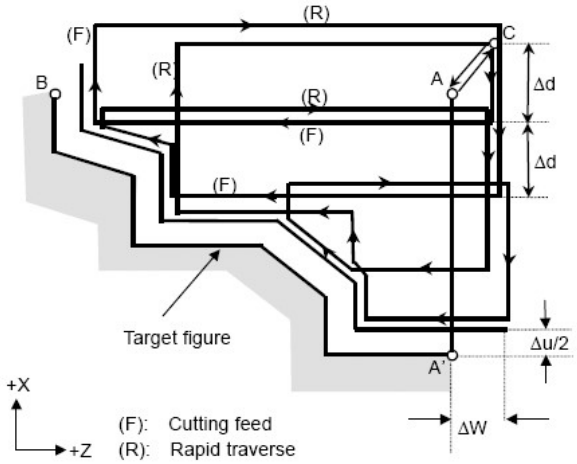
Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

284

Program Input

Multi-Repetitive Cycles II



Features

Multiple Repetitive Cycles II are an enhanced version of the Multiple Repetitive Cycles I, G71 and G72, that enable the programmer to define pockets on the work piece to be machined.

With Multiple Repetitive Cycles II, the tool cuts the work piece along the target figure (comp. picture).

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus.

Benefits

- Simplification of the Programming of the cycles
- Increase of the productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J889	0i-MFP Multiple Repetitive Cycles II
A02B-0353-J889	30i-BP Multiple Repetitive Cycles II
A02B-0356-J889	31i-B5P Multiple Repetitive Cycles II
A02B-0357-J889	31i-BP Multiple Repetitive Cycles II
A02B-0358-J889	32i-BP Multiple Repetitive Cycles II

Notice

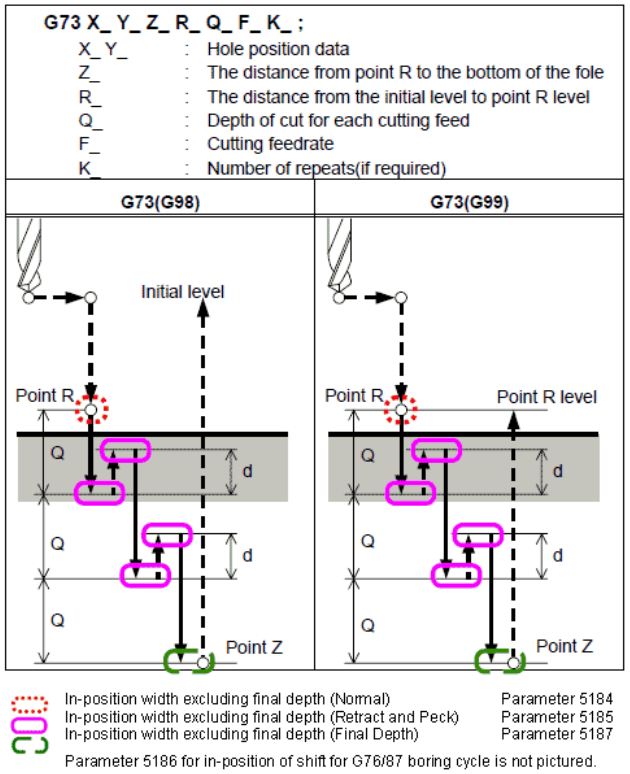
Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

285

Program Input

High-Speed peck Drilling Cycle (G73)



In-Position Check Switching Function for Drilling Canned Cycle

Features

Provides four dedicated in-position zone settings that are defined for use during drilling canned cycles. Three settings may be set to utilize larger in-position zones for moves within drilling canned cycles that do not require fine positioning. Cycle time is reduced by not spending excess time applying higher accuracy positioning when it is not required.

In-position zone setting for final depth of the drilling canned cycle is set separately, facilitating high accuracy positioning to meet part specifications.

Benefits

- Reduces execution time of Drilling Canned Cycles
- Allows tighter In-Position zone to be used for final depth, without adverse affect on other drilling/positioning moves during the canned cycle
- Tool life during drilling cycles may be improved by more efficient operation

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R648	30i-BP In-Position Check Switching Function for Drilling Canned Cycle
A02B-0356-R648	31i-B5P In-Position Check Switching Function for Drilling Canned Cycle
A02B-0357-R648	31i-BP In-Position Check Switching Function for Drilling Canned Cycle
A02B-0358-R648	32i-BP In-Position Check Switching Function for Drilling Canned Cycle

Notice

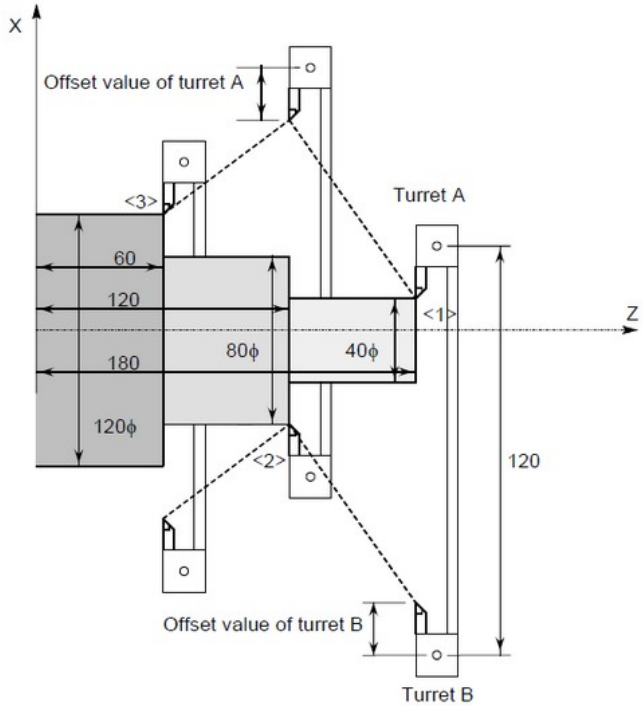
Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

286

Program Input

Mirror Image for Double Turret



Features

By applying mirror image to the X-axis with a G code, a machining program for the opposite tool post can be created for symmetric cutting as if the program were created in the coordinate system on the same side.

When G68 is designated, the coordinate system is shifted to the double turret side, and the X-axis sign is reversed from the programmed command to perform symmetrical cutting. To use this function, set the distance between the two tool posts to a parameter.

Programming example

X.40.0 Z180.0 T0101	Position tool post A at '1'
G68	Shift the coordinate system by the distance A to B (120mm), and turn mirror image on
X80.0 Z120.0 T0202	Position tool post B at '2'
G69	Shift the coordinate system by the distance B to A, and cancel mirror image.
X120.0 Z60.0 T0101	Position tool post A at '3'

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus (Type 0, Type 1).

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J881	0i-TFP Mirror Image for Double Turret
A02B-0353-J881	30i-BP Mirror Image for Double Turret
A02B-0356-J881	31i-B5P Mirror Image for Double Turret
A02B-0357-J881	31i-BP Mirror Image for Double Turret
A02B-0358-J881	32i-BP Mirror Image for Double Turret

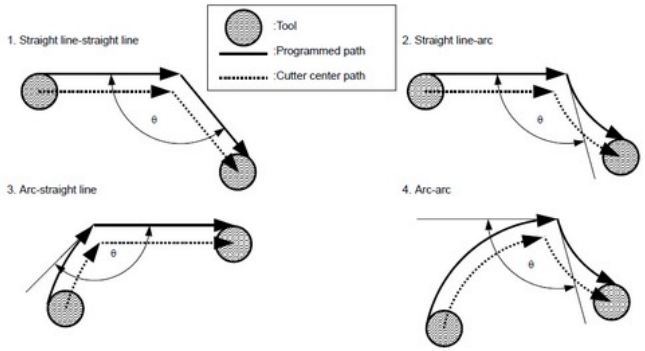
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

287

Program Input



Automatic Corner Override

Features

During cutter compensation, the cutting feed is over-ridden at corners while maintaining material removal rates.
This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus and 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Improved tool life
- Improved surface finish
- Improved accuracy

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J891	30i-BP Automatic Corner Override
A02B-0356-J891	31i-B5P Automatic Corner Override
A02B-0357-J891	31i-BP Automatic Corner Override
A02B-0358-J891	32i-BP Automatic Corner Override

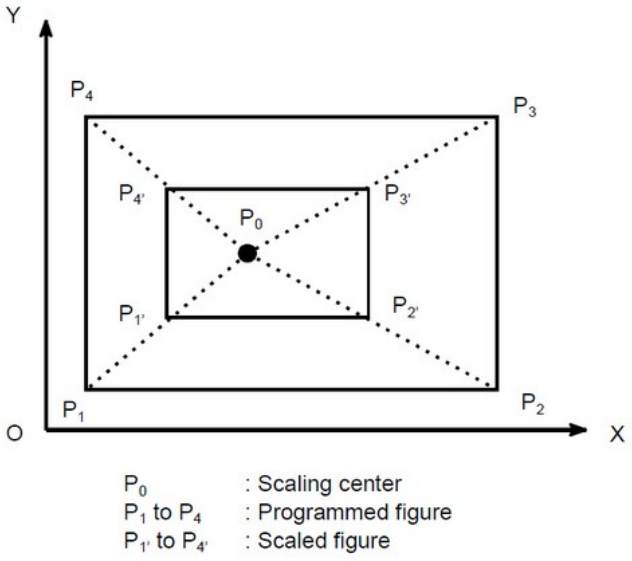
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

288

Program Input



P_0 : Scaling center
P_1 to P_4 : Programmed figure
$P_{1'}$ to $P_{4'}$: Scaled figure

Scaling

Features

Scaling is the function that allows the programmed shape to be magnified or reduced in size.

The dimensions specified with X_, Y_, and Z_ can each be scaled up or down with the same or different rates of magnification. The magnification rate can be specified in the program. Unless specified in the program, the magnification rate specified in the parameter is applied.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus and 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Reduce program size
- Flexibility in programming
- Easy changes on shop floor
- Programming convenience

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J892	30i-BP Scaling
A02B-0356-J892	31i-B5P Scaling
A02B-0357-J892	31i-BP Scaling
A02B-0358-J892	32i-BP Scaling

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

289

Program Input

Scaling for each Axis

Features

Scaling for each Axis applies independent scaling for each axis to movements controlled by automatic operation or manual operation.

Ordering Information

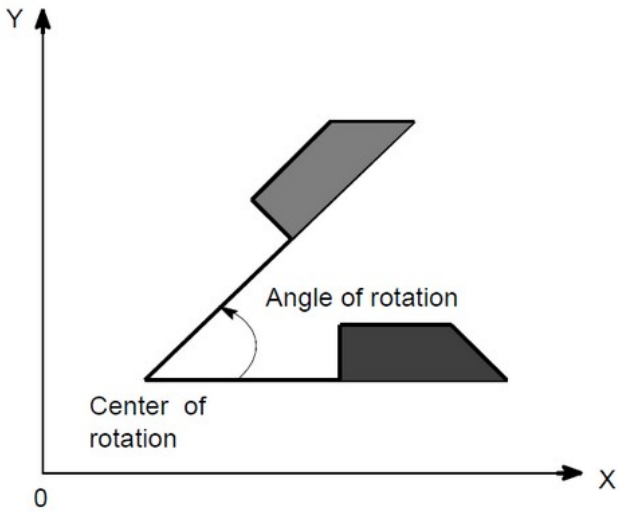
Specification	Description
A02B-0362-R555	31i-PB Plus Scaling for each Axis

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

290
Program Input



Coordinate System Rotation

Features

Programmed shape can be rotated by specifying the pivot point and desired angle.
This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Minimize set up time
- Reduce program size
- Flexibility in programming
- No need to line up fixtures/Vise jaws perfectly

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J893	30i-BP Coordinate System Rotation
A02B-0356-J893	31i-B5P Coordinate System Rotation
A02B-0357-J893	31i-BP Coordinate System Rotation
A02B-0358-J893	32i-BP Coordinate System Rotation

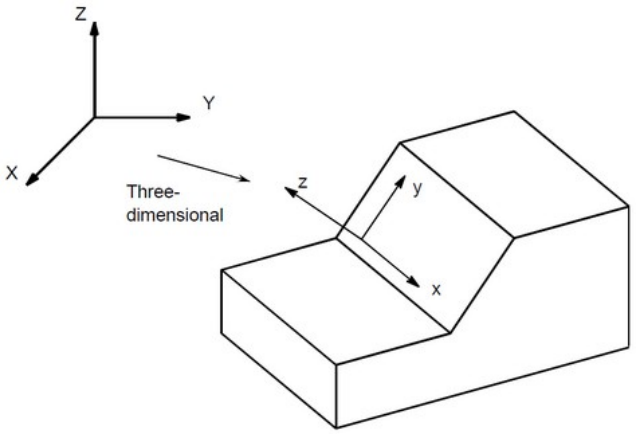
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

291

Program Input



3-Dimensional Coordinate System Conversion

Features

Coordinate conversion about an axis can be carried out if the center of rotation, direction of the axis of rotation, and angular displacement are specified.

This function is very useful in three-dimensional machining by a die-sinking, or similar, machine. For example, by executing a program created on the XY plane after applying 3 Dimensional Coordinate Conversion, machining can be performed on an arbitrary plane in a three-dimensional space.

By specifying rigid tapping in the 3-dimensional coordinate conversion mode, a tapping operation can be performed in the angle direction specified by the 3-dimensional coordinate conversion command (3-dimensional rigid tapping).

Benefits

- Addition of 3D Coordinate Conversion to the CNC
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J713	0i-TFP 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0350-J713	0i-MFP 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0353-J713	30i-BP 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0356-J713	31i-B5P 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0357-J713	31i-BP 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0358-J713	32i-BP 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0360-J713	31i-LB Plus 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
A02B-0362-J713	31i-PB Plus 3-D Coordinate System Conversion

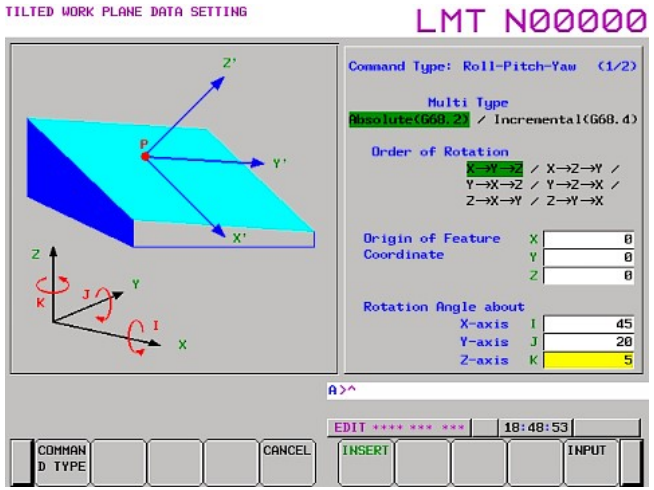
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

292

Program Input



Tilted Working Plane (TWP)

Features

Tilted Working Plane is used on 5 axes milling machines to define a plane, tilted relatively to the machine table. When a figure such as a hole or pocket is cut on a plane, tilted relatively to the reference surface of the workpiece, this function defines a coordinate system (referred to a "feature coordinate system") tied to the plane.

When specifying a position in such a coordinate system, a program can be created in a much easier way. A feature coordinate system is defined on a workpiece coordinate system. See the figure below for the relationship between a feature coordinate system and workpiece coordinate system.

This function is applicable to the "table type" machine configuration of the Robodrill.

Tilted Working Plane Command with Guidance

With this enhancement of the "Tilted Working Plane" command, the following commands can be programmed using a specific graphical screen:

- Euler's Angle
- Roll-Pitch-Yaw
- Three points
- Two vectors
- Projection angles

The guidance screen for tilted working plane command creates a tilted working plane command block after the machine operator has entered tilted working plane data on an interactive screen. With this function, a complicated tilted working plane command block can be easily created.

Benefits

- Addition of TWP command to the CNC
- Simplification of the programming for 5 axis machines
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R522	0i-TFP Tilted Working Plane Indexing Command with Guidance
A02B-0350-R522	0i-MFP Tilted Working Plane Indexing Command with Guidance

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-R522	0i-LFP Tilted Working Plane Indexing Command with Guidance
A02B-0353-R522	30i-BP Tilted Working Plane Indexing Command with Guidance
A02B-0356-R522	31i-B5P Tilted Working Plane Indexing Command with Guidance
A02B-0357-R522	31i-BP Tilted Working Plane Indexing Command with Guidance
A02B-0358-R522	32i-BP Tilted Working Plane Indexing Command with Guidance
A02B-0360-R522	31i-LBP Tilted Working Plane Indexing Command with Guidance
A02B-0362-R522	31i-PB Plus Tilted Working Plane Indexing Command with Guidance
A02B-0362-S676	31i-PB Plus Tilted Working Plane Command - Conventional

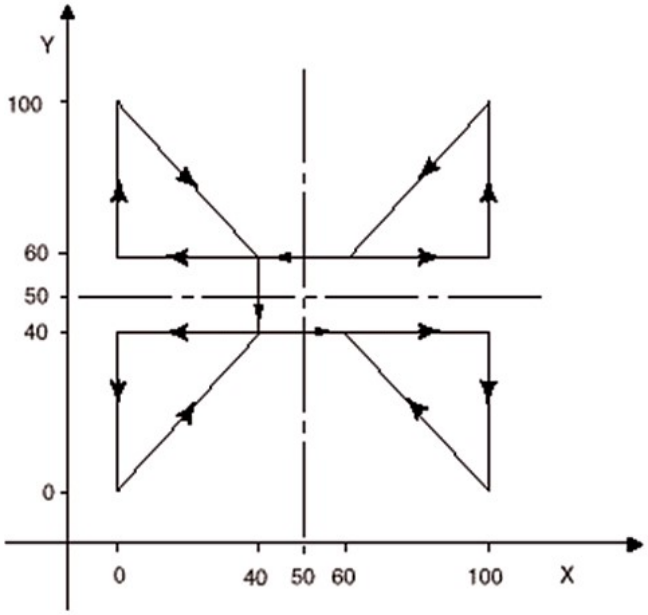
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

294

Program Input



Programmable Mirror Image

Features

Programmed shape can be mirror imaged about the axis of symmetry.
This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Reduce Program size
- Flexibility in Programming
- Minimize math for creating programs
- Easy changes
- Real part programming convenience

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J880	30i-BP Programmable Mirror Image
A02B-0356-J880	31i-B5P Programmable Mirror Image
A02B-0357-J880	31i-BP Programmable Mirror Image
A02B-0358-J880	32i-BP Programmable Mirror Image

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

295
Program Input

Figure Copying

Features

Figure Copying is a function that allows machining to be repeated after moving or rotating the figure using a subprogram. This can save part program storage space as multiple parts can be defined in one part program

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J897	0i-MFP Figure Copying
A02B-0353-J897	30i-BP Figure Copying
A02B-0356-J897	31i-B5P Figure Copying
A02B-0357-J897	31i-BP Figure Copying
A02B-0358-J897	32i-BP Figure Copying
A02B-0360-J897	31i-LB Plus Figure Copying
A02B-0362-J897	31i-PB Plus Figure Copying

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

296

Program Input

Tape Format for Series 15 CNC

Features

Tape Format for FS15 allows a control to execute part programs written for the Series 15 control (certain limitations apply).

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Benefits

- Use existing programs created for Series 15 CNC

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J882	0i-MFP Tape Format for FS 10/11/15
A02B-0360-J882	31i-LB Plus Tape Format of CNC Series 15

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

297

Program Input

Macro Executor

Features

Fixed program sequences, machining technology cycles, advanced machining sequences or frequently repeated patterns can be written as sub-programs. These sub-programs are called Macro Programs.

Macros Programs are written using an advanced extended language and structure; they also feature parameters and variables.

The Macro Programs (also called P-CODE Macro) are compiled in executable code using the Macro Compiler (refer to the software section of this catalogue for further details about the compiler).

The Macro Executor function provides to the CNC the capability to run the Macro Programs. Macro Programs are divided in 3 categories:

- Execution Macro functions
- Conversational Macro functions
- Auxiliary Macro functions

Execution Macro function

The Execution Macro function calls and executes the Macro Programs (P-CODE macro) from the Parts Program of the CNC using different methods (G, M, T or specific code as well as a program call).

Conversational Macro function

When the Conversational Macro function key is pressed on the MDI, the conversational macro function calls and executes a special macro program which is specialized in processing screens (conversational macro). The screen displayed by the program is called the conventional macro screen or user screen.

Auxiliary Macro function

At power-on, the Auxiliary Macro function calls and executes a macro program for performing auxiliary processing (auxiliary macro).

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- High speed execution: a macro program run as compiled executable and is fast, so that machining time can be reduced and machining precision can be improved.
- The P-CODE is stored in the CNC Flash ROM (F-ROM); it provides additional safety and reliability.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

298

- A program compiled to the execution format cannot be displayed on the CNC program screen, so that the know-how related to the cycles can be protected.
- The user can call the execution Macro program with an easy call procedure
- An original screen can be created using graphic display. Screens can be selected by the use of soft keys.
- Possibility to create advanced machining cycles, interfactive screens for operators, communication management, etc.
- Improvement of the machine efficiency and productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R705	PM i-A Plus Macro Executor

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

299

Program Input

Extended Conversational Macro Function

Features

With the Extended Conversational Macro function, a set of macro instructions are available to improve the flexibility of the screen display / management.

Overview of the functions

- Window display
- Display of external characters at any position
- Display of 2-by-2 characters
- Shift and scale in the graphical coordinate system

Benefits

- Simplifies the programming of complex Human Machine Interfaces

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0362-S798	31i-PB Plus Extended Conversational Macro Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

300
Program Input

Macro Executor + C-Language Executor

Features

Macro Executor

Fixed program sequences, machining technology cycles, advanced machining sequences or frequently repeated patterns can be written as sub-programs. These sub-programs are called Macro Programs.

Macros Programs are written using an advanced extended language and structure; they also feature parameters and variable.

The Macro programs (also called P-CODE Macro) are compiled in executable code using the Macro Compiler (refer to the software section of this catalogue for further details about the compiler).

The Macro Executor function provides to the CNC the capability to run the Macro Programs. Macro Programs are divided in 3 categories:

- Execution Macro functions
- Conversational Macro functions
- Auxiliary Macro functions

Execution Macro function

The Execution Macro function calls and executes the Macro Programs (P-CODE macro) from the Parts Program of the CNC using different methods (G, M, T or specific code as well as a program call).

Conversational Macro function

When the Conversational Macro function key is pressed on the MDI, the conversational macro function calls and executes a special macro program which is specialized in processing screens (conversational macro). The screen displayed by the program is called the conventional macro screen or user screen.

Auxiliary Macro function

At power-on, the Auxiliary Macro function calls and executes a macro program for performing auxiliary processing (auxiliary macro).

C-language Executor

The C-language executor function is used to customize screen display and implement a mechanism for user-specific operation as with the macro executor function. Instead of macro statements, application programs for display and operation can be created using the general C programming language. It also has all the benefits of the Macro executor.

C-Language executor requires the selection of an amount of Custom Software Size storage space between 256kB and 12MB in the Flash Rom (F-ROM). The size of the memory depends on the CNC type and the options selected.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Benefits

- High speed execution: a macro program run as compiled executable and is fast, so that machining time can be reduced and machining precision can be improved.
- The P-CODE is stored in the CNC Flash ROM (F-ROM); it provides additional safety and reliability.
- A program compiled to the execution format cannot be displayed on the CNC program screen, so that the know-how related to the cycles can be protected.
- The user can call the execution Macro program with an easy call procedure
- An original screen can be created using graphic display. Screens can be selected by the use of soft keys.
- Possibility to create advanced machining cycles, interfactive screens for operators, communication management, etc.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R706	PM i-A Plus Macro Executor and C-Language Executor

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

302
Program Input

C Language Executor Additional SRAM

Features

If the Static Random Access Memory (SRAM) area required for applications created with the C-language executor exceeds the standard size, which is 63K bytes, the SRAM area can optionally be expanded.

Benefits

- Addition of additional processing memory for C-Language
- Increase of the processing capabilities
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J736	0i-TFP C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 256 kB
A02B-0349-S827	0i-TFP C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 512 kB
A02B-0350-J736	0i-MFP C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 256 kB
A02B-0350-S827	0i-MFP C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 512 kB
A02B-0353-J736	30i-BP C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 256 kB
A02B-0353-S827	30i-BP C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 512 kB
A02B-0356-J736	31i-B5P C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 256 kB
A02B-0356-S827	31i-B5P C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 512 kB
A02B-0357-J736	31i-BP C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 256 kB
A02B-0357-S827	31i-BP C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 512 kB
A02B-0358-J736	32i-BP C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 256 kB
A02B-0358-S827	32i-BP C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 512 kB
A02B-0359-J736	30i-LB Plus C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 256 kB
A02B-0359-S827	30i-LB Plus C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 512 kB
A02B-0360-J736	31i-LB Plus C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 256 kB
A02B-0360-S827	31i-LB Plus C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 512 kB
A02B-0362-J736	31i-PB Plus C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 256 kB
A02B-0362-S827	31i-PB Plus C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 512 kB
A02B-0364-J736	PM i-A Plus C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 256 kB
A02B-0364-S827	PM i-A Plus C-Language Executor Additional SRAM 512 kB

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

303

Program Input

Middle-Level Task for C-Language Executor

Features

Middle-Level Task is the independent task of C Language Executor ordinary tasks (Main Task, Auxiliary Tasks and Window Task), and is a task executed at a constant start interval.

The processing time of Middle-Level Task is divided from the processing time allocated in High-Level Task according to the parameter, and Middle-Level Task can be executed as a task in addition to High-Level Task.

Start interval of Middle-Level Task can be selected by the parameter while the start interval of a High-Level Task is constant.

Benefits

- Addition of additional task management capabilities for the C-Language Executor
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R550	30i-BP Middle-Level Task of C-Language Executor
A02B-0356-R550	31i-B5P Middle-Level Task of C-Language Executor
A02B-0357-R550	31i-BP Middle-Level Task of C-Language Executor
A02B-0358-R550	32i-BP Middle-Level Task of C-Language Executor
A02B-0360-R550	31i-LB Plus Middle-Level Task of C-Language Executor
A02B-0362-R550	31i-PB Plus Middle-Level Task of C-Language Executor
A02B-0364-R550	PM i-A Plus Middle-Level Task of C-Language Executor

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

304
Program Input

Custom Software Size

Features

Custom Software Size is the size of custom software that can be used from the Macro Executor and C-Language Executor programs.

When a multi-path system is used, the total size required for all paths needs to be selected. This amount of space is reserved in the systems Flash-ROM (FROM) memory.

FANUC Series 30i-B Plus comes with 8MB Custom Software Size as a standard.
FANUC Series 0i-F Plus comes with 6MB Custom Software Size as a standard.

Benefits

- Addition of additional storage memory for C-Language
- Increase of the processing capabilities
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J738#12M	0i-TFP Custom Software Size 12 MB
A02B-0349-J738#16M	0i-TFP Custom Software Size 16 MB
A02B-0349-J738#8M	0i-TFP Custom Software Size 8 MB
A02B-0350-J738#12M	0i-MFP Custom Software Size 12 MB
A02B-0350-J738#16M	0i-MFP Custom Software Size 16 MB
A02B-0350-J738#8M	0i-MFP Custom Software Size 8 MB
A02B-0353-J738#12M	30i-BP Custom Software Size 12 MB
A02B-0353-J738#16M	30i-BP Custom Software Size 16 MB
A02B-0356-J738#12M	31i-B5P Custom Software Size 12 MB
A02B-0356-J738#16M	31i-B5P Custom Software Size 16 MB
A02B-0357-J738#12M	31i-BP Custom Software Size 12 MB
A02B-0357-J738#16M	31i-BP Custom Software Size 16 MB
A02B-0358-J738#12M	32i-BP Custom Software Size 12 MB
A02B-0358-J738#16M	32i-BP Custom Software Size 16 MB
A02B-0359-J738#12M	30i-LB Plus Custom Software Size 12 MB
A02B-0359-J738#16M	30i-LB Plus Custom Software Size 16 MB
A02B-0360-J738#12M	31i-LB Plus Custom Software Size 12 MB
A02B-0360-J738#16M	31i-LB Plus Custom Software Size 16 MB

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0362-J738#12M	31i-PB Plus Custom Software Size 12 MB
A02B-0362-J738#16M	31i-PB Plus Custom Software Size 16 MB
A02B-0364-J738#12M	PM i-A Plus Custom Software Size 12 MB
A02B-0364-J738#16M	PM i-A Plus Custom Software Size 16 MB

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

306
Program Input

Embedded Macro

Features

This function protects a program created by a machine tool builder, by storing the program in an exclusive folder to embedded macros (hereinafter referred to as an MTB1 folder) and assigning an attribute to the folder.

At the same time, the following functions are available:

- An exclusive program memory capacity of 100K bytes (corresponding to about 260 m) is provided in addition the ordinary program memory capacity. The number of registerable programs remains unchanged from the ordinary number of registerable programs.
- Attributes such as edit lock and edit/display lock can be assigned to the MTB1 folder. In addition, a set values can be locked using an exclusive password.
- A program stored in the MTB1 folder can be called based on a M/T codes or G code; subprogram can be called using M code.
- Custom macro common variables (#200 to #499) are added.

Benefits

- Protection of programs

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S652#128K	0i-TFP Embedded Macro
A02B-0350-S652#128K	0i-MFP Embedded Macro
A02B-0353-S652#128K	30i-BP Embedded Macro
A02B-0356-S652#128K	31i-B5P Embedded Macro
A02B-0357-S652#128K	31i-BP Embedded Macro
A02B-0358-S652#128K	32i-BP Embedded Macro
A02B-0359-S652#128K	30i-LB Plus Embedded Macro
A02B-0360-S652#128K	31i-LB Plus Embedded Macro
A02B-0362-S652#128K	31i-PB Plus Embedded Macro

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

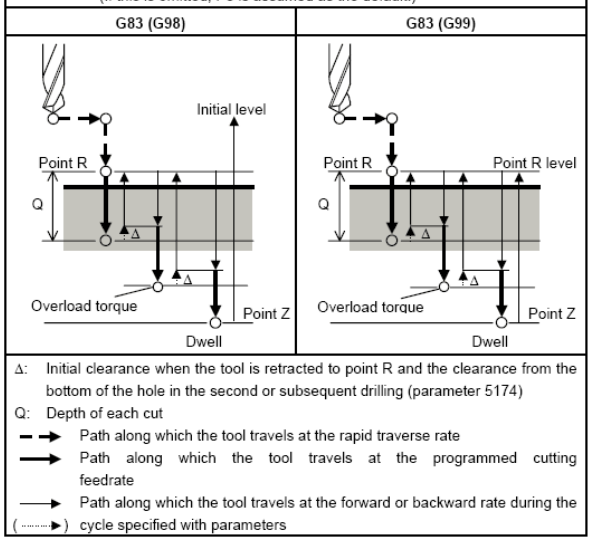
The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

307

Program Input

G83 X_ Y_ Z_ R_ Q_ F_ I_ K_ P ;

X_ Y_ : Hole position data
Z_ : Distance from point R to the bottom of the hole
R_ : Distance from the initial level to point R
Q_ : Depth of each cut
F_ : Cutting feedrate
I_ : Forward or backward traveling speed (same format as F above)
(If this is omitted, the values in parameters No.5172 and No.5173 are assumed as defaults.)
K_ : Number of times the operation is repeated (if required)
P_ : Dwell time at the bottom of the hole
(If this is omitted, P0 is assumed as the default.)



Δ: Initial clearance when the tool is retracted to point R and the clearance from the bottom of the hole in the second or subsequent drilling (parameter 5174)
Q: Depth of each cut
Path along which the tool travels at the rapid traverse rate
Path along which the tool travels at the programmed cutting feedrate
Path along which the tool travels at the forward or backward rate during the cycle specified with parameters

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Small Hole Peck Drilling Cycle

Features

The Small Hole Peck Drilling Cycle performs a drilling operation that periodically retracts the tool above the parts surface (to a clearance position) to clear chips or flood the hole with coolant until the desired hole depth is reached.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Simplified Programming

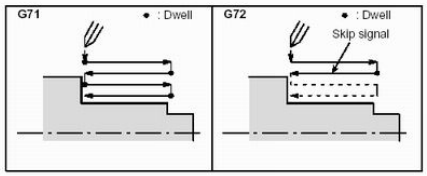
Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J896	0i-MFP Small Hole Peck Drilling Cycle
A02B-0353-J896	30i-BP Small Hole Peck Drilling Cycle
A02B-0356-J896	31i-B5P Small Hole Peck Drilling Cycle
A02B-0357-J896	31i-BP Small-Hole Peck Drilling Cycle
A02B-0358-J896	32i-BP Small-Hole Peck Drilling Cycle

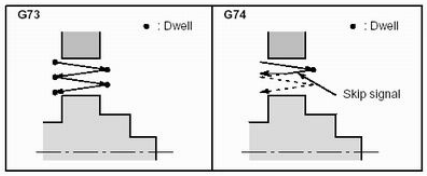
308

Program Input

Traverse grinding cycle (G71, G72)



Oscillating grinding cycle (73, G74)



Canned Cycle for Grinding

Features

Canned Cycles for Grinding provides an easier way for the programmer to create programs for grinding.

With a canned grinding cycle, repetitive operations peculiar to grinding can be specified in a single block with a G function. The repetitive machining specific to grinding can be specified by one block. Since four types of canned cycles are provided for grinding, programming is simplified.

Benefits

- Simplified Programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S974	30i-BP Canned Cycle for Grinding
A02B-0356-S974	31i-B5P Canned Cycle for Grinding
A02B-0357-S974	31i-BP Canned Cycle for Grinding
A02B-0358-S974	32i-BP Canned Cycle for Grinding

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

309

Program Input

Real Time Custom Macro

Features

Used with an NC program, the real time custom macro function controls peripheral axes and signals.

If a macro statement is used together with an NC statement, a program using the conventional custom macro function executes the macro statement immediately when the macro statement is read. So, the macro statement cannot be executed independently of the NC statement.

On the other hand, the real time custom macro function enables the following control operations when a real time macro command (RTM command) is coded in an NC program.

Key functions

- A real time macro command starts operation in synchronism with the NC statement and is executed independently During NC program execution, a real time macro command can be executed at the same time.
- PMC interface signals can be read and written (with a restriction). In an NC program, a motion using a signal as a trigger can be coded
- Variables dedicated to a real time macro command can be read and written
- A real time macro command can exercise axis control
- Multiple real time macro commands can be executed at the same time. Multiple real time custom macro statements can be coded in an NC program and can be controlled independently of each other

Benefits

- Simplified Programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S842	0i-TFP Real Time Custom Macro
A02B-0350-S842	0i-MFP Real Time Custom Macro
A02B-0353-S842	30i-BP Real Time Custom Macro
A02B-0356-S842	31i-B5P Real Time Custom Macro
A02B-0357-S842	31i-BP Real Time Custom Macro
A02B-0358-S842	32i-BP Real Time Custom Macro
A02B-0359-S842	30i-LB Plus Real Time Custom Macro
A02B-0360-S842	31i-LB Plus Real Time Custom Macro

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

310

Specification	Description
A02B-0362-S842	31i-PB Plus Real Time Custom Macro

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

311
Program Input

Dual Feedrate Command

Features

With Dual Feedrate Command, you can specify different feedrates for 2 linear axes in one G01 block independently. Depending on the application, the simultaneous start of two cutting movements with different feedratres can reduce cycle time. Dual Feedrate Command eliminates the need for a 2nd path for this kind of operation. And as the command ca be issued in one block, programming is simplified.

Benefits

- Reduce cycle time
- Reduce no. of paths
- Easy programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R369	0i-TFP Dual Feedrate Command
A02B-0350-R369	0i-MFP Dual Feedrate Command
A02B-0353-R369	30i-BP Dual Feedrate Command
A02B-0356-R369	31i-B5P Dual Feedrate Command
A02B-0357-R369	31i-BP Dual Feedrate Command
A02B-0358-R369	32i-BP Dual Feedrate Command

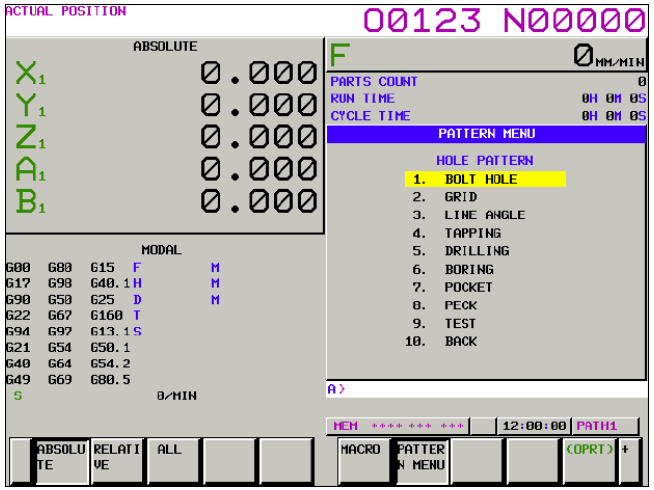
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

312

Program Input



Pattern Data Input

Features

With the Pattern Data Input function, a part program can be created from a selected menu with the possibility to enter data on conversational screens.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- No need for extensive G code knowledge
- Conversational screens for standard cycles
- Simplifies part programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J884	0i-TFP Pattern Data Input
A02B-0350-J884	0i-MFP Pattern Data Input

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

313
Program Input

M-Code Protect Function

Features

Execution of some specific M-codes (miscellaneous function) is permitted only when commanded in the macro program which is called as macro.

With this function, specific M-codes, which are used in the macro program for machine control, can be protected from the illegal use in user machining program.

Benefits

- Simplified Programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R594	0i-TFP M-Code Protect Function
A02B-0350-R594	0i-MFP M-Code Protect Function
A02B-0353-R594	30i-BP M-Code Protect Function
A02B-0356-R594	31i-B5P M-Code Protect Function
A02B-0357-R594	31i-BP M-Code Protect Function
A02B-0358-R594	32i-BP M-Code Protect Function
A02B-0359-R594	30i-LB Plus M-Code Protect Function
A02B-0360-R594	31i-LB Plus M-Code Protect Function
A02B-0362-R594	31i-PB Plus M-Code Protect Function

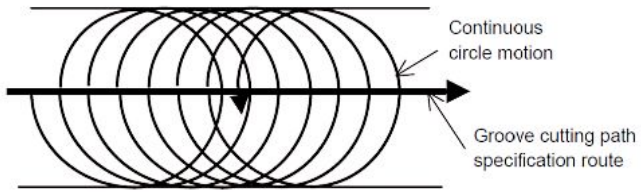
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

314

Program Input



Groove Cutting Function by Continuous Circle Movement

Features

Groove cutting with a width greater than the tool diameter can be performed by causing the tool to make continuous circle motion independently of axis movement by the groove cutting path program and superposing the continuous circle motion on the axis movement by the groove cutting path program.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S854	30i-BP Groove Cutting Function by Continuous Circle Movement
A02B-0356-S854	31i-B5P Groove Cutting Function by Continuous Circle Movement
A02B-0357-S854	31i-BP Groove Cutting Function by Continuous Circle Movement

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

315
Program Input

Extended P-Code Variables Size

Features

This function increases the total number of available P-code variables and extended P-code variables for Macro Executor.

Benefits

- Increase the processing capabilities of Macro Executor

Ordering Information

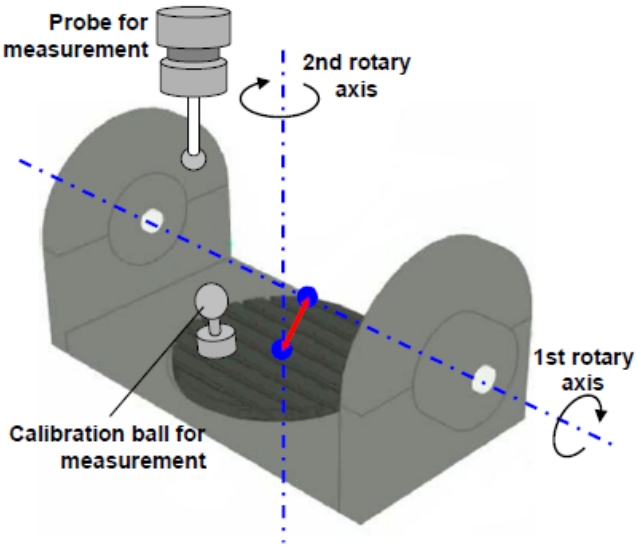
Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J739#1M	30i-BP Extended P-Code Variables Size 1 MB
A02B-0353-J739#256K	30i-BP Extended P-Code Variables Size 256 kB
A02B-0353-J739#512K	30i-BP Extended P-Code Variables Size 512 kB
A02B-0356-J739#1M	31i-B5P Extended P-Code Variables Size 1 MB
A02B-0356-J739#256K	31i-B5P Extended P-Code Variables Size 256 kB
A02B-0356-J739#512K	31i-B5P Extended P-Code Variables Size 512 kB
A02B-0357-J739#1M	31i-BP Extended P-Code Variables Size 1 MB
A02B-0357-J739#256K	31i-BP Extended P-Code Variables Size 256 kB
A02B-0357-J739#512K	31i-BP Extended P-Code Variables Size 512 kB
A02B-0358-J739#1M	32i-BP Extended P-Code Variables Size 1 MB
A02B-0358-J739#256K	32i-BP Extended P-Code Variables Size 256 kB
A02B-0358-J739#512K	32i-BP Extended P-Code Variables Size 512 kB
A02B-0359-J739#1M	30i-LB Plus Extended P-Code Variables Size 1 MB
A02B-0359-J739#256K	30i-LB Plus Extended P-Code Variables Size 256 kB
A02B-0359-J739#512K	30i-LB Plus Extended P-Code Variables Size 512 kB
A02B-0360-J739#1M	31i-LB Plus Extended P-Code Variables Size 1 MB
A02B-0360-J739#256K	31i-LB Plus Extended P-Code Variables Size 256 kB
A02B-0360-J739#512K	31i-LB Plus Extended P-Code Variables Size 512 kB
A02B-0362-J739#1M	31i-PB Plus Extended P-Code Variables Size 1 MB
A02B-0362-J739#256K	31i-PB Plus Extended P-Code Variables Size 256 kB
A02B-0362-J739#512K	31i-PB Plus Extended P-Code Variables Size 512 kB
A02B-0364-J739#1M	PM i-A Plus Extended P-Code Variables Size 1 MB
A02B-0364-J739#256K	PM i-A Plus Extended P-Code Variables Size 256 kB
A02B-0364-J739#512K	PM i-A Plus Extended P-Code Variables Size 512 kB

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

316
Program Input



Execution Macro of Measurement Cycle

Features

Measurement cycles are basically subprograms that solve specific measurement tasks. Together with measurement devices such as a touch probe, measurement cycles are used to gauge the dimensions of a tool or workpiece, or to measure the exact position of a blank. On 5-axis machines, measurement cycles can also be used to find the center of rotation for rotary axes.

The Execution Macro for Measurement Cycle function provides 99 measurement cycles for all necessary measurement tasks. The cycles are parametrized by P-CODE variables. Execution Macro for Measurement Cycle lets you monitor workpiece quality by automatic measurements.

Benefits

- Execute complex measurement operations easily
- Increase the accuracy of machined parts
- Reduce set-up time

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R336	30i-BP Execution Macro of Measurement Cycle
A02B-0356-R336	31i-B5P Execution Macro of Measurement Cycle
A02B-0357-R336	31i-BP Execution Macro of Measurement Cycle
A02B-0358-R336	32i-BP Execution Macro of Measurement Cycle

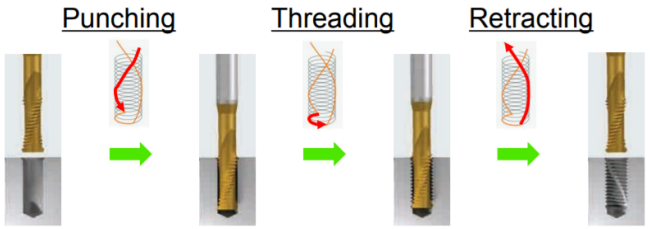
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

317

Program Input



Punch Tapping Function

Features

The Punch Tapping function is an extension of Canned Cycles for Drilling. It contains special tapping cycles which are used together with Punch Tap tools.

The Punch Tap technology is a new way of threading called helical thread forming. It uses a specific tool geometry with a punch tooth and a specific toolpath to plunge rapidly, creating a helical groove. The thread is broached in a single half-turn. Then the tool retracts rapidly, following the contour of the helical groove.

Punch Tapping shortens cycle time and consumes less energy compared to conventional threading technologies, reducing costs of threading.

Benefits

- Reduce cycle time
- Reduce energy consumption

Spindles controlled with servo motor and analog spindles are not supported.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-R168	0i-MFP Punch Tapping Function
A02B-0353-R168	30i-BP Punch Tapping Function
A02B-0356-R168	31i-B5P Punch Tapping Function
A02B-0357-R168	31i-BP Punch Tapping Function
A02B-0358-R168	32i-BP Punch Tapping Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

318
Functions



Integrated Operation & Programming Guidance Functions

FANUC products and solutions reflect over 50 years of experience in machine tools, conversational / interactive programming and part programming on the shop floor. The straightforward design of the operation screens allows fast, simple and user friendly operation.

Without particular knowledge of G-code programming, it is possible to generate part programs, just by answering simple questions.

Enhanced simulation capabilities are also provided to verify the part programs without moving the axes.

Interactive programming solutions detailed in this catalogue:

- MANUAL GUIDE i for Series 30i and Series 0i CNC
- MANUAL GUIDE 0i for Series 0i CNC
- TURN MATE i for Series 0i CNC

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

319

Integrated Operation & Programming Guidance Functions

iHMI

The following section contains functions related to iHMI, FANUC's new user interface.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

320

iHMI



iHMI Basic Function

Features

iHMI is FANUC's new user interface. It has been designed to be extremely easy to use. Intuitive menu icons, high-visibility design and animate features take the head-scratching out of complex machining operations, making accessing even the most sophisticated programs and functionalities straightforward. Despite its more intuitive layout, users will nevertheless find that it provides a familiar FANUC user experience.

This option is necessary to use the iHMI user interface.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (Type 0).

Benefits

- Easy and simple operation
- Intuitive icons and high-visibility design
- Easy troubleshooting

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R901	30i-BP iHMI Basic Function
A02B-0356-R901	31i-B5P iHMI Basic Function
A02B-0357-R901	31i-BP iHMI Basic Function
A02B-0358-R901	32i-BP iHMI Basic Function
A02B-0362-R901	31i-PB Plus iHMI Basic Function
A02B-0364-R906	PM i-A Plus iHMI Basic Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

321
iHMI



iHMI for Laser / Punch Press

Features

iHMI is FANUC's new user interface. It has been designed to be extremely easy to use. Intuitive menu icons, high-visibility design and animate features take the head-scratching out of complex machining operations, making accessing even the most sophisticated programs and functionalities straightforward. Despite its more intuitive layout, users will nevertheless find that it provides a familiar FANUC user experience.

iHMI for Laser / Punch Press has unique functions for laser machining. The Laser Dashboard Screen provides a cutting shape preview before the cutting starts. During cutting, it shows real time values and progress of cutting. The Laser Cutting Condition Database allows you to save and call cutting condition settings for each material and thickness.

This option is necessary to use the iHMI for Laser / Punch Press user interface.

Benefits

- Easy and simple operation
- Intuitive icons and high-visibility design
- Easy troubleshooting

Ordering Information

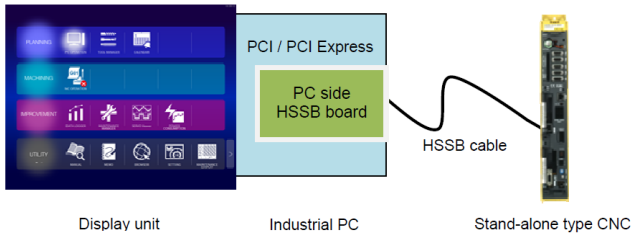
Specification	Description
A02B-0359-R901	30i-LB Plus iHMI Basic Function
A02B-0360-R901	31i-LB Plus iHMI Basic Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

322
iHMI



iHMI Driver for IPC

Features

iHMI can be installed on 3rd party Industrial PCs. You can use iHMI on displays with arbitrary display sizes and integrate iHMI into customer specific operator consoles. The iHMI Driver for IPC option is necessary in that case.

Benefits

- Use displays with arbitrary display sizes
- Integrate iHMI into customer specific operator consoles

Ordering Information

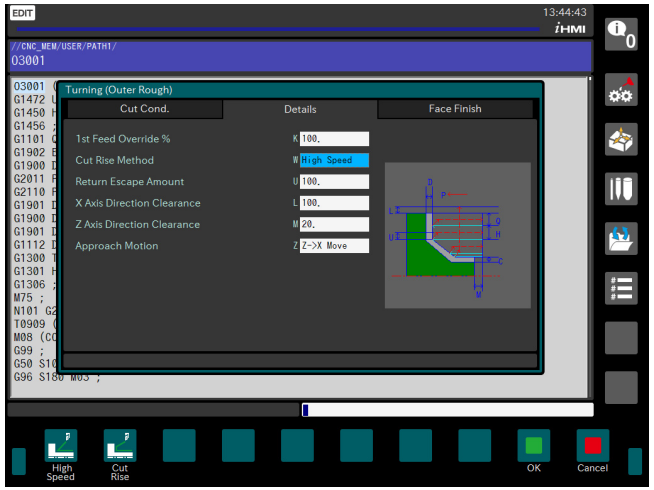
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R907	0i-TFP iHMI Driver for IPC
A02B-0350-R907	0i-MFP iHMI Driver for IPC
A02B-0351-R907	0i-LFP iHMI Driver for IPC
A02B-0353-R907	30i-BP iHMI Driver for IPC
A02B-0356-R907	31i-B5P iHMI Driver for IPC
A02B-0357-R907	31i-BP iHMI Driver for IPC
A02B-0358-R907	32i-BP iHMI Driver for IPC
A02B-0359-R907	30i-LBP iHMI Driver for IPC
A02B-0360-R907	31i-LBP iHMI Driver for IPC
A02B-0362-R907	31i-PB Plus iHMI Driver for IPC

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

323
iHMI



iHMI Machining Cycle

Features

iHMI Machining Cycle is a user interface for the execution of machining cycles. It is an extension for the FANUC iHMI operation interface. More than 200 cycles for milling and turning are included in this function. Graphical guidance screens assist the user in selecting the proper cycle and inputting the cycle parameter data. Part shapes can be input graphically and can be saved for re-use. Up to 4 paths are supported by the function.

PANEL iH or PANEL iH Pro is necessary to use the function.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (Type 0).

Benefits

- Execute complex machining operations easily by simply selecting and parametrizing machining cycles
- Reduce the time from drawing to cutting

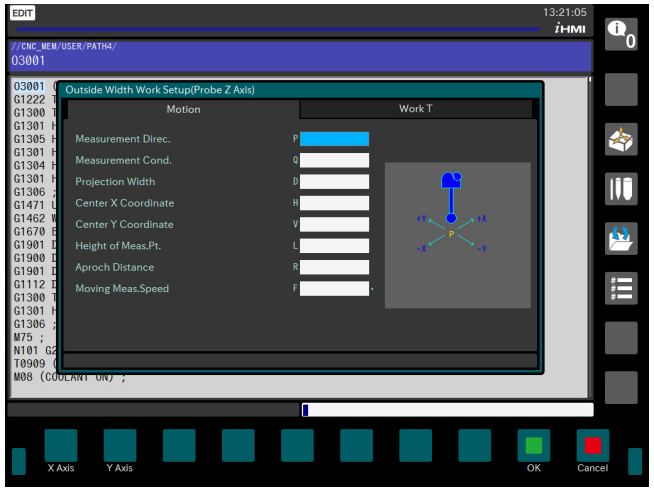
Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R911	30i-BP iHMI Machining Cycle for 1-Path System
A02B-0353-R912	30i-BP iHMI Machining Cycle for 2-Path System
A02B-0353-R913	30i-BP iHMI Machining Cycle for 3-Path System
A02B-0353-R914	30i-BP iHMI Machining Cycle for 4-Path System
A02B-0356-R911	31i-B5P iHMI Machining Cycle for 1-Path System
A02B-0356-R912	31i-B5P iHMI Machining Cycle for 2-Path System
A02B-0356-R913	31i-B5P iHMI Machining Cycle for 3-Path System
A02B-0356-R914	31i-B5P iHMI Machining Cycle for 4-Path System
A02B-0357-R911	31i-BP iHMI Machining Cycle for 1-Path System
A02B-0357-R912	31i-BP iHMI Machining Cycle for 2-Path System
A02B-0357-R913	31i-BP iHMI Machining Cycle for 3-Path System
A02B-0357-R914	31i-BP iHMI Machining Cycle for 4-Path System
A02B-0358-R911	32i-BP iHMI Machining Cycle for 1-Path System
A02B-0358-R912	32i-BP iHMI Machining Cycle for 2-Path System

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



iHMI Set-Up Guidance

Features

iHMI Set-Up Guidance is a user interface for the execution of measurement cycles. It is an extension for the FANUC iHMI operation interface. More than 100 cycles for tool measurement, workpiece set-up, post-machining inspection and calibration are included in this function. Graphical guidance screens assist the user in selecting the proper cycle and inputting the cycle parameter data.

PANEL iH or PANEL iH Pro is necessary to use the function.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (Type 0).

Benefits

- Execute complex measurement operations easily by simply selecting and parametrizing measurement cycles
- Increase the accuracy of machined parts
- Reduce the time from drawing to cutting

Ordering Information

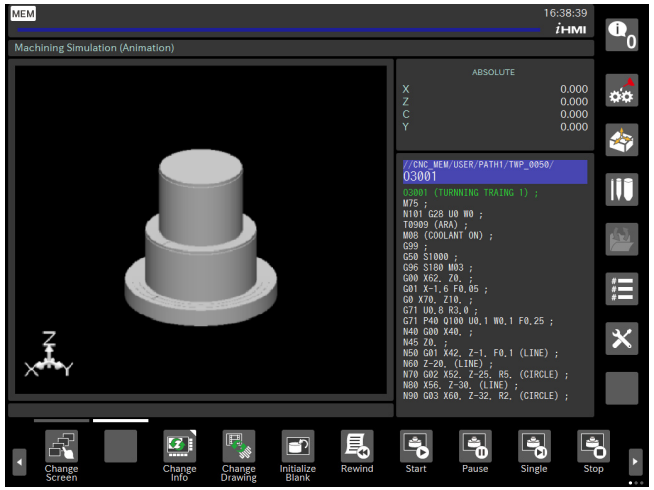
Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R910	30i-BP iHMI Set-Up Guidance
A02B-0356-R910	31i-B5P iHMI Set-Up Guidance
A02B-0357-R910	31i-BP iHMI Set-Up Guidance
A02B-0358-R910	32i-BP iHMI Set-Up Guidance

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

325
iHMI



iHMI Machining Program Preview

Features

With the iHMI Machining Program Rewiew, you can evaluate the machining result for milling and turning before the actual operation. You are able to find errors and potential for optimizations in your program directly in front of the CNC. The simulation lets you spot critical tool movements or detect any interference between blank and tool during rapid traverse or if the spindle is not rotating. Avoid damage to your workpiece, tool and machine, and minimize scrap. Analyze the block distribution on the tool path to assess the quality before machining and ensure high quality production.

iHMI Machining Program Review's multiple display options offer you a precise view on the part or the tool path. You can display the workpiece animation only, tool path and workpiece animation, and tool path only. If the tool covers the workpiece, you can hide the tool for better visibility.

Benefits

- Avoid damage to your workpiece, tool and machine
- ensure high quality production

Ordering Information

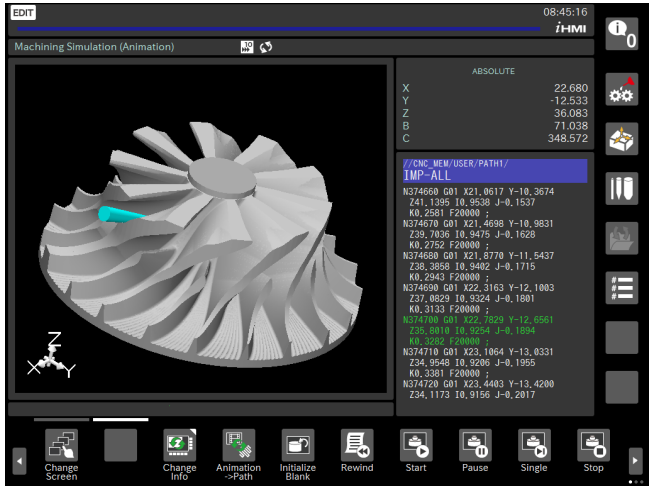
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R909	0i-TFP iHMI Machining Simulation
A02B-0350-R909	0i-MFP iHMI Machining Simulation
A02B-0353-R909	30i-B Plus iHMI Machining Simulation
A02B-0356-R909	31i-B5 Plus iHMI Machining Simulation
A02B-0357-R909	31i-B Plus iHMI Machining Simulation
A02B-0358-R909	32i-B Plus iHMI Machining Simulation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

iHMI Machining Simulation Extension



Features

With the iHMI Machining Simualtion Extension, you can evaluate the machining result for milling and turning before the actual operation. You are able to find errors and potential for optimizations in your program directly in front of the CNC. The simulation lets you spot critical tool movements or detect any interference between blank and tool during rapid traverse or if the spindle is not rotating. Avoid damage to your workpiece, tool and machine, and minimize scrap. Analyze the block distribution on the tool path to assess the quality before machining and ensure high quality production.

iHMI Machining Simualtion Extension's multiple display options offer you a precise view on the part or the tool path. You can display the workpiece animation only, tool path and workpiece animation, and tool path only. If the tool covers the workpiece, you can hide the tool for better visibility.

You can use colors for the toolpaths in order to provide you with more information on the the machining:

- Assign different colors to the tool path everytime the tool changes. That way, you can distinguish easily between different process steps.
- Assign a color gradient to the tool path that shows the amount of material being removed per second. That way, you can find easily that parts of the program that need optimization.
- Assign different colors for air cut and cutting to the tool path. That way, you can identifiy unnecessary long air cuts and reduce them.

iHMI Machining Simulation Extension can simulate both programs that were created manually on the CNC as well as programs that were created by a CAD/CAM system. Using iHMI Machining Simulation Extension pays off even for 5-axis machining of complex workpieces that have been created and checked by a CAD/CAM system, because it considers the actual machine's kinematics.

Benefits

- Avoid damage to your workpiece, tool and machine
- ensure high quality production
- Find potential to optimize the part program
- Simulate 5-axis machining

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R904	30i-BP iHMI 5-Axis Machining Simulation
A02B-0356-R904	31i-B5P iHMI 5-Axis Machining Simulation
A02B-0357-R904	31i-BP iHMI 5-Axis Machining Simulation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

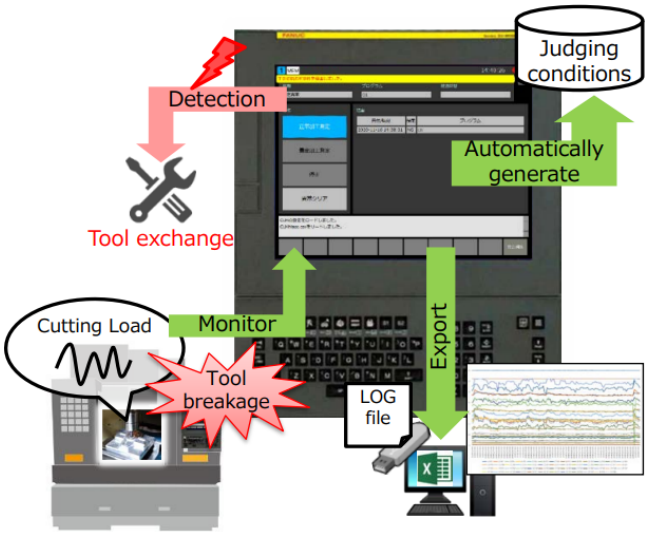
Specification	Description
A02B-0358-R904	32i-BP iHMI 5-Axis Machining Simulation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

iHMI Cutting Load Monitor



Features

iHMI Cutting Load Monitor Function detects tool breakage by monitoring the cutting load in mass production machining. It automatically generates assessment criteria by measuring cutting load during reference machining. The monitored cutting load and the detection results are recorded and can be exported into a log file. If a broken tool is detected, a recovery action (e.g. a tool change) can be performed by the PMC.

Benefits

- Detect tool breakage and reduce rejects in mass production
- Easy implementation with automatically generated assessment criteria
- Cutting load log helps to investigate the tool breakage cause
- No external sensor necessary

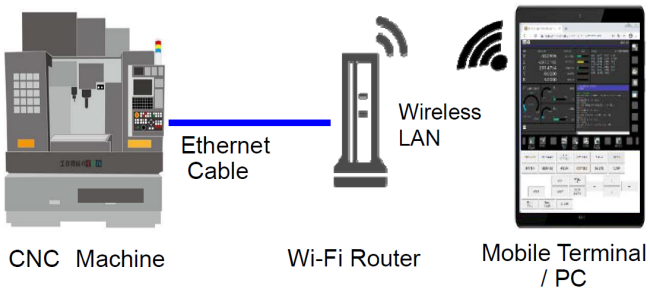
Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-R920	0i-MFP iHMI Load Monitor Function
A02B-0353-R920	30i-BP iHMI Load Monitor Function
A02B-0356-R920	31i-B5P iHMI Load Monitor Function
A02B-0357-R920	31i-BP iHMI Load Monitor Function
A02B-0358-R920	32i-BP iHMI Load Monitor Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



iHMI Remote Monitoring Function

Features

iHMI Remote Monitoring Function allows you to view and operate iHMI from a remote device such as a tablet, smartphone or PC. iHMI is displayed in the web browser of the remote device. This also includes Windows applications and custom screens such as FANUC PICTURE and C Language Executor. You can operate iHMI via the touch display of the remote device or by entering keys via the keypad. It is possible to temporarily restrict the remote access to the machine tool by a PMC signal. A user authentication with user name and password prevents unauthorized access to the machine tool.

Benefits

- Check the operating status of a machine tool from a remote location
- Investigate the cause of problems from a remote location
- No additional software necessary

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R908	0i-TFP iHMI Remote Monitoring Function
A02B-0350-R908	0i-MFP iHMI Remote Monitoring Function
A02B-0353-R908	30i-BP iHMI Remote Monitoring Function
A02B-0356-R908	31i-B5P iHMI Remote Monitoring Function
A02B-0357-R908	31i-BP iHMI Remote Monitoring Function
A02B-0358-R908	32i-BP iHMI Remote Monitoring Function
A02B-0364-R908	PM i-A Plus iHMI Remote Monitoring Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

330

Integrated Operation & Programming Guidance Functions

MANUAL GUIDE

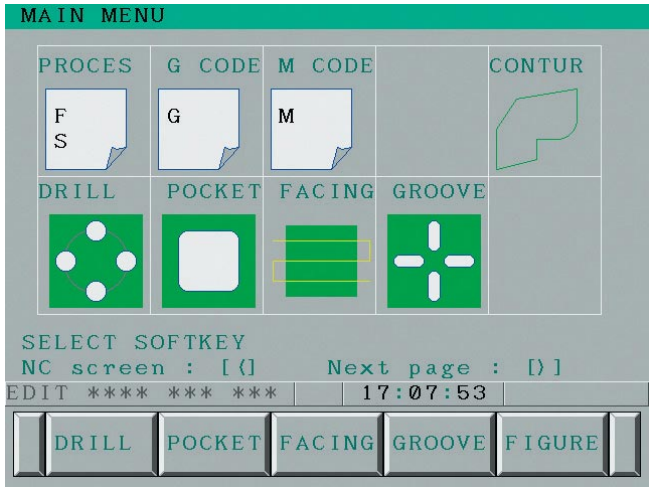
The following section contains functions related to MANUAL GUIDE i, FANUC's legacy operation guidance software.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

331
MANUAL GUIDE



MANUAL GUIDE 0i

Features

MANUAL GUIDE 0i is a simplified operation guidance software to assist an operator in creating complex part program, and actual machining.

MANUAL GUIDE 0i provides the following features:

- ISO code part programming: ISO can be used to directly input a simple operation such as linear or arc machining with G codes or easily input complicated operations such as pocketing or turning within an existing machining cycle
- Easy specification of a tool, spindle, coolant and feedrate: these conditions can easily be specified on a screen before machining
- Easy programming of G codes and M codes: G codes and M codes can easily be input with reference to the screen for G code description and illustration and the screen for M code description and illustration.
- Preparation of machining cycles for machining centers:
  - Hole machining (pattern figure)
  - Pocketing (pattern figure)
  - Facing (pattern figure)
  - Grooving (pattern figure)
- Preparation of machining cycles for lathe systems:
  - Drilling (workpiece center)
  - Turning (arbitrary figure)
  - Grooving (normal groove, trapezoidal groove)
  - Threading (general-purpose thread, metric thread, unified thread, PT/PF thread)
- Easy input of contour figure: a contour figure consisting of lines and arcs can be easily input and converted into a NC command block (G01/G02/G03). In addition, advance figure calculation functions can be performed with the help of 11 auxiliary functions.

Available language packages for MANUAL GUIDE 0i:

- English, Chinese, Japanese
- English, German, French
- English, Italian, Spanish
- English, Swedish, Portuguese
- English, Czech, Polish

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Benefits

- Assisted and conversational programming of machining cycles
- Simplification of the programming of parts
- Reduction of the total time required from parts drawing to parts cutting
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S772	0i-TFP MANUAL GUIDE 0i
A02B-0350-S772	0i-MFP MANUAL GUIDE 0i

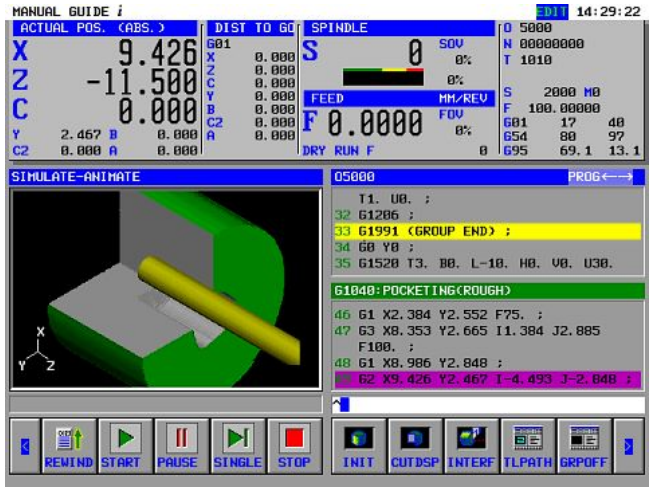
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

333

MANUAL GUIDE



MANUAL GUIDE i Advanced Guidance Function

Features

The MANUAL GUIDE i Advanced Guidance Option provides the following features:

- Decomposed cycle display: this function can display the part program blocks being generated by the MANUAL GUIDE i cycles during machining simulation on the machining simulation screen.
- Input data check by simulation: the operation of a cycle that is being edited can be checked by the machining simulation function (animation / tool pathdrawing) at the same time.
- Help window for each screen (PANEL i or LCD unit C required): a context sensitive help of the MANUAL GUIDE i cycle currently being edited is displayed by pushing the HELP key on the MDI keyboard.
- Integration of animation software that is running on PANEL i: MANUAL GUIDE i can be interfaced to 3rd party simulation software running on PC; these packages can be used when high performance simulations are required. The 3rd party animation software can access the storage memory of the CNC and can acquire the machining program (MANUAL GUIDE i does not output the machining program to 3rd party animation software directly).

Benefits

- Extension of the function set of MANUAL GUIDE i
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

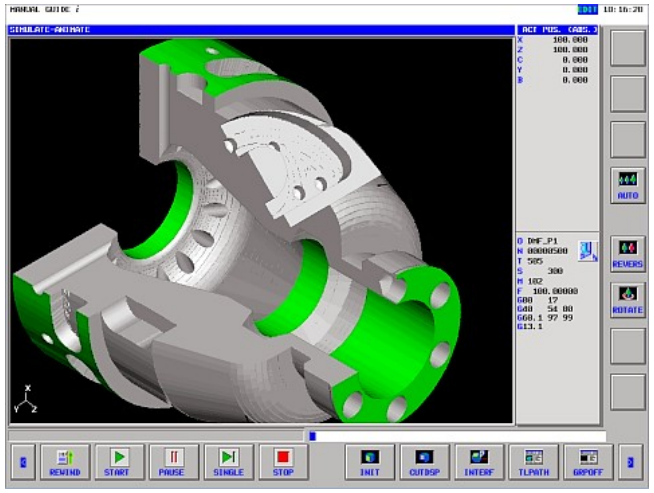
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S774	0i-TFP MANUAL GUIDE i - Advanced Guidance Function
A02B-0350-S774	0i-MFP MANUAL GUIDE i - Advanced Guidance Function
A02B-0353-S774	30i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Advanced Guidance Function
A02B-0356-S774	31i-B5P MANUAL GUIDE i - Advanced Guidance Function
A02B-0357-S774	31i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Advanced Guidance Function
A02B-0358-S774	32i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Advanced Guidance Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

334
MANUAL GUIDE



MANUAL GUIDE i Basic Software

Features

MANUAL GUIDE i is a powerful software for shop floor programming; it provides machine operators with user friendly and powerfull capabilities to operate a machine. The innovative programming system enables the development of programs from a drawing to a production part in a very short time.

MANUAL GUIDE i supports turning, milling and compound machining applications and can be used on simple machine as well as on very advanced machining processes.

The MANUAL GUIDE i software is built around the standard CNC ISO code format of the CNC and adds an ergonomic user interface to program the cycles. It uses a Graphical User Interface (GUI) with user-friendly icons which allows the user to interactively create part programs in just a few steps. All of the relevant information is displayed on a single CNC screen. Having to constantly change between screens is thus avoided as is the risk of getting lost in the numerous pop-up screens.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (Type 0).

Key features of MANUAL GUIDE i:

- Operator friendly programming environment
- Advanced cycle machining (Turning and Milling)
- Measurement cycles for workpieces and tools
- Detailed part program 3D simulation
- CNC ISO conversion of machining cycles
- Powerful editor and profile calculation
- Seamless environment switching
- Support for multi path Lathes and Milling machines
- Residual cutting
- Background machining simulation
- File management
- Customizable to add guidance windows for customer machining cycles

Several additional functions are available for MANUAL GUIDE i, such as Multi Path support, Tilted Working Plane support for 5-axis machining, etc. These functions are described further in the catalogue.

MANUAL GUIDE i can also be simulated on a Personal Computer with NCGuide or NCGuidePro. Refer to the software section of the catalogue for further information on this subject.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Benefits

- Assisted and conversational programming of machining cycles
- Simplification of the programming of parts
- Reduction of the total time required from drawing to cutting
- Simulation of the part program before cutting metal and machining
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

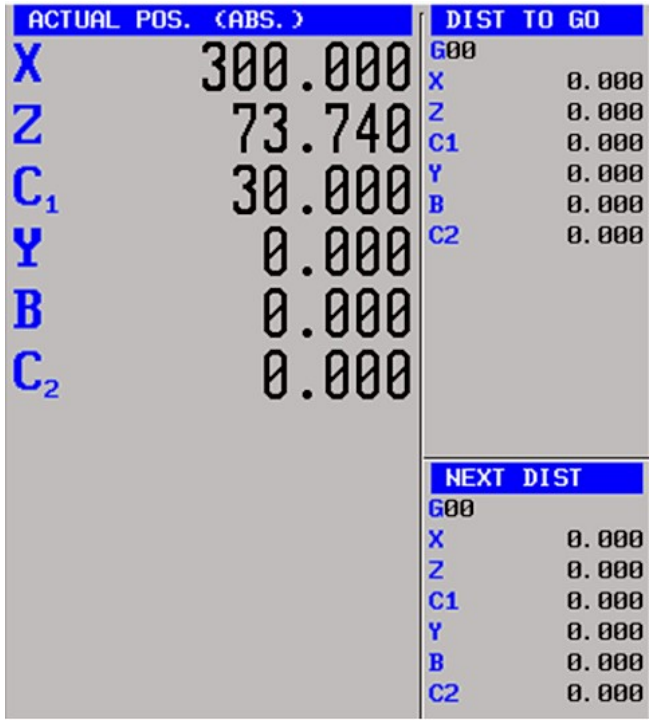
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R948	0i-TFP MANUAL GUIDE i
A02B-0350-R948	0i-MFP MANUAL GUIDE i
A02B-0353-R948	30i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i
A02B-0353-S759	30i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i (CPU Card G)
A02B-0356-R948	31i-B5P MANUAL GUIDE i
A02B-0356-S759	31i-B5P MANUAL GUIDE i (CPU Card G)
A02B-0357-R948	31i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i
A02B-0357-S759	31i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i (CPU Card G)
A02B-0358-R948	32i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i
A02B-0358-S759	32i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i (CPU Card F)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

336
MANUAL GUIDE



MANUAL GUIDE i Extended Axis Name Function

Features

With the Extended Axis Name function, it is possible to add extended axis names to MANUAL GUIDE i machining cycles .

Extended axis name can be used with linear axis other than the basic three axis or rotary axis of workpiece rotation and are composed of 2 characters that are a letter and a number; for example B2, C2, etc.

Extended axis name can also be displayed on the following screens:

- Base screen
- Relative coordinates presetting screen
- Workpiece coordinate data screen
- Machining simulation screen

This function can be used on following screens / resolutions:

- 19" and 15" LCD screens on the Series 30i / 31i / 32i - MODEL A and MODEL B CNC
- 8.4" and 10.4" LCD screens on the Series 30i / 31i / 32i MODEL B CNC

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (Type 0).

Benefits

- The advantage of the MANUAL GUIDE i machining cycles can also used on machines tools using extended axis names

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S789	0i-TFP MANUAL GUIDE i - Extended Axis Name Function
A02B-0350-S789	0i-MFP MANUAL GUIDE i - Extended Axis Name Function
A02B-0353-S789	30i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Extended Axis Name Function
A02B-0356-S789	31i-B5P MANUAL GUIDE i - Extended Axis Name Function
A02B-0357-S789	31i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Extended Axis Name Function
A02B-0358-S789	32i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Extended Axis Name Function

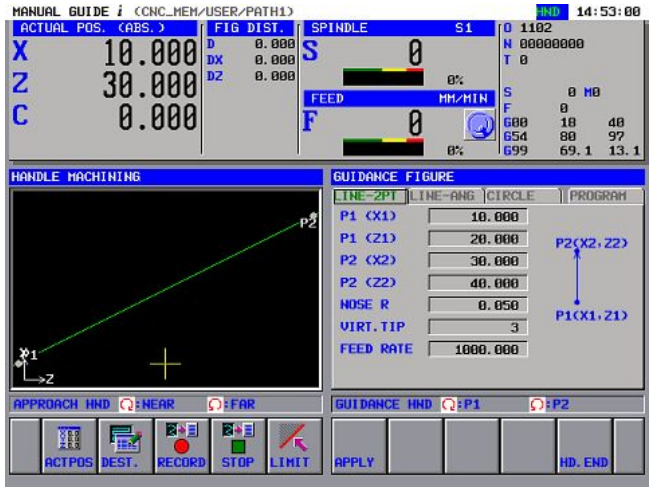
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

337

MANUAL GUIDE



MANUAL GUIDE i Handle Machining Function

Features

The Handle Machining function provides the following two features to MANUAL GUIDE i:

- Machining by handle: this feature enables the operators to machine a slanted line or an arc with simultaneous two axes motion using a single handle.
- Programming by handle: the handle operation can be memorized as a program and the tool motion can be played back.

Benefits

- Simplification of the approach and programming process
- Decrease of the time required to setup the work
- Overall increase of the productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S797	0i-TFP Handle Machining Function
A02B-0350-S797	0i-MFP Handle Machining Function
A02B-0353-S797	30i-BP Handle Machining Function
A02B-0356-S797	31i-B5P Handle Machining Function
A02B-0357-S797	31i-BP Handle Machining Function
A02B-0358-S797	32i-BP Handle Machining Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

MANUAL GUIDE i Material Position Check Cycle

Features

MANUAL GUIDE i Material Position Check Cycle is a measurement cycle to check the shape of the workpiece before machining. It uses a probe to measure the surface position of the workpiece and stores the result of measurement in macro variables.

Since the shape of e.g. castings varies, it is possible to measure the shape before machining to optimize subsequent centering measurements and machining.

Benefits

- Optimize the measurement process before machining

Ordering Information

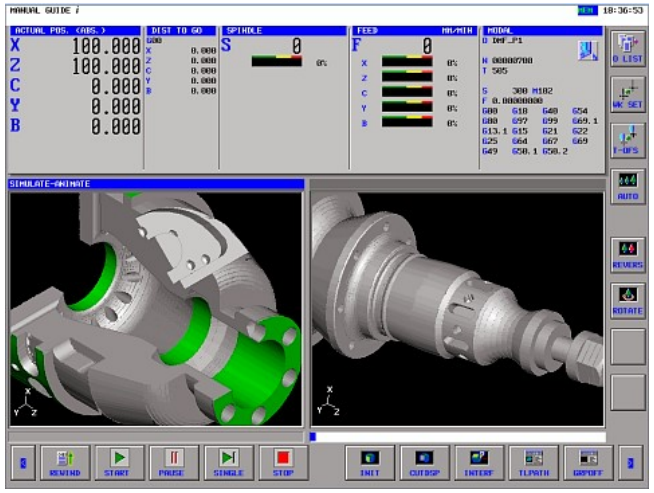
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R937	0i-TFP MANUAL GUIDE i - Material Position Check Cycle
A02B-0350-R937	0i-MFP MANUAL GUIDE i - Material Position Check Cycle
A02B-0353-R937	30i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Material Position Check Cycle
A02B-0356-R937	31i-B5P MANUAL GUIDE i - Material Position Check Cycle
A02B-0357-R937	31i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Material Position Check Cycle
A02B-0358-R937	32i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Material Position Check Cycle

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

339
MANUAL GUIDE



MANUAL GUIDE i Multi-Path Support

Features

The Multi-Path Support function extends the MANUAL GUIDE i functionalities to multi paths machines. It provides the capability to program machining cycles and execute them in several paths.

Supported machine configurations:

- Lathes machines: 2, 3 and 4 paths
- Milling machines: 2 paths

Benefits

- Increase of the capability of MANUAL GUIDE i to support multi-path configurations
- Increase of the productivity of multi path lathes and multi path milling machines

Ordering Information

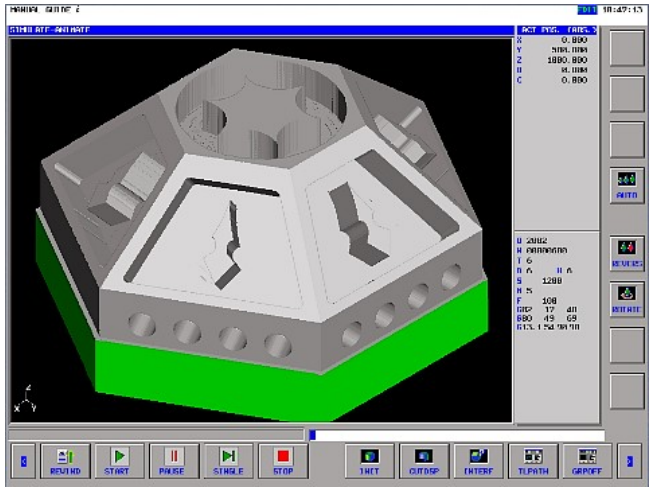
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S786	0i-TFP MANUAL GUIDE i - Multi-Path Function
A02B-0350-S786	0i-MFP MANUAL GUIDE i - Multi-Path Function
A02B-0353-S786	30i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Multi-Path Function
A02B-0356-S786	31i-B5P MANUAL GUIDE i - Multi-Path Function
A02B-0357-S786	31i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Multi-Path Function
A02B-0358-S786	32i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Multi-Path Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

340
MANUAL GUIDE



MANUAL GUIDE i Tilted Working Plane (TWP) Machining Function

Features

The Tilted Working Plane (TWP) Machining function for MANUAL GUIDE i provides a set of guidance windows to program Tilted Working Plane machining comfortably.

The following Tilted Working Plane machining cycles are available in MANUAL GUIDE i:

- Euler's angle
- Roll-Pitch-Yaw angle
- 3 points specification
- 2 vectors specification
- Projection angle
- Tool axis direction
- Tilted Working Plane cancel

Limitation in machining simulation:

- The machining simulation is only provided for mechanical unit or mechanical configurations which are of "table rotation type", that the "A" is the rotary master axis and the "C" is the rotary slave axis. In all other rotary axis configurations machining simulation cannot be performed.
- In case of incremental Tilted Working Plane command or simulation of Tilted Working Plane with simultaneous rotation of two axes, the machining simulation cannot be performed.
- Machining simulation by single block soft key cannot be simulated.

Benefits

- Guidance windows to program Tilted Planes commands in different formats
- The operator can choose which cycle is best suited depending from how the tilted plane is specified in the part drawing

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S788	0i-TFP MANUAL GUIDE i - Tilted Working Plane Indexing

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

341

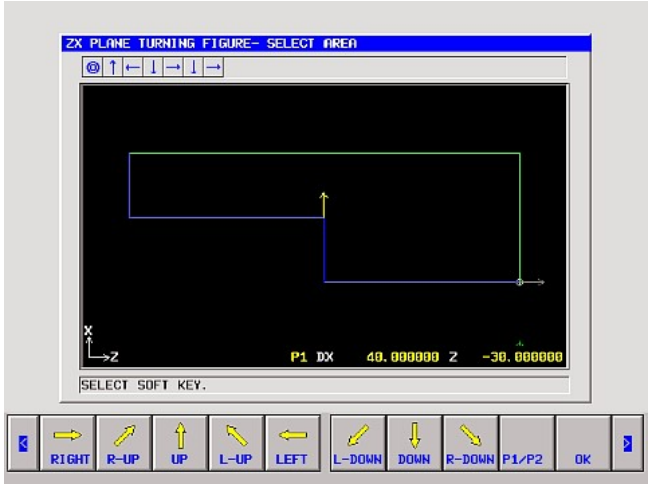
Specification	Description
A02B-0350-S788	0i-MFP MANUAL GUIDE i - Tilted Working Plane Indexing
A02B-0353-S788	30i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Tilted Working Plane Indexing Function
A02B-0356-S788	31i-B5P MANUAL GUIDE i - Tilted Working Plane Indexing Function
A02B-0357-S788	31i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Tilted Working Plane Indexing Function
A02B-0358-S788	32i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Tilted Working Plane Indexing Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

342
MANUAL GUIDE



MANUAL GUIDE i Windows Call Function

Features

The Windows Call function provides the capability to call and display MANUAL GUIDE i windows within a C Language Executor application :

- Blank figure selection window
- Blank figure data input window (fixed form and arbitrary free figure)
- Free figure input window (free figure creation window and range selection window)
- Machining simulation window
- NC program conversion window

Benefits

- Possibility to customize and enhance MANUAL GUIDE i with screens and features.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S779	0i-TFP MANUAL GUIDE i - Windows Call Function
A02B-0350-S779	0i-MFP MANUAL GUIDE i - Windows Call Function
A02B-0353-S779	30i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Windows Call Function
A02B-0356-S779	31i-B5P MANUAL GUIDE i - Windows Call Function
A02B-0357-S779	31i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Windows Call Function
A02B-0358-S779	32i-BP MANUAL GUIDE i - Windows Call Function

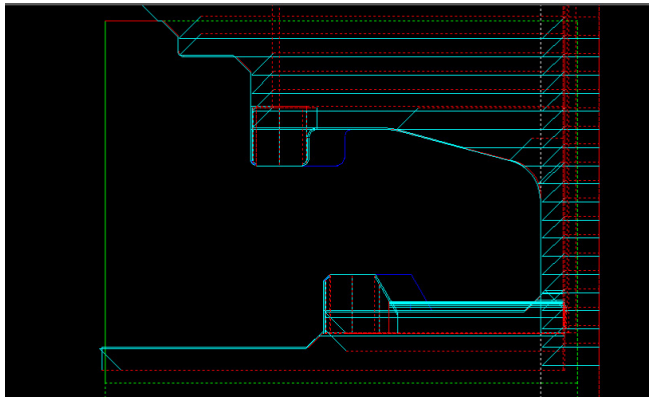
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

343

Integrated Operation & Programming Guidance Functions



iCAP T

Features

iCAP T is a conversational programming tool for lathes. It is an extension for the FANUC iHMI operation interface. iCAP T allows you to create NC programs by just inputting blanks and part shapes and by selecting machining processes.

Generally, creating part programs requires programming knowledge of G and M codes. With this function, part programs can be created automatically without any programming knowledge.

The basic function can create part programs for X-Z axes (turning) and C-Y axes (milling). Two-spindle machining is also supported. CAD data can be read in by the function.

The 2-Path function extension allows to create part programs for controlling a second path. Milling machining with Tilted Working Plane by B axis is supported by the B-Axis function extension. Both extensions require the basic function.

PANEL iH Pro is necessary to use the function. Only 15" or 19" displays with touch panel are supported.

Benefits

- Create part programs for complex lathes easily without any programming knowledge
- Reduce the time from drawing to cutting

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R940	0i-TFP Basic Function for iCAP T
A02B-0349-R941	0i-TFP B-Axis Function for iCAP T
A02B-0349-R942	0i-TFP 2-Path Function for iCAP T
A02B-0349-R943	0i-TFP Tool Nose Radius Compensation Function for iCAP T
A02B-0353-R940	30i-BP Basic Function for iCAP T
A02B-0353-R941	30i-BP B-Axis Function for iCAP T
A02B-0353-R942	30i-BP 2-Path Function for iCAP T
A02B-0353-R943	30i-BP Tool Nose Radius Compensation Function for iCAP T
A02B-0356-R940	31i-B5P Basic Function for iCAP T
A02B-0356-R941	31i-B5P B-Axis Function for iCAP T
A02B-0356-R942	31i-B5P 2-Path Function for iCAP T
A02B-0356-R943	31i-B5P Tool Nose Radius Compensation Function for iCAP T
A02B-0357-R940	31i-BP Basic Function for iCAP T
A02B-0357-R941	31i-BP B-Axis Function for iCAP T
A02B-0357-R942	31i-BP 2-Path Function for iCAP T
A02B-0357-R943	31i-BP Tool Nose Radius Compensation Function for iCAP T

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0358-R940	32i-BP Basic Function for iCAP T
A02B-0358-R941	32i-BP B-Axis Function for iCAP T
A02B-0358-R942	32i-BP 2-Path Function for iCAP T
A02B-0358-R943	32i-BP Tool Nose Radius Compensation Function for iCAP T

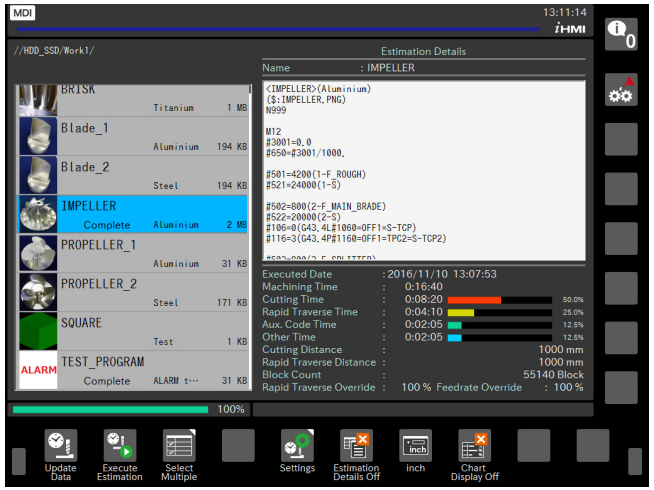
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

345

Integrated Operation & Programming Guidance Functions



Cycle Time Estimate for iHMI

Features

Cycle Time Estimate for iHMI is a function that can quickly estimate the execution cycle time of an NC program. It delivers estimations for cutting and rapid traverse times, time spent on the execution of auxiliary codes (e. g. M codes), as well as cutting and rapid traverse travel distances. Cycle Time Estimate for iHMI is an extension for the FANUC iHMI operation interface.

The accuracy of the estimation is higher than estimations made with 3rd party software. All estimations are calculated in consideration of the real machine's acceleration and deceleration. It is possible to estimate the machining time of complex programs, for example programs for 5-axis machining.

Panel iH Pro is necessary to use this function.

Benefits

- Decrease processing time by optimizing programs
- Improve the utilization of your machines by enhanced and reliable machine schedule planning

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R902	0i-TFP iHMI Cycle Time Estimate Function
A02B-0350-R902	0i-MFP iHMI Cycle Time Estimate Function
A02B-0353-R902	30i-BP iHMI Cycle Time Estimate Function
A02B-0356-R902	31i-B5P iHMI Cycle Time Estimate Function
A02B-0357-R902	31i-BP iHMI Cycle Time Estimate Function
A02B-0358-R902	32i-BP iHMI Cycle Time Estimate Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

346

Integrated Operation & Programming Guidance Functions

TURN MATE i

The following section contains functions related to TURN MATE i, a conversational programming function for entry-level lathes.

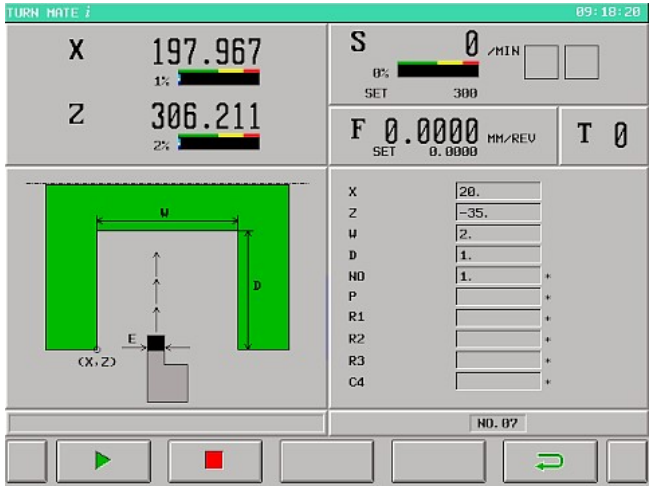
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

347

TURN MATE i



TURN MATE i Basic Software

Features

TURN MATE i is a conversational software function which can assist the operation of entry-level turning machines. The productivity and the flexibility of turning machines can be greatly increased through the operator assistance functions provided by TURN MATE i, which can substitute to the know-how in CNC machining.

No knowledge of G code ISO language is required to program workpieces with TURN MATE i.

TURN MATE i is easy to operate with clearly laid out screens; it is available for monochrome or color displays, for touch screens or traditional keyboard / MDI operation.

Various semi-automatic cycles and linked cycles are provided and with the NC conversion function it is possible to convert machining cycles in standard NC ISO language (Optional Function).

Overview of the product features:

- Manual operation with programmable traversing limits
- Tool geometry compensation for up to 16 tools
- Constant surface speed
- Program execution in accordance with DIN/ ISO
- Imperial (inches) or metric display
- Choice of language
- Calculator function
- Cutting cycles
    - Outer roughing
    - Inner roughing (including dressing)
    - Rear face maching
    - Taper turning
    - Thread cutting
    - Tapping
    - Cutting of tapered threads
    - Thread repair
    - Recess Cutting
    - Ball turning
    - Grooving

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

    - Contour turning based on individual points (free figures)
    - Non-monotonous free figures
- Linked cutting cycles
- Memory Card interface
- NC ISO conversion

Benefits

- Assisted and conversational programming of machining cycles
- Simplification of the programming of parts
- Reduction of the total time required from parts drawing to parts cutting
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S792	0i-TFP Turn Mate i with Touch Panel
A02B-0349-S793	0i-TFP Turn Mate i without Touch Panel

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

349
TURN MATE i

TURN MATE i Expanded Function

Features

TURN MATE i Expanded Function increases the numbers of cycles and programs that can be registered in TURN MATE i.

Item	Standard	Expanded
Number of cycles that can be registered:	40	120
Number of programs that can be registered:	5	120
Number of cycles that can be registered in one program:	20	50

Benefits

- Program parts with complicated shapes in TURN MATE i

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R947	0i-TFP TURN MATE i - Expanded Function

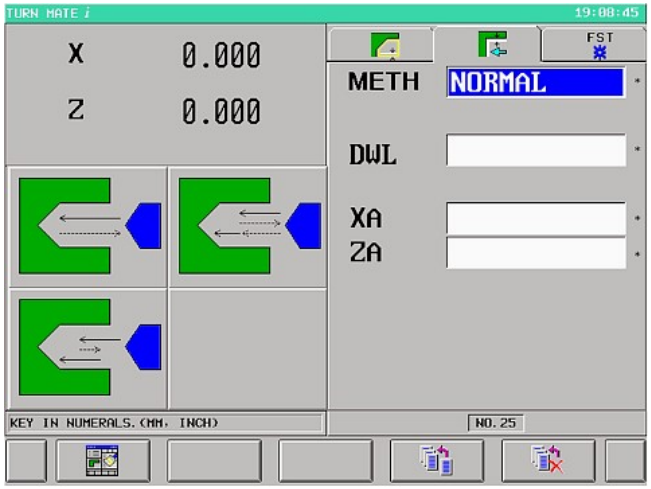
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

350

TURN MATE i



TURN MATE i Expansion of Machining Cycles

Features

The TURN MATE i Expansion of Machining Cycle function features the following key items:

- Detailed information such as cutting method, etc. is displayed on the base screen
- The 3 types of drilling cycles (Normal / Peck / High-speed Peck) can be selected on the input data screen
- Possibility to input the negative X values in facing cycles

Benefits

- Extension of the function set of TURN MATE i
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S796	0i-TFP Turn Mate i Expansion of Machining Cycle

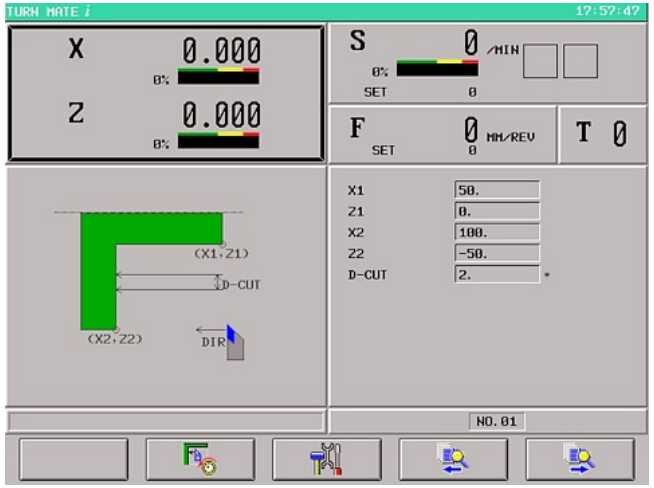
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

351

TURN MATE i



TURN MATE i MDI Key Operation Function

Features

TURN MATE i has been originally designed to work on CNC equipped with touch panel displays. With this function, it is also possible to operate TURN MATE i on non-touch panel displays equipped with a MDI keyboard.

A cursor on the screen will indicate the object being focused on. The cursor can be moved on the screen using the cursor keys of the MDI keyboard.

Benefits

- Possibility to use TURN MATE i on machine not equipped with touch panel displays

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S794	0i-TFP Turn Mate i MDI Key Operation Fucntion

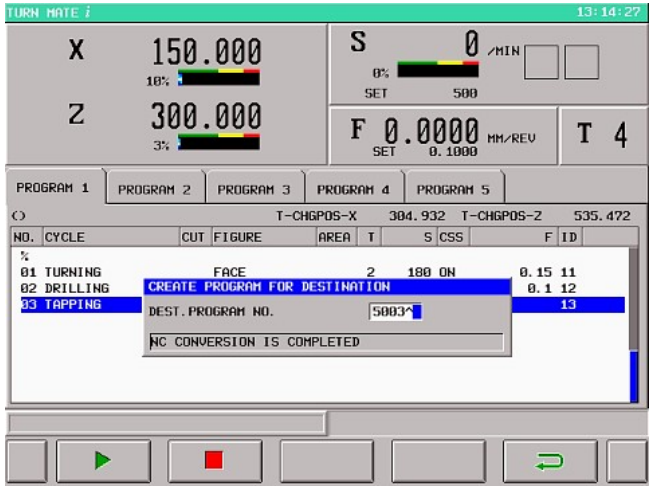
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

352

TURN MATE i



TURN MATE i NC Program Conversion Function

Features

TURN MATE i machining cycles can be converted into standard ISO G code blocks with the NC Program Conversion function.

The part program generated by this function can be used on other machines which do not feature TURN MATE i. In addition, the operator can perform a detailed analysis of the movements generated by the machining cycles.

Benefits

- The same workpiece machined with TURN MATE i can also be machined on CNC machines where TURN MATE i is not available.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S795	0i-TFP Turn Mate i NC Program Conversion Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

353
Functions

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to auxiliary and spindle functions in the CNC.
Some of the functions detailed in the catalogue:

- Analogue spindle control
- Spindle orientation
- Spindle synchronous control
- Multi-spindlecontrol
- Spindle CS contour control
- High precision learning control
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

2nd Auxiliary Function

Features

The 2nd Auxiliary Function provides a second part programming code called "code B" to activate Auxiliary functions.

Up to eight digits, selectable by a parameter setting and a strobe signal are sent to the PMC. Only one B code is allowed per block.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Allows programming of B code to do M code functions
- Sometime B codes provide ease of use for operation and programming
- Typical application Turn on coolant command
  Pallet 1=M08, Pallet 2=B08
- No change in cycle time

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J920	0i-TFP 2nd Auxiliary Function
A02B-0350-J920	0i-MFP 2nd Auxiliary Function
A02B-0353-J920	30i-BP 2nd Auxiliary Function
A02B-0356-J920	31i-B5P 2nd Auxiliary Function
A02B-0357-J920	31i-BP 2nd Auxiliary Function
A02B-0358-J920	32i-BP 2nd Auxiliary Function
A02B-0359-J920	30i-LB Plus 2nd Auxiliary Function
A02B-0360-J920	31i-LB Plus 2nd Auxiliary Function
A02B-0362-J920	31i-PB Plus 2nd Auxiliary Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

355

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Auxiliary Function Output in Moving Axis

Features

The Auxiliary Function Output in Moving Axis provides a way when specifying absolute coordinate values and auxiliary function (M, B) at the G50.9 block, that auxiliary functions are output to PMC when the absolute coordinate enters the specified area in movement block. G50.9 can be specified in 2 blocks continuously.

In other words, the auxiliary function output point in the movement block can be specified in two. Code signals and strobe signals are output to the same signal address as usual auxiliary function.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S889	0i-TFP Auxiliary Function Output in Moving Axis
A02B-0350-S889	0i-MFP Auxiliary Function Output in Moving Axis
A02B-0353-S889	30i-BP Auxiliary Function Output in Moving Axis
A02B-0356-S889	31i-B5P Auxiliary Function Output in Moving Axis
A02B-0357-S889	31i-BP Auxiliary Function Output in Moving Axis
A02B-0358-S889	32i-BP Auxiliary Function Output in Moving Axis
A02B-0359-S889	30i-LB Plus Auxiliary Function Output in Moving Axis
A02B-0360-S889	31i-LB Plus Auxiliary Function Output in Moving Axis
A02B-0362-S889	31i-PB Plus Auxiliary Function Output in Moving Axis

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

356

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Waiting Function by Specifying Start Point

Features

Control based on M codes is normally used to make one path to wait on the other during machining. When a M code for waiting is specified in a block of a path during automatic operation, the other path waits for the same M code to be specified before staring the execution of the next block.

With the Waiting Function by Specifying Start Point function, by specifying a start point with a waiting M code, the absolute coordinate value of that path or the other path can be used as the condition for waiting.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S888	0i-TFP Waiting Function by Specifying Start Point
A02B-0350-S888	0i-MFP Waiting Function by Specifying Start Point
A02B-0353-S888	30i-BP Waiting Function by Specifying Point
A02B-0356-S888	31i-B5P Waiting Function by Specifying Point
A02B-0357-S888	31i-BP Waiting Function by Specifying Point
A02B-0358-S888	32i-BP Waiting Function by Specifying Point
A02B-0360-S888	31i-LB Plus Waiting Function by Specifying Point
A02B-0362-S888	31i-PB Plus Waiting Function by Specifying Point
A02B-0364-S888	PM i-A Plus Waiting Function by Specifying Point

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

357

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Spindle Serial Output

Features

A speed command is output to the spindle motor according to the specified spindle speed.
This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Permits Contouring C axis capability
- Single point threads capability
- Allows for spindle orientation
- Better interface as compared to Analog
- Can have 2 serial spindles per path

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-J850	PM i-A Plus Spindle Serial Output

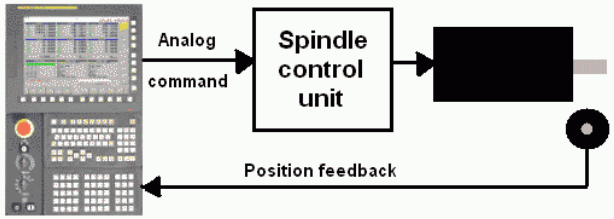
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

358

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions



Spindle Analog Output

Features

Allows speed proportional to analog output voltage command on S code.
This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Allows speed proportional to analog output voltage command on S code
- Constant surface speed control possible
- Third party spindles can be interfaced

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J860	30i-BP Spindle Analog Output Function
A02B-0356-J860	31i-B5P Spindle Analog Output Function
A02B-0357-J860	31i-BP Spindle Analog Output Function
A02B-0358-J860	32i-BP Spindle Analog Output Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

359

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Constant Surface Speed Control

Features

When a surface speed (in m/min or feet/min) is specified with an S code (a numeric value following S), the spindle speed is controlled so that the surface speed is kept constant with respect to the change in tool position.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Spindle speed adjusted automatically to maintain constant amount of material
- Typical example are surface grinders: as diameter increases speed reduces thereby improving surface finish, reducing tool wear while maintaining constant material removal rate

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J855	30i-BP Constant Surface Speed Control
A02B-0356-J855	31i-B5P Constant Surface Speed Control
A02B-0357-J855	31i-BP Constant Surface Speed Control
A02B-0358-J855	32i-BP Constant Surface Speed Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

360

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Actual Spindle Speed Output

Features

The actual spindle speed calculated from the spindle motor position coder feedback signal is output in 16-bit binary code. This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J856	0i-TFP Actual Spindle Speed Output
A02B-0353-J856	30i-BP Actual Spindle Speed Output
A02B-0356-J856	31i-B5P Actual Spindle Speed Output
A02B-0357-J856	31i-BP Actual Spindle Speed Output
A02B-0358-J856	32i-BP Actual Spindle Speed Output

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

361

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Spindle Orientation

Features

Spindle orientation can be performed by simply mounting a position coder on the spindle thereby stopping the spindle at fixed point.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- No need to mount stoppers or pins to physically stop the spindle at same location every time
- Minimizes mechanical parts and improves accuracy and machine life
- Accuracy of orientation even at high speeds reduces cycle time
- Permits precise tool changes
- Orientation can be done either from machine operator panel or by simple M command

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-J853	PM i-A Plus Spindle Orientation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

362

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Spindle Orientation Expansion (Extended Spindle Orientation)

Features

This function extends the spindle orientation function so that up to 8 spindle motors can be positioned simultaneously.
This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (max. 4 spindles).

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-J861	PM i-A Plus Extended Spindle Orientation, Max. 6 Spindles

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

363

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Spindle Synchronous Control

Features

In a machine having two or more spindles (such as a multi-path lathe), this function provides a way to synchronize the spindles together.

When a workpiece is switched between two spindles during spindle rotation, or when the spindle speeds of two spindles are accelerated or decelerated while the spindles are holding a workpiece, the spindles can be rotated at the same speed. This is spindle speed synchronization.

When a workpiece is transfered from one spindle to the other, the rotations of the two spindles can be made in phase to each other, matching the angular displacement. This is called phase synchronization.

Benefits

- Simplification of the handling of the spindle in multi-spindle lathes

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J858	0i-TFP Spindle Synchronous Control
A02B-0350-J858	0i-MFP Spindle Synchronous Control
A02B-0353-J858	30i-BP Spindle Synchronous Control
A02B-0356-J858	31i-B5P Spindle Synchronous Control
A02B-0357-J858	31i-BP Spindle Synchronous Control
A02B-0358-J858	32i-BP Spindle Synchronous Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

364

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Simple Spindle Synchronous Control

Features

Allows second spindle to be controlled as slave to the first one.

Benefits

- Multiple identical parts can be cut
- Double the output using two spindles
- No need to create two part programs

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J748	0i-MFP Spindle Command Synchronous Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

365

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Multi-Spindle Control

Features

In addition to the first spindle, the second to fourth, sixth or eighth spindle, can be controlled using an S command from the CNC. The maximum number of spindle is dependant on the CNC capabilities / type.

Spindle commands are specified using a single S command as conventionally done. A spindle is selected depending on the signal from the PMC or the address P command.

Gear change between two stages can be made for additional spindles in the same manner as for the first spindle. Parameter setting provides the possiblity to set a maximum spindle speed for each spindle and clamp the speed of each spindle at the corresponding maximum spindle speed.

The position coder interfaces for the second to fourth spindles can be selected and added. The additional position coders are selected by signals from the PMC.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming
- Increase of the throughput of the machine
- Overall increase of the productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J859	0i-MFP Multi-Spindle Control
A02B-0353-J859	30i-BP Multi-Spindle Control
A02B-0356-J859	31i-B5P Multi-Spindle Control
A02B-0357-J859	31i-BP Multi-Spindle Control
A02B-0358-J859	32i-BP Multi-Spindle Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

366

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Serial/Analog Spindle Control

Features

An analog spindle can be used with serial spindles at the same time. An analog spindle can be used for one of the controlled spindle axes of the system.

In this function, the spindle output control and the spindle output control by the PMC can be used for an analog spindle.

Benefits

- Possibility to mix analog and digital spindle control
- Improvement of the machine flexibility

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0358-R584	32i-BP Serial / Analog Spindle Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

367

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Rigid Tapping by Manual Handle

Features

This function allows switching from a programmed command for rigid tapping to the handle mode. The tapping itself can than be performed while moving the tapping axis by manual handle.

Benefits

- Allows operator feedback by using handle for rigid tapping to overcome hard spots in material, hole misalignment
- Ideal for repair/rework, generally for large parts
- Tapping is possible without separate set up
- Other than Z axis tapping possible
- Minimizes handling for low volume parts

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J651	0i-TFP Rigid Tapping by Manual Handle
A02B-0350-J651	0i-MFP Rigid Tapping by Manual Handle
A02B-0353-J651	30i-BP Rigid Tapping by Manual Handle
A02B-0356-J651	31i-B5P Rigid Tapping by Manual Handle
A02B-0357-J651	31i-BP Rigid Tapping by Manual Handle
A02B-0358-J651	32i-BP Rigid Tapping by Manual Handle

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

368

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Arbitrary Position Reference Setting for Cs Axis

Features

When a reference position return command (G28 or a manual reference position return) is executed for the first time since a serial spindle is placed in the Cs contour control mode, an arbitrary position can be set as the reference position by parameter setting.

In this case, the system performs reference position return, assuming that the current position is the reference position, so the system does not move the spindle to position it to the reference position.

Because the reference position return operation does not involve positioning to the spindle position specific to the spindle, this function can reduce the cycle time.

Benefits

- Reduction of the cycle time
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S664	0i-TFP Arbitrary Position Reference Setting for CS-Axis
A02B-0350-S664	0i-MFP Arbitrary Position Reference Setting for CS-Axis
A02B-0353-S664	30i-BP Arbitrary Position Reference Setting for CS Axis
A02B-0356-S664	31i-B5P Arbitrary Position Reference Setting for CS Axis
A02B-0357-S664	31i-BP Arbitrary Position Reference Setting for Cs-Axis
A02B-0358-S664	32i-BP Arbitrary Position Reference Setting for CS Axis

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

369

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

M-Code Group Check Function

Features

The M code group check function checks if a combination of multiple M codes (up to three M codes) contained in a block is correct.

This function has two purposes:

- To detect if any of the multiple M codes specified in a block include an M code that must be specified alone
- To detect if any of the multiple M codes specified in a block include M codes that belong to the same group.

In either of these cases, alarm is issued.

Benefits

- Addition of check function to avoid programming mistakes
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J922	0i-TFP M-Code Group Check
A02B-0350-J922	0i-MFP M-Code Group Check
A02B-0353-J922	30i-BP M-Code Group Check
A02B-0356-J922	31i-B5P M-Code Group Check
A02B-0357-J922	31i-BP M-Code Group Check
A02B-0358-J922	32i-BP M-Code Group Check
A02B-0359-J922	30i-LB Plus M-Code Group Check
A02B-0360-J922	31i-LB Plus M-Code Group Check
A02B-0362-J922	31i-PB Plus M-Code Group Check

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

370

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Spindle Control with Servo Motor

Features

This function allows to execute spindle rotation commands and spindle-speed functions such as rigid tapping, with a servo motor. It handles the servo motor used as a live tool axis as a single spindle. The option for spindle serial output and multi-spindle control function is necessary to use this function.

Spindle speed control with servo motor

Allows to perform speed control with rotation commands (S commands), using a servo motor as a live tool. At the switching between rotation commands and positioning commands, no reference position return is necessary.

Live tool indexing function

There are two types of live tool indexing functions:

- Execution of the commands in the next block without waiting for the completion of live tool indexing
- Execution of the next block after waiting for the completion of live tool indexing.

The type that does not wait for completion allows the user to specify commands for other axes before issuing the next command for the live tool indexing command axis. It also allows the user to check to see if live tool indexing has completed before issuing the next command for the live tool indexing command axis.

Rigid tapping with servo motor

Allows to perform rigid tapping with a servo motor as a rotation axis. The option for rigid tapping and canned cycle is necessary to use rigid tapping with servo motor.

Benefits

- Simplification of the machine structure
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J978	0i-TFP Spindle Control with Servo Motor
A02B-0350-J978	0i-MFP Spindle Control with Servo Motor

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

371

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J978	30i-BP Spindle Control with Servo Motor
A02B-0356-J978	31i-B5P Spindle Control with Servo Motor
A02B-0357-J978	31i-BP Spindle Control with Servo Motor
A02B-0358-J978	32i-BP Spindle Control with Servo Motor

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

372

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Spindle Control with Cs Contour Control

Features

This function allows the execution of spindle rotation commands and spindle-speed functions such as rigid tapping, with a Cs contour control axis.

A speed control with rotation commands (S commands) is possible, using a Cs contour control axis. At the switching between rotation commands and positioning commands, no reference position return is necessary.

Benefits

- Increase of the flexibility of the spindle control
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J985	30i-BP Spindle Control Function with CS Contour Control
A02B-0356-J985	31i-B5P Spindle Control Function with CS Contour Control
A02B-0357-J985	31i-BP Spindle Control Function with CS Contour Control
A02B-0358-J985	32i-BP Spindle Control Function with CS Contour Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

373

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Cs Contour Control Speed Command Switching Function

Features

Cs Contour Control Speed Command Switching Function improves the functions Spindle Control with Servo Motor and Spindle Control with Cs Contour Control in the following ways:

1. Switching between positioning control and speed control becomes faster
2. The in-position width for speed control can be set separately
3. The in-position check for speed control and position control can be disabled by signal

Benefits

- Reduce cycle time when switching between speed control and position control

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R530	30i-BP CS Contour Control Speed Command Switching Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

374

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Flexible Path Spindle Assignment (Spindle Switching Function)

Features

The Spindle Switching function can realize the spindle control in arbitrary combination of spindle motors and commands to a spindle.

The combination of spindle motors and commands can be switched by the signals of the spindle switching function.

Benefits

- Increase of the flexibility of the machine
- Simplification of programming
- Overall increase of the machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R515	30i-BP Flexible Path Spindle Assignment
A02B-0356-R515	31i-B5P Flexible Path Spindle Assignment
A02B-0357-R515	31i-BP Flexible Path Spindle Assignment
A02B-0358-R515	32i-BP Flexible Path Spindle Assignment

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

375

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions

Spindle Control Switching Function for High-Speed Machining

Features

Generally, motion command must be given after the spindle deceleration stop and the reference position return in the case of machining after switching from spindle speed control to Cs contour control.

When the Spindle Control Switching function for High-Speed cycle machining is used with high-speed cycle machining function, it is possible to start the machining on the Cs contour control mode without stopping the spindle rotation by establishing the reference position of the Cs contour control axis while the spindle is rotating.

In addition, the control mode of the spindle can be switched from Cs contour control to spindle speed control without stopping the spindle rotation by utilizing the signal, which is outputted during high-speed cycle machining.

As the acceleration/deceleration is not performed at changing control mode, the cycle time can be reduced.

Benefits

- Reduction of cycle time
- Increase of the machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R608	30i-BP CS Contour Control in High-Speed Switching Function
A02B-0356-R608	31i-B5P CS-Contour Control in High-Speed Switching Function
A02B-0357-R608	31i-BP CS Contour Control in High-Speed Switching Function

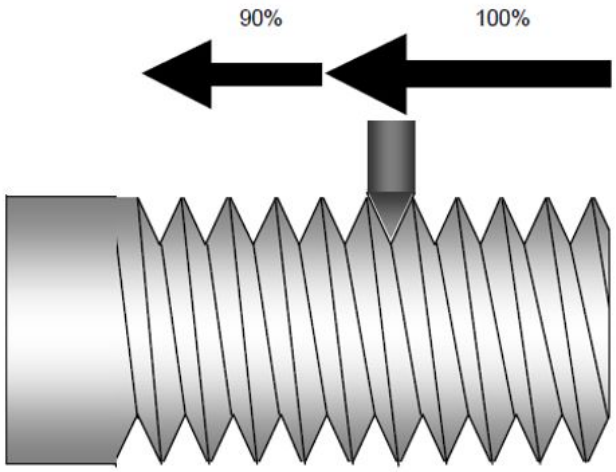
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

376

Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions



Arbitrary Speed Threading

Features

Spindle speed cannot be changed normally during threading because the tool movement could not synchronize with the spindle rotation. This function allows threading to change the spindle speed without losing the precision.

This function is available for constant lead threading, threading cycle, and multiple threading cycle.

Changing the spindle speed can prevent the vibration that occurs during threading at the specific spindle speed for large size machine. Besides, for repetitive machining, the same thread shape can be machined even if the indle speed is changed between rough machining and finishing machining.

Benefits

- Reduction of vibrations
- Improvement of the threading quality on large parts
- Increase of the machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R672	0i-TFP Arbitrary Speed Threading
A02B-0350-R672	0i-MFP Arbitrary Speed Threading
A02B-0353-R672	30i-BP Arbitrary Speed Threading
A02B-0356-R672	31i-B5P Arbitrary Speed Threading
A02B-0357-R672	31i-BP Arbitrary Speed Threading
A02B-0358-R672	32i-BP Arbitrary Speed Threading

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

377
Functions

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to Tool Management and Tool compensation.
Some of the functions detailed in the catalogue:

- Tool offset
- Tool Center Point control (TCP
- Smooth TCP
- Automatic compensation
- Geometry compensation
- Tool wear compensation
- Advanced Tool Management
- Wheel wear compensation
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

378

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Tool Offset Pairs

Features

This function enhances the maximum number of tool offset to a higher maximum value. The tool offset number is specified with the last three digits in T-code value. The tool offset number is specified with the remaining digits after excluding the three digits used to specify the tool offset number.

The maximum size of the tool offset depends on the type of CNC. Refer to the ordering information table for further details.

Tool Offset, 400 Pairs is a basic function in 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Increase of the tool capability of the CNC
- Increase of the flexibility of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J927	0i-TFP Tool Offset Pairs, 200 Pairs
A02B-0353-J721	30i-BP Tool Offest Pairs - 999 Pairs
A02B-0353-J925	30i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 64 Pairs
A02B-0353-J926	30i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 99 Pairs
A02B-0353-J927	30i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 200 Pairs
A02B-0353-J928	30i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 400 Ppairs
A02B-0353-S614	30i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 499 Pairs
A02B-0353-S622	30i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 2000 Pairs
A02B-0356-J721	31i-B5P Tool Offest Pairs - 999 Pairs
A02B-0356-J925	31i-B5P Tool Offset Pairs - 64 Pairs
A02B-0356-J926	31i-B5P Tool Offset Pairs - 99 Pairs
A02B-0356-J927	31i-B5P Tool Offset Pairs - 200 Pairs
A02B-0356-J928	31i-B5P Tool Offset Pairs - 400 Ppairs
A02B-0356-S614	31i-B5P Tool Offset Pairs - 499 Pairs
A02B-0356-S622	31i-B5P Tool Offset Pairs - 2000 Pairs
A02B-0357-J721	31i-BP Tool Offest Pairs - 999 Pairs
A02B-0357-J925	31i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 64 Pairs
A02B-0357-J926	31i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 99 Pairs
A02B-0357-J927	31i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 200 Pairs

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0357-J928	31i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 400 Pairs
A02B-0357-S614	31i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 499 Pairs
A02B-0357-S622	31i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 2000 Pairs
A02B-0358-J721	32i-BP Tool Offest Pairs - 999 Pairs
A02B-0358-J925	32i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 64 Pairs
A02B-0358-J926	32i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 99 Pairs
A02B-0358-J927	32i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 200 Pairs
A02B-0358-J928	32i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 400 Pairs
A02B-0358-S614	32i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 499 Pairs
A02B-0358-S622	32i-BP Tool Offset Pairs - 2000 Pairs
A02B-0359-J721	30i-LB Plus Tool Offest Pairs - 999 Pairs
A02B-0359-S614	30i-LB Plus Tool Offset Pairs - 499 Pairs
A02B-0359-S622	30i-LB Plus Tool Offset Pairs - 2000 Pairs
A02B-0360-J721	31i-LB Plus Tool Offest Pairs - 999 Pairs
A02B-0360-S614	31i-LB Plus Tool Offset Pairs - 499 Pairs
A02B-0360-S622	31i-LB Plus Tool Offset Pairs - 2000 Pairs
A02B-0362-J721	31i-PB Plus Tool Offest Pairs - 999 Pairs
A02B-0362-J925	31i-PB Plus Tool Offset Pairs - 64 Pairs
A02B-0362-J926	31i-PB Plus Tool Offset Pairs - 99 Pairs
A02B-0362-J927	31i-PB Plus Tool Offset Pairs - 200 Pairs
A02B-0362-J928	31i-PB Plus Tool Offset Pairs - 400 Pairs
A02B-0362-S614	31i-PB Plus Tool Offset Pairs - 499 Pairs
A02B-0362-S622	31i-PB Plus Tool Offset Pairs - 2000 Pairs
A02B-0364-J927	PM i-A Plus Tool Offset Pairs - 200 Pairs

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

380

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Tool Offset Memory B

Features

Tool Offset Memory B provides separate offsets for geometry compensation and wear compensation. There is no difference between cutter compensation (D code) and tool length compensation (H code).

Setting Example for Tool Compensation Memory B

Offset Number	Compensation Value (Geometry)	Compensation Value (Wear)	Common to D and H Codes
001	10100	0,100	for D code
002	20200	0,200	for D code
003	100000	0,100	for H code
...	...	...	...

Benefits

- Addition of the Tool Offset Memory B to the CNC
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S616	30i-BP Tool Offset Memory B
A02B-0356-S616	31i-B5P Tool Offset Memory B
A02B-0357-S616	31i-BP Tool Offset Memory B
A02B-0358-S616	32i-BP Tool Offset Memory B
A02B-0359-S616	30i-LB Plus Tool Offset Memory B
A02B-0360-S616	31i-LB Plus Tool Offset Memory B
A02B-0362-S616	31i-PB Plus Tool Offset Memory B

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

381

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Tool Offset Memory C

Features

Tool Offset Memory C provides for geometry compensation and wear compensation in separate tool compensation memory. Geometry compensation and wear compensation can thus be set separately. Separate memories are prepared for cutter compensation (for D code) and for tool length compensation (for H code).

Setting Example for Tool Compensation Memory C

Offset Number	D Code		H Code	
	Compensation Value (Geometry)	Compensation Value (Wear)	Compensation Value (Geometry)	Compensation Value (Wear)
001	10000	0,100	100000	0,100
002	20000	0,200	200000	0,300
...	...	...	...	...

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus.

Benefits

- Addition of the Tool Offset Memory C to the CNC
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J937	30i-BP Tool Offset Memory C
A02B-0356-J937	31i-B5P Tool Offset Memory C
A02B-0357-J937	31i-BP Tool Offset Memory C
A02B-0358-J937	32i-BP Tool Offset Memory C
A02B-0359-J937	30i-LB Plus Tool Offset Memory C
A02B-0360-J937	31i-LB Plus Tool Offset Memory C
A02B-0362-J937	31i-PB Plus Tool Offset Memory C

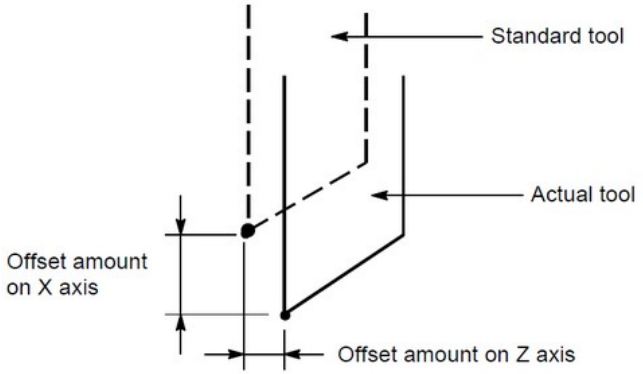
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

382

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Tool Offset

Features

The Tool Offset function is an option on the milling software of the Series 30i CNC. The programmed travel distance of the tool can be increased or decreased by a specified tool offset value or by twice the offset value. The Tool Offset function can also be applied to an additional axis.

The Tool Offset function is standard in the turning software of the Series 30i CNC. It is used to compensate for the difference when the tool actually used differs from the imagined tool used in programming (usually standard tool).

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Simplifies the operation of the machine
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-S617	30i-LB Plus Tool Offset
A02B-0360-S617	31i-LB Plus Tool Offset
A02B-0362-S617	31i-PB Plus Tool Offset

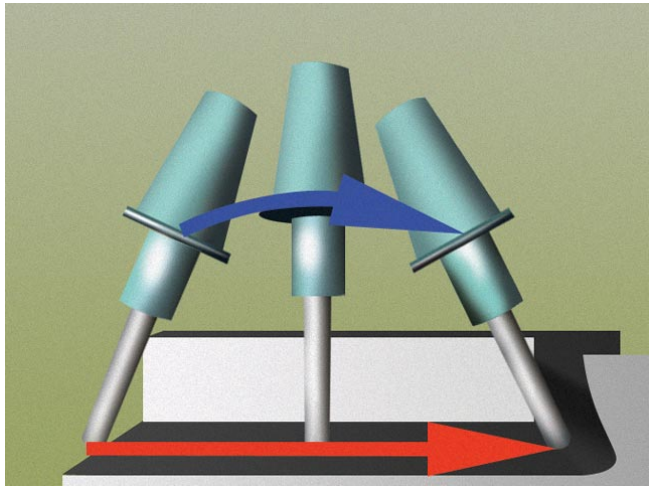
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

383

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Tool Center Point Control

Features

On a 5-axis machine having two rotary axes that turn a tool or table, this function performs tool length compensation constantly, even in the middle of a block, and exerts control so that the tool center point moves along the specified path.

Benefits

- The tool center point will move along the specified path even if the direction of the tool changes with respect to the workpiece.
- May be used with all classes of 5-axes machine tools
- Uniform parameters with other 5-axes functions.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S677	30i-BP Tool Center Point Control (TCP)
A02B-0356-S677	31i-B5P Tool Center Point Control (TCP)
A02B-0357-S677	31i-BP Tool Center Point Control (TCP)
A02B-0358-S677	32i-BP Tool Center Point Control (TCP)
A02B-0359-S677	30i-LB Plus Tool Center Point Control (TCP)
A02B-0360-S677	31i-LB Plus Tool Center Point Control (TCP)
A02B-0362-S677	31i-PB Plus Tool Center Point Control (TCP)

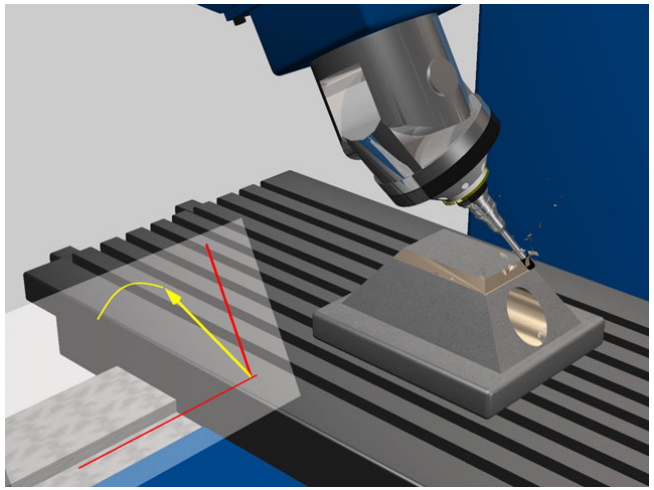
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

384

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Tool Posture Control

Features

The function of Tool Posture Control, former Tool Posture Control of Tool Center Point Control for 5-Axis Machining, is in a way an extension of Tool Center Point Control, which controls the path of the tool centre point on a straight line.

Additionally the control of the tool is linked to the vector between the start and end point such that unintentional stock removal by the side of the cutting tool is avoided. Tool Posture Control is mainly used in side cutting, if pockets or forms with varying angles are being milled.

Benefits

- Usage of different tool cutter radius for side cutting in 5-axis machining
- Higher machining flexibility
- Machining of complex 5-axis parts (e.g. pyramids and cons)

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S994	30i-BP Tool Posture Control
A02B-0356-S994	31i-B5P Tool Posture Control
A02B-0359-S994	30i-LB Plus Tool Posture Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

385

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Cutting Point Command

Features

Whether when using end, ball or bull-nose milling tools, the Cutting Point Command function enables the definition of the orientation of the tool relative to the programmed path – information that previously would have had to be input to the CAM system. Now an operator may determine the optimum cutting conditions at the machine and the FANUC CNC will internally re-calculate the required tool path.

Benefits

- Reduced Setup/Machining Time
- Cutting conditions can be easily adjusted/optimized by the operator
- Same part program can be used with various tools such as end, ball or bull-nose milling tools

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S996	30i-BP Cutting Point Command
A02B-0356-S996	31i-B5P Cutting Point Command
A02B-0357-S996	31i-BP Cutting Point Command
A02B-0359-S996	30i-LB Plus Cutting Point Command
A02B-0362-S996	31i-BP Cutting Point Command

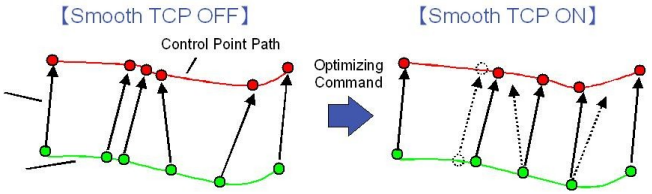
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

386

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Smooth TCP

Features

The function Smooth TCP is based on the Tool Center Point Control function and compensates deviations in the tool orientation.

In addition Smooth TCP also ignores redundant commands with regard to the tool centre-point position.

Benefits

- Shorter cycle times (in extreme cases, time savings of up to 44%)
- Smoother surfaces
- Minimisation of machine or tool wear due to avoidance of jerk in the motion profile

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R639	0i-TFP Smooth TCP
A02B-0350-R639	0i-MFP Smooth TCP
A02B-0351-R639	31i-LF Plus Smooth TCP
A02B-0353-R639	30i-BP Smooth TCP
A02B-0356-R639	31i-B5P Smooth TCP
A02B-0357-R639	31i-BP Smooth TCP
A02B-0359-R639	30i-LB Plus Smooth TCP
A02B-0360-R639	31i-LB Plus Smooth TCP
A02B-0362-R639	31i-PB Plus Smooth TCP

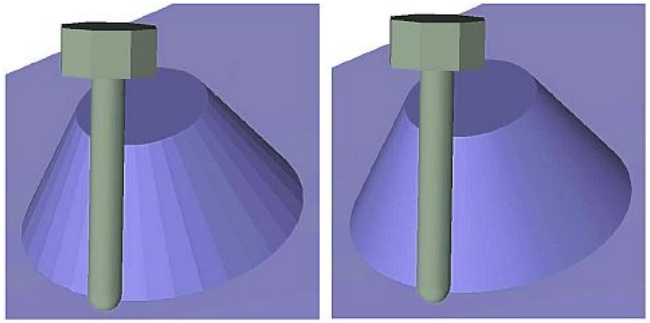
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

387

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



High-Speed Smooth TCP

Features

Under Tool Posture Control, the tool posture is controlled every moment for operation on the plane formed by the tool postures (tool length compensation vectors) at the start point and the and point of a block.

This control method is suitable for machining a plane with the side of a tool using the tool center point control.

Adding to the Tool Posture Control, the High-Speed Smooth TCP function generates and interpolates smooth surfaces from commanded tool center points and tool postures.

Traditionally, when a free surface is machined by Tool Posture Control, the free surface is approximated by polyhedrons (left illustration). When using the Smooth TCP, the free surface can be machined with smooth surfaces and the machining quality can be improved (right illustration).

This feature is suitable for machining free surfaces with tool side using Tool Center Point control. This feature has two modes, one is Speed priority mode in which speed has higher priority and the other is Surface quality priority mode in which quality of machining surface has higher priority. One of those modes can be selected by a command.

Benefits

- Shorter cycle times (in extreme cases, time savings of up to 44%)
- Smoother surfaces
- Minimisation of machine or tool wear due to avoidance of jerk in the motion profile

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R677	30i-BP High-Speed Smooth TCP
A02B-0356-R677	31i-B5P High-Speed Smooth TCP
A02B-0357-R677	31i-BP High-Speed Smooth TCP
A02B-0359-R677	30i-LB Plus High-Speed Smooth TCP
A02B-0362-R677	31i-PB Plus High-Speed Smooth TCP

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

388

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Expansion of Axis Command in Tool Center Point Control

Features

In the tool center point control mode, this function enables to command an axis which is not controlled by tool center point control ("non 5-axis machining control axis"). This allows to move peripheral axes during tool center point control mode. The maximum number of non 5-axis machining control axes which can be specified in one block is 10 axes in 30i-B Plus, 2 axes in 31i-B5 Plus and 1 axis in 31i-B Plus.

Benefits

- Move peripheral axes during 5-axis machining and reduce cycle time

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R592	30i-BP Expansion of Axis Command in Tool Center Point Control (TCP), for Linear Interpolation G01
A02B-0356-R592	31i-B5P Expansion of Axis Command in Tool Center Point Control (TCP), for Linear Interpolation G01
A02B-0357-R592	31i-BP Expansion of Axis Command in Tool Center Point Control (TCP), for Linear Interpolation G01

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

389

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Y-Axis Offset

Features

Y-Axis Offset function is used in turning controls equipped with a third linear axis. When the Y axis, one of the basic three axes, is used with a lathe system, this function performs Y axis offset.

If the tool geometry / wear offset options are provided, both tool geometry offset and tool wear offset are effective to Y axis offset.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus.

Benefits

- Addition of an additional offset capability for the Y axis
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J934	30i-BP Y-Axis Offset
A02B-0356-J934	31i-B5P Y-Axis Offset
A02B-0357-J934	31i-BP Y-Axis Offset
A02B-0358-J934	32i-BP Y-Axis Offset

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

390

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

4th/5th Axis Offset

Features

This function performs the tool offset for the 4th and the 5th axis following the basic three axes X, Z, Y. The number of tool offset pairs are 32 pairs, the same as for the X, Z, Y axis.

It is possible to divide into a tool wear offset and a tool geometry offset by specifying a option. The number of 32 pairs can be optionally extended to 64, 99, 400, 999, 2000 pairs. The number of maximum pairs depends on the CNC type.

Benefits

- Addition of tool offsef for the 4th and 5th axis
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R517	0i-TFP 4th / 5th Axis Offset
A02B-0353-R517	30i-BP 4th / 5th Axis Offset
A02B-0356-R517	31i-B5P 4th / 5th Axis Offset
A02B-0357-R517	31i-BP 4th / 5th Axis Offset
A02B-0358-R517	32i-BP 4th / 5th Axis Offset

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

391

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Automatic Tool Nose Radius Compensation

Features

When using the Tool Nose Radius Compensation function, it is necessary to command the direction offset by G41 / G42 depending on the cutting direction.

With the Automatic Tool Nose Radius Compensation function, it is possible to determinand set the direction offset automatically according to the current cutting direction.

Benefits

- Easy Programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S942	30i-BP Automatic Tool Nose Radius Compensation
A02B-0356-S942	31i-B5P Automatic Tool Nose Radius Compensation
A02B-0357-S942	31i-BP Automatic Tool Nose Radius Compensation
A02B-0358-S942	32i-BP Automatic Tool Nose Radius Compensation

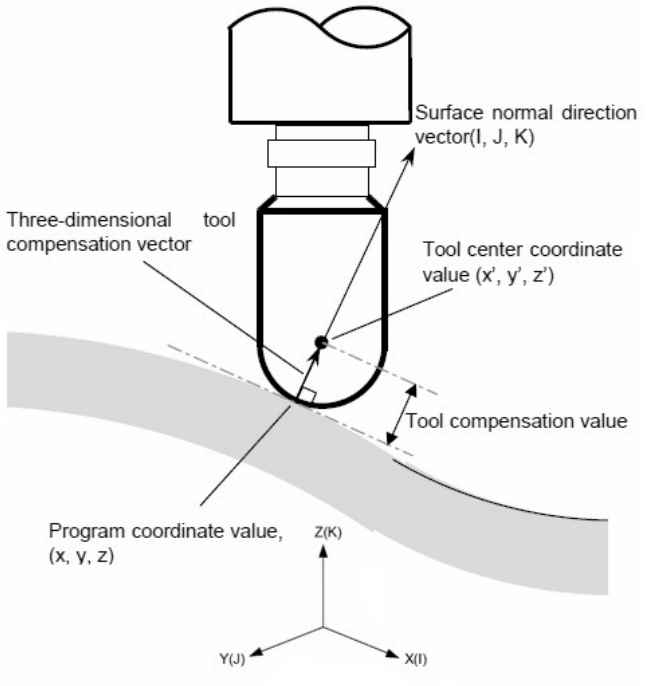
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

392

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



3-Dimensional Tool Compensation

Features

The 3-Dimensional Tool Compensation function, used on machines having three basic orthogonal axes, calculates a compensation vector perpendicular to the machining surface as a three-dimensional compensation vector.

Typically, this function is used for ball-nosed cutters on 3-axis machines.

This function is different from the similar 5-axis compensation functions.

Benefits

- Programming uncompensated surface coordinates of free-form 3D sculptured surfaces typically in Die and Mold applications
- 3–dimensional compensation for ball-nosed cutters
- Can easily change to a different sized ball-nosed cutter without re-calculating the part surface coordinates

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J727	30i-BP 3-D Tool Compensation
A02B-0356-J727	31i-B5P 3-D Tool Compensation
A02B-0357-J727	31i-BP 3-D Tool Compensation
A02B-0358-J727	32i-BP 3-D Tool Compensation
A02B-0359-J727	30i-LB Plus 3-D Tool Compensation
A02B-0360-J727	31i-LB Plus 3-D Tool Compensation
A02B-0362-J727	31i-PB Plus 3-D Tool Compensation

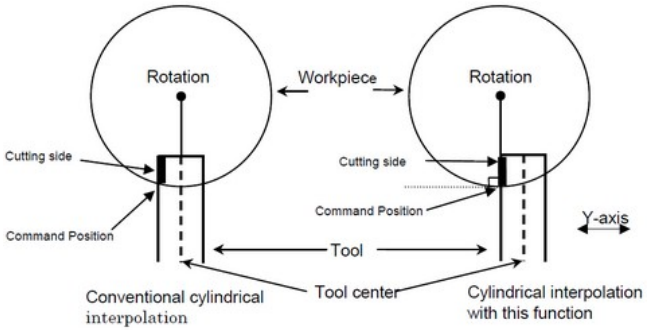
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

393

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Cutting Point Interpolation for Cylindrical Interpolation

Features

The Cutting Point Interpolation function for Cylindrical Interpolation provides an easy use of the cutter compensation when performing cylindrical interpolation.

The conventional cylindrical interpolation function controls the tool center so that the tool axis always moves along a specified path on the cylindrical surface, towards the rotary axis (cylindrical axis) of the workpiece. The Cutting Point Interpolation for Cylindrical Interpolation function controls the tool so that the tangent of the tool and the cutting surface of a contour always passes the rotation center of the workpiece.This means that the cutting surface of the contour is always perpendicular to the cylinder.

With this function, the figure on the cutting surface can always be kept constant regardless of the cutter compensation value of the tool used.

As shown on the picture the tool is controlled in the offset axis (Y- axis) direction that is perpendicular to the tool centre.

Benefits

- Addition of cutting capabilities for cylindrical shapes
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S674	0i-TFP Cutting Point Interpolation for Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0350-S674	0i-MFP Cutting Point Interpolation for Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0353-S674	30i-BP Cutting Point Interpolation for Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0356-S674	31i-B5P Cutting Point Interpolation for Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0357-S674	31i-BP Cutting Point Interpolation for Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0358-S674	32i-BP Cutting Point Interpolation for Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0359-S674	30i-LB Plus Cutting Point Interpolation for Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0360-S674	31i-LB Plus Cutting Point Interpolation for Cylindrical Interpolation
A02B-0362-S674	31i-PB Plus Cutting Point Interpolation for Cylindrical Interpolation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

394

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Tool Geometry/Wear Compensation

Features

The Tool Geometry/Wear Compensation function changes the tool compensation memory configuration depending on whether the tool geometry and wear compensation functions are provided or not.

The following data items in tool compensation memory are affected:

- X- and Z-axis compensation values in tool offset
- Compensation value R when tool nose radius compensation is provided
- Y-axis compensation value when Y-axis offset is provided

When the tool geometry and wear compensation functions are not provided, there is no distinction between geometry compensation memory and wear compensation memory.

Therefore, a sum of the geometry compensation value and wear compensation value is set in compensation memory. When the tool geometry and wear compensation functions are provided, geometry compensation memory and wear compensation memory are prepared separately. In this case, geometry compensation values and wear compensation values can be set separately.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus.

Benefits

- Addition of copmpensation capabilities to the CNC
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J931	30i-BP Tool Geometry / Wear Compensation
A02B-0356-J931	31i-B5P Tool Geometry / Wear Compensation
A02B-0357-J931	31i-BP Tool Geometry / Wear Compensation
A02B-0358-J931	32i-BP Tool Geometry / Wear Compensation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

395

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

2nd Geometry Tool Offset

Features

The 2nd Geometry Tool Offset function provides compensation for the difference in tool mounting position or in selected position; the second geometry tool offset can be provided in addition to tool offset.

Data that can be set for second geometry tool offset is the compensation values for the X-, Z-, and Y-axes.

Benefits

- Addition of offset compensation
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J980	0i-TFP 2nd Geometry Tool Offset
A02B-0353-J980	30i-BP 2nd Geometry Tool Offset
A02B-0356-J980	31i-B5P 2nd Geometry Tool Offset
A02B-0357-J980	31i-BP 2nd Geometry Tool Offset
A02B-0358-J980	32i-BP 2nd Geometry Tool Offset

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

396

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

High-Speed Measuring Position Reach Signal Input

Features

Measurement can be made using the high-speed measuring position reached signals HAE1 to HAE8 (connected directly to the CNC). This procedure is provided instead of the standard measuring position reached signals. Up to eight signal inputs can be used with the high-speed measuring position reached signals.

When using the standard function through the PMC, the delay and variation in detecting the input of a measuring position reached signal is 0 to 2 ms on the CNC side, excluding the PMC side.

A delay and variation in detecting the input of a high-speed measuring position reached signal can be reduced to 0.1 ms or lower, so that high-precision measurement can be made.

Benefits

- Automation of the tool length measurement
- Simplification of the machine operation
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S998	30i-BP High-Speed Measuring Position Reach Signal Input
A02B-0356-S998	31i-B5P High-Speed Measuring Position Reach Signal Input
A02B-0357-S998	31i-BP High-Speed Measuring Position Reach Signal Input
A02B-0358-S998	32i-BP High-Speed Measuring Position Reach Signal Input

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

397

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Tool Length / Work Zero Point Measurement

Features

Tool Length /Work Zero Point Measurement function has been designed to simplify the procedure of tool length measurement.

This function facilitates the machining setup, resulting in a reduced machining setup time. The function eases the measurement of the workpiece origin offset. With this function, the operator can program a T / M code or a reference position return by specifying a manual numerical command on the tool length offset measurement screen.

Benefits

- Automation of the tool length measurement
- Simplification of the machine operation
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J668	30i-BP Tool Length / Work Zero Point Measurement
A02B-0356-J668	31i-B5P Tool Length / Work Zero Point Measurement
A02B-0357-J668	31i-BP Tool Length / Work Zero Point Measurement
A02B-0358-J668	32i-BP Tool Length / Work Zero Point Measurement

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

398

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Automatic Tool Offset

Features

The Automatic Tool Offset function provides the capability to automatically measure tools. The difference between the coordinate value of tool when the tool end has reached the measuring position and coordinate value of the measuring position is automatically measured, calculated and added to the currently set tool offset amount by CNC system.

The machine must be equipped with measuring devices so that a signal is sent when the tool end has reached the measuring position.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-TF Plus (Type 0, Type 1).

Benefits

- Automation of the tool offset measurement
- Simplification of the machine operation
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S618	0i-TFP Automatic Tool Offset

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

399

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B

Features

The Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B function provides the capability to input offset values using a touch probe. Using the touch probe and by manually making the tool contact the touch probe, it is possible to set the offset amount of that tool automatically in the tool offset amount memory.

It is also possible to set the workpiece coordinate system shift amount automatically. The tool setter function for single-turret / two-spindle lathes is also available, which allows to use the direct input of the tool offset value measured B for each spindle in a single-turret / two-spindle lathe.

This function is a basic function in FANUC 0i-F Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Automation of the tool offset
- Simplification of the machine operation
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J933	0i-TFP Direct Input of Tool Offset Value Measured B
A02B-0353-J933	30i-BP Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B
A02B-0356-J933	31i-B5P Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B
A02B-0357-J933	31i-BP Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B
A02B-0358-J933	32i-BP Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B

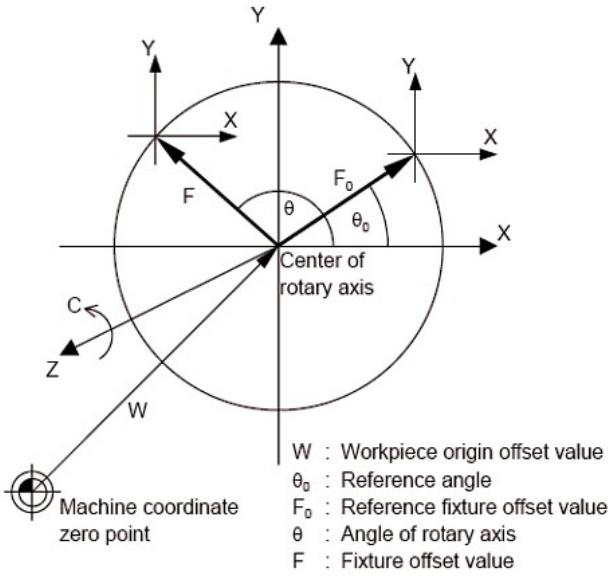
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

400

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Rotary Table Dynamic Fixture Offset

Features

The Rotary Table Dynamic Fixture Offset function avoids for the operator to re-set the workpiece coordinate system whenever the rotary table rotates before cutting is started.

Benefits

- Ability to adjust part location at the control level
- No need to repost programs if rotary axis is misaligned
- Ease of operation
- Reduce Setups

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-S728	0i-MFP Rotary Table Dynamic Fixture Offset
A02B-0353-S728	30i-BP Rotary Table Dynamic Fixture Offset
A02B-0356-S728	31i-B5P Rotary Table Dynamic Fixture Offset
A02B-0357-S728	31i-BP Rotary Table Dynamic Fixture Offset
A02B-0358-S728	32i-BP Rotary Table Dynamic Fixture Offset

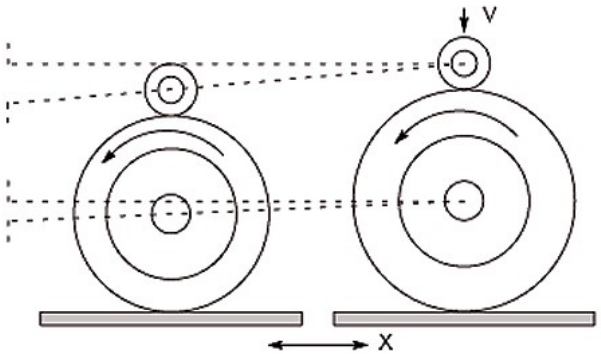
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

401

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Wheel Wear Compensation

Features

The Wheel Wear Compensation function is used on grinding machines to compensate for wear of the wheel and dresser. The grinding-wheel and dresser are compensated continuously during grinding in the canned cycles for surface grinding (G75, and G77 to G79). They are compensated according to the amount of continuous dressing.

Benefits

- Addition of compensation for grinding wheel
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J633	30i-BP Wheel Wear Compensation
A02B-0356-J633	31i-B5P Wheel Wear Compensation
A02B-0357-J633	31i-BP Wheel Wear Compensation
A02B-0358-J633	32i-BP Wheel Wear Compensation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

402

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Changing Active Offset Value with Manual Move

Features

When rough machining or semi-finishing need to be performed using a single tool, it is possilble to make a fine adjustment of a tool length compensation value or cutter compensation value.

During setup, it is also desirable to make a fine adjustment of a workpiece origin offset once set.

With this function, a travel distance moved on an axis by manual feed is automatically added to the workpiece coordinate system or the currently valid offset number among the specified offset values (tool length compensation value / cutter compensation value / workpiece origin offset) to make a offset value change.

Benefits

- On the fly adjustment of offset during rough machining or semi-finishing
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S825	30i-BP Changing Active Offset Value with Manual Move
A02B-0356-S825	31i-B5P Changing Active Offset Value with Manual Move
A02B-0357-S825	31i-BP Changing Active Offset Value with Manual Move
A02B-0358-S825	32i-BP Changing Active Offset Value with Manual Move

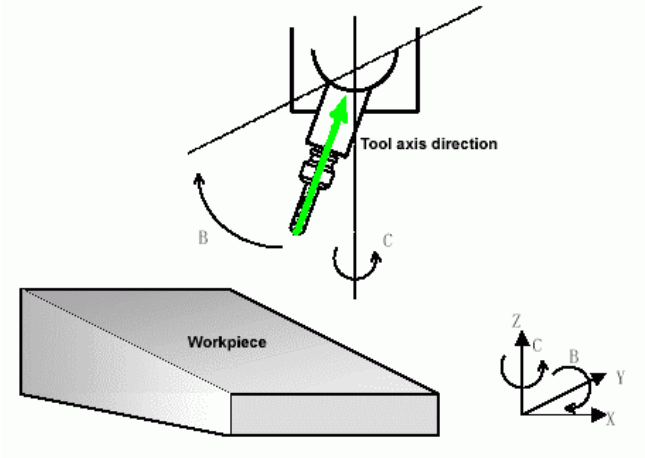
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

403

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Tool Length Compensation in Tool Axis Direction

Features

On a five-axis machine, when two axes are used to rotate the tool, the tool length compensation can be performed in a specified tool axis direction on a rotation axis.

When a rotation axis is specified in tool axis direction tool length compensation mode, the tool length compensation is applied in a specified tool axis direction on the rotation axis by the compensation value specified in the H code.

As a consequence, the movement is made along the three linear axes (Xp, Yp, Zp).

Benefits

- Addition of tool compensation function on a 5-axis machine
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S670	30i-BP Tool Length Compensation in Tool Axis Direction
A02B-0356-S670	31i-B5P Tool Length Compensation in Tool Axis Direction

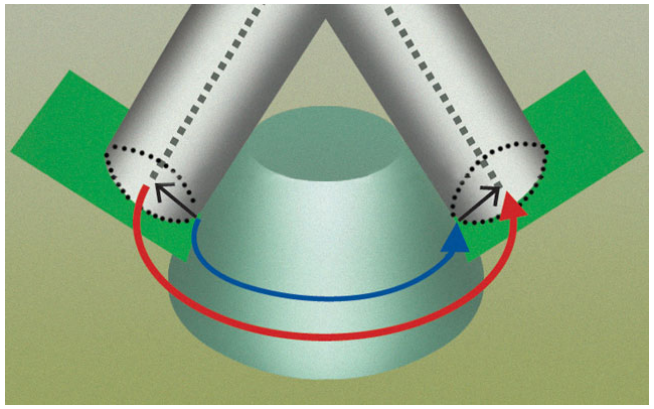
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

404

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation

Features

The 3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation function, formerly called Tool Radius Compensation for 5 Axis Machining, supports part programming of surface coordinates of full 5-Axes complex contours.

It allows the definition of the diameter of the tool at the control level rather than compensating for the tool radius in the part-program.

For machines having multiple rotary axes to freely control the orientation of a tool axis, this function calculates a tool vector from the positions of these rotary axes. This function then calculates a compensation vector in a plane perpendicular to the tool vector and applies three-dimensional cutter offset. This allows for full 5-Axes surface coordinate contouring of complex parts and for any adjustment of the tooling diameter to be maintained at the control level.

Benefits

- Usage of different tool cutter radius for side cutting in 5-axis machining
- Higher machining flexibility
- Machining of complex 5-axis parts (e.g. pyramids and cons)
- Ability to adjust the tool diameter at the control
- Ability to offset part using machine work piece offsets
- Part Programming verses machine programming
- Program is easily transferable to similar machines
- No need to repost programs when tool diameter changes
- Saves on tooling costs. Easily use reground tooling

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S667	0i-TFP 3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation
A02B-0350-S667	0i-MFP 3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation
A02B-0351-S667	0i-LFP 3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation
A02B-0353-S667	30i-BP 3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation
A02B-0356-S667	31i-B5P 3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation
A02B-0357-S667	31i-BP 3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation
A02B-0358-S667	32i-BP 3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation
A02B-0359-S667	30i-LB Plus 3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

405

Specification	Description
A02B-0360-S667	31i-LB Plus 3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation
A02B-0362-S667	31i-PB Plus 3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation

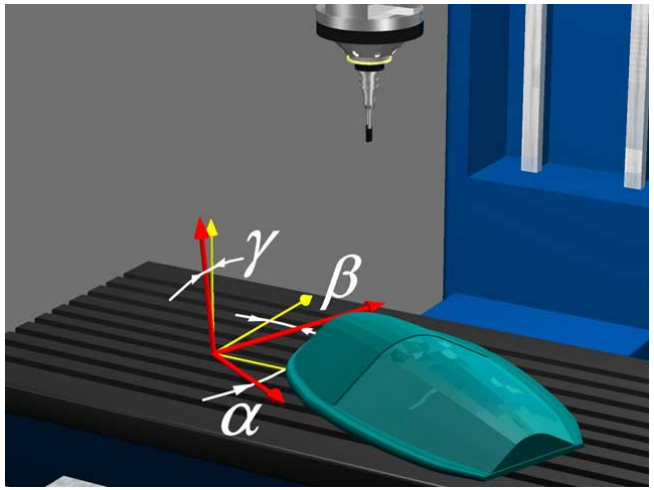
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

406

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Workpiece Setting Error Compensation

Features

With large workpieces, it is often the case that a workpiece is clamped for the first or second machining stage and is then, perhaps, removed for measurement.

It must then be re-clamped before machining is continued and position errors are unavoidable. The Workpiece Setting Error Compensation feature detects this through measuring cycles that determine the error and automatically corrects prior to initiating the standard part program.

Benefits

- Shortens set-up time
- More efficient production process
- Better quality
- Avoiding potential operators errors

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S993	30i-BP Workpiece Setting Error Compensation
A02B-0356-S993	31i-B5P Workpiece Setting Error Compensation
A02B-0357-S993	31i-BP Workpiece Setting Error Compensation
A02B-0358-S993	32i-BP Workpiece Setting Error Compensation
A02B-0360-S993	31i-LB Plus Workpiece Setting Error Compensation
A02B-0362-S993	31i-PB Plus Workpiece Setting Error Compensation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

407

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B for 2-Spindle Lathe

Features

In lathe with two touch sensors, each tool offset and workpiece origin offset for two workpiece coordinate systems can be automatically calculated. The lathe, which has a back spindle, has a different workpiece coordinate system for each spindle.

Benefits

- For 2 workpiece coordinate system, each tool offset and workpiece origin offset can be automatically calculated

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J686	0i-TFP Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B for 2-Spindle-Lathe
A02B-0353-J686	30i-BP Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B for 2-Spindle Lathe
A02B-0356-J686	31i-B5P Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B for 2-Spindle Lathe
A02B-0357-J686	31i-BP Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B for 2-Spindle Lathe
A02B-0358-J686	32i-BP Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B for 2-Spindle Lathe

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

408

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Tool Life Management

Features

When the usage of a tool exceeds the preset hours or times of use, another tool of the same group which has not yet exceeded the preset lifetime is selected.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Improvement of the tool group management
- Optimization of the machine and tool usage
- Automatic alarm generated
- Automation for mass production

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J935	30i-BP Tool Life Management
A02B-0356-J935	31i-B5P Tool Life Management
A02B-0357-J935	31i-BP Tool Life Management
A02B-0358-J935	32i-BP Tool Life Management

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

409

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Addition of Tool Pairs for Tool Life Management

Features

This option expands the total number of tool life management groups from 256 groups (standard) to 1024 groups.

Benefits

- Increase the number of available tool groups

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J936	30i-BP Addition of Tool Pairs for Tool Life Management
A02B-0356-J936	31i-B5P Addition of Tool Pairs for Tool Life Management
A02B-0357-J936	31i-BP Addition of Tool Pairs for Tool Life Management
A02B-0358-J936	32i-BP ddition of Tool Pairs for Tool Life Management

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

410

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Spindle Unit Compensation

Features

For a machine with multiple spindle units, the characteristic parameters, compensation amounts etc. can be set for each unit respectively. By compensating a selected unit during machining, it is possible to create programs that are not influenced by spindle unit compensation amounts.

If a spindle unit is controlled as a rotational axis, the compensation amount is calculated from the rotation angle automatically.

Benefits

- Simplifies programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R620	30i-BP Spindle Unit Compensation
A02B-0356-R620	31i-B5P Spindle Unit Compensation
A02B-0357-R620	31i-BP Spindle Unit Compensation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

411

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Nutating Rotary Head Tool Length Compensation

Features

For a machine with multiple spindle units, the characteristic parameters, tool axis directions etc. can be set for each unit respectively. By compensating a selected unit during machining, it is possible to create programs that are not influenced by tool length compensation amounts.

If a spindle unit is controlled as a rotational axis, the compensation amount is calculated from the rotation angle automatically.

Benefits

- Simplifies programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R628	30i-BP Nutating Rotary Head Tool Length Compensation
A02B-0356-R628	31i-B5P Nutating Rotary Head Tool Length Compensation
A02B-0357-R628	31i-BP Nutating Rotary Head Tool Length Compensation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

412

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Automatic Alteration of Tool Position Compensation

Features

The Automatic Alteration of Tool Position Compensation function is used to select a new tool number by an external signal from the PMC in manual operation mode.

When a tool is changed manually, the tool offset value (Tool geometry/wear compensation) can be adjusted to the selected tool by specifying the new tool number with an external signal through the PMC.

Benefits

- Increase of the manual tool management capabilities
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J690	0i-TFP Automatic Alteration of Tool Position Compensation
A02B-0353-J690	30i-BP Automatic Alteration of Tool Position Compensation
A02B-0356-J690	31i-B5P Automatic Alteration of Tool Position Compensation
A02B-0357-J690	31i-BP Automatic Alteration of Tool Position Compensation
A02B-0358-J690	32i-BP Automatic Alteration of Tool Position Compensation

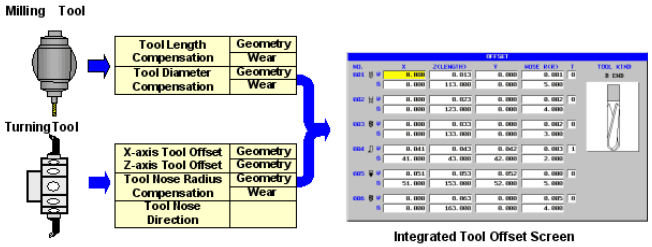
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

413

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Tool Offset for Milling and Turning Function

Features

The Tool Offset Screen for Compound Machine function has been designed to meet the requirements of compound machine tools to manage both offset data of milling and turning tools on one offset screen, which simplifies the tool offset data management of compound machines.

Features:

- Manages and displays offset data of both milling and turning tools on an Integrated Tool Offset Screen
- Manages and displays geometry and wear compensation data on an Integrated Tool Offset Screen
- Displays tool shape in graphic for easy operation. Designates tool shape on the dedicated screen

Limitation

The following functions cannot be used with this function:

- Tool position offset (G45~G48)
- Tool position offset B
- Changing Active Offset Value with Manual Move
- Basic operation package 2
- Manual Guide i
- Tool offset data cannot be protected by '8-level data protection function'

Benefits

- Addition of tool management capabilities for compound machines
- Simplification of the setup and tool management
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R595	0i-TFP Tool Offset for Milling and Turning Function
A02B-0353-R595	30i-BP Tool Offset for Milling and Turning Function
A02B-0356-R595	31i-B5P Tool Offset for Milling and Turning Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0357-R595	31i-BP Tool Offset for Milling and Turning Function
A02B-0358-R595	32i-BP Tool Offset for Milling and Turning Function

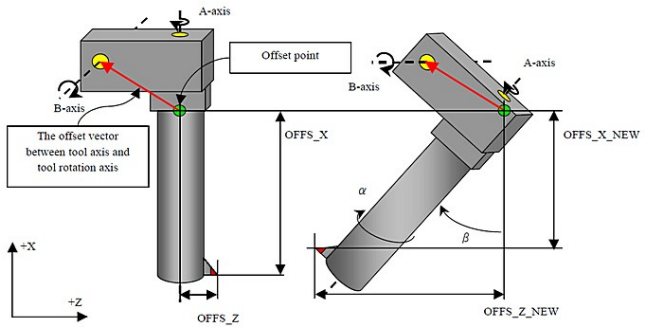
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

415

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Tool Offset Conversion Function

Features

On a complicated machine composition that has rotation axes (see illustration), the tool offset of each axis and the direction of imaginary tool nose are changed by angle of rotation degree of the tool nose rotation axis and the swivel head axis.

It is assumed that the direction of the tool nose rotation axis is X(A-axis) and the direction of the swivel head axis is Y(B-axis) in X-Z plane.

In this function, the tool offset and the direction of imaginary tool nose (which are measured and are set to the tool offset screen when A and B are set to 0 degree) are converted into appropriate value which depends on the angle of the rotation axis (A and B) by the G44.1 command. The commanded angle of A-axis must be selected from 0 or 180 degree.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R691	30i-BP Tool Offset Conversion Function
A02B-0356-R691	31i-B5P Tool Offset Conversion Function
A02B-0357-R691	31i-BP Tool Offset Conversion Function
A02B-0358-R691	32i-BP Tool Offset Conversion Function

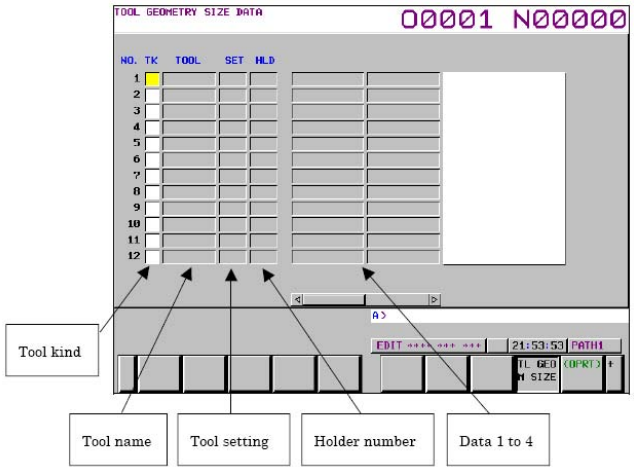
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

416

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Tool Geometry Size Data

Features

The tool geometry size data can be set through a special input screen (Tool geometry size data setting screen) under the tool management screen.

The tool geometry size data stores tool data like shape and size etc. to be used in the 3D interference check function and dynamic graphic display function. It also applies to the simulation functionality of MANUAL GUIDE i.

Benefits

- Addition of capabilities for the Tool Management function
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R589	0i-TFP Tool Geometry Size Data: 100 Pairs
A02B-0349-R590	0i-TFP Tool Geometry Size Data: 300 Pairs
A02B-0350-R589	0i-MFP Tool Geometry Size Data: 100 Pairs
A02B-0350-R590	0i-MFP Tool Geometry Size Data: 300 Pairs
A02B-0353-R589	30i-BP Tool Geometry Size Data - 100 Pairs
A02B-0353-R590	30i-BP Tool Geometry Size Data - 300 Pairs
A02B-0356-R589	31i-B5P Tool Geometry Size Data - 100 Pairs
A02B-0356-R590	31i-B5P Tool Geometry Size Data - 300 Pairs
A02B-0357-R589	31i-BP Tool Geometry Size Data - 100 Pairs
A02B-0357-R590	31i-BP Tool Geometry Size Data - 300 Pairs
A02B-0358-R589	32i-BP Tool Geometry Size Data - 100 Pairs
A02B-0358-R590	32i-BP Tool Geometry Size Data - 300 Pairs

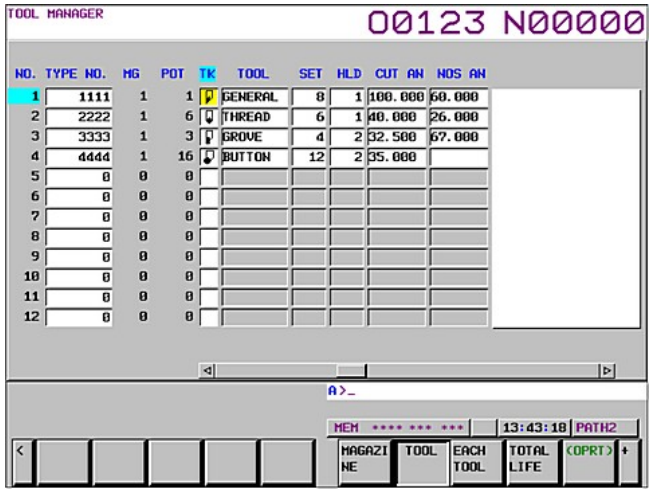
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

417

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Tool Geometry Size Data - Additional Tool Type

Features

This function supports to use the tool kind for the lathe system even if it is used in the machining center type path.

As a result, when the compound machining is executed in the machining center type path, the tool geometry size data can be used for it.

Benefits

- Simplifies the management of tools for compound machines

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R685	30i-BP Addition of Tool Kind in Tool Geometry Size Data
A02B-0356-R685	31i-B5P Addition of Tool Kind in Tool Geometry Size Data
A02B-0357-R685	31i-BP Addition of Tool Kind in Tool Geometry Size Data
A02B-0358-R685	32i-BP Addition of Tool Kind in Tool Geometry Size Data

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

418

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation

Tool Management Function

Features

The Tool Management Functions provide a framework and tables to manage machine tooling data. Various expansion functions improve the flexibility for machine-specific tool management customization, facilitate the management of special tools, and simplify loading of tools.

The following functions are presented on the following pages:

- Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function
- Tool Attachment/Detachment Management Function
- Tool Management Expansion
- Tool Management Expansion B
- Tool Management Function for Multi-Edge Tools
- Tool Management Function for Oversize Tools

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

419

Tool Management Function

Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function

Features

This function provides a framework and tables to manage machine tooling data. The tooling data table can be accessed through the PMC Window functions, C-Language Executor or via FOCAS / HSSB to a Panel i. When using this function, it is not necessary to develop an own machine-specific tool management HMI screens using C-Language Executor, Macro Executor, or PC-based high-level languages.

Data in the Tool Management table can be accessed by machine-specific tool change macros, read / write access through the main part program (G10 commands) and via manual data entry by the machine operator.

The Tool Management function is available in 3 different sizes:

- Tool Management Function - 64 pairs
- Tool Management Function - 240 pairs
- Tool Management Function - 1000 pairs.

Benefits

- Custom tooling data HMI without using high level programming languages
- Management of tool life
- Sister tooling management (tool-type groups)
- Random or fixed tool-storage location.
- Customizable tool data management for Balluff ID, adaptive control, etc.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S830	0i-TFP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function: 64 Pairs
A02B-0349-S831	0i-TFP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function: 240 Pairs
A02B-0349-S833	0i-TFP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function: 1000 Pairs
A02B-0350-S830	0i-MFP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function: 64 Pairs
A02B-0350-S831	0i-MFP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function: 240 Pairs
A02B-0350-S833	0i-MFP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function: 1000 Pairs
A02B-0353-S830	30i-BP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function - 64 Pairs
A02B-0353-S831	30i-BP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function - 240 Pairs
A02B-0353-S833	30i-BP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function - 1000 Pairs
A02B-0356-S830	31i-B5P Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function - 64 Pairs

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0356-S831	31i-B5P Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function - 240 Pairs
A02B-0356-S833	31i-B5P Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function - 1000 Pairs
A02B-0357-S830	31i-BP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function - 64 Pairs
A02B-0357-S831	31i-BP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function - 240 Pairs
A02B-0357-S833	31i-BP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function - 1000 Pairs
A02B-0358-S830	32i-BP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function - 64 Pairs
A02B-0358-S831	32i-BP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function - 240 Pairs
A02B-0358-S833	32i-BP Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function - 1000 Pairs

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

421

Tool Management Function

Tool Attachment/Detachment Management Function

Features

The Tool Attachment / Detachment Management function enables the machine operator to load a tool and enter tool management data, all in one operation.

The tool will be registered to the empty magazine pocket selected, and the keyed-in Tool Data will be automatically entered into the Tool Management Data Table. Tool Attachment / Detachment is used in conjunction with the basic Tool Management Function and one of the optional Tool Management Function Pair features must also be activated.

Basic operation of the Tool Management Function requires that the Tool Type and Tool Data be defined in the Tool Management Table first before the tool can be assigned to the machine's spindle or tool magazine pocket. This is not always convenient for tool loading operations. Tool Attachment / Detachment allows the Machine Tool Builder / System Integrator to develop improved Tool Loading and Unloading procedures for enhanced end-user operation.

Benefits

- Register / Delete a tool to / from the Magazine Management and Tool Management Tables simultaneously in one operation
- Automatic Attachment / Detachment operation enables the creation of Load / Unload cycles for automatic handling of tool to and from the magazine pocket

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S997	0i-TFP Tool Attachment / Detachment Management Function
A02B-0350-S997	0i-MFP Tool Attachment / Detachment Management Function
A02B-0353-S997	30i-BP Tool Attach / Detach Management Function
A02B-0356-S997	31i-B5P Tool Attach / Detach Management Function
A02B-0357-S997	31i-BP Tool Attach / Detach Management Function
A02B-0358-S997	32i-BP Tool Attach / Detach Management Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

422

Tool Management Function

Tool Management Expansion

Features

The Tool Management Expansion function provides the following enhancements to the Tool Management Function:

- Customization of a tool management data item display
- Setting of the name of the spindle position and the wait position
- Setting of the customizing data with a decimal point
- Protection of a various tool management data by the key signal
- Selecting of the life counting cycle of tool life value
- Individual / each tool data screen
- Total life time display for tools of the same type[1)]
- Output to external device[2)]

1) Series 30i/31i/32i-B Plus only
2) Standard on Series 30i/31i/32i-B Plus

Benefits

- Greater flexibility for machine-specific Tool Management customization
- Enhanced tool data presentation

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S852	0i-TFP Tool Management Expansion
A02B-0350-S852	0i-MFP Tool Management Expansion
A02B-0353-S852	30i-BP Tool Management Expansion
A02B-0356-S852	31i-B5P Tool Management Expansion
A02B-0357-S852	31i-BP Tool Management Expansion
A02B-0358-S852	32i-BP Tool Management Expansion

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

423

Tool Management Function

Tool Management Expansion B

Features

The Tool Management Expansion B function provides the following enhancements to the Tool Management Function:

- Cartridge management data protection function
- Tool management data extraction function
- Tool management function magazine property / pot property
- Tool return function

Benefits

- Increase of the flexibility to manage custom Tool Management systems

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R616	0i-TFP Tool Management Expansion B
A02B-0350-R616	0i-MFP Tool Management Expansion B
A02B-0353-R616	30i-BP Tool Management Expansion B
A02B-0356-R616	31i-B5P Tool Management Expansion B
A02B-0357-R616	31i-BP Tool Management Expansion B
A02B-0358-R616	32i-BP Tool Management Expansion B

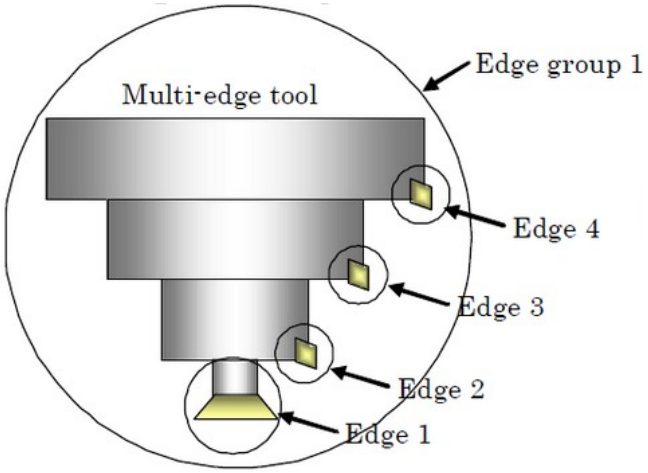
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

424

Tool Management Function



Tool Management Function for Multi-Edge Tools

Features

When using the Tool Management Function for Multi-Edge Tools to machine parts with a multi-edge tools (tools which has more than one edge), the tool life management is carried out for individual edges separately.

Unlike the conventional tool management function, which assigns an individual tool management data item to each tool, the multi-edge tool management function assigns an individual tool management data item to each edge.

Benefits

- Simplifies the management of multi-edge tools on complex machining centers
- Increase of the flexibility of the tool changer
- Simplification of the programming of the tool changer handling

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R681	0i-TFP Tool Management Function for Multi-Edge Tools
A02B-0350-R681	0i-MFP Tool Management Function for Multi-Edge Tools
A02B-0353-R681	30i-BP Tool Management Function for Multi-Edge Tools
A02B-0356-R681	31i-B5P Tool Management Function for Multi-Edge Tools
A02B-0357-R681	31i-BP Tool Management Function for Multi-Edge Tools
A02B-0358-R681	32i-BP Tool Management Function for Multi-Edge Tools

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

425

Tool Management Function

Customized Data Expansion

Features

This function provides 16 (or 36) additional customizable data columns for the Tool Management option. The data is located in columns 5 through 20 (or 5 through 40).

Benefits

- Custom tooling data HMI without using high level programming languages
- Customizable tool data management for Balluff ID, adaptive control, etc
- Greater flexibility for machine-specific 'Tool Management' customization
- Enhanced tool data presentation.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S834	0i-TFP Tool Management Function: Customised Data Expansion 5 - 20
A02B-0349-S835	0i-TFP Tool Management Function: Customised Data Expansion 5 - 40
A02B-0350-S834	0i-MFP Tool Management Function: Customised Data Expansion 5 - 20
A02B-0350-S835	0i-MFP Tool Management Function: Customised Data Expansion 5 - 40
A02B-0353-S834	30i-BP Tool Management Function - Customised Data Expansion 5-20
A02B-0353-S835	30i-BP Tool Management Function - Customised Data Expansion 5-40
A02B-0356-S834	31i-B5P Tool Management Function - Customised Data Expansion 5-20
A02B-0356-S835	31i-B5P Tool Management Function - Customised Data Expansion 5-40
A02B-0357-S834	31i-BP Tool Management Function - Customised Data Expansion 5-20
A02B-0357-S835	31i-BP Tool Management Function - Customised Data Expansion 5-40
A02B-0358-S834	32i-BP Tool Management Function - Customised Data Expansion 5-20
A02B-0358-S835	32i-BP Tool Management Function - Customised Data Expansion 5-40

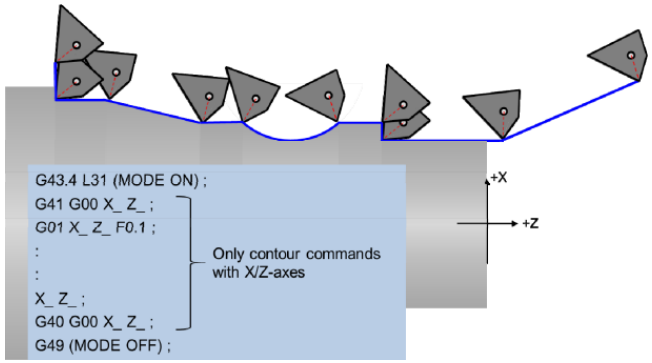
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

426

Tool Functions / Tool Compensation



Tool Posture Turning

Features

In turning, Tool Center Point Control allows to control the relative posture between tool and workpiece dynamically. The tip of the tool is regarded as tool center point. Tool Posture Turning simplifies machining programs in such cases. The rotary axis angle can be determined automatically based on the machining shape, just by specifying the shape with two linear axes (such as X and Z-axes). Tool Posture Turning enables to control the relative posture between tool and workpiece, without any commands to specify rotary axis position. The machining program can be created easily, even without CAM software.

High Dynamic Turning with FreeTurn tools can be realized by just specifying two axes in a plane, which simplifies the usage of FreeTurn tools.

Benefits

- Simplifies programming
- Reduce the number of tools
- Less tool changes reduce cycle time

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R338	0i-TFP Tool Posture Turning
A02B-0353-R338	30i-BP Tool Posture Turning
A02B-0356-R338	31i-B5P Tool Posture Turning
A02B-0357-R338	31i-BP Tool Posture Turning
A02B-0358-R338	32i-BP Tool Posture Turning

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

427
Functions

Accuracy Compensation Functions

Machine Compensation Functions are options that allow the CNC to compensate for mechanical inaccuracies in the machine.

Some of the functions detailed in the catalog:

- Backlash Compensation
- Pitch Error Compensation
- Inclination Compensation
- Straightness Compensation
- 3-Dimensional Error Compensation
- 3-Dimensional Machine Compensation
- AI Thermal Displacement Compensation
- etc.

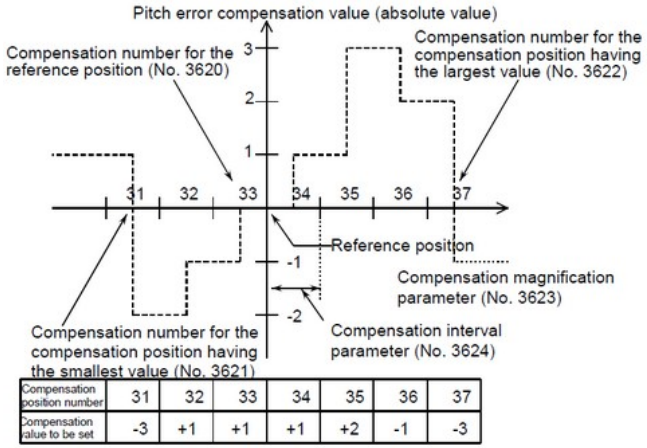
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

428

Accuracy Compensation Functions



Compensation position number	31	32	33	34	35	36	37
Compensation value to be set	-3	+1	+1	+1	+2	-1	-3

Stored Pitch Error Compensation

Features

The Pitch Error Compensation function is used to compensate for error in the ball screw. A total number of compensation points for the system are arbitrarily divided among the axes. The compensation amount, in detection units, is subject to a multiplier.

The pitch error compensation pulse at each pitch error compensation point is output in the interval between that point and the next compensation point, as shown in the figure.

Benefits

- Improvement of machine precision
- Increase of production quality and overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J841	0i-TFP Stored Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0350-J841	0i-MFP Stored Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0353-J841	30i-BP Stored Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0356-J841	31i-B5P Stored Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0357-J841	31i-BP Stored Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0358-J841	32i-BP Stored Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0359-J841	30i-LB Plus Stored Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0360-J841	31i-LB Plus Stored Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0362-J841	31i-PB Plus Stored Pitch Error Compensation

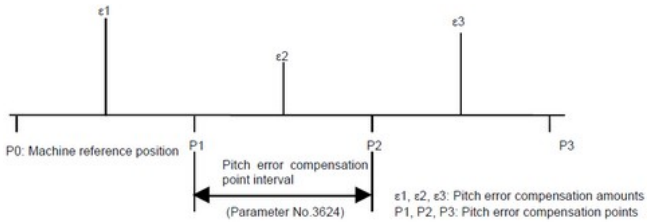
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

429

Accuracy Compensation Functions



Interpolation Type Pitch Error Compensation

Features

The Interpolation Type Pitch Error Compensation function outputs divided compensation pulses between compensation points in such a way that a smoother pitch error compensation can be realized.

The compensation amount at each error compensation point is divided into pulses in the interval between that point and the next point on the travel axis and output, as shown in the figure.

The Stored Pitch Error Compensation function is required to be able to use this function, and can be used with Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation.

Benefits

- Increase of the precision of the compensation
- Improvement of machine precision
- Increase of production quality and overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R333	0i-TFP Interpolation Type Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0350-R333	0i-MFP Interpolation Type Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0353-R333	30i-BP Interpolation Type Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0356-R333	31i-B5P Interpolation Type Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0357-R333	31i-BP Interpolation Type Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0358-R333	32i-BP Interpolation Type Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0359-R333	30i-LB Plus Interpolation Type Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0360-R333	31i-LB Plus Interpolation Type Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0362-R333	31i-PB Plus Interpolation Type Pitch Error Compensation

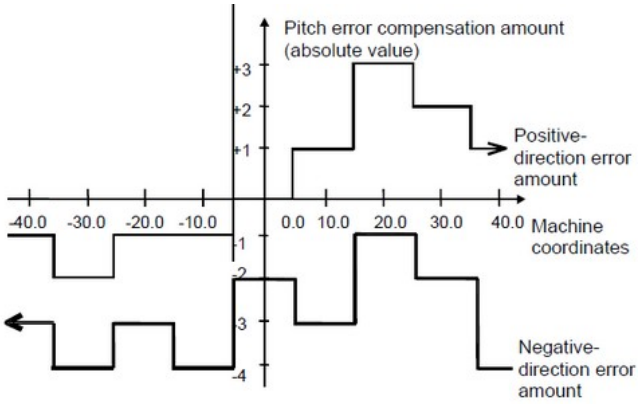
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

430

Accuracy Compensation Functions



Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation

Features

The Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation function allows different pitch error compensation amounts to be set for travel in the positive direction and in the negative direction, so that pitch error compensation can be performed differently in the two directions.

The Stored Pitch Error Compensation function, as a comparison, does not distinguish between the directions of travel.

In addition, when the direction of travel is reversed, the compensation amount is automatically calculated from the pitch error compensation data to perform compensation in the same way as in backlash compensation. This reduces the difference between the paths in the positive and negative directions.

The total number of compensation points is 2048. It requires the option Stored Pitch Error Compensation.

Benefits

- Compensation of the errors in 2 different directions
- Improvement of machine precision
- Increase of production quality and overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S656	0i-TFP Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0350-S656	0i-MFP Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0353-S656	30i-BP Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0356-S656	31i-B5P Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0357-S656	31i-BP Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0358-S656	32i-BP Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0359-S656	30i-LB Plus Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0360-S656	31i-LB Plus Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0362-S656	31i-PB Plus Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

431

Accuracy Compensation Functions

Extended Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation

Features

The Extended Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation function provides the same functionality as the Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation function, but increases the number of compensation points from 2048 to 5120.

It requires both Stored Pitch Error Compensation and Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation function activated in the CNC.

Benefits

- Increase the precision of the compensation in 2 different directions
- Improvement of machine precision
- Increase of production quality and overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S657	0i-TFP Extended Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0350-S657	0i-MFP Extended Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0353-S657	30i-BP Extended Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0356-S657	31i-B5P Extended Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0357-S657	31i-BP Extended Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0358-S657	32i-BP Extended Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0359-S657	30i-LB Plus Extended Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0360-S657	31i-LB Plus Extended Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0362-S657	31i-PB Plus Extended Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation

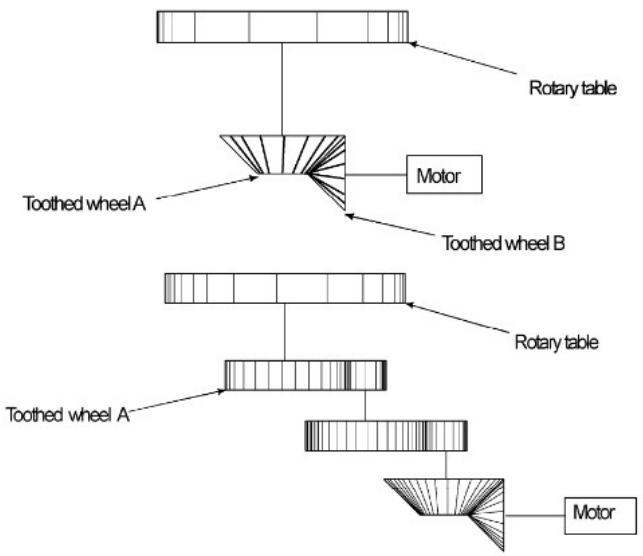
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

432

Accuracy Compensation Functions



Periodical Secondary Pitch Error Compensation

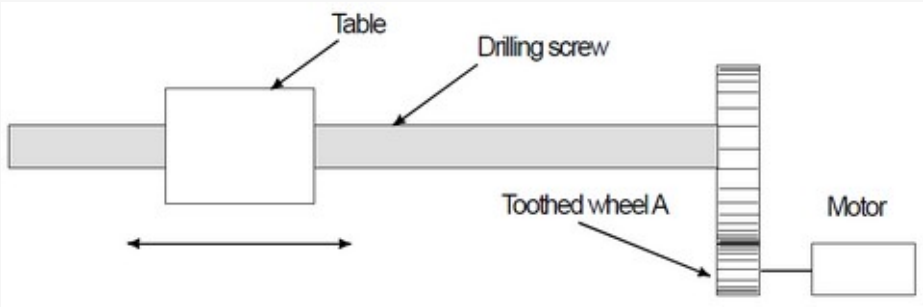
Features

The Periodical Secondary Pitch Error Compensation is used when there is a gear between the motor and shaft of the axis of travel.

To compensate for pitch errors, the compensation for the pitch error due to the rotation of the gear is superimposed on the compensation for the pitch error per rotation of the rotary table. If the gear between the rotary table and the servo motor is of a single stage, as shown below, the stored pitch error compensation is used for the compensation for the pitch error of the toothed wheel A and Periodical Secondary Pitch Error compensation is used for the pitch error of the toothed wheel B.

If there is a multiple-stage gear, as shown below, the stored pitch error compensation is used for toothed wheel A and Periodical Secondary Pitch Error compensation is used for the cyclic pitch error that occurs in each pitch error compensation interval of toothed wheel A.

Although a rotary table is used as an example here, Periodical Secondary Pitch Error compensation can be used in the same way when the machine is moved along a linear axis using a gear. For example, in a configuration such as that shown below, stored pitch error compensation is used for the compensation for the pitch error of the drilling hole and Periodical Secondary Pitch Error compensation is used for the compensation for the pitch error of toothed wheel A.



Benefits

- Increase of the precision is geared systems such as rotation tables
- Improvement of machine precision
- Increase of production quality and overall machine productivity

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S634	30i-BP Periodical Secondary Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0356-S634	31i-B5P Periodical Secondary Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0357-S634	31i-BP Periodical Secondary Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0358-S634	32i-BP Periodical Secondary Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0359-S634	30i-LB Plus Periodical Secondary Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0360-S634	31i-LB Plus Periodical Secondary Pitch Error Compensation
A02B-0362-S634	31i-PB Plus Periodical Secondary Pitch Error Compensation

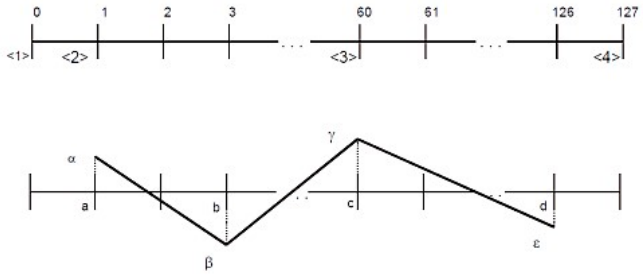
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

434

Accuracy Compensation Functions



Inclination Compensation

Features

The Inclination Compensation function, also called "Gradient Compensation", may be super-imposed on the stored pitch error compensation to reduce the number of points that must be entered for stored pitch error compensation.

Three approximate straight lines are formed with four parameter specified compensation points and compensation amounts related to the respective compensation points.

Inclination compensation is carried out along these approximate straight lines at pitch error compensation intervals. The inclination compensation amount is added to the pitch error compensation amount.

To perform inclination compensation, the Stored Pitch Error Compensation must be set for the axis subject to compensation. Unlike the Stored Pitch Error Compensation function, whose amount is set up for an individual compensation point, an amount of inclination compensation is calculated for individual compensation points by setting up four typical points and compensation amounts for them.

This function can be used to reduce the number of stored pitch error compensation points that must be entered for long ball screws.

Benefits

- Increase of the precision of systems with long ball screws and large machiens
- Improvement of machine precision
- Increase of production quality and overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J981	0i-TFP Inclination Compensation
A02B-0350-J981	0i-MFP Inclination Compensation
A02B-0353-J981	30i-BP Inclination Compensation
A02B-0356-J981	31i-B5P Inclination Compensation
A02B-0357-J981	31i-BP Inclination Compensation
A02B-0358-J981	32i-BP Inclination Compensation
A02B-0359-J981	30i-LB Plus Inclination Compensation
A02B-0360-J981	31i-LB Plus Inclination Compensation
A02B-0362-J981	31i-PB Plus Inclination Compensation

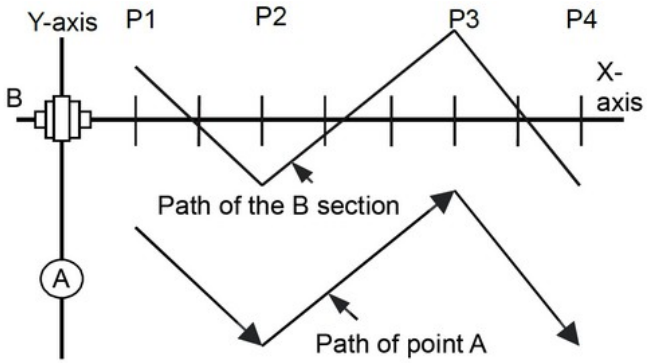
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

435

Accuracy Compensation Functions



Straightness Compensation

Features

The Straightness Compensation function is used to compensate the alignment of two perpendicular axes.

In straightness compensation, similarly to Inclination compensation, four typical pitch error compensation points (a, b, c, and d) are selected from pitch error compensation points and specified as straightness compensation points, and compensation amounts are set up only for these four points.

For pitch error compensation points between straightness compensation points, the CNC calculates and outputs amounts that match straightness compensation. Straightness compensation largely differs from Inclination compensation in that the moving axis is not a compensation axis; Inclination compensation is applied directly to the moving axis.

This relationship is specified by a parameter (for example, to apply compensation to the Y-axis as movement occurs along the X-axis).

Benefits

- Improvement of the precision for perpendicular axes
- Improvement of machine precision
- Increase of production quality and overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J747	0i-MFP Straightness Compensation
A02B-0350-J799	0i-MFP Simple Straightness Compensation
A02B-0353-J747	30i-BP Straightness Compensation
A02B-0356-J747	31i-B5P Straightness Compensation
A02B-0357-J747	31i-BP Straightness Compensation
A02B-0358-J747	32i-BP Straightness Compensation
A02B-0359-J747	30i-LB Plus Straightness Compensation
A02B-0360-J747	31i-LB Plus Straightness Compensation
A02B-0362-J747	31i-PB Plus Straightness Compensation

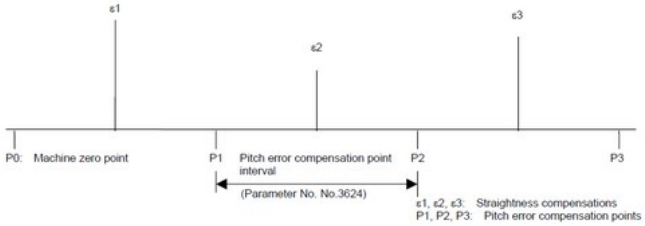
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

436

Accuracy Compensation Functions



Interpolation Type Straightness Compensation

Features

The Interpolation Straightness Compensation function outputs divided compensation pulses between compensation points so that smoother straightness compensation can be realized.

In conventional straightness compensation, for each interval between pitch error compensation points set by parameters, the amount of all straightness compensation at the compensation point is output and compensation is performed. This function equally divides the amount of compensation for each interval between pitch error compensation points for compensation data set using 128 straightness compensation points and outputs it as a compensation pulse.

Benefits

- Increase of the precision of the compensation for parallel axes
- Improvement of machine precision
- Increase of production quality and overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R334	0i-TFP Interpolation Type Straightness Compensation
A02B-0350-R334	0i-MFP Interpolation Type Straightness Compensation
A02B-0353-R334	30i-BP Interpolation Type Straightness Compensation
A02B-0356-R334	31i-B5P Interpolation Type Straightness Compensation
A02B-0357-R334	31i-BP Interpolation Type Straightness Compensation
A02B-0358-R334	32i-BP Interpolation Type Straightness Compensation
A02B-0360-R334	31i-LB Plus Interpolation Type Straightness Compensation
A02B-0362-R334	31i-PB Plus Interpolation Type Straightness Compensation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

437

Accuracy Compensation Functions

Interpolated Straightness Compensation 3072 Points

Features

The Interpolated Strightness Compensation 3072 Points function increases the number of compensation points to 3072.
The number of points which can be used for one pair of Interpolated straightness compensation is expanded to 1536.
As a result, a more accurate machining can be realized than with the standard compensations performed by the Interpolated Straightness Compensation function.

Benefits

- Increases significantly the correction accuracy
- Improvement of machine precision
- Increase of production quality and overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R638	0i-TFP Interpolation Type Straightness Compensation 3072 Points
A02B-0350-R638	0i-MFP Interpolation Type Straightness Compensation 3072 Points
A02B-0353-R638	30i-BP Interpolation Type Straughtness Compensation - 3072 Points
A02B-0356-R638	31i-B5P Interpolation Type Straughtness Compensation - 3072 Points
A02B-0357-R638	31i-BP Interpolation Type Straughtness Compensation - 3072 Points
A02B-0358-R638	32i-BP Interpolation Type Straughtness Compensation - 3072 Points
A02B-0360-R638	31i-LB Plus Interpolation Type Straughtness Compensation - 3072 Points
A02B-0362-R638	31i-PB Plus Interpolation Type Straughtness Compensation - 3072 Points

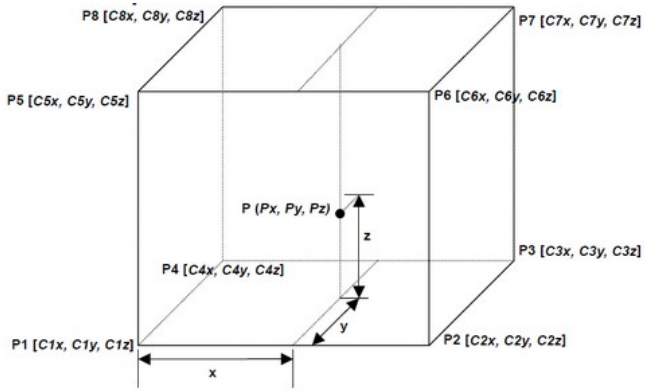
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

438

Accuracy Compensation Functions



3-Dimensional Error Compensation

Features

In ordinary pitch error compensation, the compensation is applied to a specified compensation axis according to the positional information of that axis. For example, pitch error compensation for the X-axis is performed based on the X-axis positional information.

With the 3-Dimensional Error Compensation function, the compensation is performed for the current position for up to three compensation axes by calculating the compensation data (for three axes) from the compensation amounts at eight periphery compensation points based on the internal ratio in a compensation area (rectangular parallelepiped) including the current position.

Benefits

- Increase of the correction and compensation efficiency
- Improvement of machine precision
- Increase of production quality and overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S666	30i-BP 3-Dimensional Error Compensation
A02B-0356-S666	31i-B5P 3-Dimensional Error Compensation
A02B-0357-S666	31i-BP 3-Dimensional Error Compensation
A02B-0358-S666	32i-BP 3-Dimensional Error Compensation
A02B-0360-S666	31i-LB Plus 3-Dimensional Error Compensation
A02B-0362-S666	31i-PB Plus 3-Dimensional Error Compensation

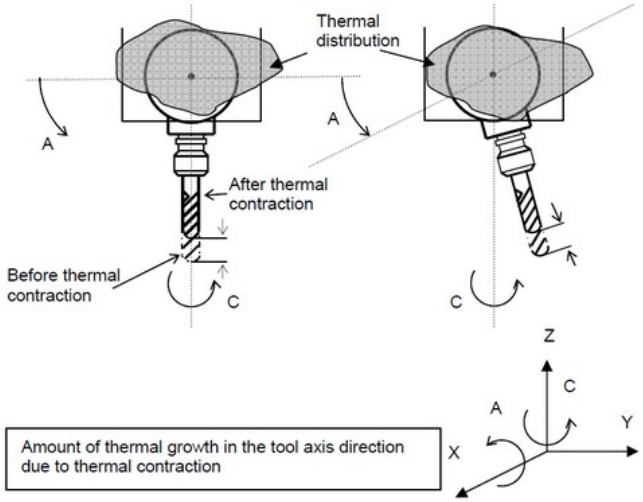
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

439

Accuracy Compensation Functions



Thermal Growth Compensation Along Tool Vector

Features

The Thermal Growth Compensation Along Tool Vector function is used in five-axis machine applications where the tool is controlled by two rotary axes.

The compensation for thermal expansion or shrinkage of the tool can be applied along the tool vector specified with the rotation axes.

This function compensates for the thermal tool displacement set along the tool vector by setting the displacement as the input signal from the PMC or another unit.

Benefits

- Compensation of thermal effects on 5-axis machines
- Improvement of machine precision
- Increase of production quality and overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S860	30i-BP Thermal Growth Compensation along Tool Vector
A02B-0356-S860	31i-B5P Thermal Growth Compensation along Tool Vector
A02B-0357-S860	31i-BP Thermal Growth Compensation along Tool Vector
A02B-0358-S860	32i-BP Thermal Growth Compensation along Tool Vector

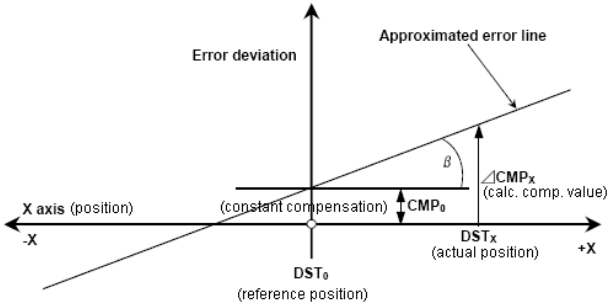
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

440

Accuracy Compensation Functions



Linear Inclination Compensation Function

Features

The Linear Inclination Compensation function compensates the change of state of the machine by the approximated error line by the parameter of straight line slope and slice.

In Inclination Compensation, up to 3 approximated error lines are compensated. This function compensate it by one approximated error line. Moreover, this function can work independently of other compensation functions such as pitch error compensation, etc.

Benefits

- Improvement of machine precision
- Increase of production quality and overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R520	30i-BP Linear Inclination Compensation Function
A02B-0356-R520	31i-B5P Linear Inclination Compensation Function
A02B-0357-R520	31i-BP Linear Inclination Compensation Function
A02B-0358-R520	32i-BP Linear Inclination Compensation Function

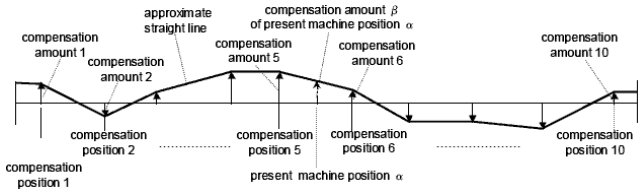
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

441

Accuracy Compensation Functions



3-Dimensional Machine Position Compensation

Features

The 3-Dimensional Machine Position Compensation function compensate machine position errors that occur during processing along an approximate straight line formed with specified compensation point in a machine coordinate and a compensation amount related to it.

Compensation of this function is carried out along nine approximate straight lines formed with ten compensation points and compensation amounts related to the respective compensation points.

Compensation amounts can be rewritten by the PMC window function or programmable parameter input (G10 L52), in addition, the rewritten value immediately becomes effective. Therefore, this function can be applied to compensation for those machine position errors that occurs during processing.

Benefits

- Compensation of large machine tools
- Improvement of machine precision
- Increase of production quality and overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R581	30i-BP 3-Dimensional Machine Position Compensation
A02B-0356-R581	31i-B5P 3-Dimensional Machine Position Compensation
A02B-0357-R581	31i-BP 3-Dimensional Machine Position Compensation
A02B-0358-R581	32i-BP 3-Dimensional Machine Position Compensation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

442

Accuracy Compensation Functions

3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation

Features

The 3D Rotary Error Compensation improves the correction of geometric machine errors by including not only linear axes but also any rotary axes that are used in the machining envelope.

In contrast to most compensation options, this function is able to process three-dimensional measurement data for the overall machine volume and makes it ideal for five-axis machines.

Benefits

- Greater Cutting Accuracy and Precision

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R880	0i-TFP 3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation (3-Axis)
A02B-0350-R880	0i-MFP 3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation (3-Axis)
A02B-0353-R649	30i-BP 3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation
A02B-0353-R880	30i-BP 3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation (3-Axis)
A02B-0356-R649	31i-B5P 3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation
A02B-0356-R880	31i-B5P 3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation (3-Axis)
A02B-0357-R649	31i-BP 3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation
A02B-0357-R880	31i-BP 3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation (3-Axis)
A02B-0358-R649	32i-BP 3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation
A02B-0358-R880	32i-BP 3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation (3-Axis)

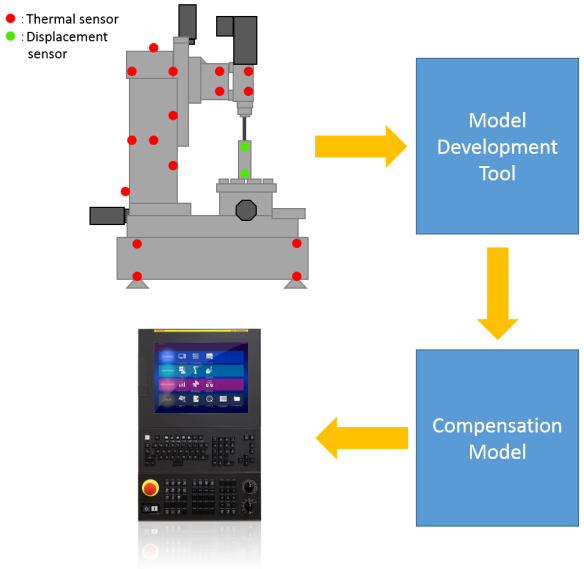
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

443

Accuracy Compensation Functions



AI Thermal Displacement Compensation

Features

Temperature changes affect the accuracy of machine tools. It is possible to compensate this effect, but finding the right dependency between temperature and displacement is a difficult task that has to be performed by experts. AI Thermal Displacement Compensation Model Development Tool uses Machine Learning to create a model of the machine's thermal behavior, making it much easier to find that dependency between temperature and displacement. Thus AI Thermal Displacement Compensation reduces time to market and saves R&D resources. The model's estimations are used to compensate thermal displacement during operation, improving machine accuracy.

Benefits

- Reduce time to market
- Save R&D resources
- Improve machine accuracy

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R055	0i-TFP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation 2 Models
A02B-0349-R056	0i-TFP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation 24 Models
A02B-0349-R335	0i-TFP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation
A02B-0349-R881	0i-TFP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation (Ball Screw Compensation)
A02B-0350-R055	0i-MFP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation 2 Models
A02B-0350-R056	0i-MFP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation 24 Models
A02B-0350-R335	0i-MFP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation
A02B-0350-R881	0i-MFP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation (Ball Screw Compensation)
A02B-0353-R055	30i-BP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation 2 Models
A02B-0353-R056	30i-BP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation 24 Models
A02B-0353-R335	30i-BP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation
A02B-0353-R881	30i-BP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation (Ball Screw Compensation)
A02B-0356-R055	31i-B5P AI Thermal Displacement Compensation 2 Models
A02B-0356-R056	31i-B5P AI Thermal Displacement Compensation 24 Models
A02B-0356-R335	31i-B5P AI Thermal Displacement Compensation
A02B-0356-R881	31i-B5P AI Thermal Displacement Compensation (Ball Screw Compensation)
A02B-0357-R055	31i-BP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation 2 Models
A02B-0357-R056	31i-BP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation 24 Models

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0357-R335	31i-BP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation
A02B-0357-R881	31i-BP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation (Ball Screw Compensation)
A02B-0358-R055	32i-BP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation 2 Models
A02B-0358-R056	32i-BP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation 24 Models
A02B-0358-R335	32i-BP AI Thermal Displacement Compensation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

445

Accuracy Compensation Functions

Multi-Point Compensation

Features

Multi-Point Compensation compensates the error depending on the machine position, similar to the Pitch Error Compensation function. In contrast, Multi-point Compensation enables to set more compensation points (up to 65,536) than Pitch Error Compensation. It is possible to set the reference position outside of the compensation field.

This function is independent of other compensation functions. Multi-Point Compensation and other compensation functions can be overlapped, but the compensation points of this function cannot be used for other compensation functions.

Benefits

- Improving the machine accuracy and the machining accuracy by compensation with fine resolution

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R089	0i-TFP Multi-Point Compensation
A02B-0350-R089	0i-MFP Multi-Point Compensation
A02B-0353-R089	30i-B Plus Multi-Point Compensation
A02B-0356-R089	31i-B5 Plus Multi-Point Compensation
A02B-0357-R089	31i-B Plus Multi-Point Compensation
A02B-0358-R089	32i-B Plus Multi-Point Compensation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

446

Functions

Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to hobbing functions and Electronic Gear Box (EGB) functions for gear cutting and gear grinding machines.

Some of the functions detailed in the catalogue:

- Electronic Gear Box
- Skip function for Electronic Gear Box
- Spindle Electronic Gear Box
- Phase synchronization
- Etc.

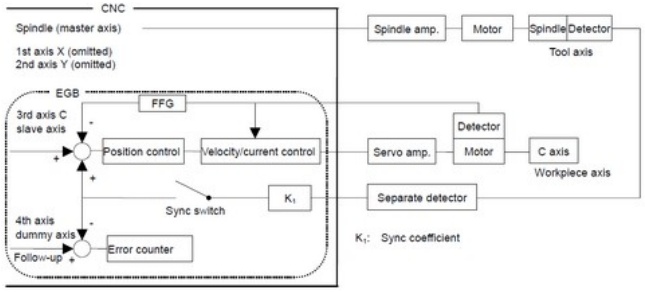
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

447

Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box



Electronic Gear Box (EGB)

Features

This function enables fabrication of high-precision gears, screws, and other components by rotating the workpiece in synchronization with a rotating tool or by moving the tool in synchronization with a rotating workpiece.

The rate of synchronization can be specified with a program. The synchronization of tool and workpiece axes with this function adopts a system in which the synchronization is directly controlled by digital servo, so that the workpiece axis can follow up the speed fluctuations on the tool axis with no error, thereby allowing fabrication of high-precision cogwheels.

Benefits

- Addition of the Electronic Gear Box (EGB) function to the CNC
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J779	30i-BP Electronic Gear Box (EGB)
A02B-0356-J779	31i-B5P Electronic Gear Box (EGB)
A02B-0357-J779	31i-BP Electronic Gear Box (EGB)
A02B-0358-J779	32i-BP Electronic Gear Box (EGB)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

448

Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box

Skip Function for Electronic Gear Box (EGB) Axis

Features

The Skip function for EGB axis enables the skip or high-speed skip signal for the EBG slave axis in synchronization mode with the EGB (electronic gear box).

This function has following features:

1. If a skip signal is input while an EGB axis skip command block is being executed, this block does not terminate until the specified number of skip signals have been input.
2. If a skip signal is input while an EGB axis skip command block is being executed, the tool remains in synchronous mode and moves, not stopping on the EGB slave axis.
3. The machine coordinates assumed when skip signals are input and the number of input skip signals are stored in specified custom macro variables.

Benefits

- Addition of interaction between external signals and the EBG function
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J696	30i-BP Skip Function for EGB Axis
A02B-0356-J696	31i-B5P Skip Function for EGB Axis
A02B-0357-J696	31i-BP Skip Function for EGB Axis
A02B-0358-J696	32i-BP Skip Function for EGB Axis

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

449

Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box

Electronic Gear Box (EGB) - 2 pairs

Features

The Electronic Gear Box (EGB) function is a function for rotating a workpiece in sync with a rotating tool, or to move a tool in sync with a rotating workpiece. With this function, the high-precision machining of gears, threads, and other similar machining processes can be implemented.

A desired synchronization ratio can be programmed. Up to 2 sets of axes can be synchronized. A gear grinding machine can be controlled, for instance, by using one axis for rotating the workpiece in sync with the tool and another axis for performing dressing in sync with the tool.

Benefits

- Addition of 2 sets of axis in the synchronization
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S710	30i-BP Electronic Gear Box - 2 Pairs
A02B-0356-S710	31i-B5P Electronic Gear Box - 2 Pairs
A02B-0357-S710	31i-BP Electronic Gear Box - 2 Pairs
A02B-0358-S710	32i-BP Electronic Gear Box - 2 Pairs

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

450

Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box

Electronic Gear Box (EGB) Automatic Phase Synchronization

Features

With the Electronic Gear Box (EGB) function active and when synchronization start or cancellation is specified, the synchronization is not started or canceled immediately. Instead, acceleration / deceleration is executed first. In this case, synchronization can be started or canceled while the spindle is rotating; the synchronization ratio can also be changed while the spindle is rotating.

At synchronization start, automatic phase synchronization is performed such that the workpiece axis position matches the position corresponding to the spindle one-rotation signal. With this synchronization, the same operation is performed as synchronization start caused by a one-rotation signal in hobbing synchronization when using the functions of a hobbing machine.

The spindle corresponds to the EGB master axis and the workpiece axis corresponds to an EGB slave axis.

Benefits

- Addition of automatic synchronization to the EGB function
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S711	30i-BP EGB Automatic Phase Synchronisation
A02B-0356-S711	31i-B5P EGB Automatic Phase Synchronisation
A02B-0357-S711	31i-BP EGB Automatic Phase Synchronisation
A02B-0358-S711	32i-BP EGB Automatic Phase Synchronisation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

451

Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box

Spindle Electronic Gear Box (EGB)

Features

A gear can be shaped (grind/cut) by the synchronization of the workpiece axis rotation to the tool axis (grinding axis / hob) rotation using two spindles as a tool axis and a workpiece axis. To synchronize these two axes, the Electronic gear box (EGB) is used.

In the Spindle EGB, the synchronous pulse is produced from the feedback pulse of the position detector attached to the tool axis (master axis) in the motor control, and the workpiece axis (slave axis) rotates with the pulse. Feedback pulse from Master side to Slave side is forwarded by the communication between spindle amplifiers.

The specifications of the Spindle EGB control are as follows:

1. The Spindle EGB synchronization is started by specifying T command (number of teeth) and L command (number of hob threads), which determine the synchronous ratio, in G81 block. The Spindle EGB synchronization is canceled by specifying G80.
2. The synchronous ratio is calculated from T and L command in G81 block and the number of position detector pulses per rotation about the tool and the workpiece axis (parameter setting).
3. This function has the retract function like the hobbing function.
4. The cutting helical gear is performed by specifying Q command (module or diametral pitch) and P command (gear helix angle) in G81 block.
5. The Spindle EGB synchronization is maintained regardless of whether the operation is automatic or manual.

Benefits

- Addition of the Electronic Gear Box function to Spindle
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S720	30i-BP Spindle Electronic Gear Box
A02B-0356-S720	31i-B5P Spindle Electronic Gear Box
A02B-0357-S720	31i-BP Spindle Electronic Gear Box
A02B-0358-S720	32i-BP Spindle Electronic Gear Box

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

452

Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box

Flexible Synchronization Control

Features

The Flexible Synchronous Control function applies to hobbing machines and other machines that require synchronization of multiple sets of axes with various gear ratios.

This function allows up to four individual sets to be synchronized independently. This can implement features specific to the hobbing machine such as synchronization between hobbing axis and a workpiece axis, Z-C synchronization in helical gear cutting, and Y-C synchronization in hobbing axis shift.

The specifications of Flexible Synchronous Control are as follows:

1. The master axis number, slave axis number, and gear ratio are set in parameters.
2. There are four groups of these parameters. Synchronization of four groups can be performed at the same time.
3. For multiple master axes, one slave axis can also be specified.
4. Synchronization is started and canceled by DI signals from the PMC. When DI signal switching is to be made during automatic operation, a parameter-set M code must be used.
5. The two Cs axes can also be used as a master axis and slave axis.
6. The two Cs axes can also be used as a master axis and slave axis.
7. Feedback pulses of the spindle operating as the Cs axis can be used for feed per revolution. The command format is G95P_;, where P_ is the axis number of Cs axis.

Benefits

- Addition of automatic synchronization to the Electronic Gear Box function
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S709	0i-TFP Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0350-S709	0i-MFP Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0351-S709	0i-LFP Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0353-S709	30i-BP Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0356-S709	31i-B5P Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0357-S709	31i-BP Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0358-S709	32i-BP Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0359-S709	30i-LB Plus Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0360-S709	31i-LB Plus Flexible Synchronous Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

453

Specification	Description
A02B-0362-S709	31i-PB Plus Flexible Synchronous Control

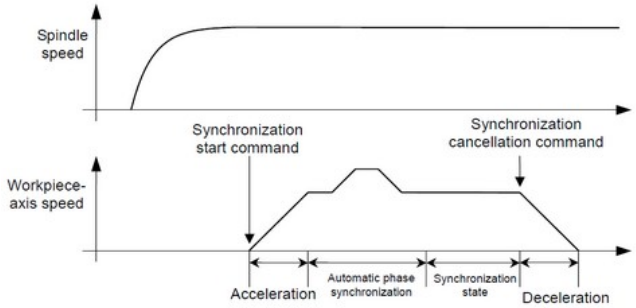
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

454

Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box



Automatic Phase Synchronization for Flexible Synchronous Control

Features

In Flexible Synchronous Control, when synchronization start or cancellation is specified, acceleration/deceleration is executed.

By this acceleration/deceleration, synchronization can be started or canceled while the master axis is moving.

Also, automatic phase synchronization can be performed such that the machine coordinate zero position of the master axis matches the slave axis machine coordinate position at the synchronization start.

Benefits

- Addition of automatic synchronization to the Electronic Gear Box function
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-S611	0i-LFP Automatic Phase Synchronisation for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0353-S611	30i-BP Automatic Phase Synchronisation for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0356-S611	31i-B5P Automatic Phase Synchronisation for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0357-S611	31i-BP Automatic Phase Synchronisation for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0358-S611	32i-BP Automatic Phase Synchronisation for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0359-S611	30i-LB Plus Automatic Phase Synchronisation for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0360-S611	31i-LB Plus Automatic Phase Synchronisation for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0362-S611	31i-PB Plus Automatic Phase Synchronisation for Flexible Synchronous Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

455

Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box

Inter-Path Flexible Synchronization Control

Features

The Inter-Path Flexible Synchronous Control function enables Flexible Synchronous Control between axes in different paths in multi-path systems.

Up to 4 slave axes can be specified in one path. An axis in other path can be specified as master axis of each slave axes. All synchronization pairs in all paths can be performed simultaneously.

Benefits

- Increase of machine design flexibility
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S610	30i-BP Inter-Path Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0356-S610	31i-B5P Inter-Path Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0357-S610	31i-BP Inter-Path Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0358-S610	32i-BP Inter-Path Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0359-S610	30i-LB Plus Inter-Path Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0360-S610	31i-LB Plus Inter-Path Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0362-S610	31i-PB Plus Inter-Path Flexible Synchronous Control

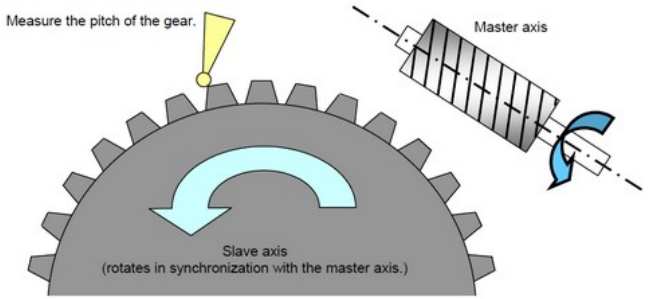
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

456

Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box



Skip Function for Flexible Synchronization Control

Features

This function provides the capability that Skip function or High-Speed Skip function can be commanded for the slave axis in Flexible Synchronous Control mode.

Features:

- The program block to enable the function is not interrupted until the total number of skip signal inputs reaches a value specified in the same block
- The machine coordinate position of the slave axis at each time of the signal inputs is stored in one of consecutive custom macro variables. The top number of the variables is specified in the block.
- The total number of the inputs is stored in another specified variable.

Benefits

- Addition of event driven control capabilities to Flexible Synchronous Control mode
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-S612	0i-LFP Skip Function for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0353-S612	30i-BP Skip Function for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0356-S612	31i-B5P Skip Function for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0357-S612	31i-BP Skip Function for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0358-S612	32i-BP Skip Function for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0359-S612	30i-LB Plus Skip Function for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0360-S612	31i-LB Plus Skip Function for Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0362-S612	31i-PB Plus Skip Function for Flexible Synchronous Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

457

Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box

Hob Command by Flexible Synchronous Control

Features

Allows the use of the hob command (G81/G81.4) prepared in the Electronic Gear Box function as a synchronization command for Flexible Synchronous Control.

Benefits

- Easy gear processing by Flexible Synchronous Control

Flexible Synchronous Control option is required

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R847	30i-BP Hob Command by Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0356-R847	31i-B5P Hob Command by Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0357-R847	31i-BP Hob Command by Flexible Synchronous Control
A02B-0358-R847	32i-BP Hob Command by Flexible Synchronous Control

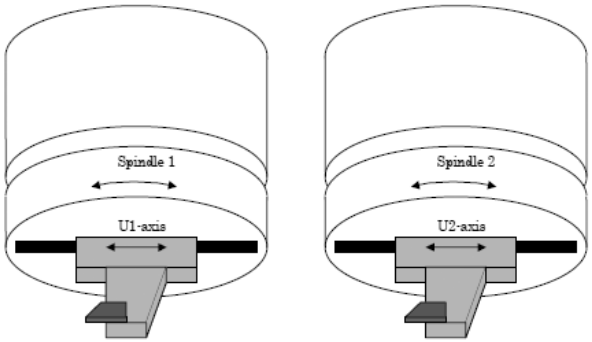
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

458

Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box



U-Axis Control 2 Pairs

Features

The U-Axis Control function enables two synchronous U-axis pairs to remain in a fixed position or to move at a programmed speed without using a mechanism such as a planetary gear box.

Benefits

- Change of diameter being machined during multitasking machining operations

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R659	30i-BP U-Axis Control - 2 Pairs
A02B-0356-R659	31i-B5P U-Axis Control - 2 Pairs
A02B-0357-R659	31i-BP U-Axis Control - 2 Pairs
A02B-0358-R659	32i-BP U-Axis Control - 2 Pairs

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Grinding Functions

Features

The "Grinding Function A" package contains the following items:

- Multi-Step Skip
- Canned Cycle for Grinding
- Continuous Dressing (0i-MF Plus only)
- Infeed Control (0i-MF Plus only)

The "Grinding Function B" package contains

- the same functions as "Grinding Function A", and
- Arbitrary Angular Axis Control function.

Note: for more information about the functions included in the packages, refer to their respective descriptions in this catalogue.

Benefits

- Simplification of the selection of the control functions required for popular grinding machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S682	0i-TFP Grinding Function A
A02B-0349-S683	0i-TFP Grinding Function B
A02B-0350-S682	0i-MFP Grinding Function A
A02B-0350-S683	0i-MFP Grinding Function B

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

460

Functions

Punch Press Functions

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to Punch Press machines.

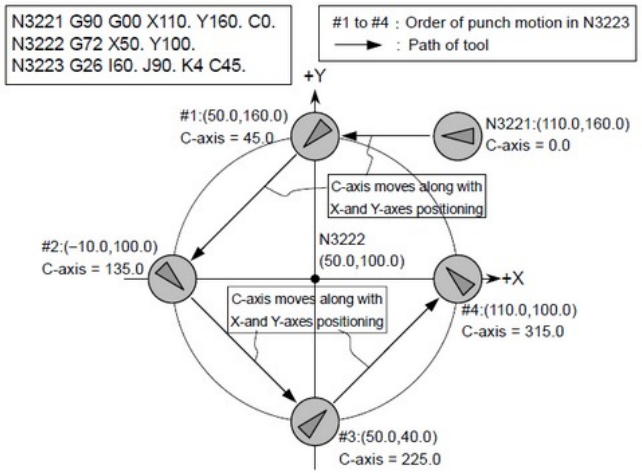
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

461

Punch Press Functions



C-Axis Control

Features

The C-Axis Control function consist of the following functions:

- C-axis control (die angle indexing)
- C-axis synchronization control
- C-axis offset function

C-axis control (die-angle indexing)

For predetermined dies (tools) on a turret, the angular position of the die can be changed with a command from a tape, a memory or MDI.

In the past, it was necessary to use many dies when the die shape is the same but the die arrangement is different. Even in such a case, this new function makes it possible to conduct the operations only with one die since the function can freely change the angular position of the die. Further, since chamfering of four corners of a workpiece can be performed only with one die, the time required for die change is reduced, resulting in shorter machining time.

Further, in pattern function for a circular geometry bolt hole circle, arc pattern, and arc nibbling function, the C axis is automatically controlled so that one side of the die always faces the center of arc at each punching position.

C-axis synchronization control

The C–axis synchronization control function enables operation of the punch section of the die in sync with the die section of the die by using a separate servo motor for each section.

C–axis synchronization control simultaneously issues the same command to both servo motors. So, synchronization error correction, normally required to detect and reduce deviation between the two servo motors during synchronous operation, is not applied. In C–axis synchronization control, the master axis is referred to as the C1–axis, and the slave axis as the C2–axis.

C-axis offset function

For the punch press, a tool is used which allows the angle to be changed according to the machine. This type of rotary tool is subject to CNC C–axis control. A C command is used to change the angular position of a tool. When a machine controlling multiple tools of this type is used, mechanical adjustment of each tool is necessary to ensure correct punching.

This function simplifies mechanical adjustment by performing automatic C–axis offset when indexing up to 20 tools that allow angle changes. A machine that uses C–axis synchronization control enables offset to be performed separately for each of the C1–axis and C2–axis.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

462

Benefits

- Reduction of the number of dies
- Simplification of the mechanical adjustments
- Increase of the productivity of the punch press

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-J601	30i-LB Plus C-Axis Control
A02B-0360-J601	31i-LB Plus C-Axis Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

463

Punch Press Functions

T- and C-Axes Simultaneous Control

Features

The conventional turret punch press cannot make a T–axis movement and C–axis movement simultaneously because of mechanical constraints. If the T and C commands are simultaneously specified, the CNC executes the commands successively.

Recently, machines without these mechanical constraints have been developed. The T–axis / C–axis simultaneous control function enables simultaneous control of the T–axis and C–axis on those new machines, consequently reducing the cycle time.

Benefits

- Reduction of the cycle time of the punch press
- Increase of the machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-S907	30i-LB Plus T- and C-Axes Simultaneous Control
A02B-0360-S907	31i-LB Plus T- and C-Axes Simultaneous Control
A02B-0362-S907	31i-PB Plus T- and C-Axes Simultaneous Control

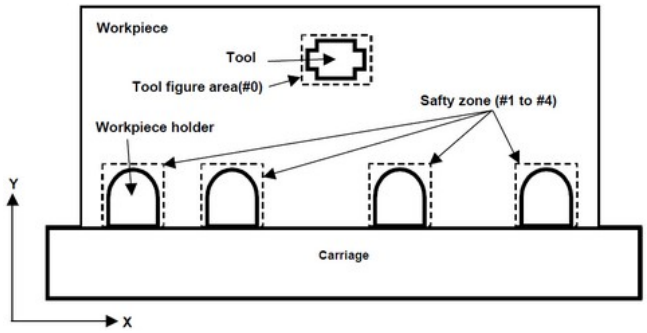
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

464

Punch Press Functions



Safety Zone Check

Features

This is the safety function to set the safety zone for protecting the workpiece holder that holds the workpiece set on the carriage, and disable punching in that area or forbid the tool to approach thereinto.

This function permits to set tool figure area (#0) and up to four safety zones (#1 - #4), as shown above. Two types of safety zone check methods are available.

Benefits

- Reduce risks on the machine and breakdowns
- Increase the overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J605	30i-BP Safety Zone Check
A02B-0353-R878	30i-BP Safety Zone Check Target Axis Switching Function
A02B-0356-J605	31i-B5P Safety Zone Check
A02B-0356-R878	31i-B5P Safety Zone Check Target Axis Switching Function
A02B-0357-J605	31i-BP Safety Zone Check
A02B-0357-R878	31i-BP Safety Zone Check Target Axis Switching Function
A02B-0358-J605	32i-BP Safety Zone Check
A02B-0358-R878	32i-BP Safety Zone Check Target Axis Switching Function
A02B-0359-J605	30i-LB Plus Safety Zone Check
A02B-0359-R878	30i-LB Plus Safety Zone Check Target Axis Switching Function
A02B-0360-J605	31i-LB Plus Safety Zone Check
A02B-0360-R878	31i-LB Plus Safety Zone Check Target Axis Switching Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

465

Punch Press Functions

Safety Zone Area Expansion

Features

This function extends the safety zone check function as follows:

- Extends the safety zone check areas: Up to 8
- Extends the safety zone tool areas: Up to 16
- Adds interference safety zone area signals (DO signals): Fn228, Fn238
- Inproves the automatic safety–zone setting

Benefits

- Support of large punch press machines with multiple settings
- Reduce risks on the machine and breakdowns
- Increase the overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S908	30i-BP Safety Zone Area Expansion
A02B-0356-S908	31i-B5P Safety Zone Area Expansion
A02B-0357-S908	31i-BP Safety Zone Area Expansion
A02B-0358-S908	32i-BP Safety Zone Area Expansion
A02B-0359-S908	30i-LB Plus Safety Zone Area Expansion
A02B-0360-S908	31i-LB Plus Safety Zone Area Expansion
A02B-0362-S908	31i-PB Plus Safety Zone Area Expansion

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Clamp Zone Avoidance Function

Features

By means of this function, the CNC monitors the positions of the tool and workpiece holder to avoid interference between the workpiece holder and tool.

Interference can be avoided automatically by the CNC or by the PMC, by using the DI/DO signals.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J622	30i-BP Clamp Zone Avoidance Function
A02B-0356-J622	31i-B5P Clamp Zone Avoidance Function
A02B-0357-J622	31i-BP Clamp Zone Avoidance Function
A02B-0358-J622	32i-BP Clamp Zone Avoidance Function
A02B-0359-J622	30i-LB Plus Clamp Zone Avoidance Function
A02B-0360-J622	31i-LB Plus Clamp Zone Avoidance Function

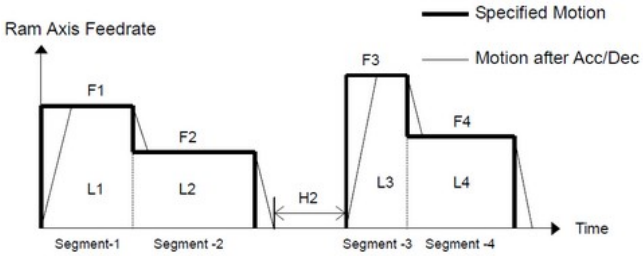
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

467

Punch Press Functions



Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

RAM-Axis Control

Features

The CNC cannot move RAM-axis by program command.

With this function, the RAM-axis moves automatically at the end of the block executing 1-cycle press by setting RAM-axis and the RAM-axis motion patterns.

Benefits

- Simplification of the RAM axis command
- Increase of the punching quality

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-S919	30i-LB Plus RAM Axis Control
A02B-0360-S919	31i-LB Plus RAM Axis Control

468

Punch Press Functions

Linear/Circular Punch Command

Features

These commands specify the punch operation from start to end point taking tool diameter and punch interval into account.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-J602	30i-LB Plus Linear / Circular Punch Command
A02B-0360-J602	31i-LB Plus Linear / Circular Punch Command
A02B-0362-J602	31i-PB Plus Linear / Circular Punch Command

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

469

Punch Press Functions

Y-Axis Crack Cancel

Features

With this function, when the M–codes which are set by parameters are commanded, the crack between work coordinate system and machine coordinate system of Y–axis repositioning motion is canceled.

Example 1

Y1525M30
Y–axis moves including the crack of repositioning.

Example 2

Y1525 ;
M30 ;
The work coordinate system is preset to the machine coordinate systemto cancel the crack of repositioning by M30. (Y–axis does not move.)

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-J616	30i-LB Plus Y-Axis Crack Cancel
A02B-0360-J616	31i-LB Plus Y-Axis Crack Cancel
A02B-0362-J616	31i-PB Plus Y-Axis Crack Cancel

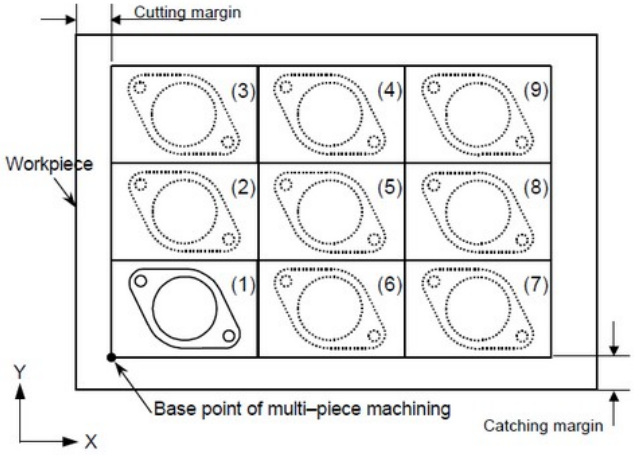
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

470

Punch Press Functions



Multi-Piece Machining

Features

The multi–piece machining function enables several sheets of product with the same punching shape to be produced from a single sheet of material at a time by simple commands.

This function allows so called "trial machining" that performs punching only on a sheet of product from the machining program for "multi–piece machining" by a simple setup method, therefore the machining program can be easily checked before full machining.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-PF.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming
- Overall increase of the machine efficiency and productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R870	30i-BP Multi-Piece Machining
A02B-0356-R870	31i-B5P Multi-Piece Machining
A02B-0357-R870	31i-BP Multi-Piece Machining
A02B-0358-R870	32i-BP Multi-Piece Machining

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

471

Punch Press Functions

Multi-Piece Machining End Area Command

Features

End area can be specified in Multi-piece machining comands blocks.

Benefits

- Efficiency improvement of Multi-piece machining

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S927	30i-BP Multi-Piece Machining End Area Command
A02B-0356-S927	31i-B5P Multi-Piece Machining End Area Command
A02B-0357-S927	31i-BP Multi-Piece Machining End Area Command
A02B-0358-S927	32i-BP Multi-Piece Machining End Area Command
A02B-0362-S927	31i-PB Plus Multi-Piece Machining End Area Command

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

472

Punch Press Functions

Tool Data Setting Function

Features

This function makes the area used for registering tool numbers, tool position compensation, punch count and other tool data available to the user.

This enables the user to customize the registered tool data. This allows the conventional tool data setting method to be changed and the number of tools that can be registered to be increased considerably.

Benefits

- Increase of the flexibility of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-J621	30i-LB Plus Tool Data Setting Function
A02B-0360-J621	31i-LB Plus Tool Data Setting Function
A02B-0362-J621	31i-PB Plus Tool Data Setting Function

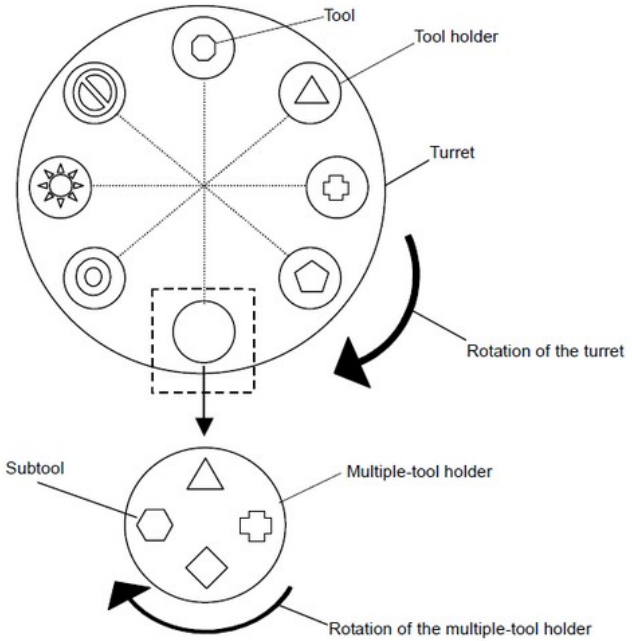
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

473

Punch Press Functions



Multiple Tool Control

Features

A common way of handling the tools, i.e., the metal dies, for punch presses is to store each die in the tool holder. To select a tool, it is necessary to index the magazine containing the required tool holder to the position at which the tool is changed with a T command and to set the tool holder on the punch holder at that position.

In the multiple–tool system, however, one tool holder contains different types of metal dies. This makes it possible to change tools by simply moving the relevant tool holder. The multiple–tool system, therefore, reduces the time taken to change tools and enables a larger variety of tools to be used, enhancing the range of machining that can be performed.

Benefits

- Increase of the flexibility and efficiency of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-J604	30i-LB Plus Multiple Tool Control
A02B-0360-J604	31i-LB Plus Multiple Tool Control
A02B-0362-J604	31i-PB Plus Multiple Tool Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

474

Punch Press Functions

Tool Life Management

Features

The function sets the maximum punch count for each tool on the screen. If the actual punch count for a selected tool exceeds the predetermined maximum punch count, tool expired signal PTLCH is output.

Upon detecting this signal, the PMC outputs an alarm or instructs the operator to change the tool.

Benefits

- Increase of the quality of the machining

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-J614	30i-LB Plus Tool Life Management
A02B-0360-J614	31i-LB Plus Tool Life Management
A02B-0362-J614	31i-PB Plus Tool Life Management

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

475
Functions

Laser Functions

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to the CO_2 Laser systems of FANUC.

Some of the functions detailed in the catalogue:

- Standard functions
- Gap control
- Cutting settings
- Laser high-speed control
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

476

Laser Functions

Laser Control Function

Features

With the Laser Control function, it is possible to control a FANUC Fiber Laser with a standard FANUC 30i/31i/32i-B Plus CNC. The purpose of this function is to enable combined machining where a FANUC Fiber Laser is integrated into a machine tool, e.g. a lathe or machining center. An M-code is used to switch between Laser machining mode and machining center / lathe system.

The following Laser options are already integrated into the Laser Control function option:

- Buffer Expansion
- Edge Cutting function
- Cutting Condition Setting function
- Addition of Cutting Condition Data

With the Laser Control function option, the following Laser options can be selected additionally:

- Gap Control for Laser
- Minimum Command 1% Duty Override
- Laser Oscillator Communication Control (FSSB Connection)

Benefits

- Enables the integration of a FANUC Fiber Laser into a machine tool

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R845	30i-BP Laser Control Function
A02B-0356-R845	31i-B5P Laser Control Function
A02B-0357-R845	31i-B Laser Control Function
A02B-0358-R845	32i-B Laser Control Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

477

Laser Functions

Addition of Cutting Condition Data

Features

By specifying the addition of cutting condition data option, the specifications of the conventional cuttingcondition setting function are expanded.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-S912	0i-LFP Addition of Cutting Condition Data

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

478

Laser Functions

Minimum Command 1% Duty Override

Features

This function allows to override the current laser pulse duty with an resolution of 1% compared to the standard resolution of 10%. The override value can be specified within a range of 0 to 200%. With this function, it is possible to adjust the laser pulse duty during cutting with a finer graduation.

Benefits

- Improves the quality of the cutting surface

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-S925	0i-LFP Minimum Command 1 % Duty Override
A02B-0353-S925	30i-BP Minimum Command 1 % Duty Override
A02B-0356-S925	31i-B5P Minimum Command 1 % Duty Override
A02B-0357-S925	31i-BP Minimum Command 1 % Duty Override
A02B-0358-S925	32i-BP Minimum Command 1 % Duty Override

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

479

Laser Functions

Laser High-Speed Control Function 2

Features

This function allows to transfer 4 sets of laser output conditions every 8msec in AI-NANO contour control mode to the laser oscillator via FSSB I/O. The Laser output can be controlled every 125msec by commanding the laser output conditions to the laser oscillator via FSSB I/O.

4 sets of laser output conditions such as laser power or block overlap position are transferred to DSP software for laser control in AI-NANO contour control mode. The DSP software controls 1 laser output conditions every 125 usec and commands to laser oscillator via FSSB I/O.

Benefits

- High-precision and high-speed laser processing can be realized
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-S922	0i-LFP Laser High-Speed Control 2
A02B-0359-S922	30i-LB Plus Laser High-Speed Control 2
A02B-0360-S922	31i-LB Plus Laser High-Speed Control 2

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

480
Laser Functions

Laser Oscillator Communication Control (HSSB Connection)

Features

Third-party laser oscillators can be connected to the CNC via HSSB. This option is neccessary to control a third-party laser oscillator via HSSB.

The machine tool builder has to prepare a custom hardware to connect the laser source to the FANUC controller via HSSB board. Laser output commands are transmitted to the HSSB board and are output to the laser source by the custom hardware.

Benefits

- Controls third-party laser oscillators via HSSB optical communication

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-R833	0i-LFP Laser Oscillator Communication Control (HSSB Connection) - to Control Laser via HSSB
A02B-0359-R833	30i-LB Plus Laser Oscillator Communication Control (HSSB Connection) - to Control Laser via HSSB
A02B-0360-R833	31i-LB Plus Laser Oscillator Communication Control (HSSB Connection) - to Control Laser via HSSB

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

481
Laser Functions

Laser Oscillator Communication Control (FSSB Connection)

Features

Third-party laser oscillators can be connected to the CNC by the laser interface unit. The laser interface unit itself is connected to the CNC unit via FSSB. This option is needed to control a third-party laser oscillator via FSSB. Laser output commands are transmitted to the laser interface unit and are output as analog signals.
This function is a basic function in 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Controls third-party laser oscillators via FSSB high speed communication

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0323-C210	30i-B Laser Interface Unit
A02B-0351-S939	0i-LFP Laser Oscillator Communication Control 2 (FSSB Connection)
A02B-0353-S928	30i-BP Laser Oscillator Communication Control (FSSB Connection)
A02B-0353-S939	30i-BP Laser Oscillator Communication Control 2 (FSSB Connection)
A02B-0356-S928	31i-B5P Laser Oscillator Communication Control (FSSB Connection)
A02B-0356-S939	31i-B5P Laser Oscillator Communication Control 2 (FSSB Connection)
A02B-0357-S928	31i-BP Laser Oscillator Communication Control (FSSB Connection)
A02B-0357-S939	31i-BP Laser Oscillator Communication Control 2 (FSSB Connection)
A02B-0358-S928	32i-BP Laser Oscillator Communication Control (FSSB Connection)
A02B-0358-S939	32i-BP Laser Oscillator Communication Control 2 (FSSB Connection)
A02B-0359-S928	30i-LBP Laser Oscillator Communication Control
A02B-0359-S939	30i-LBP Laser Oscillator Communication Control 2 (FSSB Connection)
A02B-0360-S928	31i-LB Plus Laser Oscillator Communication Control
A02B-0360-S939	31i-LBP Laser Oscillator Communication Control 2 (FSSB Connection)

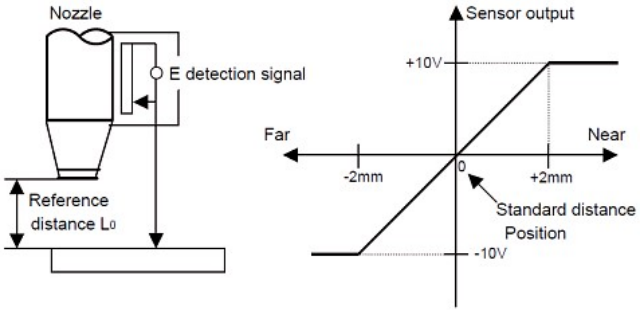
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

482

Laser Functions



Gap Control for Laser

Features

When the laser cutting machine is equipped with a detector to measure the distance to the surface of the workpiece, it is possible with the Gap Control function to use an analog signal generated by this detector and send it to the CNC through a specified interface.

This signal is processed by the CNC and enables a precise gap control using the Z-axis of the CNC / machine.

This function is a basic function in 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Control of the gap between nozzle and workpiece
- Improvement of the cutting quality

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-S930	30i-BP Gap Control for Laser Cutting
A02B-0356-S930	31i-B5P Gap Control for Laser Cutting
A02B-0357-S930	31i-BP Gap Control for Laser Cutting
A02B-0358-S930	32i-BP Gap Control for Laser Cutting

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

483

Laser Functions

Buffer Expansion

Features

This function enhances the number of reading blocks at cutter compensation (parameter No.19625). To find correct actual path, the intersecting point at the movement blocks is calculated with cutter compensation.

When the block that has no movement is commanded, eight blocks or less are read until the block which has the movement is found in this intersection calculation.

In the laser cutting, the piercing command, the cutting condition command, the assist gas command and the command with no movement might be consecutive. Even if the block which has no movement is continued 30 blocks or less, this function enables to maintain the offset vector and the beam route in cutter compensation mode and start-up mode as usual.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming
- Increase of the overall machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-J611	0i-LFP Buffer Expansion

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

484

Laser Functions

Punch Press Function for Compound Cutting

Features

When the function for Punch Press is activated and parameter ALA (No.16242#0) is 1, the punch press function becomes effective. As a result, the function of 31i-PB Plus CNC can be used also with Series 30i/31i-LB Plus CNC.

When the punch press function is effective, the punch mode that does the punch press processing and the laser mode that does laser processing become possible. Each mode is switched by specified M code.

In the program, the punch press processing and the laser processing can be alternately done by one program when specified M code of each mode in the first block of the punch press processing and the laser processing.

Benefits

- Increase of the capabilities of the laser CNC to punch press

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-R815	30i-LB Plus Punch Press Function
A02B-0360-R815	31i-LB Plus Punch Press Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

485
Laser Functions

Attitude Control

Features

When at least five controlled axes are specified and attitude control is also specified, control can be applied to the attitude of the nozzle with the fourth and fifth axes used as rotational axes.

When using this function, the laser machine tool can be use as a three-dimensional machine tool.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming
- Overall improvement of the machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-J827	30i-LB Plus Attitude Control

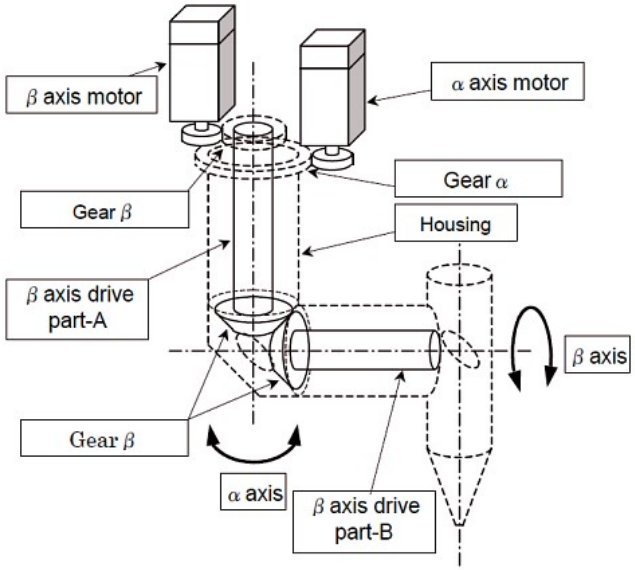
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

486

Laser Functions



Interaction Control

Features

In nozzle attitude control, as shown in the diagram of the axis configuration of the nozzle head, the ß axis motor is arranged around the Z axis. In the case of a structure which transmits by gear, if the α axis is commanded, the housing rotates and the nozzle rotates around the Z axis.

However, simultaneously at this time gear ß must rotate around gear α. This movement results in the nozzle being rotated by the ß axis.

Namely, if the α axis rotates by an α axis command, a rotational operation simultaneously occurs at the ß axis.

Interaction control is the function to automatically generate commands in the ß axis of the same amount as the α axis commands in order to cancel the rotational operation of the ß axis for a nozzle head of axis configuration such that the ß axis rotates by the α axis commands. The command polarity can be selected by parameter.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming
- Overall increase of the machine productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-J864	30i-LB Plus Interaction Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

487

Laser Functions

W-Axis Gap Control

Features

W axis gap control function is necessary for gap control using the second gap control axis.

Benefits

- When W axis gap control function is effective, the gap control axis can select either of the first gap control axis or the second gap control axis.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-J825	30i-LB Plus W-Axis Gap Control

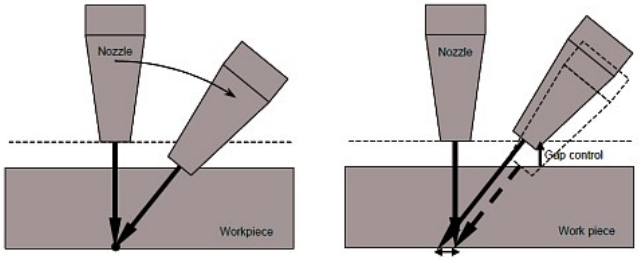
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

488

Laser Functions



Bevel Cutting Compensation Function

Features

In the bevel cutting that uses the inclination to the work cutting side, the laser beam irradiation point specified by the program might become a work bottom.

Therefore, the laser beam irradiation point as a nozzle tip point in the nozzle length compensation function, operate the nozzle tip fixing mode, bevel angle changes, the nozzle might collide with the workpiece surface (left figure).

To avoid this collision, the gap control is used, the nozzle is done gap control in the vertical direction, the tracks error margin in the work bottom occurs (right figure).

By compensating the nozzle length automatically according to the bevel angle in the nozzle tip fixing mode, the bevel cutting compensation function loses the tracks error margin without the nozzle colliding with the workpiece surface.

Benefits

- Increase of the cutting capabilities of the machine
- Avoidance of the collision between the nozzle and the working table

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-S909	30i-LB Plus Bevel Cutting Compensation Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

489

Laser Functions

Proximity Point Search

Features

If cycle start is executed with Proximity Point Search active, the control searches the the block that is next to the current nozzle position. The nozzle is then positioned at the start point of that block in feed hold state.

Benefits

- Facilitate 3-dimensional LASER processing

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-J839	30i-LB Plus Proximity Point Search

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

490
Laser Functions

Spatial Corner Rounding

Features
Spatial Corner Rounding replaces corners in the motion path by arcs with a specified radius.

Benefits

- Facilitate 3-dimensional LASER processing

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-J866	30i-LB Plus Spatial Corner Rounding

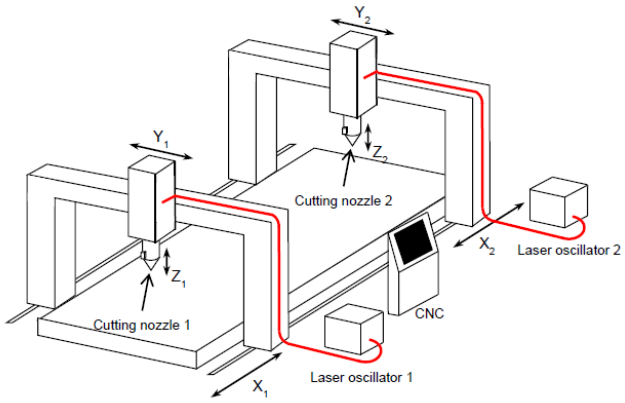
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

491

Laser Functions



Two Laser Control Function

Features

This function allows to control 2 laser oscillators by one CNC. It is possible to control the 2 oscillators in different paths that execute different programs, or to synchronously control the laser oscillators.

Benefits

- More productive machines with 2 laser oscillators

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-S911	30i-LB Plus Two Laser Control Function
A02B-0360-S911	31i-LB Plus Two Laser Control Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

492

Laser Functions

Laser Machining Package

Features

The Laser Machining Package for 0i-LF Plus combines options that are useful for laser machining. The following options are included in the package:

- Addition of Cutting Condition Data
- Multi-Piece Machining
- Multi-Piece Machining End Area Command
- Buffer Expansion
- Minimum Command 1% Duty Override

Benefits

- Easily select the options for laser machining applications on 0i-LF Plus

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-S932	0i-LFP Laser Machining Package

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

493

Laser Functions

Laser Trend Function

Features

Laser Trend Function periodically records the sensor data of the laser oscillator. This function is developed to improve FANUC FIBER LASER maintainability and streamline service work.

Benefits

- Improve FANUC FIBER LASER maintainability

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-S934	0i-LFP Laser Trend Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

494

Laser Functions

Laser Command External Input Function

Features

Laser Command External Input Function allows you to control a CO_2 Laser oscillator by an external device via CNC.

Benefits

- Combine FANUC CNC with 3rd party CO_2 laser oscillator

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-S936	0i-LFP Laser Command External Input Function
A02B-0359-S936	30i-LB Plus Laser Command External Input Function
A02B-0360-S936	31i-LB Plus Laser Command External Input Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

495

Laser Functions

Addition of Piercing Condition Data

Features

This function expands the number of piercing condition sets in the cutting condition setting function from 10 to 20 sets.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-S938	0i-LF Plus Addition of Piercing Condition Data
A02B-0353-S938	30i-BP Addition of Piercing Condition Data
A02B-0356-S938	31i-B5P Addition of Piercing Condition Data
A02B-0357-S938	31i-BP Addition of Piercing Condition Data
A02B-0358-S938	32i-BP Addition of Piercing Condition Data
A02B-0359-S938	30i-LB Plus Addition of Piercing Condition Data
A02B-0360-S938	31i-LB Plus Addition of Piercing Condition Data

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

496

Laser Functions

Gap Control Axis Selection Function

Features

In the conventional 3-dimensional gap control, ony one of the three basic axes can be used as target axis for gap control. This function allows any axis to be set as the target axis for 3-dimensional gap control.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-S940	30i-LBP Gap Control Axis Selection Function
A02B-0360-S940	31i-LBP Gap Control Axis Selection Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

497

Laser Functions

Arbitrary Shape Specification in Work Support Axis Control

Features

In Work Support Axis Control, which supports the workpiece from the direction of gravity, the shape of the workpiece can be specified arbitrarily. In addition to the gravity direction, the workpiece can be supported in the horizontal direction, and the shape of the support can also be R-shaped.

Although it was previously possible to support only rectangular workpieces, it is now possible to support various shapes such as L shaped and polygonal workpieces. In addition, horizontal support and R-shaped support can be supported to further reduce workpiece sway.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0351-R800	0i-LFP Arbitrary Shape Specification in Work Support Axis Control
A02B-0359-R800	30i-BP Arbitrary Shape Specification in Work Support Axis Control
A02B-0360-R800	31i-BP Arbitrary Shape Specification in Work Support Axis Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

498

Functions

Gas Cutting Machine Functions

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to Gas Cutting machines.
Some of the functions detailed in the catalogue:

- Torch swing
- In- acceleration / deceleration
- Corner control
- Tool offset B
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

499

Gas Cutting Machine Functions

Functions for Gas Cutting Machine

Features

Options for the gas cutting machine functions by controller.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R535	30i-BP Functions for Gas Cutting Machine
A02B-0356-R535	31i-B5P Functions for Gas Cutting Machine
A02B-0357-R535	31i-BP Functions for Gas Cutting Machine
A02B-0359-R535	30i-LBP Functions for Gas Cutting Machine
A02B-0360-R535	31i-LBP Functions for Gas Cutting Machine

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

500

Gas Cutting Machine Functions

Automatic Exact Stop Check

Features

The Automatic Exact Stop Check function checks the corner inner angle between successive blocks specifying linear interpolation (G01) or circular interpolation (G02, G03) and perform an exact stop automatically between the blocks if the angle is equal to or less than a set critical angle.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R505	30i-BP Automatic Exact Stop Check
A02B-0356-R505	31i-B5P Automatic Exact Stop Check
A02B-0357-R505	31i-BP Automatic Exact Stop Check
A02B-0359-R505	30i-LBP Automatic Exact Stop Check
A02B-0360-R505	31i-LBP Automatic Exact Stop Check

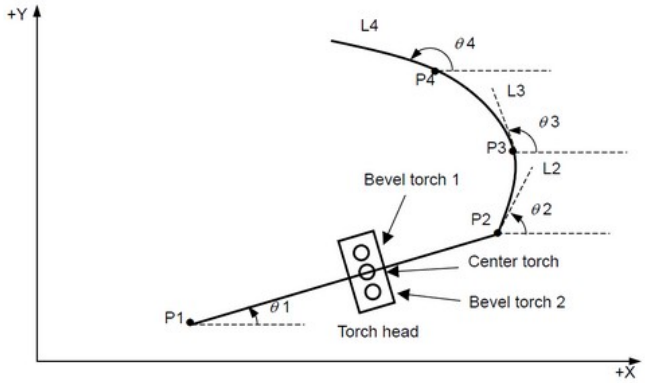
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

501

Gas Cutting Machine Functions



Torch Swing for Gas Cutting Machine

Features

For beveling using a torch head with a bevel torch (hereinafter simply referred to as a torch head), the torch head generally needs to be positioned in the normal direction to a specified straight line or arc at all times. This function automatically controls the torch head swing control axis (hereinafter referred to as the torch swing axis) to position the torch head in the normal direction to a specified straight line or arc.

For positioning in the normal direction to a straight line, the torch control axis is fed at a constant speed in the normal direction to the straight line according to linear interpolation execution. For positioning in the normal direction to an arc, the torch control axis is positioned in the momentarily changing normal direction to the arc according to circular interpolation execution.

Benefits

- Addition of Torch Swing control for gas cutting process
- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R506	30i-BP Torch Swing for Gas Cutting Machine
A02B-0356-R506	31i-B5P Torch Swing for Gas Cutting Machine
A02B-0357-R506	31i-BP Torch Swing for Gas Cutting Machine
A02B-0359-R506	30i-LBP Torch Swing for Gas Cutting Machine
A02B-0360-R506	31i-LBP Torch Swing for Gas Cutting Machine

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

502

Gas Cutting Machine Functions

Gentle Curve Cutting

Features

With the Gentle Curve Cutting function, if the V-axis is added as an axis parallel to the Y-axis, the V-axis in the gentle curve cutting cancel mode (G13) and a command for the Y-axis alone is assumed to be specified for the V-axis as well and enables movement also on the V-axis.

In the gentle curve cutting mode (G12), a command for the Y-axis is valid for the Y-axis alone and a command for the V-axis is valid for the V-axis alone.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R504	30i-BP Gentle Curve Cutting
A02B-0356-R504	31i-B5P Gentle Curve Cutting
A02B-0357-R504	31i-BP Gentle Curve Cutting

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

503

Gas Cutting Machine Functions

Corner Control by Feedrate

Features

If a block for cutting feed is followed by another block for cutting feed, the number of accumulated pulses in the automatic acceleration / deceleration circuit of each axis in the block being executed is assumed to be 0 and machining proceeds to the next block when the feedrate being decelerated on each axis with the automatic acceleration / deceleration circuit has decreased to or below the feedrate set in parameter.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R508	30i-BP Corner Control by Feedrate
A02B-0356-R508	31i-B5P Corner Control by Feedrate
A02B-0357-R508	31i-BP Corner Control by Feedrate
A02B-0359-R508	30i-LBP Corner Control by Feedrate
A02B-0360-R508	31i-LBP Corner Control by Feedrate

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

504

Gas Cutting Machine Functions

Tool Offset B

Features

With the Tool Offset B function G43H_ or G44H_ command, the tool offset not affected by mirror image can be applied.

With the G49 command, the tool offset can be canceled without being affected by the mirror image. The offset axes are the first axis and second axis for the plane selection.

Benefits

- Simplification of the programming
- Improvement of the overall machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R507	30i-BP Tool Offset B
A02B-0356-R507	31i-B5P Tool Offset B
A02B-0357-R507	31i-BP Tool Offset B
A02B-0359-R507	30i-LBP Tool Offset B
A02B-0360-R507	31i-LBP Tool Offset B

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

505

Gas Cutting Machine Functions

Gap Control

Features

On machines which are equipped with a distance measurement sensor, the Gap Control function controls the motion of the Z-axis to keep the distance between sensor and workpiece constant.

An Analog Input Module of I/O-Link is necessary to use this function.

Benefits

- Improve the quality of the cutting edge

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-R636	0i-MFP Gap Control
A02B-0353-R636	30i-BP Gap Control
A02B-0356-R636	31i-B5P Gap Control
A02B-0357-R636	31i-BP Gap Control
A02B-0358-R636	32i-BP Gap Control

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

506
Functions

EDM Functions

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to EDM machines.
Some of the functions detailed in the catalogue:

- EDM Power Supply control
- Die Sinking EDM control
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

507
EDM Functions

Die Sinking EDM Function

Features

The Die Sinking EDM Function (DSF) enables to control the electrical discharge gap with high response.
Please contact a FANUC sales representative for additional information.

Benefits

- Control of Die Sinking EDM machines

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R822	30i-BP Die Sinking EDM Function
A02B-0356-R822	31i-B5P Die Sinking EDM Function
A02B-0357-R822	31i-BP Die Sinking EDM Function
A02B-0358-R822	32i-BP Die Sinking EDM Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

508
EDM Functions

EDM Power Supply Communication Control (HSSB)

Features

EDM power supply communication control (HSSB connection) communicates the EDM condition between CNC and EDM power supply. High-speed communication can be done by using the High-speed serial bus (HSSB).

Please contact a FANUC sales representative for additional information.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R811	30i-BP EDM Power Supply Communication Control (HSSB Connection)
A02B-0356-R811	31i-B5P EDM Power Supply Communication Control (HSSB Connection)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

509
EDM Functions

Feed Control by EDM Power Supply

Features

Feed control by EDM power supply enables the EDM power supply unit to control the feed rate of the CNC.
Please contact a FANUC sales representative for additional information.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R634	30i-BP Feed Control by EDM Power Supply (HSSB Connection)
A02B-0356-R634	31i-B5P Feed Control by EDM Power Supply (HSSB Connection)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

510
Functions

Transfer Line Functions

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to Transfer Lines or Transfer Machine applications.
Some of the functions detailed in the catalogue:

- Transfer Line Functions
- Setup Functions
- Machine Operation Panel
- Embedded Safety Circuit
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

511

Transfer Line Functions

Machine Operation Panel Screen Display

Features

This option is needed to display operation panel screens which have been developed using FANUC Auto HMI/T.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R714	30i-BP Machine Operation Panel Screen Display
A02B-0356-R714	31i-B5P Machine Operation Panel Screen Display
A02B-0357-R714	31i-BP Machine Operation Panel Screen Display
A02B-0358-R714	32i-BP Machine Operation Panel Screen Display

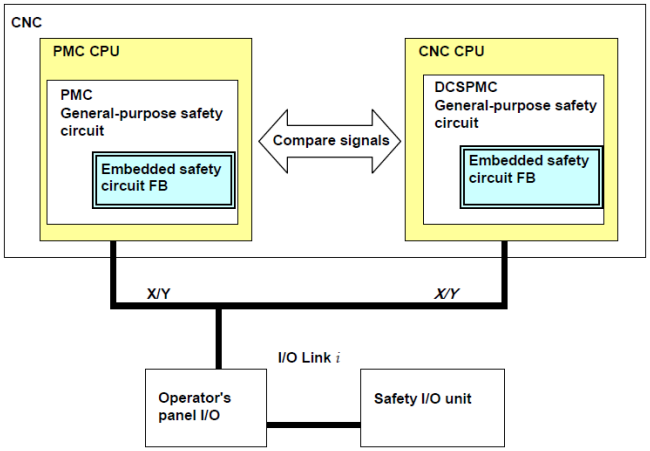
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

512

Transfer Line Functions



Adjustable Type Embedded Safety Circuit

Features

If a machine tool builder uses Dual Check Safety, he prepares a safety ladder program (the "general-purpose safety circuit") that processes safety signals and executes safety operations. The embedded safety circuit offers the ability to add the power supply control circuit of the peripheral equipment to the general-purpose safety circuit.

Benefits

- Enhance reliability of the safety circuit

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R462	30i-BP Adjustable Type Embedded Safety Circuit
A02B-0356-R462	31i-B5P Adjustable Type Embedded Safety Circuit
A02B-0357-R462	31i-BP Adjustable Type Embedded Safety Circuit
A02B-0358-R462	32i-BP Adjustable Type Embedded Safety Circuit

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

513
Functions

Editing Operation

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to the Editing Operations on the CNC.
Some of the functions detailed in the catalogue:

- Size of parts program
- Number of programs
- Encryption
- Background editing
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Part Program Storage Size

Features

The Part Program Storage is the amount of space available for the operator or user of the CNC to store CNC Part Programs.

The size of the program memory can be incremented to up to 8MB, depending on the CNC model.

Refer to the ordering information table for the sizes available.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J959	30i-BP Part Program storage Size 8 MB
A02B-0353-R365	30i-BP Part Program Memory, 32 MB (CPU CARD G)
A02B-0356-J959	31i-B5P Part Program storage Size 8 MB
A02B-0356-R365	31i-B5P Part Program Memory, 32 MB (CPU CARD G)
A02B-0357-J959	31i-BP Part Program Storage Size 8 MB
A02B-0357-R365	31i-BP Part Program Memory, 32 MB (CPU CARD G)
A02B-0358-J959	32i-BP Part Program Storage Size 8 MB
A02B-0358-R365	32i-BP Part Program Memory, 32 MB (CPU CARD F)
A02B-0359-J959	30i-LB Plus Part Program Storage Size 8 MB
A02B-0359-R365	30i-LB Plus Part Program Memory, 32 MB (CPU CARD G)
A02B-0360-J959	31i-LB Plus Part Program Storage Size 8 MB
A02B-0360-R365	31i-LB Plus Part Program Memory, 32 MB (CPU CARD G)
A02B-0362-J959	31i-PB Plus Part Program storage Size 8 MB
A02B-0362-R365	31i-PB Plus Part Program Memory, 32 MB (CPU CARD F / G)
A02B-0364-J959	PM i-A Plus Part Program Storage Size 8 MB

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

515
Editing Operation



Extended Program Memory (CF Card)

Features

The program memory can be extended by mounting a CF card into the PCMCIA slot of the display unit. An adapter is necessary for this. Extended Program Memory is a preassembled adapter with CF card. It is ready to use, the program storage file (FANUCPRG.BIN) is already created on the CF card.

Ordering Information

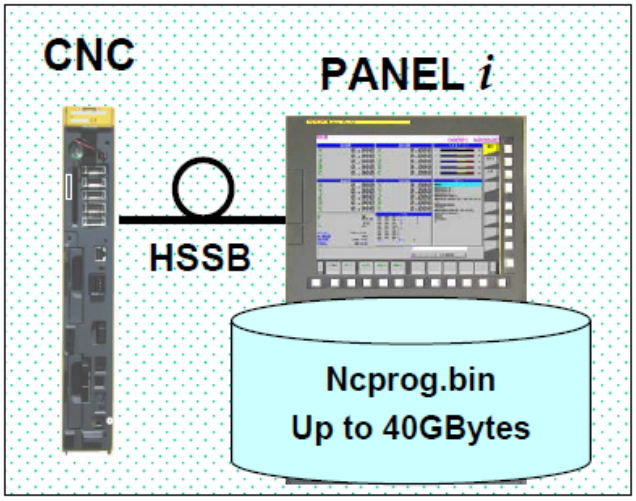
Specification	Description
A02B-0303-K150	Compact Flash Card Adapter A - for Mounting Compact Flash Card into PCMCIA Slot Completely, e.g. for DNC Operation
A02B-0348-K203	Extended Program Memory 2GB (CF Card with Card Adapter)
A02B-0348-K204	Extended Program Memory 4GB (CF Card with Card Adapter)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

516
Editing Operation



Extended Program Memory (PC)

Features

Extended Program Memory (PC) enables you to execute programs stored on a hard disk (HDD) or solid state disk (SSD) of a PANEL i, PANEL iH Pro, FANUC iPC or PC connected to the CNC by HSSB. Programs are stored in a program storage file (Ncprog.bin) on the HDD/SSD. The max. size of a program storage file is 40 GB. You can store up to 1000 programs in one program storage file.

The function supports Memory operation, DNC operation and M198 operation.

Benefits

- Utilize mass storage devices on PANEL i, PANEL iH Pro and PC
- Handle multiple large programs easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0207-J817	Extended Program Memory (PC)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

517

Editing Operation

Number of Registerable Programs Expansion

Features

The number of registered programs is the total number of programs, subject to the availability of memory space, which can be stored in the CNC. The number varies with the total size of part program storage. The Registered Program Expansion option increases the number of programs according to the table below:

Part Program Storage Length	Expansion 1	Expansion 2
64 KByte	120	--
128 KByte	250	--
256 KByte	500	--
512 KByte	1000	--
1MByte	1000	2000
2MByte	1000	4000
4MByte	1000	4000
8MByte	1000	4000

Benefits

- Allows bether organisation of complex part programs into subroutines
- Quick access to a large number of different programs for shop floor programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J954	0i-TFP Number of Registered Programs Expansion 2
A02B-0350-J954	0i-MFP Number of Registered Programs Expansion 2
A02B-0353-J954	30i-BP Number of Registered Programs Expansion 2
A02B-0356-J954	31i-B5P Number of Registered Programs Expansion 2
A02B-0357-J954	31i-BP Number of Registered Programs Expansion 2
A02B-0358-J954	32i-BP Number of Registered Programs Expansion 2
A02B-0359-J954	30i-LB Plus Number of Registered Programs Expansion 2
A02B-0360-J954	31i-LB Plus Number of Registered Programs Expansion 2
A02B-0362-J954	31i-PB Plus Number of Registered Programs Expansion 2
A02B-0364-J953	PM i-A Plus Number of Registred Programs, Expansion 1

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

518

Editing Operation

Key and Program Encryption

Features

The Key and Program Encryption function protects part programs from unauthorized use. Program contents can be protected by setting parameters for encryption and for the program security range.

- When the password and security range parameters are specified, the display, editing, and input/output operations are disabled for the programs within the security range.
- The programs in the security range can be encrypted before being output. Once encrypted, the programs cannot be decrypted. In addition, encrypted programs can be input directly.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Benefits

- Increase of the safety and security of the machine operation

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J778	0i-TFP Key and Program Encryption
A02B-0350-J778	0i-MFP Key and Program Encryption
A02B-0359-J778	30i-LB Plus Key and Program Encryption
A02B-0360-J778	31i-LB Plus Key and Program Encryption
A02B-0362-J778	31i-PB Plus Key and Program Encryption

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

519
Editing Operation

Machining Time Stamp

Features

The execution times of the most recently executed ten programs can be displayed in hours, minutes, and seconds.

The calculated machining time can be inserted as a comment of the program to check the machining time on the program directory screen.

Run Hour and Parts Count Display Function is required.

Benefits

- Simplification of production efficiency tracking

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J964	0i-TFP Machining Time Stamp
A02B-0350-J964	0i-MFP Machining Time Stamp
A02B-0353-J964	30i-BP Machining Time Stamp
A02B-0356-J964	31i-B5P Machining Time Stamp
A02B-0357-J964	31i-BP Machining Time Stamp
A02B-0358-J964	32i-BP Machining Time Stamp
A02B-0359-J964	30i-LB Plus Machining Time Stamp
A02B-0360-J964	31i-LB Plus Machining Time Stamp
A02B-0362-J964	31i-PB Plus Machining Time Stamp

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

520
Editing Operation

Memory Card Program Entry Count Extension

Features

This function extends the number of part programs and folders that may be formatted onto a memory card for direct operation and/or editing. The standard allowance of 63 programs and folders may be extended up to a maximum of 1000.

This feature is only used when the PC Tool for Memory Card Program Operation/ Editing software is used to format part program text files to a memory card, for use via the PCMCIA card slot. This feature is not applicable when using the memory card for basic READ, PUNCH or DNC operations with part programs or input/output of maintenance files.

Benefits

- Allows up to 1000 folders and programs to be used.
- Use of folders can greatly assist organization of files on memory card

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S995	0i-TFP Memory Card Program Entry Count Extension
A02B-0350-S995	0i-MFP Memory Card Program Entry Count Extension
A02B-0353-S995	30i-BP Memory Card Program Entry Count Extension
A02B-0356-S995	31i-B5P Memory Card Program Entry Count Extension
A02B-0357-S995	31i-BP Memory Card Program Entry Count Extension
A02B-0358-S995	32i-BP Memory Card Program Entry Count Extension
A02B-0359-S995	30i-LB Plus Memory Card Program Entry Count Extension
A02B-0360-S995	31i-LB Plus Memory Card Program Entry Count Extension
A02B-0362-S995	31i-PB Plus Memory Card Program Entry Count Extension
A02B-0364-S995	PM i-A Plus Memory Card Program Entry Count Extension

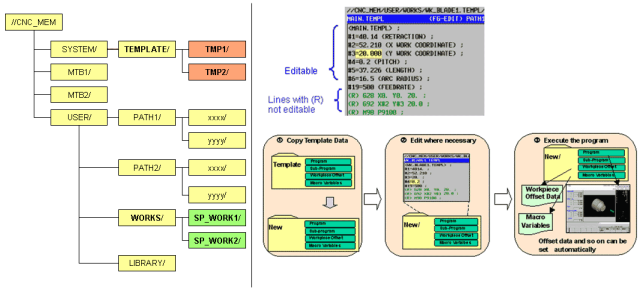
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

521

Editing Operation



Template Program Function

Features

The Machining Data Management Function management function provides the following features:

- Easy and Fast Creation of Complex Part Programs
- Combination of Machining Data and Part Programs

Manages program data such as

- Offsets
- Parameter
- Macro Variables
- Program Template

Folder based program structure

- Template Folder
- Machining Folder

Adjustable Data

- Parameter (G10 L52; ...)
- Pitch Error Compensation data (G10 L50;...)
- Workpiece Origin Offsets (G10 L20 P...)
  - External workpiece offset (G10 L2 P...)
  - Additional workpiece coordinate system (G10 P0 ...)
- Tool Management Data
  - Modifying, Deleting (G10 L75 P...)
  - Register, Modify, Delete Cartridge Management Table (G10 L76 P...)
  - Offset data for Lathe and Machining
  - ...
- Custom Macro Variables (#xxx = yyy;)

Remarks

To use this function, the 8-level data protection function is also necessary.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

522

Benefits

- Simplifies the operation of the machine
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R561	30i-BP Template Program Function
A02B-0356-R561	31i-B5P Template Program Function
A02B-0357-R561	31i-BP Template Program Function
A02B-0358-R561	32i-BP Template Program Function
A02B-0359-R561	30i-LB Plus Template Program Function
A02B-0360-R561	31i-LB Plus Template Program Function
A02B-0362-R561	31i-PB Plus Template Program Function

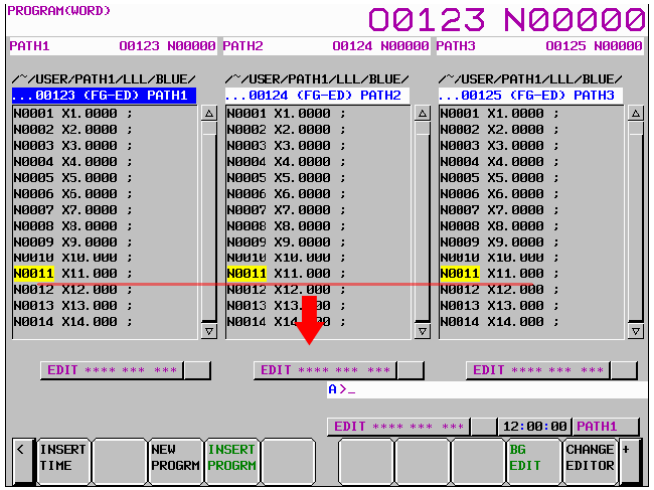
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

523

Editing Operation



Multi-Path Editing Function

Features

In the simultaneous multi-path editing function, when the program of selected path is scrolled, other path programs that are displayed on the same screen can be scrolled simultaneously.

In this function, there are the synchronous scroll mode which scrolls all programs simultaneously displayed on the one screen and the single scroll mode which scrolls one program of the selected path. It is possible to switch between the synchronous scroll mode and the single scroll mode by the soft key operation easily.

In a synchronous scroll mode, when the cursor moves to the waiting M-code, the scroll of its path stops automatically until the cursor of the other path move to the same waiting M-code. So it is possible to edit the program confirming the waiting of each path program.

Moreover, the cursor of all paths in simultaneous editing can be moved to specified waiting M-code at a time by synchronous search.

Benefits

- Simplifies the operation of the machine
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R615	0i-TFP Multi-Path Editing Function
A02B-0350-R615	0i-MFP Multi-Path Editing Function
A02B-0353-R615	30i-BP Multi-Path Editing Function
A02B-0356-R615	31i-B5P Multi-Path Editing Function
A02B-0357-R615	31i-BP Multi-Path Editing Function
A02B-0358-R615	32i-BP Multi-Path Editing Function
A02B-0359-R615	30i-LB Plus Multi-Path Editing Function
A02B-0360-R615	31i-LB Plus Multi-Path Editing Function
A02B-0362-R615	31i-PB Plus Multi-Path Editing Function

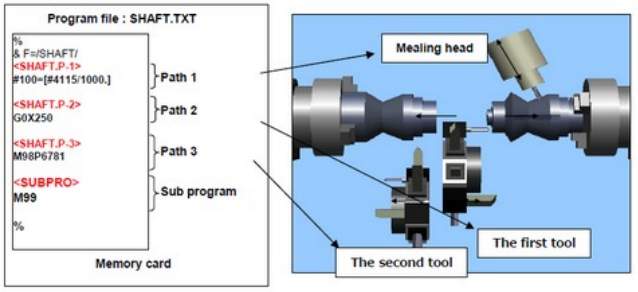
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

524

Editing Operation



Example of complex machining center (One milling head and two tool posts)

Multi-Path Program Management Function

Features

The multi-path lathe and the complex machine that have several turrets or heads machine workpieces using two or more machining programs. With this function, multi-path programs, offset data, and parameters, etc. for one part machining are managed together by a folder.

In addition, batch creation, batch selection, simultaneous editing and batch Input / Output of the programs are enabled. As a result, this function makes it easy to handle such multi-path programs.

Benefits

- Simplifies the operation of the machine
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R684	30i-BP Multi-Path Program Management Function
A02B-0356-R684	31i-B5P Multi-Path Program Management Function
A02B-0357-R684	31i-BP Multi-Path Program Management Function
A02B-0358-R684	32i-BP Multi-Path Program Management Function
A02B-0359-R684	30i-LB Plus Multi-Path Program Management Function
A02B-0360-R684	31i-LB Plus Multi-Path Program Management Function
A02B-0362-R684	31i-PB Plus Multi-Path Program Management Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

525
Functions

Setting and Display

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to Display Functions which the CNC to display more than just the basic machine information.

Some of the functions detailed in the catalogue:

- Languages
- Machine operation menus
- Protection of data
- Graphic functions
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

526

Setting and Display

Cycle Time Estimate Library Function

Features

Cycle Time Estimate is a function that can quickly estimate the execution cycle time of an NC program. It delivers estimations for cutting and rapid traverse times, time spent on the execution of auxiliary codes (e. g. M codes), as well as cutting and rapid traverse travel distances.

The accuracy of the estimation is higher than estimations made with 3rd party software. All estimations are calculated in consideration of the real machine's acceleration and deceleration. It is possible to estimate the machining time of complex programs, for example programs for 5-axis machining.

It is possible to create custom applications that incorporate the Cycle Time Estimate function, by using the Library contained in the "Disk for Cycle Time Estimate function". This option has to be effective in the CNC in order to use that library.

Benefits

- Decrease processing time by optimizing programs
- Improve the utilization of machines by enhanced and reliable machine schedule planning

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R900	0i-TFP Cycle Time Estimate Library Function
A02B-0350-R900	0i-MFP Cycle Time Estimate Library Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

527

Setting and Display

Cycle Time Estimation 2 Library

Features

Cycle Time Estimation 2 is a function that can quickly estimate the execution cycle time of an NC program. It delivers estimations for cutting and rapid traverse times, time spent on the execution of auxiliary codes (e. g. M codes), as well as cutting and rapid traverse travel distances.

The accuracy of the estimation is higher than estimations made with 3rd party software. All estimations are calculated in consideration of the real machine's acceleration and deceleration. It is possible to estimate the machining time of complex programs, for example programs for 5-axis machining.

With Cycle Time Estimation 2, it is possible to quickly calculate the approximate cycle time by the Speed Priority mode, or to accurately estimate the cycle time by the Accuracy Priority mode. Cycle Time Estimation 2 uses the CNC GUIDE 2 engine with its Servo Model feature to provide precise estimations. It is also possible to estimate the cycle time of multi-path CNC programs.

It is possible to create custom applications that incorporate the Cycle Time Estimation 2 function, by using the "Cycle Time Estimation 2 Library". With this option it is possible for a custom application to use that library on a CNC.

Benefits

- Decrease processing time by optimizing programs
- Improve the utilization of machines by enhanced and reliable machine schedule planning

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R872	0i-TFP Cycle Time Estimate 2 Library
A02B-0350-R872	0i-MFP Cycle Time Estimate 2 Library
A02B-0353-R872	30i-BP Cycle Time Estimate 2 Library
A02B-0356-R872	31i-B5P Cycle Time Estimate 2 Library
A02B-0357-R872	31i-BP Cycle Time Estimate 2 Library
A02B-0358-R872	32i-BP Cycle Time Estimate 2 Library

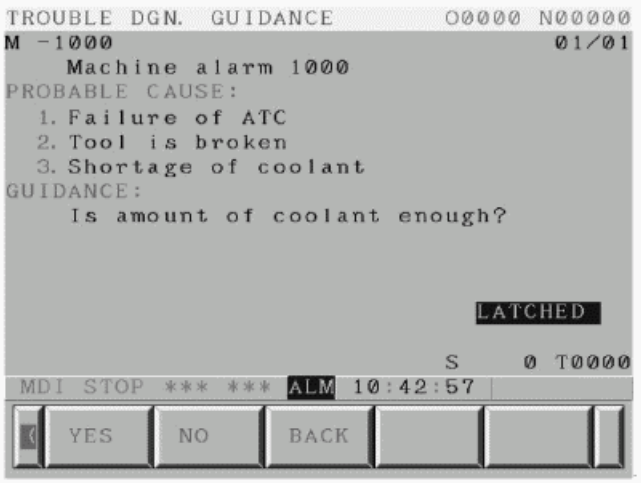
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

528

Setting and Display



Machine Alarm Diagnosis

Features

Machine alarms (External alarm messages and Macro alarms) can be diagnosed on the a specific trouble diagnosis guidance screen in addition to the CNC alarms.
The following alarms can be diagnosed:

- External alarm message (Alarm No.1000–1999)
- Macro alarm (#3000) (Alarm No.3000–3200)

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (Type 0).
Guidance tables for diagnosis of machine alarms are made with Mircrosoft Excel sheet which is provided by FANUC.

Alarm No., Classified code, Alarm message, Probable cause and etc. are registered into a guidance table (1).

[Guidance Table (1)]

CHECK OK | 10 | Add lines | Convert

No.	Alarm No.	Classified code		Alarm message	Probable cause			Message ID	(Reserved)
		Code 1	Code 2		Line 1	Line 2	Line 3		
1									
2									
3									

"Guidance message" is registered into a guidance table (2).
"Guidance message" is a question and an instruction to an operator.

[Guidance Table (2)]

← | CHECK OK | 10 | Add lines

No.	Message ID	Guidance message	Next message ID		Comment
			YES	NO	
1					
2					
3					

Benefits

- Possibility to create a performant and assisted alarm diagnostic system for the CNC
- Reduction of the time required to diagnose the problem
- Improves machining productivity

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S813	0i-TFP Machine Alarm Diasgnosis
A02B-0350-S813	0i-MFP Machine Alarm Diasgnosis
A02B-0364-S813	PM i-A Plus Machine Alarm Diagnosis

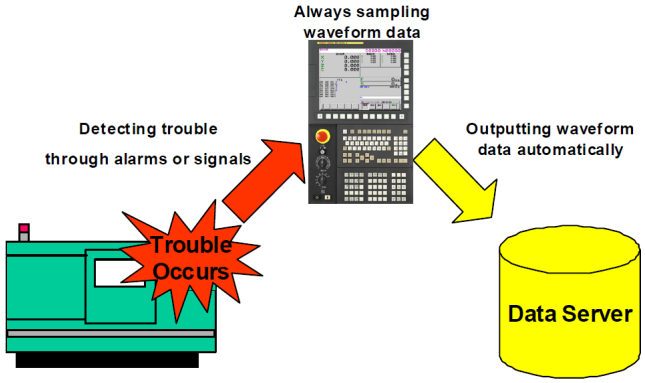
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

530

Setting and Display



Servo/Spindle Waveform Data Output Function

Features

If a failure occurs on a machine, with this function servo and spindle waveform data is automatically output to the data server. Waveform data before and after the failure event is saved, making it easier to detect the cause of the failure. This function also facilitates the application of remote service software.

Note

The data server function is required to use this function.

Benefits

- Reduces downtime and service costs

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R588	0i-TFP Servo / Spindle Waveform Data Output Function
A02B-0350-R588	0i-MFP Servo / Spindle Waveform Data Output Function
A02B-0353-R588	30i-BP Servo / Spindle Waveform Data Output Function
A02B-0356-R588	31i-B5P Servo / Spindle Waveform Data Output Function
A02B-0357-R588	31i-BP Servo / Spindle Waveform Data Output Function
A02B-0358-R588	32i-BP Servo / Spindle Waveform Data Output Function
A02B-0359-R588	30i-LB Plus Servo / Spindle Waveform Data Output Function
A02B-0360-R588	31i-LB Plus Servo / Spindle Waveform Data Output Function
A02B-0362-R588	31i-PB Plus Servo / Spindle Waveform Data Output Function
A02B-0364-R588	PM i-A Plus Servo / Spindle Waveform Data Output Function

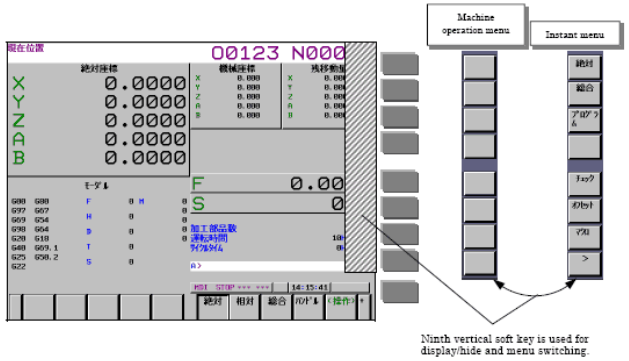
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

531

Setting and Display



Machine Operation Menu

Features

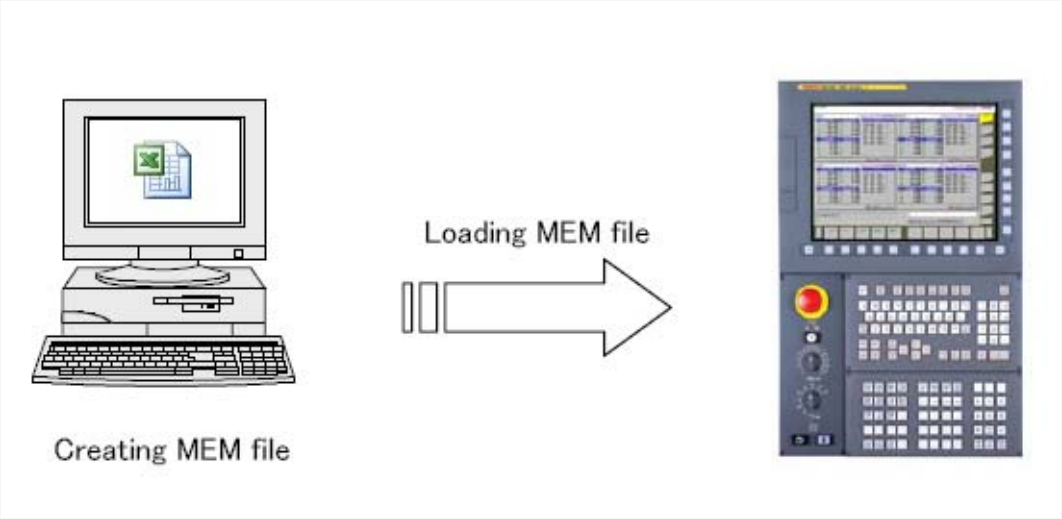
Machine Operation Menu Function

The soft keys displayed on the standard CNC screen can be used as menu keys for the machine operation.

The soft keys can be customized easily by the machine tool builder. A menu can have a hierarchy, and the indication of each soft key can be specified.

Customization data is created as a machine operation menu definition file and is stored in the CNC.

Machine Operation Menu Tool



When using the "Machine Operation Menu" making tool it is possible to define the machine operation menu and output the defined contents as MEM file.

Benefits

- Simplifies the operation of the machine
- Improves machining productivity

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S844	0i-TFP Machine Operation Menu
A02B-0350-S844	0i-MFP Machine Operation Menu
A02B-0353-S844	30i-BP Machine Operation Menu Function
A02B-0356-S844	31i-B5P Machine Operation Menu Function
A02B-0357-S844	31i-BP Machine Operation Menu Function
A02B-0358-S844	32i-BP Machine Operation Menu Function
A02B-0359-S844	30i-LB Plus Machine Operation Menu Function
A02B-0360-S844	31i-LB Plus Machine Operation Menu Function
A02B-0362-S844	31i-PB Plus Machine Operation Menu Function

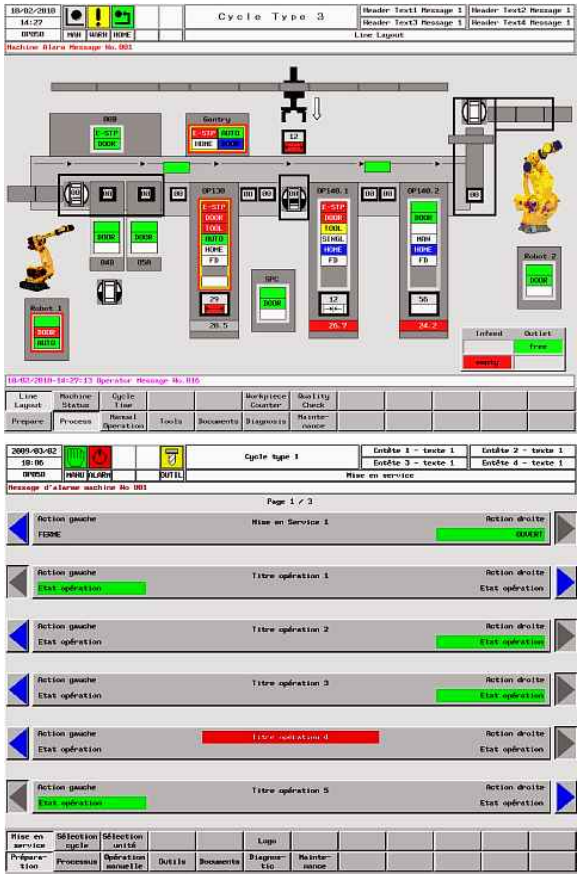
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

533

Setting and Display



FANUC Auto HMI-NC

Features

FANUC Auto HMI-NC is an application composed of a set of HMI templates, objects, tables and scripts to create standardized user interfaces in automotive applications or machining applications producing large batches of products.

Typical screens are provided such as workpiece counters; tool life overview; manual operations etc. are available. The screens are multilingual and can be easily customized and supplemented by the machine manufacturer.

FANUC Auto HMI-NC is based on FANUC PICTURE. The main target of this application is to visualize the detailed status of a single machine, but also to provide on each machine a view and general information about the production line. It supports the 15 inch Display Station for Automotive as well as the 15 inch and 10.4 inch Touch Panel LCD displays.

The FANUC Auto HMI-NC application runs directly in the CNC, and is designed for 'passive' LCD displays (10.4 inch and 15 inch). The whole HMI system is cost effective and extremely reliable.

FANUC Auto HMI-NC has been developed to meet the requirements of standardization of operation of automotive machining plants and high volume production lines. This application contains a basic set of standardized HMI screens as well as libraries of objects based on "FANUC PICTURE".

Typical screens available:

- Power-On Conditions
- Line Layout
- Shift Counter
- Tool Lifetime
- Maintenance Menu
- Cycle Type Selection
- Machine Status
- Manual Operations
- Diagnosis Menu

'FANUC Auto HMI-NC' supports multi-language, with immediate switching between the languages. It can also be switched automatically with the language selected in the CNC. English is always available for maintenance reasons, one language for the end-user and one language for the machine builder / integrator. Language tables are easy to update and provide to external translation companies through the export-impoirt functions.

The Machine Builder or Integrator can develop its own screens to match his application requirements, based on templates and library of objects provided. In this case, FANUC PICTURE package is required. Animated objects, alarms or any data used in the FANUC Auto HMI-NC are mapped in PMC data tables for easy integration with the CNC.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Benefits

- No PC hardware used, no Hard-Disk, No Windows® operating system, absolute virus immunity
- Screens and HMI located in the CNC - No operating system to maintain in the display
- Customizable through FANUC PICTURE
- Plug and Play display - easy to maintain
- No particular boot and shutdown procedure of the CNC, HMI and display

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R572	0i-TFP FANUC Auto HMI-NC
A02B-0350-R572	0i-MFP FANUC Auto HMI-NC
A02B-0353-R572	30i-BP FANUC Auto HMI-NC
A02B-0356-R572	31i-B5P FANUC Auto HMI-NC
A02B-0357-R572	31i-BP FANUC Auto HMI-NC
A02B-0358-R572	32i-BP FANUC Auto HMI-NC
A02B-0364-R572	PM i-A Plus FANUC Auto HMI-NC

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

535
Setting and Display

FANUC Auto HMI-NC Screen Enhancement 1

Features

With FANUC Auto HMI-NC Screen Enhancement 1, the following screens are additionally available in FANUC Auto HMI-NC:

- Type pre-selection
- Campaign validation
- Part program check
- Work piece
- Campaign control
- Tool offset
- Machine alarm (with detail message)
- Faults history (with output history)
- FL-net diagnosis
- PROFINET IO diagnosis
- EtherNet/IP diagnosis
- Power consumption monitor

Benefits

- Customizable through FANUC PICTURE
- Plug and Play display - easy to maintain

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R653	0i-TFP FANUC Auto HMI-NC Screen Enhancement 1
A02B-0350-R653	0i-MFP FANUC Auto HMI-NC Screen Enhancement 1
A02B-0353-R653	30i-BP FANUC Auto HMI-NC Screen Enhancement 1
A02B-0356-R653	31i-B5P FANUC Auto HMI-NC Screen Enhancement 1
A02B-0357-R653	31i-BP FANUC Auto HMI-NC Screen Enhancement 1
A02B-0358-R653	32i-BP FANUC Auto HMI-NC Screen Enhancement 1

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R653	PM i-A Plus FANUC Auto HMI-NC Screen Enhancement 1

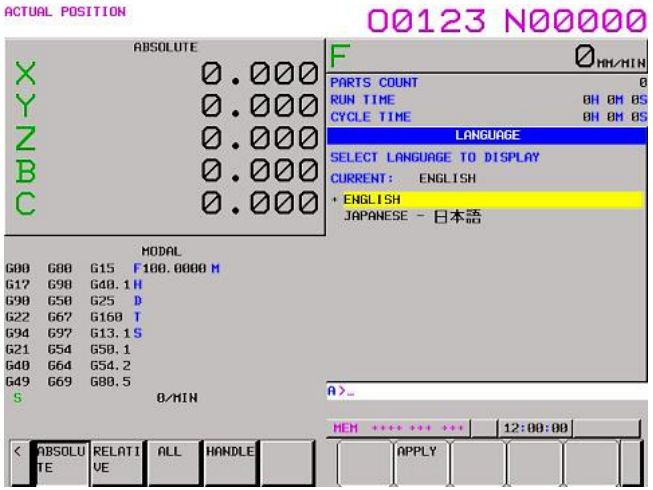
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

537

Setting and Display



Multi-Language Display

Features

The Multi-Language Display is the language that is used for user guidance on the CNC.

The user can switch the operator language without restart of the control.

Selection of Five Optional Languages

CNC system provides many optional languages for the display screens. This function allows the selection of up to five languages according to the parameter among the optional language stored in CNC system. These selected languages and English can be displayed.

Refer to the ordering information table for the available languages.

Benefits

- Simplifies the operation of the machine in languages other than English
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J650	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: Danish
A02B-0349-J962	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: Dutch
A02B-0349-J965	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: Japanese
A02B-0349-J968	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: Italian
A02B-0349-J969	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: Korean
A02B-0349-R320	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: Slovenian
A02B-0349-R686	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: Bulgarian
A02B-0349-R693	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: Slovak
A02B-0349-R694	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: Romanian
A02B-0349-R726	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display - Finnish
A02B-0349-S689	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: Czech
A02B-0349-S690	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: Hungarian
A02B-0349-S691	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: Swedish
A02B-0349-S739	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: Polish
A02B-0349-S839	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: German
A02B-0349-S841	0i-TFP Multi-Language Display: French
A02B-0350-J650	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: Danish

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-J962	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: Dutch
A02B-0350-J965	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: Japanese
A02B-0350-J968	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: Italian
A02B-0350-J969	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: Korean
A02B-0350-R320	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: Slovenian
A02B-0350-R686	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: Bulgarian
A02B-0350-R693	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: Slovak
A02B-0350-R694	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: Romanian
A02B-0350-R726	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display - Finnish
A02B-0350-S689	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: Czech
A02B-0350-S690	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: Hungarian
A02B-0350-S691	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: Swedish
A02B-0350-S739	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: Polish
A02B-0350-S839	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: German
A02B-0350-S841	0i-MFP Multi-Language Display: French
A02B-0353-J650	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - DANISH
A02B-0353-J678	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - PORTUGUESE
A02B-0353-J962	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - DUTCH
A02B-0353-J965	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - JAPANESE
A02B-0353-J967	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - CHINESE
A02B-0353-J968	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - ITALIAN
A02B-0353-J969	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - KOREAN
A02B-0353-J970	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - SPANISH
A02B-0353-R410	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - VIETNAMESE
A02B-0353-R411	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - INDONESIAN
A02B-0353-R587	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - TURKISH
A02B-0353-R686	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - BULGARIAN
A02B-0353-R693	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - SLOVAK
A02B-0353-R694	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - ROMANIAN
A02B-0353-R726	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - FINNISH
A02B-0353-S689	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - CZECH
A02B-0353-S690	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - HUNGARIAN
A02B-0353-S691	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - SWEDISH
A02B-0353-S739	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - POLISH
A02B-0353-S829	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - CHINESE (Simplified Characters)
A02B-0353-S839	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - GERMAN
A02B-0353-S841	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - FRENCH
A02B-0353-S849	30i-BP Multi-Language Display - RUSSIAN
A02B-0356-J650	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - DANISH
A02B-0356-J678	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - PORTUGUESE

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0356-J962	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - DUTCH
A02B-0356-J965	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - JAPANESE
A02B-0356-J967	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - CHINESE
A02B-0356-J968	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - ITALIAN
A02B-0356-J969	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - KOREAN
A02B-0356-J970	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - SPANISH
A02B-0356-R410	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - VIETNAMESE
A02B-0356-R411	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - INDONESIAN
A02B-0356-R587	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - TURKISH
A02B-0356-R686	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - BULGARIAN
A02B-0356-R693	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - SLOVAK
A02B-0356-R694	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - ROMANIAN
A02B-0356-R726	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - FINNISH
A02B-0356-S689	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - CZECH
A02B-0356-S690	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - HUNGARIAN
A02B-0356-S691	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - SWEDISH
A02B-0356-S739	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - POLISH
A02B-0356-S829	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - CHINESE (Simplified Characters)
A02B-0356-S839	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - GERMAN
A02B-0356-S841	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - FRENCH
A02B-0356-S849	31i-B5P Multi-Language Display - RUSSIAN
A02B-0357-J650	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - DANISH
A02B-0357-J678	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - PORTUGUESE
A02B-0357-J962	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - DUTCH
A02B-0357-J965	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - JAPANESE
A02B-0357-J967	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - CHINESE
A02B-0357-J968	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - ITALIAN
A02B-0357-J969	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - KOREAN
A02B-0357-J970	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - SPANISH
A02B-0357-R410	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - VIETNAMESE
A02B-0357-R411	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - INDONESIAN
A02B-0357-R587	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - TURKISH
A02B-0357-R686	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - BULGARIAN
A02B-0357-R693	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - SLOVAK
A02B-0357-R694	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - ROMANIAN
A02B-0357-R726	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - FINNISH
A02B-0357-S689	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - CZECH
A02B-0357-S690	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - HUNGARIAN
A02B-0357-S691	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - SWEDISH
A02B-0357-S739	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - POLISH

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0357-S829	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - CHINESE (Simplified Characters)
A02B-0357-S839	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - GERMAN
A02B-0357-S841	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - FRENCH
A02B-0357-S849	31i-BP Multi-Language Display - RUSSIAN
A02B-0358-J650	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - DANISH
A02B-0358-J678	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - PORTUGUESE
A02B-0358-J962	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - DUTCH
A02B-0358-J965	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - JAPANESE
A02B-0358-J967	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - CHINESE
A02B-0358-J968	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - ITALIAN
A02B-0358-J969	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - KOREAN
A02B-0358-J970	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - SPANISH
A02B-0358-R410	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - VIETNAMESE
A02B-0358-R411	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - INDONESIAN
A02B-0358-R587	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - TURKISH
A02B-0358-R686	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - BULGARIAN
A02B-0358-R693	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - SLOVAK
A02B-0358-R694	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - ROMANIAN
A02B-0358-R726	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - FINNISH
A02B-0358-S689	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - CZECH
A02B-0358-S690	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - HUNGARIAN
A02B-0358-S691	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - SWEDISH
A02B-0358-S739	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - POLISH
A02B-0358-S829	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - CHINESE (Simplified Characters)
A02B-0358-S839	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - GERMAN
A02B-0358-S841	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - FRENCH
A02B-0358-S849	32i-BP Multi-Language Display - RUSSIAN
A02B-0359-J650	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - DANISH
A02B-0359-J678	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - PORTUGUESE
A02B-0359-J962	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - DUTCH
A02B-0359-J965	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - JAPANESE
A02B-0359-J967	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - CHINESE
A02B-0359-J968	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - ITALIAN
A02B-0359-J969	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - KOREAN
A02B-0359-J970	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - SPANISH
A02B-0359-R410	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - VIETNAMESE
A02B-0359-R411	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - INDONESIAN
A02B-0359-R587	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - TURKISH
A02B-0359-R686	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - BULGARIAN
A02B-0359-R693	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - SLOVAK

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-R694	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - ROMANIAN
A02B-0359-R726	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - FINNISH
A02B-0359-S689	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - CZECH
A02B-0359-S690	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - HUNGARIAN
A02B-0359-S691	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - SWEDISH
A02B-0359-S739	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - POLISH
A02B-0359-S829	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - CHINESE (SIMPLIFIED CHARACT)
A02B-0359-S839	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - GERMAN
A02B-0359-S841	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - FRENCH
A02B-0359-S849	30i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - RUSSIAN
A02B-0360-J650	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - DANISH
A02B-0360-J678	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - PORTUGUESE
A02B-0360-J962	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - DUTCH
A02B-0360-J965	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - JAPANESE
A02B-0360-J967	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - CHINESE
A02B-0360-J968	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - ITALIAN
A02B-0360-J969	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - KOREAN
A02B-0360-J970	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - SPANISH
A02B-0360-R410	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - VIETNAMESE
A02B-0360-R411	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - INDONESIAN
A02B-0360-R587	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - TURKISH
A02B-0360-R686	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - BULGARIAN
A02B-0360-R693	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - SLOVAK
A02B-0360-R694	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - ROMANIAN
A02B-0360-R726	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - FINNISH
A02B-0360-S689	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - CZECH
A02B-0360-S690	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - HUNGARIAN
A02B-0360-S691	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - SWEDISH
A02B-0360-S739	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - POLISH
A02B-0360-S829	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - CHINESE (SIMPLIFIED CHARACT)
A02B-0360-S839	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - GERMAN
A02B-0360-S841	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - FRENCH
A02B-0360-S849	31i-LB Plus Multi-Language Display - RUSSIAN
A02B-0362-J650	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - DANISH
A02B-0362-J678	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - PORTUGUESE
A02B-0362-J962	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - DUTCH
A02B-0362-J965	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - JAPANESE
A02B-0362-J967	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - CHINESE
A02B-0362-J968	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - ITALIAN
A02B-0362-J969	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - KOREAN

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0362-J970	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - SPANISH
A02B-0362-R320	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display: Slovenian
A02B-0362-R410	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - VIETNAMESE
A02B-0362-R411	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - INDONESIAN
A02B-0362-R587	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - TURKISH
A02B-0362-R686	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - BULGARIAN
A02B-0362-R693	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - SLOVAK
A02B-0362-R694	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - ROMANIAN
A02B-0362-R726	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - FINNISH
A02B-0362-S689	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - CZECH
A02B-0362-S690	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - HUNGARIAN
A02B-0362-S691	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - SWEDISH
A02B-0362-S739	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - POLISH
A02B-0362-S829	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - CHINESE (SIMPLIFIED CHARACT)
A02B-0362-S839	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - GERMAN
A02B-0362-S841	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - FRENCH
A02B-0362-S849	31i-PB Plus Multi-Language Display - RUSSIAN
A02B-0364-J650	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - DANISH
A02B-0364-J678	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - PORTUGUESE
A02B-0364-J962	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - DUTCH
A02B-0364-J967	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - CHINESE
A02B-0364-J968	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - ITALIAN
A02B-0364-J969	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - KOREAN
A02B-0364-J970	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - SPANISH
A02B-0364-R410	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - VIETNAMESE
A02B-0364-R411	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - INDONESIAN
A02B-0364-R587	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - TURKISH
A02B-0364-R686	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - BULGARIAN
A02B-0364-R693	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - SLOVAK
A02B-0364-R694	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - ROMANIAN
A02B-0364-R726	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - FINNISH
A02B-0364-S689	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - CZECH
A02B-0364-S690	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - HUNGARIAN
A02B-0364-S691	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - SWEDISH
A02B-0364-S739	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - POLISH
A02B-0364-S829	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - CHINESE (SIMPLIFIED CHARACT)
A02B-0364-S839	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - GERMAN
A02B-0364-S841	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - FRENCH
A02B-0364-S849	PM i-A Plus Multi-Language Display - RUSSIAN

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

543

Setting and Display

Selection of Five Optional Languages

Features

This function allows to activate 5 different languages at once in the CNC. The 5 languages then are activated and the user can switch between the languages on the fly.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Benefits

- Increase the flexibility of the CNC usage in multi-language environment

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R521	PM i-A Plus Selection of Five Optional Languages

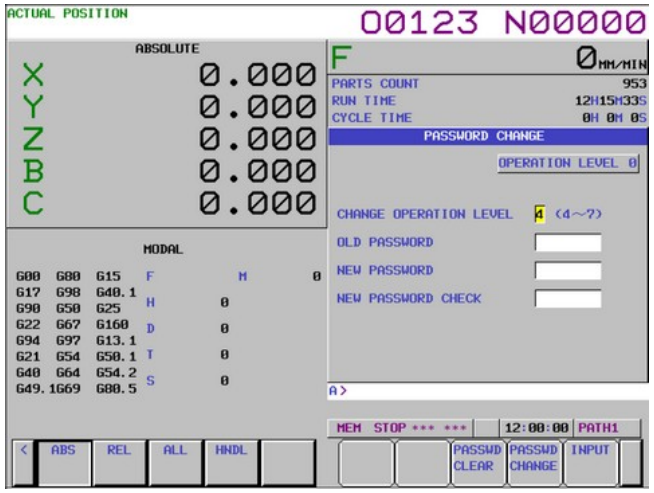
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

544

Setting and Display



Protection of Data at Eight Levels

Features

The Protection of Data at Eight Levels function provides the ability to define multiple levels of access for the operators of the machine. Eight operation levels can be set for the CNC and PMC operations, and eight protection levels can be set for various types of CNC and PMC data.

When the CNC and PMC data is modified or output externally, the operation level and protect level are compared to determine whether to allow the modification or external output.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Benefits

- Inprovement of the safety of operation of the machine
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S828	0i-TFP Protection of Data at Eight Levels
A02B-0350-S828	0i-MFP Protection of Data at Eight Levels
A02B-0359-S828	30i-LB Plus Protection of Data at Eight Levels
A02B-0360-S828	31i-LB Plus Protection of Data at Eight Levels
A02B-0362-S828	31i-PB Plus Protection of Data at Eight Levels
A02B-0364-S828	PM i-A Plus Protection of Data at Eight Levels

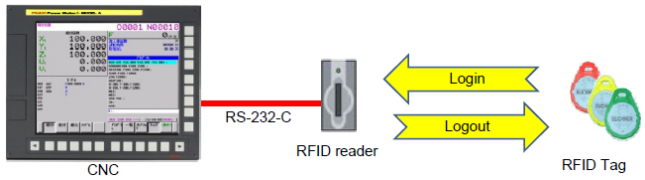
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

545

Setting and Display



Personal Authentication Function

Features

The Personal Authentication function controls the access of operators to the CNC and restricts possible operations. The authentication can be done in two ways: Login on a authentication screen with user ID and password, or using an RFID tag in combination with an RFID reader connected to the CNC. Logins and logouts are recorded in the operation history. Every user has an operation level which determines the permitted operations, e.g. if the operator is allowed to modify programs. The option "Protection of Data at Eight Levels" is required to use this function.

Benefits

- Protect your machines against undesired changes that compromise productivity
- Prevent recurring maloperations by tracking who did what and when on a machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R332	0i-TFP Personal Authentication Function
A02B-0350-R332	0i-MFP Personal Authentication Function
A02B-0353-R332	30i-BP Personal Authentication Function
A02B-0356-R332	31i-B5P Personal Authentication Function
A02B-0357-R332	31i-BP Personal Authentication Function
A02B-0358-R332	32i-BP Personal Authentication Function
A02B-0359-R332	30i-LB Plus Personal Authentication Function
A02B-0360-R332	31i-LB Plus Personal Authentication Function
A02B-0362-R332	31i-PB Plus Personal Authentication Function
A02B-0364-R332	PM i-A Plus Personal Authentication Function

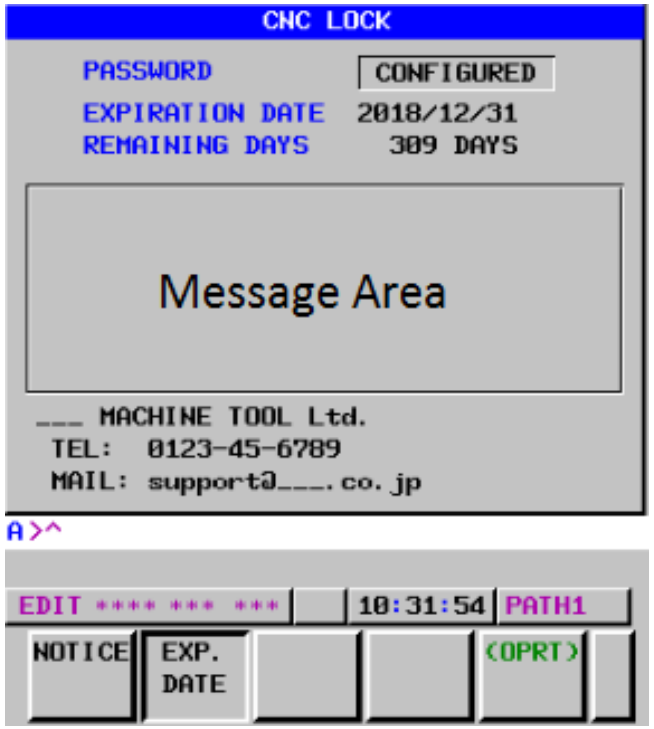
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

546

Setting and Display



CNC Lock Function

Features

The CNC Lock function enables you to set password-protected expiration dates on CNCs. The CNC will not execute automatic operation anymore after the expiration date has passed. You can prepare a message for the end user to inform him about the blocking of the CNC and give further instructions. The function can be set on the CNC or by the software "CNC Lock Setting Data Preparation Tool".

The CNC Lock function is intended for leased machines or machines sold on installment plan. It allows to restrict operation of machines if payments are held off by the end user.

Benefits

- Facilitates machine sales on installment plan
- Facilitates machine leasing

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R326	0i-TFP CNC Lock Function
A02B-0350-R326	0i-MFP CNC Lock Function
A02B-0357-R326	31i-BP CNC Lock Function
A02B-0358-R326	32i-BP CNC Lock Function
A02B-0360-R326	31i-LB Plus CNC Lock Function
A02B-0362-R326	31i-PB Plus CNC Lock Function
A02B-0364-R326	PM i-A Plus CNC Lock Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

547

Setting and Display



Machining Condition Selecting Function

Features

Machining Condition Selecting Function (MCSF) is a programmable way for the operator to set a level of machine accuracy whilst also optimising productivity.

With 10 defined steps, speed can be prioritised during roughing and then precision for the final finishing cuts.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Optimize the machining cycles
- Better quality
- Reduced machining time

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S637	0i-TFP Machining Condition Selection Function
A02B-0350-S637	0i-MFP Machining Condition Selection Function
A02B-0353-S637	30i-BP Machining Condition Selecting Function
A02B-0356-S637	31i-B5P Machining Condition Selecting Function
A02B-0357-S637	31i-BP Machining Condition Selecting Function
A02B-0358-S637	32i-BP Machining Condition Selecting Function
A02B-0359-S637	30i-LB Plus Machining Condition Selecting Function
A02B-0360-S637	31i-LB Plus Machining Condition Selecting Function
A02B-0362-S637	31i-PB Plus Machining Condition Selecting Function

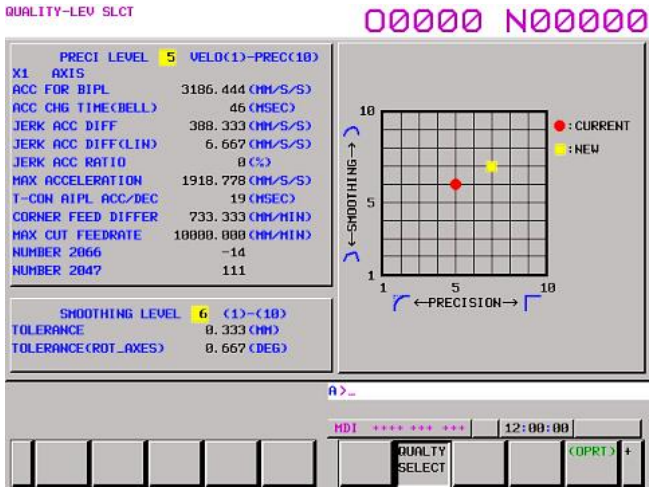
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

548

Setting and Display



Machining Quality Level Adjustment

Features

Smoothing and precision level of the Nano Smoothing function can be adjusted from an adjustment screen to set machining quality level.

The following options are necessary:

- AI Contour Control I or AI Contour Control II
- Nano Smoothing
- Machining Condition Selecting function

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 0, 1 and 3).

Benefits

- Simplifies the operation of the machine
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R593	30i-BP Machining Quality Level Adjustment
A02B-0356-R593	31i-B5P Machining Quality Level Adjustment
A02B-0357-R593	31i-BP Machining Quality Level Adjustment
A02B-0358-R593	32i-BP Machining Quality Level Adjustment
A02B-0359-R593	30i-LB Plus Machining Quality Level Adjustment
A02B-0360-R593	31i-LB Plus Machining Quality Level Adjustment
A02B-0362-R593	31i-PB Plus Machining Quality Level Adjustment

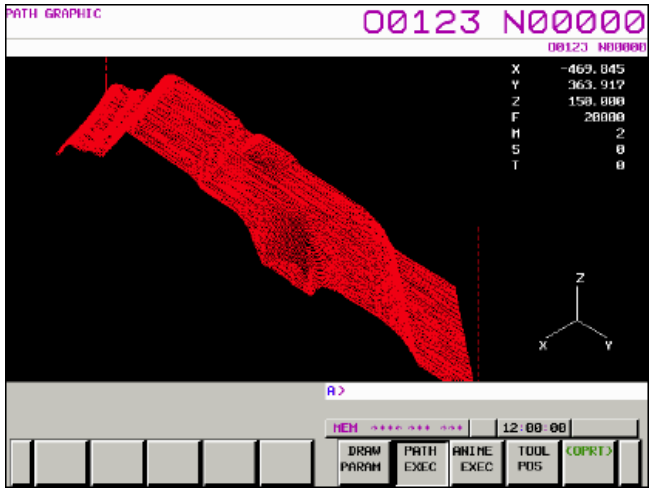
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

549

Setting and Display



Dynamic Graphic Display Function

Features

Created programs can be checked visually by displaying them using graphic data. Graphic data can be displayed in the following two drawing modes:

- Tool path drawing mode:Tool paths are drawn with lines.
- Animation drawing mode: The profile of a workpiece that changes as the tool moves can be simulated and drawn three-dimensionally.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus (Type 1, 3 and 5). Please use iHMI Machining Simulation on 0i-F Plus (Type 0).

Benefits

- Much faster drawing capabilities compared to Graphic Display function
- Easy to prove out tool paths
- Minimized crashes and scrap parts
- Reduced Set up/prove out time
- Increased operator confidence for running part program
- Easy to verify all 3 planes XY, YZ, ZX including isometric views
- Zooming for easy verification of dense cuts

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J760	0i-TFP Dynamic Graphic Display
A02B-0353-J760	30i-BP Dynamic Graphic Display Function
A02B-0356-J760	31i-B5P Dynamic Graphic Display Function
A02B-0357-J760	31i-BP Dynamic Graphic Display Function
A02B-0358-J760	32i-BP Dynamic Graphic Display Function

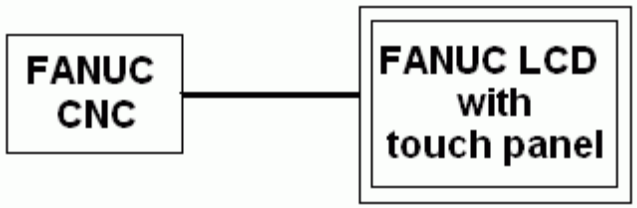
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

550

Setting and Display



Touch Panel Control

Features

The Touch Panel Control function is required to support the Touch Panel display of the CNC. The physical Touch Panel display is also required.

A display unit with a touch panel enables the operator to perform control of the menus touching the screen.

Benefits

- Simplifies the operation of the machine
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J682	0i-TFP Touch Panel Control
A02B-0350-J682	0i-MFP Touch Panel Control
A02B-0353-J682	30i-BP Touch Panel Control
A02B-0356-J682	31i-B5P Touch Panel Control
A02B-0357-J682	31i-BP Touch Panel Control
A02B-0358-J682	32i-BP Touch Panel Control
A02B-0359-J682	30i-LB Plus Touch Panel Control
A02B-0360-J682	31i-LB Plus Touch Panel Control
A02B-0364-J682	PM i-A Plus Touch Panel Control

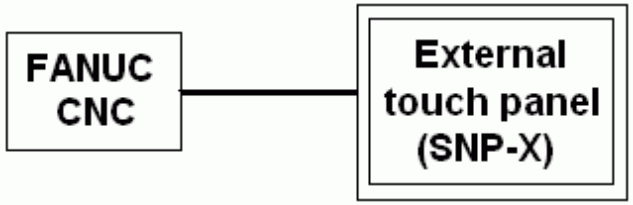
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

551

Setting and Display



External Touch Panel Interface

Features

The External Touch Panel Interface allows an External Touch Panel using the SNP-X protocol to be connected with the CNC.

The External Touch Panel Interface has functions that can read / write in from / to the PMC such control signals as input signal(X), output signal(Y), internal relay(R), keep relay(K), data table(D), timer(T), counter(C) and the function is almost the same as operating panel of machine.

Benefits

- Simplifies the connection of 3rd party screens using the SNP-X protocol of GE
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J685	0i-TFP External Touch Panel Interface
A02B-0350-J685	0i-MFP External Touch Panel Interface
A02B-0353-J685	30i-BP External Touch Panel Interface
A02B-0356-J685	31i-B5P External Touch Panel Interface
A02B-0357-J685	31i-BP External Touch Panel Interface
A02B-0358-J685	32i-BP External Touch Panel Interface
A02B-0359-J685	30i-LB Plus External Touch Panel Interface
A02B-0360-J685	31i-LB Plus External Touch Panel Interface
A02B-0362-J685	31i-PB Plus External Touch Panel Interface
A02B-0364-J685	PM i-A Plus External Touch Panel Interface

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

552
Setting and Display

Two Touch Panels Control for Stand-Alone Type CNC

Features

An external touch panel can be used together with the Stand-Alone Type CNC display's touch panel.

Benefits

- Operation improvement of large machines

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R658	30i-BP Two Touch Panel for Stand-Alone Type CNC
A02B-0356-R658	31i-B5P Two Touch Panel for Stand-Alone Type CNC
A02B-0357-R658	31i-BP Two Touch Panel for Stand-Alone Type CNC
A02B-0358-R658	32i-BP Two Touch Panel for Stand-Alone Type CNC
A02B-0359-R658	30i-LB Plus Two Touch Panel for Stand-Alone Type CNC
A02B-0360-R658	31i-LB Plus Two Touch Panel for Stand-Alone Type CNC
A02B-0362-R658	31i-PB Plus Two Touch Panel for Stand-Alone Type CNC
A02B-0364-R658	PM i-A Plus Two Touch Panels Control for Stand-Alone Type CNC

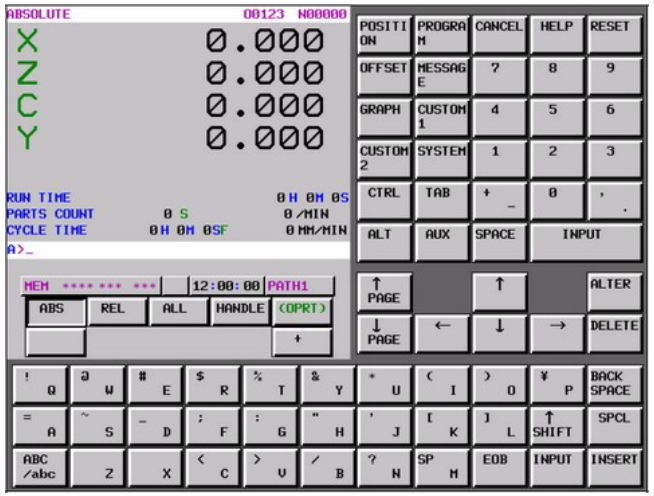
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

553

Setting and Display



Virtual MDI Key

Features

The Virtual MDI Key function provides a replacement for the physical MDI unit; in this case, the MDI keys are displayed on the Touch Screen.

Since the MDI key hardware is not required any more, a more compact operator panel can be deisgned.

Benefits

- Simplifies the design of compact operator panels

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S883	0i-TFP Virtual MDI Key
A02B-0350-S883	0i-MFP Virtual MDI Key
A02B-0353-S883	30i-BP Virtual MDI Key
A02B-0356-S883	31i-B5P Virtual MDI Key
A02B-0357-S883	31i-BP Virtual MDI Key
A02B-0358-S883	32i-BP Virtual MDI Key
A02B-0362-S883	31i-PB Plus Virtual MDI Key
A02B-0364-S883	PM i-A Plus Virtual MDI Key

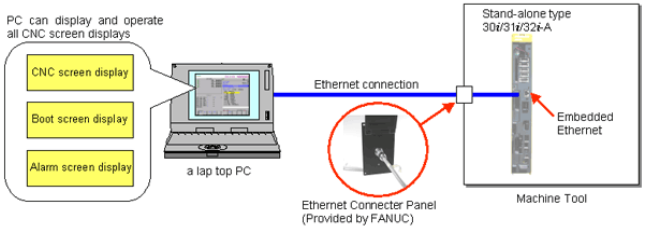
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

554

Setting and Display



Ethernet Display Function

Features

The Ethernet Display Function provides CNC screen display on PC screen via Embedded Ethernet.

Its capability to show maintenance screen display, boot and alarm, in addition to CNC screen display for usual operation, enables linking to PC for maintenance, instead of the CNC display unit.

Benefits

- Provide Ethernet connectivity and remote control function for the CNC
- Improves machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R950	0i-TFP Ethernet Display Function
A02B-0350-R950	0i-MFP Ethernet Display Function
A02B-0353-R950	30i-BP Ethernet Display Function
A02B-0356-R950	31i-B5P Ethernet Display Function
A02B-0357-R950	31i-BP Ethernet Display function
A02B-0358-R950	32i-BP Ethernet Display function
A02B-0359-R950	30i-LB Plus Ethernet Display function
A02B-0360-R950	31i-LB Plus Ethernet Display function
A02B-0362-R950	31i-PB Plus Ethernet Display Function
A02B-0364-R950	PM i-A Plus Ethernet Display function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

555

Setting and Display

Ethernet Display Sharing Function

Features

The Ethernet Display Sharing function provides the possibility to allocate one display unit to several standalone CNC. Up to 8 CNC can be connected to one display (One Master CNC and 7 Slave CNC).

It can display CNC maintenance screens (including the BOOT, IPL, and alarm screens) as well as the standard CNC operation screens.

Benefits

- Cost reduction on large machines featuring several CNC

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R722	0i-TFP Ethernet Display Sharing Function
A02B-0350-R722	0i-MFP Ethernet Display Sharing Function
A02B-0362-R722	31i-PB Plus Ethernet Display Sharing Function - Specify in each CNC linked with Shared LCD Unit via Ethernet
A02B-0364-R722	PM i-A Plus Ethernet Display Sharing Function - Specify in each CNC linked with Shared LCD Unit via Ethernet

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Twin Display Function with Ethernet

Features

The twin display function with Ethernet provides the same display and operation as the standard CNC on a secondary display unit through Ethernet connection.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R711	0i-TFP Twin Display Function with Ethernet
A02B-0350-R711	0i-MFP Twin Display Function with Ethernet
A02B-0353-R711	30i-BP Twin Display Function with ETHERNET
A02B-0356-R711	31i-B5P Twin Display Function with ETHERNET
A02B-0357-R711	31i-BP Twin Display Function with ETHERNET
A02B-0358-R711	32i-BP Twin Display Function with ETHERNET
A02B-0359-R711	30i-LB Plus Twin Display Function with ETHERNET
A02B-0360-R711	31i-LB Plus Twin Display Function with ETHERNET
A02B-0362-R711	31i-PB Plus Twin Display Function with ETHERNET
A02B-0364-R711	PM i-A Plus Twin Display Function with ETHERNET

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

557

Setting and Display

CNC Screen Dual Display Function

Features

With the Dual CNC Screen Display Function, it is possible to display the content of the CNC screen on both the original CNC screen as well as on a PC or PANEL i connected to the CNC via Ethernet or HSSB.

Benefits

- Machine operation on large machining centers requiring 2 operator stations

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S884	0i-TFP Dual Screen Display Function (Dual SDF)
A02B-0350-S884	0i-MFP Dual Screen Display Function (Dual SDF)
A02B-0353-S884	30i-BP Dual Screen Display Function (Dual SDF)
A02B-0356-S884	31i-B5P Dual Screen Display Function (Dual SDF)
A02B-0357-S884	31i-BP Dual Screen Display Function (Dual SDF)
A02B-0358-S884	32i-BP Dual Screen Display Function (Dual SDF)
A02B-0359-S884	30i-LB Plus Dual Screen Display Function (Dual SDF)
A02B-0360-S884	31i-LB Plus Dual Screen Display Function (Dual SDF)
A02B-0362-S884	31i-PB Plus Dual Screen Display Function (Dual SDF)
A02B-0364-R709	PM i-A Plus CNC Screen Display Function - Includes CNC Screen Dual Display Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

558

Setting and Display



CNC Screen Display for 19" LCD

Features

This function provides the capability to control the 19″ PANEL i display on the CNC.

Benefits

- Improvement of the operation using larger screen

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R624	0i-TFP CNC Screen Display for 19.0" LCD Unit
A02B-0350-R624	0i-MFP CNC Screen Display for 19.0" LCD Unit
A02B-0353-R624	30i-BP 19.0" CNC Screen Display
A02B-0356-R624	31i-B5P 19.0" CNC Screen Display
A02B-0357-R624	31i-BP 19.0" CNC Screen Display
A02B-0358-R624	32i-BP 19.0" CNC Screen Display
A02B-0359-R624	30i-LB Plus 19.0" CNC Screen Display
A02B-0360-R624	31i-LB Plus 19.0" CNC Screen Display
A02B-0362-R624	31i-PB Plus 19.0" CNC Screen Display
A02B-0364-R624	PM i-A Plus Plus 19.0" CNC Screen Display

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

559

Setting and Display



Enlarged CNC Screen Display for 19" LCD

Features

This function enlarges and displays the design for 15" LCD on 19" PANEL i. It is possible with this feature to magnify the size of he screen so that it is possible to better read the screen and use the full surface of the 19" screen.

Benefits

- Improvement of the operation using large fonts sizes

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R673	0i-TFP Enlarged CNC Screen Display for 19.0" LCD Unit
A02B-0350-R673	0i-MFP Enlarged CNC Screen Display for 19.0" LCD Unit
A02B-0353-R673	30i-BP Enlarged CNC Screen Display for 19.0" LCD
A02B-0356-R673	31i-B5P Enlarged CNC Screen Display for 19.0" LCD
A02B-0357-R673	31i-BP Enlarged CNC Screen Display for 19.0" LCD
A02B-0358-R673	32i-BP Enlarged CNC Screen Display for 19.0" LCD
A02B-0359-R673	30i-LB Plus Enlarged CNC Screen Display for 19.0" LCD
A02B-0360-R673	31i-LB Plus Enlarged CNC Screen Display for 19.0" LCD
A02B-0362-R673	31i-PB Plus Enlarged CNC Screen Display for 19.0" LCD
A02B-0364-R673	PM i-A Plus Enlarged CNC Screen Display for 19.0" LCD

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

560

Setting and Display



CNC Screen Web Server Function

Features

This function enables screen display and screen switch of CNC on a Web browser of a Tablet-type device that connects with CNC through Ethernet.

The screen which is displayed on a Web browser is the same as the screen displayed on a standard CNC Display unit.

The screen switch operation at a Web browser is reflected in a standard CNC Display unit.

Benefits

- Provide a full screen duplication of the CNC on Web-Browser or Tablet devices

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R728	0i-TFP CNC Screen Web Server Function
A02B-0350-R728	0i-MFP CNC Screen Web Server Function
A02B-0353-R728	30i-BP CNC Screen Web Server Function
A02B-0356-R728	31i-B5P CNC Screen Web Server Function
A02B-0357-R728	31i-BP CNC Screen Web Server Function
A02B-0358-R728	32i-BP CNC Screen Web Server Function
A02B-0359-R728	30i-LB Plus CNC Screen Web Server Function
A02B-0360-R728	31i-LB Plus CNC Screen Web Server Function
A02B-0362-R728	31i-PB Plus CNC Screen Web Server Function
A02B-0364-R728	PM i-A Plus CNC Screen Web Server Function

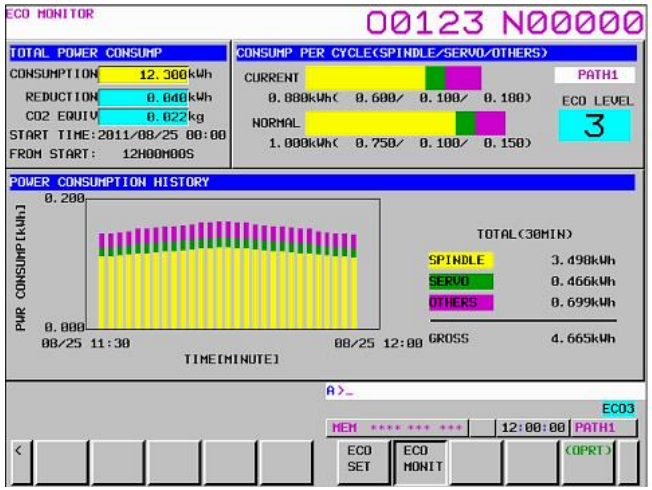
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

561

Setting and Display



Energy Saving Level Selection Function

Features

The total power consumption of a machine is the sum of:

- Power consumption of the spindle motors
- Power consumption of the servo motors
- Power consumption in peripheral devices (coolant pump, etc.)

Suppressing torque at acceleration / deceleration in spindles, where a large power consumption is generated, can reduce whole power consumption of a machine. The drawback is that it has an influence on the machining time.

When using the Energy Level Selection Function, it is possible to switch between machining with shorter time and that with less power consumption.

In addition, the function provides screens to monitor the energy consumption of the spindles, servo motors and peripherals in real time.

Benefits

- Monitoring of the consumption of the machine and identification of the source
- Adjustment of the ratio between productivity and energy consumption to optimize costs

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R719	0i-TFP Energy Saving Level Selecting Function
A02B-0350-R719	0i-MFP Energy Saving Level Selecting Function
A02B-0353-R719	30i-BP Energy Saving Level Selecting Function
A02B-0356-R719	31i-B5P Energy Saving Level Selecting Function
A02B-0357-R719	31i-BP Energy Saving Level Selecting Function
A02B-0358-R719	32i-BP Energy Saving Level Selecting Function
A02B-0359-R719	30i-LB Plus Energy Saving Level Selecting Function
A02B-0360-R719	31i-LB Plus Energy Saving Level Selecting Function
A02B-0362-R719	31i-PB Plus Energy Saving Level Selecting Function

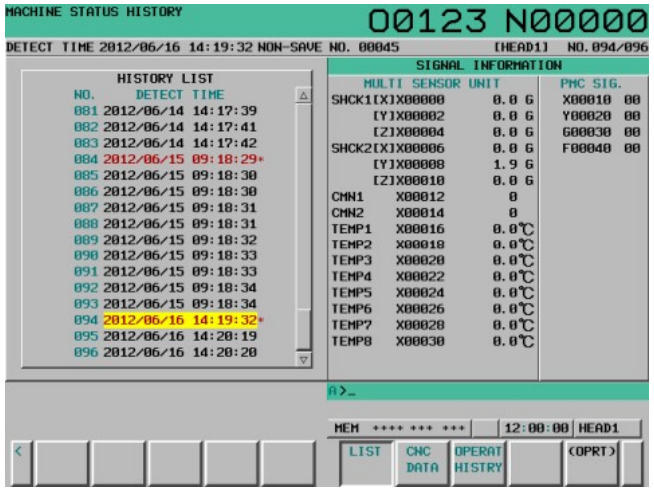
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

562

Setting and Display



Machine State Monitoring Function

Features

This function monitors the state of the machine and when problems occur on the machine, it is possible to retrieve information such as the operation history, the position and the feedrate at the time of the problem and other useful information from the CNC memory.

The retrieved information can be used to investigate the cause of machine breakdown.

It is also possible to customize the function to monitor additional information such as shock value, abnormal load torque, the Multi-Sensor Unit (MSU) and unexpected disturbance torque detection.

When a problem occurs on the machine, such as a spindle collision, the ladder program notifies the CNC; when the CNC is notified it saves the information related to the event in the CNC memory for later retrieval.

The CNC can save a maximum of 100 events in its memory.

Benefits

- Collection of key data to help the investigation of problems on machine
- Reduction of the breakdown time and better support of the maintenance teams
- Overall increase of the productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R717	0i-TFP Machine State Monitoring Function
A02B-0350-R717	0i-MFP Machine State Monitoring Function
A02B-0353-R717	30i-BP Machine State Monitoring Function
A02B-0356-R717	31i-B5P Machine State Monitoring Function
A02B-0357-R717	31i-BP Machine State Monitoring Function
A02B-0358-R717	32i-BP Machine State Monitoring Function
A02B-0359-R717	30i-LB Plus Machine State Monitoring Function
A02B-0360-R717	31i-LB Plus Machine State Monitoring Function
A02B-0362-R717	31i-PB Plus Machine State Monitoring Function
A02B-0364-R717	PM i-A Plus Machine State Monitoring Function

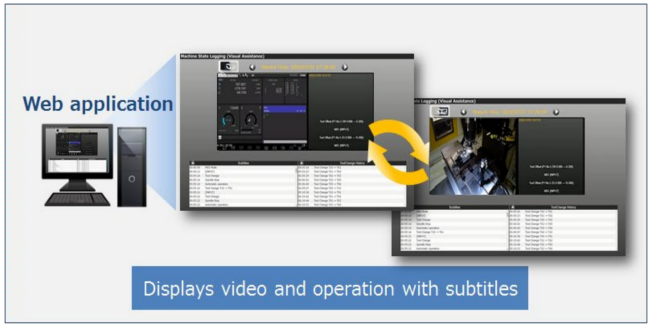
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

563

Setting and Display



Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)

Features

Solving troubles such as machining surface defects and accuracy defects takes time. Having information about the operation details and the machine state of the machine tool can simplify troubleshooting and save time.

Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance) provides CNC screen and CNC data including operation history and the Web application records the machine tool operation on video with subtitles based on the operation history. This option enables checking of the situation at the machine tool visually, and supports troubleshooting for maximizing uptime.

A Web Application is available for Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance). It has functions to receive CNC screen and CNC data (operation history) from CNC, to record it on PC, and to display it in a Web browser.

Benefits

- Simplify troubleshooting of machine tools for maximizing uptime
- Checking machine status on video remotely

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R052	0i-PFP Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)
A02B-0350-R052	0i-MFP Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)
A02B-0351-R052	0i-LFP Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)
A02B-0353-R052	30i-BP Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)
A02B-0356-R052	31i-B5P Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)
A02B-0357-R052	31i-BP Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)
A02B-0358-R052	32i-BP Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)
A02B-0359-R052	30i-LBP Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)
A02B-0360-R052	31i-LBP Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)
A02B-0362-R052	31i-PB Plus Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)

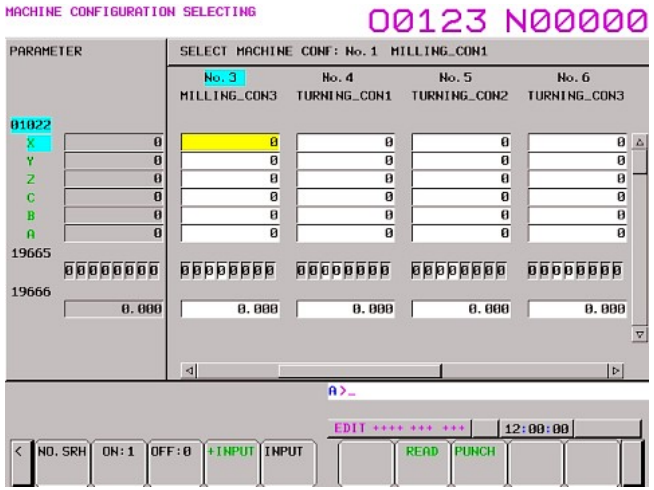
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

564

Setting and Display



Machine Configuration Selecting Function

Features

The Machine Configuration Selecting function allows an easy switching of machine configuration when the machine needs to adapt to different production environments or batch.

Ten sets of parameters for these machine configurations can be set on machine configuration selecting screen.

Benefits

- Decreases the time required to switch between different production batchs and setups
- Increases the efficiency and the productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R700	30i-BP Machine Configuration Selecting Function
A02B-0356-R700	31i-B5P Machine Configuration Selecting Function
A02B-0357-R700	31i-BP Machine Configuration Selecting Function
A02B-0358-R700	32i-BP Machine Configuration Selecting Function
A02B-0359-R700	30i-LB Plus Machine Configuration Selecting Function
A02B-0360-R700	31i-LB Plus Machine Configuration Selecting Function
A02B-0362-R700	31i-PB Plus Machine Configuration Selecting Function

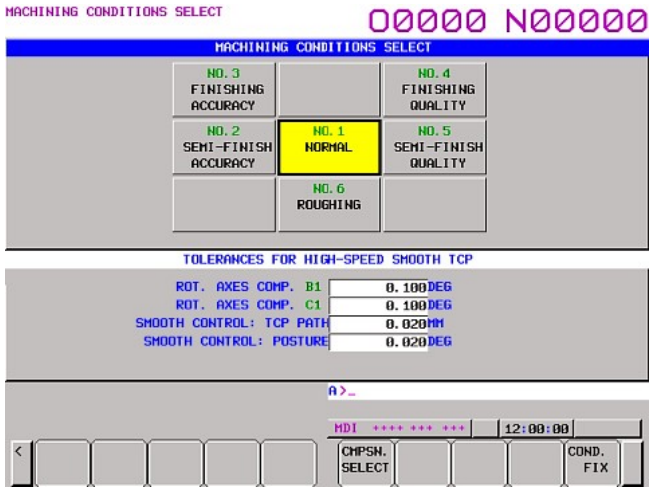
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

565

Setting and Display



5-Axis Machining Condition Setting Function

Features

The 5-axis Machining Condition Setting provides the capability to change the parameters of machining conditions according to the machining situation when an operator selects one among six machining conditions.

This function provides a selection screen and a setting screen. The selecting screen is a screen for the operator, and the setting screen is a screen for the machine builder.

Note

This function cannot be used together with the following functions:

- Machining condition selecting function
- Machining quality level adjustment

Benefits

- Decreases the time required to switch between different production batchs and setups of 5-axis machines
- Increases the efficiency and the productivity of the machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R721	30i-BP 5-Axis Machining Condition Setting Function
A02B-0356-R721	31i-B5P 5-Axis Machining Condition Setting Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

566

Setting and Display

Main Menu Screen Customizing Function

Features

The design and title string of the icon and the string of category in the main menu screen can be customized by using the PC application

The main menu screen can register the often used screens and the registered screen is displayed by icon. The objective screen can be displayed by selecting the icon. For the feature of each MTB, there is a demand to customize the design and title of icon.

Benefits

The following iems of the main menu can be customized by using the PC-application.

1. The disign of the icon
2. The title string of the icon
3. The string of the category
4. The default order of the icons

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R848	0i-TFP Main Menu Screen Customising Function
A02B-0350-R848	0i-MFP Main Menu Screen Customising Function
A02B-0362-R848	31i-PB Plus Main Menu Screen Customising Function

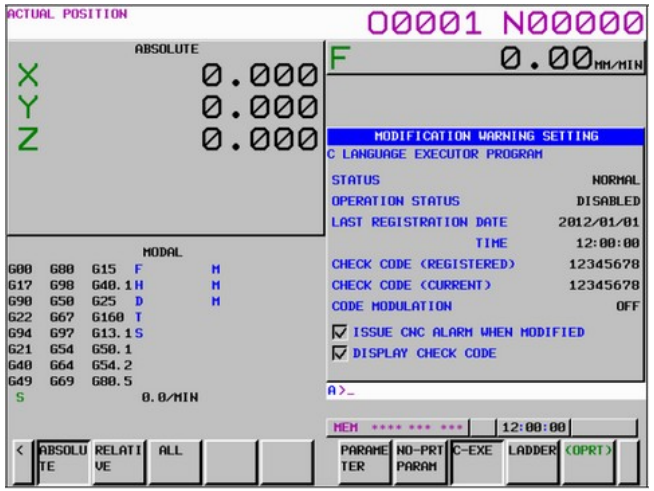
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

567

Setting and Display



Warning Function Against Modification of Setting

Features

This function is to protect important setting of parameters, C Language Executor programs, or ladder programs on CNC and to detect unauthorized modifications on them.

The following parameters and programs can be protected:

- CNC Parameters (which are selected to be protected)
- C Language Executor program
- Ladder program (each of multi-path PMC programs)
- Dual Check Safety PMC Ladder program

After the registration of above parameters, C Language Executor programs, or ladder programs to this function, those are verified by the CNC, when the power of CNC is turned on.

If any modification is applied to registered parameters, C Language Executor programs, or ladder programs the signal that means some modification is applied is output. And in this case, it is also possible to generate the alarm.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Benefits

- Protection of CNC programs against harful changes
- Increase of the security

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R670	0i-TFP Warning Function against Modification of Setting
A02B-0350-R670	0i-MFP Warning Function against Modification of Setting
A02B-0364-R670	PM i-A Plus Warning Function against Modification of Setting

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

568

Setting and Display

MDI Reset Key Invalidation

Features

There are some applications where the untimely interruption of a running NC program could lead to potentially dangerous situations. The MDI Reset Key Invalidation function prevents this. If the reset key on the MDI is pushed while executing a NC program, the reset is ignored and the execution of the NC program is not stopped.

Benefits

- Avoid potentially dangerous situations

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R549	0i-TFP MDI Reset Key Invalidation Function
A02B-0350-R549	0i-MFP MDI Reset Key Invalidation Function
A02B-0353-R549	30i-BP MDI Reset Key Invalidation Function
A02B-0356-R549	31i-B5P MDI Reset Key Invalidation Function
A02B-0357-R549	31i-BP MDI Reset Key Invalidation Function
A02B-0358-R549	32i-BP MDI Reset Key Invalidation Function
A02B-0359-R549	30i-LB Plus MDI Reset Key Invalidation Function
A02B-0360-R549	31i-LB Plus MDI Reset Key Invalidation Function
A02B-0362-R549	31i-PB Plus MDI Reset Key Invalidation Function
A02B-0364-R549	PM i-A Plus MDI Reset Key Invalidation Function

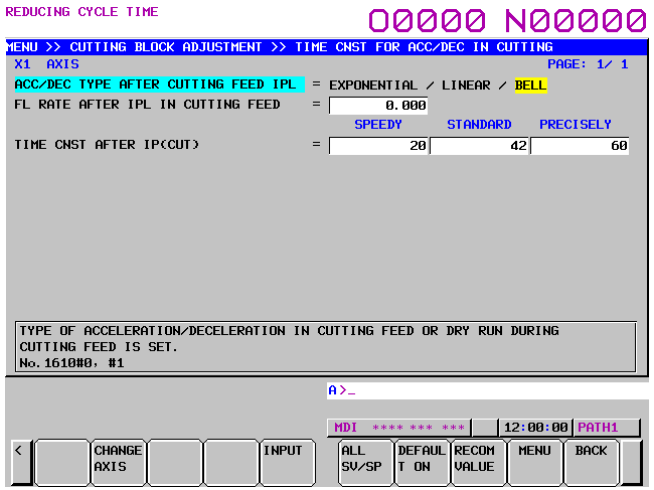
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

569

Setting and Display



Machine Setting Switching Function

Features

Up to three setting patterns related to reducing cycle time can be selected by an operator. Switching to the setting pattern that corresponds to the machining conditions can be done easily. The effective setting pattern can be switched by screen operation, G08.1 command or signal input.

Benefits

- Set parameters for different machining conditions easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R412	30i-BP Machine Setting Switching Function
A02B-0356-R412	31i-B5P Machine Setting Switching Function
A02B-0357-R412	31i-BP Machine Setting Switching Function
A02B-0358-R412	32i-BP Machine Setting Switching Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

570

Setting and Display



Teaching Support Screen

Features

With Teaching Support Screen, it is possible to create Teach Programs. The current position of the axes can be recorded into the program by simple soft key operation. Therefore, a program can be made while recording the positions of the axes moved by manual operation in TEACH IN JOG mode or TEACH IN HANDLE mode. The program is created by selecting input commands from a menu, without G codes.

By using this function, control programs for e.g. loader machines that repeat positioning can be created by an easy teach-in operation.

Benefits

- Create simple programs for Power Motion easily.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R388	PM i-A Plus Teaching Support Screen

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

571
Setting and Display

Relocation Detection Support Function

Features

The Relocation Detection Support Function is designed to help machine manufacturers develop their own relocation detection function to detect unauthorized relocations.

FANUC provides the "Relocation Detection Unit" and this function, and the machine manufacturer uses these units and functions to create its own relocation detection function as C Language Executor application.

This function enables reading the status of the relocation detection unit and executing C Language Executor application for relocation detection.

Benefits

- Easy way to prohibit unauthorized relocations of machines

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R330	0i-TFP Relocation Detection Support Function 2 - for Machines/Controls already using C-Language Executor/C-Language Application
A02B-0350-R330	0i-MFP Relocation Detection Support Function 2 - for Machines/Controls already using C-Language Executor/C-Language Application
A02B-0351-R330	0i-LFP Relocation Detection Support Function 2 - for Machines/Controls already using C-Language Executor/C-Language Application
A02B-0351-R674	0i-LFP Relocation Detection Support Function 1 - contains C-Language Executor and Custom Software Size 2 MB
A02B-0353-R330	30i-BP Relocation Detection Support Function 2 - for Machines/Controls already using C-Language Executor/C-Language Application
A02B-0356-R330	31i-B5P Relocation Detection Support Function 2 - for Machines/Controls already using C-Language Executor/C-Language Application
A02B-0357-R330	31i-BP Relocation Detection Support Function 2 - for Machines/Controls already using C-Language Executor/C-Language Application
A02B-0358-R330	32i-BP Relocation Detection Support Function 2 - for Machines/Controls already using C-Language Executor/C-Language Application
A02B-0359-R330	30i-LBP Relocation Detection Support Function 2 - for Machines/Controls already using C-Language Executor/C-Language Application
A02B-0359-R674	30i-LBP Relocation Detection Support Function 1 - contains C-Language Executor and Custom Software Size 2 MB
A02B-0360-R330	31i-LBP Relocation Detection Support Function 2 - for Machines/Controls already using C-Language Executor/C-Language Application

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0360-R674	31i-LBP Relocation Detection Support Function 1 - contains C-Language Executor and Custom Software Size 2 MB
A02B-0362-R330	31i-PBP Relocation Detection Support Function 2 - for Machines/Controls already using C-Language Executor/C-Language Application
A02B-0362-R674	31i-PBP Relocation Detection Support Function 1 - contains C-Language Executor and Custom Software Size 2 MB
A860-3000-T001	Relocation Detection Unit

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

573
Functions

Data Input/Output

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to Data Input / Output.
Some of the functions detailed in the catalogue:

- RS232 interface
- Data Server
- Messaging
- Automatic Backup
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

574

Data Input/Output

RS232C Interface

Features

The Reader / Puncher Interface option enables the on board RS-232 port to be able to input / output files to / from the CNC.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus (2 channels) and in FANUC Series 0i-F and 0i-F Plus (1 channel).

Benefits

- Download / Upload programs in background edit mode
- Output data to external PC for SPC charts
- Drip feed large programs
- Output data to serial printer
- No need to un-hook peripheral devices
- User selectable ports

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J901	0i-TFP Type Reader/Puncher Interface for 2 Channels
A02B-0350-J901	0i-MFP Type Reader/Puncher Interface for 2 Channels

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

575

Data Input/Output

RS232C Interface Expansion of Receiving Buffer

Features

Expands the receiving buffer of the RS-232 Reader/Puncher interface from the default size of 0.5K bytes, to 2K bytes. Expanded buffer size enables more stable automatic operation by drip feed, in moderately demanding machining applications.

Benefits

- Expanded buffer capacity prevents intermittent delays or loss of RS-232 serial data during operation or storage

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R511	30i-BP Reader / Puncher Interface Expansion of Receiving Buffer
A02B-0356-R511	31i-B5P Reader / Puncher Interface Expansion of Receiving Buffer
A02B-0357-R511	31i-BP Reader / Puncher Interface Expansion of Receiving Buffer
A02B-0358-R511	32i-BP Reader / Puncher Interface Expansion of Receiving Buffer
A02B-0359-R511	30i-LB Plus Reader / Puncher Interface Expansion of Receiving Buffer
A02B-0360-R511	31i-LB Plus Reader / Puncher Interface Expansion of Receiving Buffer
A02B-0362-R511	31i-PB Plus Reader / Puncher Interface Expansion of Receiving Buffer
A02B-0364-R511	PM i-A Plus Reader / Puncher Interface Expansion of Receiving Buffer

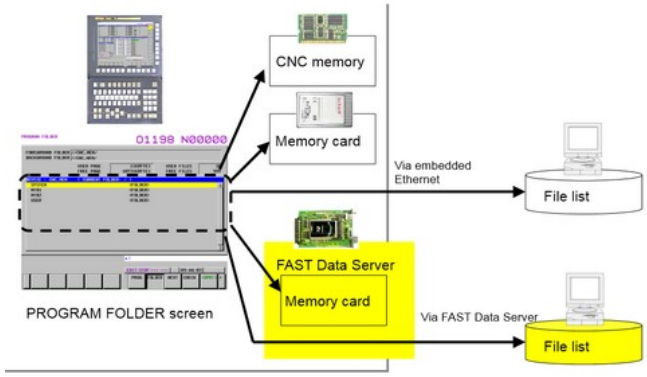
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

576

Data Input/Output



Fast Data Server

Features

The Data Server / Fast Data Server consists of an embedded memory card and an Ethernet connection on the CNC. The Data Server allows files to be transferred from a host computer to the CNC memory, or to the memory card on the Data server. Part programs may also be executed directly either from the network or the Compact Flash card on the Data Server.

Benefits

- Manage part programs for multiple machines at a central location.
- Store and reliably execute large part programs without taking up part program storage on the CNC.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S737	0i-TFP Data Server Function
A02B-0350-S737	0i-MFP Data Server Function
A02B-0353-S737	30i-BP Data Server Function
A02B-0356-S737	31i-B5P Data Server Function
A02B-0357-S737	31i-BP Data Server Function
A02B-0358-S737	32i-BP Data Server Function
A02B-0359-S737	30i-LB Plus Data Server Function
A02B-0360-S737	31i-LB Plus Data Server Function
A02B-0362-S737	31i-PB Plus Data Server Function
A02B-0364-S737	PM i-A Plus Data Server Function

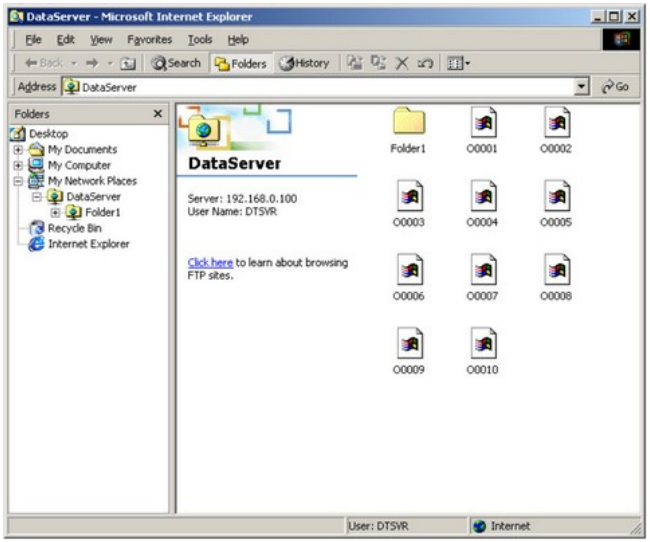
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

577

Data Input/Output



Data Server Explorer Connection

Features

The following functions are added to FTP Server function of Data Server.

- Increase of FTP Server connections.
- Connection with Windows Explorer
- Addition of maintenance screen for FTP server

Benefits

- Simplification of the handling of large program over FTP
- Improvement of the machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R953	0i-TFP Data Server Explorer Connection Function
A02B-0350-R953	0i-MFP Data Server Explorer Connection Function
A02B-0353-R953	30i-BP Data Server Explorer Connection Function
A02B-0356-R953	31i-B5P Data Server Explorer Connection Function
A02B-0357-R953	31i-BP Data Server Explorer Connection Function
A02B-0358-R953	32i-BP Data Server Explorer Connection Function
A02B-0359-R953	30i-LB Plus Data Server Explorer Connection Function
A02B-0360-R953	31i-LB Plus Data Server Explorer Connection Function
A02B-0362-R953	31i-PB Plus Data Server Explorer Connection Function
A02B-0364-R953	PM i-A Plus Data Server Explorer Connection Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Power Mate CNC Manager

Features

When the servo amplifier unit is used as an additional (slave) axis of the CNC, the power mate CNC manager enables the display and setting of data from the CNC. Up to eight slave units can be connected.

The Power Mate CNC manager supports the following functions:

- Current position display (absolute/machine coordinate)
- Parameter display and setting
- Diagnosis
- System configuration screen
- Alarm

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Cost effective way to configure/drive auxilliary axis

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-J674	PM i-A Plus Power Mate CNC Manager

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

579

Data Input/Output

One Touch Macro Call

Features

This function enables the CNC to perform a complex macro operation at the push of a button.

By pressing a switch on the machine, the following three operations can be performed with minimum ladder modifications:

- Switching to the MEM mode.
- Execution of macro programs stored in memory.
- Return to the mode before execution. The program selected before execution is automatically selected.

This function is enabled only in the reset state. This means that this function cannot be used during automatic operation (during automatic operation halt and automatic operation stop periods as well).

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-MF Plus and 0i-LF Plus.

Benefits

- Simplification of the machine operation
- Improvement of the machining productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S655	0i-TFP One-Touch Macro Call Function
A02B-0350-S655	0i-MFP One-Touch Macro Call Function
A02B-0353-S655	30i-BP One Touch Macro Call Function
A02B-0356-S655	31i-B5P One Touch Macro Call Function
A02B-0357-S655	31i-BP One Touch Macro Call Function
A02B-0358-S655	32i-BP One Touch Macro Call Function
A02B-0362-S655	31i-PB Plus One Touch Macro Call Function

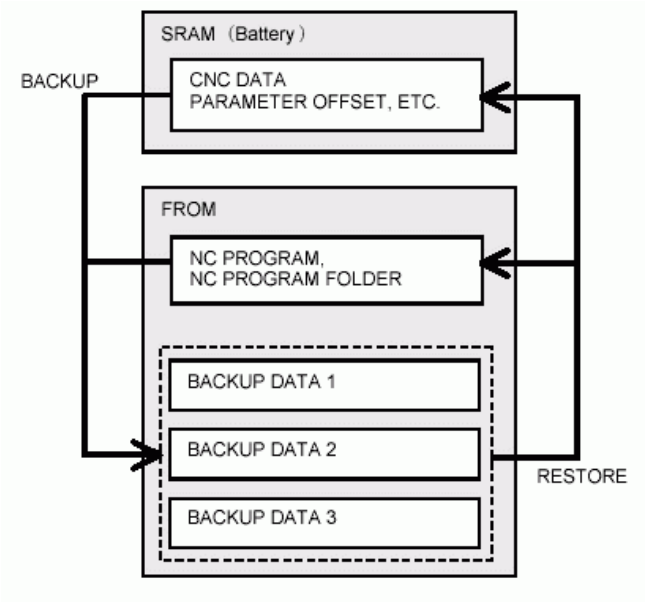
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

580

Data Input/Output



Automatic Data Backup

Features

Enables automatic backup of battery-backed SRAM memory contents to the control's Flash ROM memory. In the event of SRAM memory loss, maintenance personnel can immediately recover data from a saved backup.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Up to three backup copies can be made/maintained.
- Backup may be performed at set interval and/or when E-Stop occurs.
- One backup copy may be protected for saving of original data/settings.
- Backup of CNC part programs in FROM memory may be included.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-H510#B10	30i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data
A02B-0353-H510#B11	30i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data + CNC Programs
A02B-0353-H510#B20	30i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0353-H510#B21	30i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data + CNC Programs
A02B-0353-H510#B30	30i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0353-H510#B31	30i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data + CNC Programs
A02B-0356-H510#B10	31i-B5P Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data
A02B-0356-H510#B11	31i-B5P Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data + CNC Programs
A02B-0356-H510#B20	31i-B5P Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0356-H510#B21	31i-B5P Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data + CNC Programs
A02B-0356-H510#B30	31i-B5P Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0356-H510#B31	31i-B5P Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data + CNC Programs
A02B-0357-H510#B10	31i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data
A02B-0357-H510#B11	31i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data + CNC Programs
A02B-0357-H510#B20	31i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0357-H510#B21	31i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data + CNC Programs
A02B-0357-H510#B30	31i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0357-H510#B31	31i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data + CNC Programs
A02B-0358-H510#B10	32i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data
A02B-0358-H510#B11	32i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data + CNC Programs

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0358-H510#B20	32i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0358-H510#B21	32i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data + CNC Programs
A02B-0358-H510#B30	32i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0358-H510#B31	32i-BP Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data + CNC Programs
A02B-0359-H510#B10	30i-LB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data
A02B-0359-H510#B11	30i-LB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data + Part program
A02B-0359-H510#B20	30i-LB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0359-H510#B21	30i-LB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data + Part program
A02B-0359-H510#B30	30i-LB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0359-H510#B31	30i-LB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data + Part program
A02B-0360-H510#B10	31i-LB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data
A02B-0360-H510#B11	31i-LB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data + Part program
A02B-0360-H510#B20	31i-LB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0360-H510#B21	31i-LB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data + Part program
A02B-0360-H510#B30	31i-LB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0360-H510#B31	31i-LB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data + Part program
A02B-0362-H510#B10	31i-PB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data
A02B-0362-H510#B11	31i-PB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 1 Set SRAM Data + Part program
A02B-0362-H510#B20	31i-PB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0362-H510#B21	31i-PB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 2 Sets SRAM Data + Part program
A02B-0362-H510#B30	31i-PB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data
A02B-0362-H510#B31	31i-PB Plus Automatic Data Back-up - 3 Sets SRAM Data + Part program
A02B-0364-H510#B10	PM i-A Plus Automatic Data Back-up, 1 Set of Back-up Data, SRAM
A02B-0364-H510#B11	PM i-A Plus Automatic Data Back-up, 1 Set of Back-up Data, SRAM + Part Programs
A02B-0364-H510#B20	PM i-A Plus Automatic Data Back-up, 2 Sets of Back-up Data, SRAM
A02B-0364-H510#B21	PM i-A Plus Automatic Data Back-up, 2 Sets of Back-up Data, SRAM + Part Programs
A02B-0364-H510#B30	PM i-A Plus Automatic Data Back-up, 3 Sets of Back-up Data, SRAM
A02B-0364-H510#B31	PM i-A Plus Automatic Data Back-up, 3 Sets of Back-up Data, SRAM + Part Programs

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

582

Data Input/Output

Continuous Positional Data Output Function

Features

The Continuous Positional Data Output Function provides FOCAS2 functions which sample machine position data of CNC axes and pass them on to a PC connected by HSSB. The machine position can be continuously sampled with 1msec sampling frequency. When the high-speed skip signal is input during sampling, the delay time between the sampling of the machine position and the high-speed skip is recorded together with the respective sampling point.

Scanning systems can utilize the measured machine position data to provide 3-dimensional point data for measured parts. The 1msec sampling frequency allows a high surface data density.

Benefits

- Integrate scanning systems into your machine tool

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-J989	30i-BP Continuous Positional Data Output Function
A02B-0356-J989	31i-B5P Continuous Positional Data Output Function
A02B-0357-J989	31i-BP Continuous Positional Data Output Function
A02B-0358-J989	32i-BP Continuous Positional Data Output Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

583

Functions

PMC System

This section of the catalogue contains the functions related to the Programmable Machine Controller (PMC) which is a Programmable Logic Controller integrated in the CNC.

Some of the functions detailed in the catalogue:

- General overview
- Multi-path PMC
- Symbols and messaging
- Step sequence
- Function Blocks
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

PMC Ladder Function

Features

The Programmable Machine Controller (PMC) which is integrated in the CNC is sizable to match the requirement of the machine.

PMC program sizes of up to 300,000 steps (depending on the CNC model) can be defined. Please refer to the ordering information to identify the sizes available per CNC model.

Benefits

- Customization of the PMC program size
- Adaptation to the machine and process requirements

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-H990#100K	0i-TFP PMC Ladder Function 100000 Steps
A02B-0349-H990#32K	0i-TFP PMC Ladder Function 32000 Steps
A02B-0349-H990#64K	0i-TFP PMC Ladder Function 64000 Steps
A02B-0350-H990#100K	0i-MFP PMC Ladder Function 100000 Steps
A02B-0350-H990#32K	0i-MFP PMC Ladder Function 32000 Steps
A02B-0350-H990#64K	0i-MFP PMC Ladder Function 64000 Steps
A02B-0353-H990#100K	30i-BP PMC LADDER Function 100,000 Steps
A02B-0353-H990#300K	30i-BP PMC LADDER Function 300,000 Steps
A02B-0353-H990#32K	30i-BP PMC LADDER Function 32,000 Steps
A02B-0353-H990#64K	30i-BP PMC LADDER Function 64,000 Steps
A02B-0356-H990#100K	31i-B5P PMC LADDER Function 100,000 Steps
A02B-0356-H990#300K	31i-B5P PMC LADDER Function 300,000 Steps
A02B-0356-H990#32K	31i-B5P PMC LADDER Function 32,000 Steps
A02B-0356-H990#64K	31i-B5P PMC LADDER Function 64,000 Steps
A02B-0357-H990#100K	31i-BP PMC LADDER Function 100,000 Steps
A02B-0357-H990#300K	31i-BP PMC LADDER Function 300,000 Steps
A02B-0357-H990#32K	31i-BP PMC LADDER Function 32,000 Steps
A02B-0357-H990#64K	31i-BP PMC LADDER Function 64,000 Steps
A02B-0358-H990#100K	32i-BP PMC LADDER Function 100,000 Steps
A02B-0358-H990#300K	32i-BP PMC LADDER Function 300,000 Steps
A02B-0358-H990#32K	32i-BP PMC LADDER Function 32,000 Steps

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Specification	Description
A02B-0358-H990#64K	32i-BP PMC LADDER Function 64,000 Steps
A02B-0359-H990#100K	30i-LB Plus PMC LADDER Function 100,000 Steps
A02B-0359-H990#300K	30i-LB Plus PMC LADDER Function 300,000 Steps
A02B-0359-H990#32K	30i-LB Plus PMC LADDER Function 32,000 Steps
A02B-0359-H990#64K	30i-LB Plus PMC LADDER Function 64,000 Steps
A02B-0360-H990#100K	31i-LB Plus PMC LADDER Function 100,000 Steps
A02B-0360-H990#300K	31i-LB Plus PMC LADDER Function 300,000 Steps
A02B-0360-H990#32K	31i-LB Plus PMC LADDER Function 32,000 Steps
A02B-0360-H990#64K	31i-LB Plus PMC LADDER Function 64,000 Steps
A02B-0362-H990#100K	31i-PB Plus PMC LADDER Function 100,000 Steps
A02B-0362-H990#300K	31i-PB Plus PMC LADDER Function 300,000 Steps
A02B-0362-H990#32K	31i-PB Plus PMC LADDER Function 32,000 Steps
A02B-0362-H990#64K	31i-PB Plus PMC LADDER Function 64,000 Steps
A02B-0364-H990#100K	PM i-A Plus PMC LADDER Function 100,000 Steps
A02B-0364-H990#300K	PM i-A Plus PMC LADDER Function 300,000 Steps
A02B-0364-H990#32K	PM i-A Plus PMC LADDER Function 32,000 Steps
A02B-0364-H990#64K	PM i-A Plus PMC LADDER Function 64,000 Steps

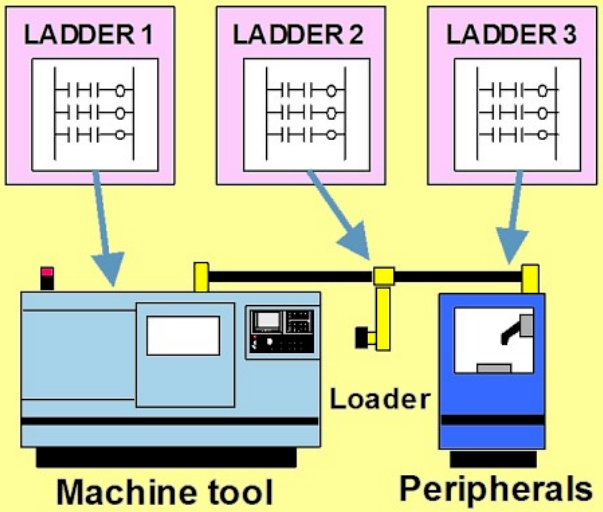
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

586

PMC System



Multi-Path PMC Function

Features

The Programmable Machine Controller (PMC) usually runs one single program. In order to extend the processing capabilities of the PMC, it is possible to increase the number of concurrent PMC programs running at the same time to 3 or 5.

Each of the program or path can exchange data with the other paths using shared data and can control specific parts of the process. For instance, one path can be allocated to the machine itself, one to the auxiliary functions and the 3rd one to the loading / unloading system.

Benefits

- Increase of the processing and structuring capacity of the PMC
- Possibility to associate separate PMC paths with process sub-systems
- Simplification of the maintenance of the machine
- Possiibility to design the PMC programs with different developpers teams

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R855#3	0i-TFP Multi-Path PMC Function: 3 Paths
A02B-0350-R855#3	0i-MFP Multi-Path PMC Function: 3 Paths
A02B-0353-R855#3	30i-BP Multi-Path PMC Function - 3 Paths
A02B-0353-R855#5	30i-BP Multi-Path PMC Function - 5 Paths
A02B-0356-R855#3	31i-B5P Multi-Path PMC Function - 3 Paths
A02B-0356-R855#5	31i-B5P Multi-Path PMC Function - 5 Paths
A02B-0357-R855#3	31i-BP Multi-Path PMC Function - 3 Paths
A02B-0357-R855#5	31i-BP Multi-Path PMC Function - 5 Paths
A02B-0358-R855#3	32i-BP Multi-Path PMC Function - 3 Paths
A02B-0358-R855#5	32i-BP Multi-Path PMC Function - 5 Paths
A02B-0359-R855#3	30i-LB Plus Multi-Path PMC Function - 3 Paths
A02B-0359-R855#5	30i-LB Plus Multi-Path PMC Function - 5 Paths
A02B-0360-R855#3	31i-LB Plus Multi-Path PMC Function - 3 Paths
A02B-0360-R855#5	31i-LB Plus Multi-Path PMC Function - 5 Paths
A02B-0362-R855#3	31i-PB Plus Multi-Path PMC Function - 3 Paths
A02B-0362-R855#5	31i-PB Plus Multi-Path PMC Function - 5 Paths
A02B-0364-R855#3	PM i-A Plus Multi-Path PMC Function - 3 Paths

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

587

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R855#5	PM i-A Plus Multi-Path PMC Function - 5 Paths

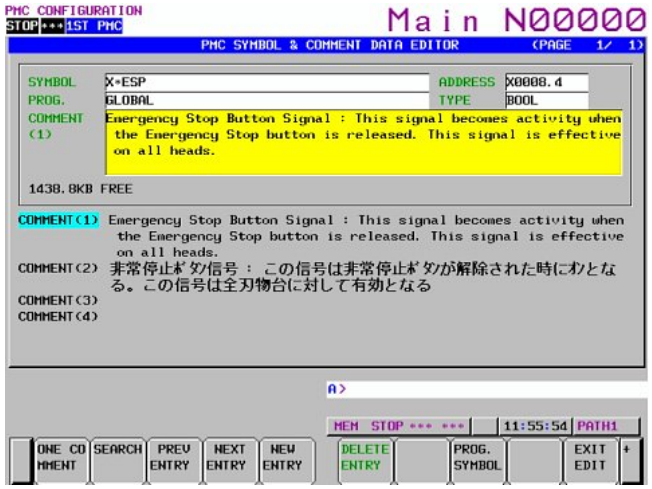
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

588

PMC System



PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion

Features

When the Extension of Symbols, Comments and Messages area is used, it is possible to:

- Use local symbols in sub programs: local symbols are then only effective in a sub program. In this case the same string does not conflict with other same strings in other sub-programs
- Extend the maximum character length of symbols (40 instead of 16) and comments (4 sets of 255 characters instead of 1 set of 30)
- Support multi-language: one symbol entry can have up to four comment sets in maximum and the switch of the comment language is synchronized to the general switch of language of the CNC.
- Multi-definition of symbol and comment to one signal
- Data type definition (BOOL, BYTE, WORD, LABEL, PROG, etc.) can be associated to the symbol and comment
- Extension of the character set used in the symbols and comment

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus (512kB) and in FANUC Series 0i-F Plus (512kB).

Benefits

- Increase of the capacity to handle messages and symbols
- Simplification of the maintenance tasks with the multi-language comments

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R856#1M	0i-TFP PMC Symbol, Comment & Message Capacity (1 MB)
A02B-0350-R856#1M	0i-MFP PMC Symbol, Comment & Message Capacity (1 MB)
A02B-0353-R856#1M	30i-BP PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 1 MB
A02B-0353-R856#2M	30i-BP PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 2 MB
A02B-0356-R856#1M	31i-B5P PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 1 MB
A02B-0356-R856#2M	31i-B5P PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 2 MB
A02B-0357-R856#1M	31i-BP PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 1 MB
A02B-0357-R856#2M	31i-BP PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 2 MB
A02B-0358-R856#1M	32i-BP PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 1 MB
A02B-0358-R856#2M	32i-BP PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 2 MB

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

589

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-R856#1M	30i-LB Plus PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 1 MB
A02B-0359-R856#2M	30i-LB Plus PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 2 MB
A02B-0360-R856#1M	31i-LB Plus PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 1 MB
A02B-0360-R856#2M	31i-LB Plus PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 2 MB
A02B-0362-R856#1M	31i-PB Plus PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 1 MB
A02B-0362-R856#2M	31i-PB Plus PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 2 MB
A02B-0364-R856#1M	PM i-A Plus PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 1 MB
A02B-0364-R856#2M	PM i-A Plus PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 2 MB
A02B-0364-R856#512K	PM i-A Plus PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion - 512 KB

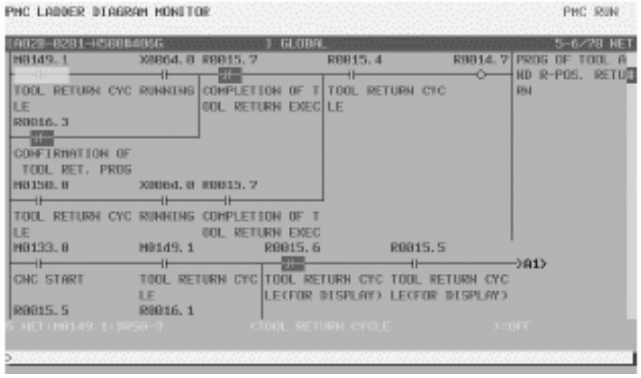
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

590

PMC System



Step Sequence Function

Features

The standard PMC programming style on FANUC CNC is the Ladder Programming. This ladder language has been available since many years, and always improved to match the growing demand in complexity.

The ladder method is most often used for programming the sequence control governed by a programmable controller. This method was derived from relay-panel control circuits. Since it has been in use for years, many sequence control engineers are already familiar with it. This method is also used in PMC sequence programming.

A large-scale system requires a large program and a greater number of processes, to control the overall process. In addition optional step sequence method is available for some PMC models, to describe the order/flow of the overall process (see image).

Step sequence

Step sequence method has been created to describe programs structurally. It is well-suited to the control of entire processes and provides an easy-to-understand visualized flow of the process. The step sequence programming features the direct representation of the control flow on a flow chart. Each block of processing is described as a subprogram, using the ladder method. The entire program is then created by combining these subprograms.

In step sequence programming, a sequence control program is divided into two types of subprograms, steps and transitions. Steps describe processes. Transitions connect steps and determine whether the transition conditions from one step to another evaluate true.

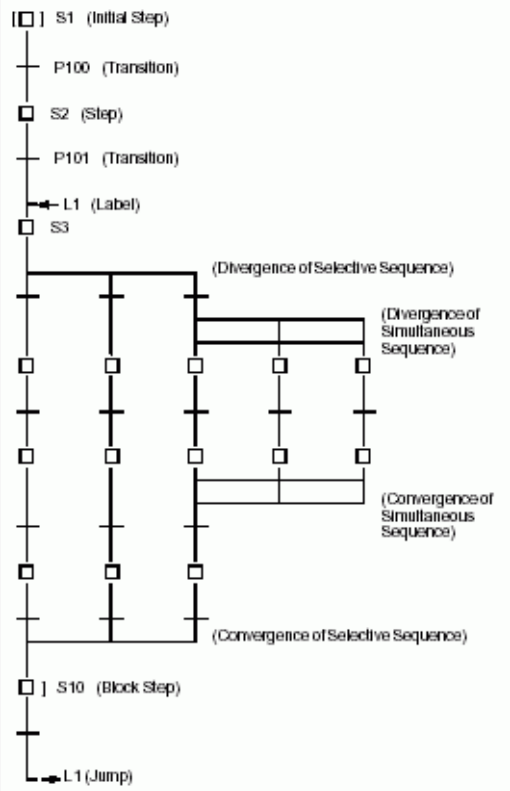
Step Sequence is also called Structure Function Charts (SFC) or Gracet.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

591



Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S982	0i-TFP PMC Step Sequence Function
A02B-0350-S982	0i-MFP PMC Step Sequence Function
A02B-0353-S982	30i-BP Step Sequence Function
A02B-0356-S982	31i-B5P Step Sequence Function
A02B-0357-S982	31i-BP Step Sequence Function
A02B-0358-S982	32i-BP Step Sequence Function
A02B-0359-S982	30i-LB Plus Step Sequence Function
A02B-0360-S982	31i-LB Plus Step Sequence Function
A02B-0362-S982	31i-PB Plus Step Sequence Function
A02B-0364-S982	PM i-A Plus Step Sequence Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

592

PMC System

Nonvolatile PMC Extra Relay Function

Features

This function increases the number of nonvolatile relays available in the PMC to 10 kB

Benefits

- Increase of the capabilities to handle data to accomodate larger machines

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S984#10K	0i-TFP Nonvolatile PMC Extra Relay Function
A02B-0350-S984#10K	0i-MFP Nonvolatile PMC Extra Relay Function
A02B-0353-S984#10K	30i-BP Nonvolatile PMC Extra Relay Function
A02B-0356-S984#10K	31i-B5P Nonvolatile PMC Extra Relay Function
A02B-0357-S984#10K	31i-BP Nonvolatile PMC Extra Relay Function
A02B-0358-S984#10K	32i-BP Nonvolatile PMC Extra Relay Function
A02B-0359-S984#10K	30i-LB Plus Nonvolatile PMC Extra Relay Function
A02B-0360-S984#10K	31i-LB Plus Nonvolatile PMC Extra Relay Function
A02B-0362-S984#10K	31i-PB Plus Nonvolatile PMC Extra Relay Function
A02B-0364-S984#10K	PM i-A Plus Nonvolatile PMC Extra Relay Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

593

PMC System

Nonvolatile PMC Data Table Area Expansion (40kB)

Features

This function increases the number of nonvolatile data table available in the PMC to 40 kB

Benefits

- Increase of the capabilities to handle data to accomodate larger machines

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S967#40K	0i-TFP Nonvolatile PMC Data Table Area Expansion (40 kB)
A02B-0350-S967#40K	0i-MFP Nonvolatile PMC Data Table Area Expansion (40 kB)
A02B-0353-S967#40K	30i-BP Nonvolatile PMC Data Table Area Expansion - 40 kB
A02B-0356-S967#40K	31i-B5P Nonvolatile PMC Data Table Area Expansion - 40 kB
A02B-0357-S967#40K	31i-BP Nonvolatile PMC Data Table Area Expansion - 40 kB
A02B-0358-S967#40K	32i-BP Nonvolatile PMC Data Table Area Expansion - 40 kB
A02B-0359-S967#40K	30i-LB Plus Nonvolatile PMC Data Table Area Expansion - 40 kB
A02B-0360-S967#40K	31i-LB Plus Nonvolatile PMC Data Table Area Expansion - 40 kB
A02B-0362-S967#40K	31i-PB Plus Nonvolatile PMC Data Table Area Expansion - 40 kB
A02B-0364-S967#40K	PM i-A Plus Nonvolatile PMC Data Table Area Expansion - 40 kB

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

594

Functions

Machine Safety Functions

Machine Safety Functions are features that allow the machine tool builder to construct a machine that is inherently safe for the operator to run. Features such as Dual Check Safety allow the operator to safely setup for machining with the protection door open.

- Chuck and tail stock barrier prevents axis collisions with these machine parts.
- Stored stroke check acts like software over travel limit switches to insure that the machine is not run past the limits of travel.
- Interference check makes sure that multiple paths do not collide with each other.
- Key and Program Encryption prevent programs from being altered by unauthorized personnel.
- Protection of Data at Eight Levels allows different operators to have different authorizations for levels of operations that they are allowed to perform on the machine.

See the Description Manual for a complete list of functions relating to machine safety.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

595

Machine Safety Functions



Dual Check Safety (DCS)

Features

The Dual Check Safety (DCS) function provides the necessary set of tools and function to design safe machine tools. A high level of safety to for the machine operator can be reached using this function, especially when the machine tool is open, power is still applied, and the physical security provided by the protective doors is no longer available.

Hardware redundancy and self tests allow the CNC to detect abnormal function and the Dual Check Safety function will quickly shut off power to protect the operator.

Dual Check Safety is certified by TÜV Süd Product Service GmbH in accordance to the following standards:

- 2006/42/EC Machinery Directive
- 2006/95/EC Low-Voltage Directive
- ISO 13849-1 Category 3, PL=d Machine Safety
- EN 60204-1:2006
- EN 61000-6-2:2005
- IEC 61508-1:1998 SIL 1-2
- IEC 61508-2:2000 SIL 1-2
- IEC 61508-3:1998 SIL 1-2
- IEC 61508-4:1998 SIL 1-2
- EN 501 78:1997

Following Dual Check Safety functions have been certified by TÜV SÜD Product Service GmbH:

- Safety Reduced Speed Check (Servo)
- Safety Reduced Speed Check (Spindle)
- Safe End Position Check
- Serial Data Transmission Check
- Emergency Stop
- Safe I/O Signal Check
- Safe Parameter Check
- Safe Servo Position Error Check
- Safe Position Switch Function
- Programmable Safe I/O Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

- Safe Brake Function
- Safe Servo Stop (STO) Function
- Safe Spindle Stop Function
- Safety Speed Zero Monitoring
- Safety Spindle Speed Limit Override

Special function are also available to simplify the creation of the machine documentation; refer to the "Test Mode Function for Dual Check Safety" in the catalogue for more information.

Benefits

- Provides a high level of safety for the operator during operations with protection opened while power is still applied
- Quick restart of the machine tool operation following operator intervention
- Fewer external safety circuits required
- Overall cost reduction of the safety solution
- Certified to comply to the actual safety standards

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S661	0i-TFP Dual Check Safety
A02B-0350-S661	0i-MFP Dual Check Safety
A02B-0353-S661	30i-BP Dual Check Safety
A02B-0356-S661	31i-B5P Dual Check Safety
A02B-0357-S661	31i-BP Dual Check Safety
A02B-0358-S661	32i-BP Dual Check Safety
A02B-0360-S661	31i-LB Plus Dual Check Safety
A02B-0362-S661	31i-PB Plus Dual Check Safety
A02B-0364-S661	PM i-A Plus Dual Check Safety

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

597

Machine Safety Functions



Safety I/O Signal History Function

Features

This function records the state transitions of safety I/O signals. If an alarm related to Dual Check Safety occurs, the recording is stopped and the recorded signals are displayed. Thereby, the cause of the alarm can be identified easily.
This function is included in Dual Check Safety on FANUC Series 0i-F Plus.

Benefits

- Reduces downtime

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R667	PM i-A Plus Safety I/O Signal History Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

598

Machine Safety Functions



Safety Spindle Speed Limit Override

Features

In the safety speed monitoring function of Dual Check Safety Function, the safety speed for the spindle can be switched between 4 different values / steps by the Safety Speed Selection signal.

When several chucks are used or the safety speed is required to be selected corresponding to the diameter of work, a more detailed selection is required; in this case, the safety speed for the spindle can be overriden from 10% to 100% by the safety spindle speed limit override signal.

Benefits

- Flexible safe spindle speed management
- Support of complex machine configuration without requiring programming or additional external hardware

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R626	0i-TFP Safety Spindle Speed Limit Override Function
A02B-0350-R626	0i-MFP Safety Spindle Speed Limit Override Function
A02B-0353-R626	30i-BP Safety Spindle Speed Limit Override Function
A02B-0356-R626	31i-B5P Safety Spindle Speed Limit Override Function
A02B-0357-R626	31i-BP Safety Spindle Speed Limit Override Function
A02B-0358-R626	32i-BP Safety Spindle Speed Limit Override Function
A02B-0364-R626	PM i-A Plus Safety Spindle Speed Limit Override Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

599

Machine Safety Functions



Test Mode Function for Dual Check Safety Acceptance Test

Features

When designing a machine, a machine builder must document the safety system. A safety confirmation test called "Acceptance Test" must be performed to confirm whether the safety function of a machine works correctly.

During the Acceptance Test, it must be confirmed that an alarm is generated correctly and a machine stops safely, when the machine is placed in not safe condition intentionally.

When the Acceptance Test is performed in a conventional manner, the power of CNC must be turned off and on every time a safety related alarm of Dual Check Safety function is generated and the safety parameter is rewritten. This requires a significant amount of time, especially when the power is turned on and off.

With the Test Mode Function, it is not required to turn the power on and off at each safety alarm generated. In this case, the time required to perform the Acceptance Test is greatly reduced.

Following functions are allowed in an Acceptance Test mode:

- When the safety parameter is changed, the changed parameter is effective without turning the power-off.
- Even if the safety related alarm is generated, the alarm state can be released by the reset operation without turning off and on the power of the CNC

Benefits

- Faster process of Acceptance Test

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R671	0i-TFP Test Mode Function for Acceptance Test
A02B-0350-R671	0i-MFP Test Mode Function for Acceptance Test
A02B-0353-R671	30i-BP Test Mode Function for Acceptance Test
A02B-0356-R671	31i-B5P Test Mode Function for Acceptance Test
A02B-0357-R671	31i-BP Test Mode Function for Acceptance Test
A02B-0358-R671	32i-BP Test Mode Function for Acceptance Test
A02B-0360-R671	31i-LB Plus Test Mode Function for Acceptance Test
A02B-0362-R671	31i-PB Plus Test Mode Function for Acceptance Test
A02B-0364-R671	PM i-A Plus Test Mode Function for Acceptance Test

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

600
Functions

Option Packages and Kits

An option package thematically combines various functions in a meaningful way. This section of the catalogue contains information on availabe option packages.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

601

Option Packages and Kits

Basic Option

Features

The Basic Option packages combine functions which are suitable for transfer lines (35i-B) or motion control applications (Power Motion i-A / Power Motion i-A Plus). The following table gives an overwiew over the functions that are contained in the different Basic Option packages.

Function	35i-B		PMi-A / PMi-A Plus	
	Basic Option 1	Basic Option 2	Basic Option 1	Basic Option 2
Simultaneously Controlled Axes Expansion	-	-	•	•
Axis Control by PMC	•	•	•	•
Control Axis Detach	-	•	-	•
Increment System C	-	•	-	•
Inch/Metric Conversion	-	•	-	•
Stroke Limit External Setting	-	•	-	•
Position Switch	-	•	-	•
Reference Point Setting with Mechanical Stopper	-	•	-	•
Manual Handle Feed 1 Unit	•	•	•	•
Handle Interruption	-	•	-	•
Multi-Step Skip	-	•	-	•
3rd/4th Reference Position Return	-	•	-	•
Bell-Shaped Acc/Dec After Cutting Feed Interpolation	-	•	-	•
Rate Feed	-	•	-	•
Feed Stop	-	•	-	•
Optional Block Skip	-	•	-	•
Custom Macro	•	•	•	•
Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables	•	•	•	•
Pattern Data Input	-	•	-	•
Tool Offset, 99 Pairs	-	•	-	•
Stored Pitch Error Compensation	-	•	-	•
Playback	-	•	-	•
Background Editing	-	•	-	•
Run Hour and Parts Count Display	-	•	-	•
Software Operator's Panel	-	•	-	•
Software Operator's Panel General Purpose Switch	-	•	-	•
Multi-Language Display, Japanese	•	•	•	•
RS232C Interface, 1 Channel	•	•	•	•
RS232C Interface, 2 Channels	-	•	-	•

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

602

Function	35i-B		PMi-A / PMi-A Plus	
	Basic Option 1	Basic Option 2	Basic Option 1	Basic Option 2
External Data Input	-	•	-	•
External I/O Device Control	-	•	-	•

Benefits

- Select the options for transfer lines or motion control applications easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-R702	PM i-A Plus Basic Option 1 - Incl. 4 Simult. Controlled Axes, PMC Function, PMC Ladder Function 24,000 step, Axis Control by PMC, Manual Handle Feed 1 Unit, Custom Macro, Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables, RS232C Interface 1, Multi-Language Display Japanese
A02B-0364-R703	PM i-A Plus Basic Option 2 - Incl. Basic Option 1, Axes Detach, Incr. System C, Inch/Metric Conv., Stroke Limit Ext. Setting, Pos. Switch, Ref.-Point Setting w. Mech. Stopper, Handle Interruption, Synchr. Cutting, Multi-Step Skip, 3rd/4th Ref. Pos. R, Bell-Shaped Acceleration/ Deceleration after Cutting Feed Interpolation, Stored Pitch Error Compensation, Optional Block Skip, External Data Input(Total 9), Tool Offset Pairs 99-Pairs, Run Hour and Parts Count Display, Software Operator's Panel, Software Operator's Panel General Purpose Switch, Playback, Multi Part Program Editing, RS232C Interface 2, External Control of I/O Device, Pattern Data Input, Rate Feed, Feed Stop

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

603

Option Packages and Kits

Turning Package 1

Features

The Turning Package 1 combines functions that are frequently used in turning applications. These functions are combined in the Turning Package 1:

- Polar Coordinate Interpolation
- Cylindrical Interpolation
- Variable Lead Thread Cutting
- Constant Surface Speed Control
- Direct Drawing Dimension Programming
- Chamfering / Corner Rounding
- Multiple Repetitive Cycles
- Multiple Repetitive Cycles II
- Tool Offest Pairs 200
- Tool Geometry/Wear Compensation

Benefits

- Select the options for turning applications easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R092	30i-BP Turning Package 1
A02B-0356-R092	31i-B5P Turning Package 1
A02B-0357-R092	31i-BP Turning Package 1
A02B-0358-R092	32i-BP Turning Package 1

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

604

Option Packages and Kits

Turning Package 2

Features

The Turning Package 2 combines functions that are frequently used in advanced turning applications, e.g. with multiple spindles. These functions are combined in the Turning Package 2:

- Polygon Machining with Two Spindles
- Chuck and Tail Stock Barrier
- Polygon Turning
- Thread Cutting Retract
- Actual Spindle Speed Output
- Spindle Synchronous Control
- Multi-Spindle Control
- G-Code System B/C
- Mirror Image for Double Turret
- Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B
- Y-Axis Offset
- Spindle Control with Servo Motor
- Manual Handle Retrace for Multi-Path

Benefits

- Select the options for turning applications easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R093	30i-BP Turning Package 2
A02B-0356-R093	31i-B5P Turning Package 2
A02B-0357-R093	31i-BP Turning Package 2
A02B-0358-R093	32i-BP Turning Package 2

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

605

Option Packages and Kits

Milling Package

Features

The Milling Package combines functions that are frequently used in milling applications. These functions are combined in the Milling Package:

- Inverse Time Feed
- Dynamic Graphic Display Function *
- Speed Control with Acceleration in Circular Interpolation
- Single Direction Positioning
- Normal Direction Control
- Polar Coordinate Command
- One-Digit F Code Feed
- Thread Cutting, Synchronous Cutting
- Program Restart
- Programmable Mirror Image
- Automatic Corner Override
- Scaling
- Coordinate System Rotation
- Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System 48 Pairs
- Small Hole Peck Drilling Cycle
- Tool Offset Pairs 400
- Tool Life Management
- Tool Offset Memory C
- Manual Handle Retrace
- Auxiliary Function Output in Program Restart
- Quick Program Restart *
- Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables 1000
- Optional Chamfering / Corner Rounding
- One Touch Macro Call

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

606

- Optimum Torque Acceleration/Deceleration
- Jerk Control *
- AI Contour Control I+
- AI Contour Control II+ *
- NURBS Interpolation
- Smooth Tolerance+ Control *
- High Speed Processing *
- Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion *
- Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion of AI Contour Control II *

* This function is not available in some system software series.

Benefits

- Select the options for milling applications easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R094	30i-BP Milling Package
A02B-0356-R094	31i-B5P Milling Package
A02B-0357-R094	31i-BP Milling Package
A02B-0358-R094	32i-BP Milling Package

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

607

Option Packages and Kits

Grinder Package

Features

The Grinding Package combines functions that are frequently used in grinding applications. These functions are combined in the Grinding Package:

- Continuous Dressing
- Infeed Control
- Chopping
- Multi-Step Skip
- Arbitrary Angular Axis Control
- Chopping Setting Screen
- High-Precision Oscillation Function
- Canned Cycle for Grinding

Benefits

- Select the options for grinding applications easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R095	30i-BP Grinding Package
A02B-0356-R095	31i-B5P Grinding Package
A02B-0357-R095	31i-BP Grinding Package
A02B-0358-R095	32i-BP Grinding Package

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

608

Option Packages and Kits

Gear Cutting Package

Features

The Gear Cutting Package combines the Electronic Gear Box function and the Flexible Synchronous Control function as well as their associated optional functions. Electronic Gear Box and Flexible Synchronous Control are often used together in gear hobbing machines. With the Gear Cutting Package, it is also possible to switch between Electronic Gear Box and Flexible Synchronous Control easily.

These functions are combined in the Gear Cutting Package:

- Electronic Gear Box
- Skip Function for Electronic Gear Box
- Electronic Gear Box - 2 Pairs
- Electronic Gear Box - Automatic Phase Synchronization
- Spindle Electronic Gear Box
- U-Axis Control 2 Pairs (only 30i/31i/32i-B Plus)
- Cs Contour Control (only 30i/31i/32i-B Plus)
- Flexible Synchronous Control
- Inter-Path Flexible Synchronous Control
- Automatic Phase Synchronization for Flexible Synchronous Control
- Skip Function for Flexible Synchronous Control
- Hob Command by Flexible Synchronous Control

Benefits

- Switch Between Electronic Gear Box and Flexible Synchronous Control easily.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0323-R024	30i-B Hob Machining Package
A02B-0326-R024	31i-B5 Hob Machining Package
A02B-0327-R024	31i-B Hob Machining Package
A02B-0328-R024	32i-B Hob Machining Package
A02B-0349-R024	0i-TFP Hob Machining Package

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

609

Specification	Description
A02B-0350-R024	0i-MFP Hob Machining Package
A02B-0353-R024	30i-BP Gear Cutting Package
A02B-0356-R024	31i-B5P Gear Cutting Package
A02B-0357-R024	31i-BP Gear Cutting Package
A02B-0358-R024	32i-BP Gear Cutting Package

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

610

Option Packages and Kits

Punching Package

Features

The Punching Package combines functions that are frequently used in punching applications. These functions are combined in the Punching Package:

- C Axis Control
- Safety Zone Check
- Tool Life Management
- Tool Data Setting Function
- Clamp Zone Avoidance Function
- Punch Press Function
- High-Speed Program Check
- Safety Zone Area Expansion
- Ram Axis Control

Benefits

- Select the options for punching applications easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0359-R104	30i-LB Plus Punching Package
A02B-0360-R104	31i-LB Plus Punching Package

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

611

Option Packages and Kits

Multi-Path Kit

Features

The Multi-Path Kit combines functions that are frequently used in advanced multi-path applications. These functions are combined in the Multi-Path Kit:

- Synchronous and Composite Control
- Superimposed Control
- Synchronous, Composite and Superimposed Control by Program Command
- Flexible Path Axis Assignment

Benefits

- Select the options for advanced multi-path applications easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R096	30i-BP Multi-Path Kit
A02B-0356-R096	31i-B5P Multi-Path Kit
A02B-0357-R096	31i-BP Multi-Path Kit
A02B-0358-R096	32i-BP Multi-Path Kit

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

612

Option Packages and Kits

TWP Kit

Features

The TWP (Tilted Working Plane) Kit combines functions that are frequently used in 3+2 axis machining applications. These functions are combined in the TWP Kit:

- Tilted Working Plane Indexing Command
- 3-Dimensional Coordinate System Conversion
- 3-Dimensional Manual Feed
- Retraction for 3-Dimensional Rigid Tapping
- Manual Interruption of 3-D Coordinate System Conversion

Benefits

- Select the options for 3+2 axis machining applications easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R097	30i-BP TWP Kit
A02B-0356-R097	31i-B5P TWP Kit
A02B-0357-R097	31i-BP TWP Kit
A02B-0358-R097	32i-BP TWP Kit

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

613

Option Packages and Kits

5-Axis Kit

Features

The 5-Axis Kit combines functions that are frequently used in simultaneous 5-axis machining applications. These functions are combined in the 5-Axis Kit:

- Tilted Working Plane Indexing Command
- 3-Dimensional Coordinate System Conversion
- 3-Dimensional Manual Feed
- Retraction for 3-Dimensional Rigid Tapping
- Manual Interruption of 3-D Coordinate System Conversion
- 3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation
- Tool Center Point Control
- Smooth Tool Center Point Control *
- High-Speed Smooth Tool Center Point Control *
- 3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation
- Workpiece Setting Error Compensation

* This function is not available in some system software series.

Benefits

- Select the options for simultaneous 5-axis machining applications easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R098	30i-BP 5-Axis Kit
A02B-0356-R098	31i-B5P 5-Axis Kit
A02B-0357-R098	31i-BP 5-Axis Kit
A02B-0358-R098	32i-BP 5-Axis Kit
A02B-0359-R105	30i-LB Plus Laser 5-Axis Kit
A02B-0360-R105	31i-LB Plus Laser 5-Axis Kit

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

614

Option Packages and Kits

iHMI Kit

Features

The iHMI Kit combines iHMI with set-up and machining cycles. The kit contains these functions:

- iHMI Basic Function
- iHMI Set-Up Guidance *
- iHMI Machining Cycle *

* This function is not available in some system software series.

Benefits

- Select iHMI with cycles easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R099	30i-BP iHMI Kit
A02B-0356-R099	31i-B5P iHMI Kit
A02B-0357-R099	31i-BP iHMI Kit
A02B-0358-R099	32i-BP iHMI Kit

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

615

Option Packages and Kits

Full Closed Kit

Features

The Full Closed Kit combines functions that are frequently used in applications that have linear encoders for position feedback. These functions are combined in the Full Closed Kit:

- Dual Position Feedback
- Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark
- Linear Scale I/F Expansion with Absolute Address Reference Mark
- Temporary Absolute Coordinate Setting

Benefits

- Select the options for applications with linear encoders easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R101	30i-BP Full-Closed Kit
A02B-0356-R101	31i-B5P Full-Closed Kit
A02B-0357-R101	31i-BP Full-Closed Kit
A02B-0358-R101	32i-BP Full-Closed Kit

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

616

Option Packages and Kits

Tandem Kit

Features

The Tandem Kit combines functions that are frequently used to perform synchronized motion, e.g. on gantry or spilt table axes. These functions are combined in the Tandem Kit:

- Axis Synchronous Control
- Tandem Disturbance Elimination

Benefits

- Select the options for applications with synchronized motion easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R102	30i-BP Tandem Kit
A02B-0356-R102	31i-B5P Tandem Kit
A02B-0357-R102	31i-BP Tandem Kit
A02B-0358-R102	32i-BP Tandem Kit

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

617

Option Packages and Kits

Rotary Table Kit

Features

The Rotary Table Kit combines functions that are frequently used in machines with rotary tables, e.g. rotary transfer machines. These functions are combined in the Rotary Table Kit:

- Index Table Indexing
- Control Axis Detach
- 2nd Auxiliary Function
- Rotary Axis Control

Benefits

- Select the options for applications with rotary tables easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R103	30i-BP Rotary Table Kit
A02B-0356-R103	31i-B5P Rotary Table Kit
A02B-0357-R103	31i-BP Rotary Table Kit
A02B-0358-R103	32i-BP Rotary Table Kit

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

618

Option Packages and Kits

Live Tool Kit

Features

The Live Tool Kits combine functions that are frequently used in lathes with live tools. Live Tool Kit 1 includes the following functions:

- Spindle Control with Servo Motor
- Dynamic Switching of Diameter/Radius Specification

Live Tool Kit 2 includes the following functions:

- Spindle Control with Servo Motor
- Dynamic Switching of Diameter/Radius Specification
- Tool Offset for Milling and Turning Function

Benefits

- Select the options for lathes with live tools easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R047	0i-TFP Live Tool Kit 1 for Type 0-5
A02B-0349-R048	0i-TFP Live Tool Kit 2 for Type 0-3
A02B-0350-R048	0i-MFP Live Tool Kit 2 for Type 0-3

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

619

Option Packages and Kits

Multitasking Kit

Features

The Multitasking Kit is a special kit dedicated to 0i-TF Plus. It combines functions which are frequently used in lathe-based multi-tasking machines. The Multitasking Kit includes the following options:

- Spindle Control with Servo Motor
- Dynamic Switching of Diameter/Radius Specification
- Tool Offset for Milling and Turning
- Tool Offset Conversion Function

Benefits

- Select the options for lathe-based multi-tasking machines easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R111	0i-TFP Multitasking Kit

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

620

Functions

Interface Functions

The following section contains functions related to CNC interfaces.

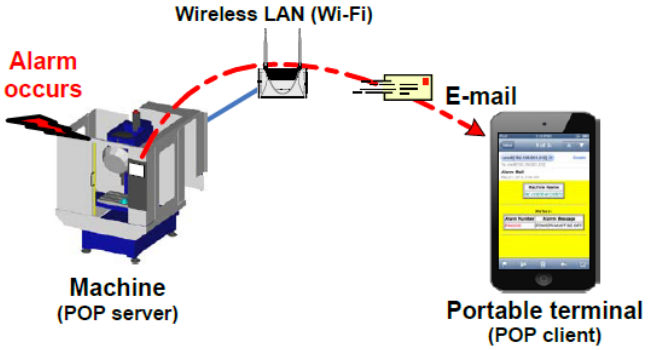
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

621

Interface Functions



CNC Status Notification Function

Features

The CNC Status Notification function provides E-mails with information about the CNC status. The E-mails can be retrieved with a standard E-Mail client of any device that is connected to the same Intranet. This includes portable devices such as smartphones and tablets as well as personal computers. Devices can be connected by WLAN or by LAN. The function especially facilitates monitoring of multiple machines in a production environment.

The function creates 3 different kinds of E-mails. Alarm mails are created if an alarm occurs or is cancelled on the CNC. Status mails inform about the number of machined parts. The option "Run Hour and Parts Count Display" is necessary to utilize status mails. Message mails are created if an external operator message or macro message is generated on the CNC.

Benefits

- Simplify monitoring of multiple machines in a production environment

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R975	0i-TFP CNC Status Notification Function
A02B-0350-R975	0i-MFP CNC Status Notification Function
A02B-0353-R975	30i-BP CNC Status Notification Function
A02B-0356-R975	31i-B5P CNC Status Notification Function
A02B-0357-R975	31i-BP CNC Status Notification Function
A02B-0358-R975	32i-BP CNC Status Notification Function
A02B-0359-R975	30i-LB Plus CNC Status Notification Function
A02B-0360-R975	31i-LB Plus CNC Status Notification Function
A02B-0362-R975	31i-PB Plus CNC Status Notification Function
A02B-0364-R975	PM i-A Plus CNC Status Notification Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

622
CNC



Communication

This section of the catalogue contains an overview of the most popular communication function available on the FANUC CNC.

The communication functions described include:

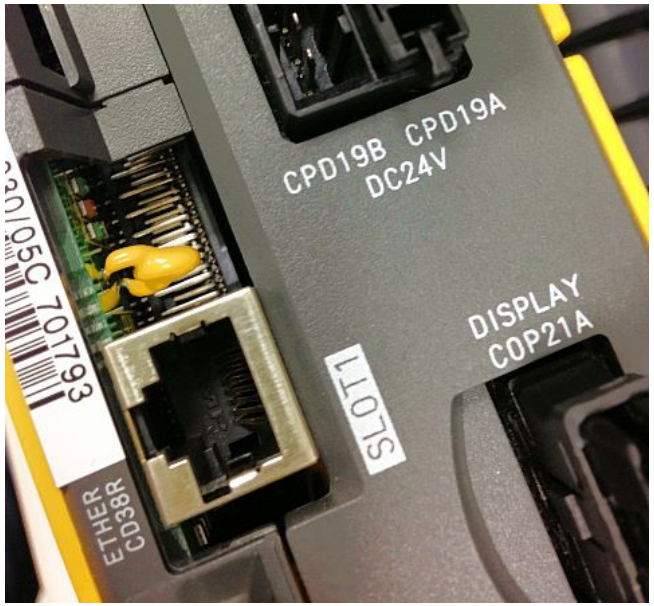
- FANUC Ethernet protocols
- EtherNet/IP
- PROFIBUS-DP
- PROFINET IO
- EtherCAT
- Etc.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

623
Communication



Fast Ethernet

Features

The Fast Ethernet board and functions bring the possibility to install additional Ethernet connections to the CNC. The Fast Ethernet board features its own processors so that more processing power is available to manage the communication and protocols.

Up to 3 Fast Ethernet boards can be installed in a Series 30i/31i/32i-B Plus 4-slots standalone controller. Up to 2 Fast Ethernet boards can be installed in a LCD-mounted CNC.

Together with the embedded Ethernet port, the Fast Ethernet boards and/or the Multi-Function Ethernet Module, up to 4 separate Ethernet connections can be realized.

The Fast Ethernet board can run concurrent protocols and services such as:

- DHCP
- DNS
- DNC1 over Ethernet
- FTP client
- Screen Display Function
- Data Server and Fast Data Server
- FOCAS / FOCAS 2
- Basic Operation Package 2
- Remote Diagnostics
- FANUC Ladder
- FANUC SERVO GUIDE

It can support popular networking protocols such as:

- EtherNet/IP Scanner
- EtherNet/IP Scanner Adapter
- PROFINET I/O Device
- FL-net
- Modbus/TCP

Note:

- Refer to the connection manual for additional information on the protocols, settings and eventual limitations related to the concurrent use of different protocols in the Fast Ethernet board.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

624

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Benefits

- Addition of Ethernet connectivity to the CNC
- Improvement of the Ethernet connectivity of the CNC with many popular protocols
- Increase of the maintenance and remote access efficiency
- Provides data collection capabilities to the CNC
- Improvement of machine flexibility and increase of the system efficiency / productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0348-J147	0i-FP Fast Ethernet Board (100BASE-TX)
A02B-0349-S707	0i-TFP Ethernet Function
A02B-0350-S707	0i-MFP Ethernet Function
A02B-0353-J147	30i/31i/32i-BP Fast Ethernet Board (100BASE-TX)
A02B-0353-S707	30i-BP ETHERNET Function
A02B-0356-S707	31i-B5P ETHERNET Function
A02B-0357-S707	31i-BP ETHERNET Function
A02B-0358-S707	32i-BP ETHERNET Function
A02B-0359-S707	30i-LB Plus ETHERNET Function
A02B-0360-S707	31i-LB Plus ETHERNET Function
A02B-0362-S707	31i-PB Plus ETHERNET Function
A02B-0364-S707	PM i-A Plus ETHERNET Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

625

Communication

PROFINET IO

PROFINET is an industrial network using Ethernet. It enables I/O communication between IO-Controller and IO-Devices. The communication standard is managed by PI (PROFIBUS and PROFINET International).

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

626
PROFINET IO

Controller and Device

PROFINET IO Controller

Features

The PROFINET IO Controller function provides an easy way to setup the CNC system to connect to popular PLCs and IO-Devices equipment using PROFINET.

The PMC Allocation Expansion of PROFINET IO Controller function expands the maximum number of PMC allocations in the PMC multiple allocation mode from 48 to 256.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Benefits

- I/O signals can be exchanged faster than PROFIBUS

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R971	0i-TFP Profinet I/O Controller Function
A02B-0349-R979	0i-TFP PMC Allocation Expansion of Profinet I/O Controller Function
A02B-0349-R984	0i-TFP PROFINET I/O Controller Function (configuration data expansion)
A02B-0350-R971	0i-MFP Profinet I/O Controller Function
A02B-0350-R979	0i-MFP PMC Allocation Expansion of Profinet I/O Controller Function
A02B-0350-R984	0i-MFP PROFINET I/O Controller Function (configuration data expansion)
A02B-0353-R971	30i-BP PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0353-R979	30i-BP PMC Allocation Expansion of PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0353-R984	30i-BP PROFINET I/O Controller Function (configuration data expansion)
A02B-0356-R971	31i-B5P PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0356-R979	31i-B5P PMC Allocation Expansion of PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0356-R984	31i-B5P PROFINET I/O Controller Function (configuration data expansion)
A02B-0357-R971	31i-BP PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0357-R979	31i-BP PMC Allocation Expansion of PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0357-R984	31i-BP PROFINET I/O Controller Function (configuration data expansion)
A02B-0358-R971	32i-BP PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0358-R979	32i-BP PMC Allocation Expansion of PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0358-R984	32i-BP PROFINET I/O Controller Function (configuration data expansion)
A02B-0359-R971	30i-LB Plus PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0359-R979	30i-LB Plus PMC Allocation Expansion of PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0359-R984	30i-LB Plus PROFINET I/O Controller Function (configuration data expansion)
A02B-0360-R971	31i-LB Plus PROFINET I/O Controller Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

627

Specification	Description
A02B-0360-R979	31i-LB Plus PMC Allocation Expansion of PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0360-R984	31i-LB Plus PROFINET I/O Controller Function (configuration data expansion)
A02B-0362-R971	31i-PB Plus PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0362-R979	31i-PB Plus PMC Allocation Expansion of PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0364-R971	PM i-A Plus PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0364-R979	PM i-A Plus PMC Allocation Expansion of PROFINET I/O Controller Function
A02B-0364-R984	PM i-A Plus PROFINET I/O Controller Function (configuration data expansion)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

628
PROFINET IO



PROFINET IO Controller 2

Features

The PROFINET IO Controller 2 Function provides an easy way to setup the CNC system to connect to popular PLCs and IO Devices equipment using PROFINET. It also enables Acyclic Communication between CNC and IO Devices, Safety IO Devices or IO-Link Sensors / Actuators.

The PROFINET Safety Board is the dedicated Board for the PROFINET IO Controller 2 Function and for the PROFINET IO Controller Safety Function.

Benefits

- Acyclic communication for PROFINET available

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0348-J149	0i-FP PROFINET Safety Board
A02B-0349-R980	0i-TFP PROFINET I/O Controller 2 Function
A02B-0350-R980	0i-MFP PROFINET I/O Controller 2 Function
A02B-0351-R980	0i-LFP PROFINET I/O Controller 2 Function
A02B-0353-J149	30i/31i/32i-BP PROFINET Safety Board
A02B-0353-R980	30i-BP PROFINET I/O Controller 2 Function
A02B-0356-R980	31i-B5P PROFINET I/O Controller 2 Function
A02B-0357-R980	31i-BP Plus PROFINET I/O Controller 2 Function
A02B-0358-R980	32i-BP PROFINET I/O Controller 2 Function
A02B-0362-R980	31i-PB Plus PROFINET I/O Controller 2 Function
A02B-0364-R980	PM i-A Plus PROFINET I/O Controller 2 Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

629

PROFINET IO

Controller and Device

PROFINET IO Controller Safety Function

Features

The PROFINET IO Controller Safety function is an additional Function of the Dual Check Safety (DCS) Function. It makes it possible for the PROFINET IO Controller 2 Function to handle safety signals. The communication standard is based on the Safety standard PROFIsafe managed by PI (PROFIBUS and PROFINET International). This function enables the CNC to exchange safety signals with PROFINET IO Devices that support PROFIsafe.

Benefits

- Connect the CNC to Safety Devices via PROFINET
- Improvement of machine flexibility

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R981	0i-TFP PROFINET I/O Controller Safety Function
A02B-0350-R981	0i-MFP PROFINET I/O Controller Safety Function
A02B-0351-R981	0i-LFP PROFINET I/O Controller Safety Function
A02B-0353-R981	30i-BP PROFINET I/O Controller Safety Function
A02B-0356-R981	31i-B5P PROFINET I/O Controller Safety Function
A02B-0357-R981	31i-BP Plus PROFINET I/O Controller Safety Function
A02B-0358-R981	32i-BP PROFINET I/O Controller Safety Function
A02B-0362-R981	31i-PB Plus PROFINET I/O Controller Safety Function
A02B-0364-R981	PM i-A Plus PROFINET I/O Controller Safety Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

630
PROFINET IO

Controller and Device

PROFINET IO Device

Features

The PROFINET IO Device (Slave) function for the Fast Ethernet board or the Multi-Function Ethernet module provides an easy way to setup the system installation and the connection of the CNC system to popular PLCs and equipment using PROFINET IO.

It provides up to 256 bytes of input and 256 bytes of output data to a PROFINET IO Controller.

Notes:

- Refer to the connection manual for additional information on the PROFINET IO Device data type supported, the size of the data, settings and GSDML files.
- The Ethernet hardware of the CNC supports several concurrent protocols and connections. Refer to the connection manuals for details and limitations that may exist.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Benefits

- Connection to PLCs and equipment by PROFINET IO network
- Acceleration of the system installation and commissionning
- Improvement of machine flexibility and increase of the system efficiency / productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R972	0i-TFP Profinet I/O Device Function
A02B-0350-R972	0i-MFP Profinet I/O Device Function
A02B-0353-R972	30i-BP PROFINET I/O Device Function
A02B-0356-R972	31i-B5P PROFINET I/O Device Function
A02B-0357-R972	31i-BP PROFINET I/O Device Function
A02B-0358-R972	32i-BP PROFINET I/O Device Function
A02B-0359-R972	30i-LB Plus PROFINET I/O Device Function
A02B-0360-R972	31i-LB Plus PROFINET I/O Device Function
A02B-0362-R972	31i-PB Plus PROFINET I/O Device Function
A02B-0364-R972	PM i-A Plus PROFINET I/O Device Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

631
PROFINET IO

Controller and Device

PROFINET IO Device Safety Function

Features

The PROFINET IO Device Safety function makes it possible for the PROFINET IO Device function to handle safety signals. The communication standard is based on the Safety standard PROFIsafe managed by PI (PROFIBUS and PROFINET International). This function enables the CNC to exchange safety signals with a PROFINET IO Controller that supports PROFIsafe.

Benefits

- Connect the CNC to a Safety PLC via PROFINET
- Improvement of machine flexibility

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R977	0i-TFP Profinet I/O Device Safety Function
A02B-0350-R977	0i-MFP Profinet I/O Device Safety Function
A02B-0353-R977	30i-BP PROFINET I/O Device Safety Function
A02B-0356-R977	31i-B5P PROFINET I/O Device Safety Function
A02B-0357-R977	31i-BP PROFINET I/O Device Safety Function
A02B-0358-R977	32i-BP PROFINET I/O Device Safety Function
A02B-0359-R977	30i-LB Plus PROFINET I/O Device Safety Function
A02B-0360-R977	31i-LB Plus PROFINET I/O Device Safety Function
A02B-0362-R977	31i-PB Plus PROFINET I/O Device Safety Function
A02B-0364-R977	PM i-A Plus PROFINET I/O Device Safety Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

632

Communication

PROFIBUS-DP

PROFIBUS is an industrial network. It enables I/O communication between master devices and slave devices. The communication standard is managed by PI (PROFIBUS and PROFINET International).

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

633
PROFIBUS-DP

Slave

PROFIBUS-DP Slave

Features

The PROFIBUS-DP Slave function and the PROFIBUS-DP Slave board for the CNC provide an easy way to setup the CNC system to connect to popular PLCs and I/O devices equipment using PROFIBUS-DP.

The PROFIBUS-DP Slave function provides up to 244 bytes of data to the PROFIBUS-DP Master device.

Notes:

- The PROFIBUS-DP functions cannot be used simultaneously with the DeviceNet functions or CC-Link functions
- Refer to the connection manual for additional information on the PROFIBUS-DP functions supported, the size of the data tables, settings, diagnostics and GSD files

Benefits

- Connection to PLCs and equipment by PROFIBUS-DP network
- Acceleration of the system installation and commissionning
- Improvement of machine flexibility and increase of the system efficiency / productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0348-J313	0i-FP Profibus DP Slave Board
A02B-0349-S732	0i-TFP Profibus DP Slave Function
A02B-0350-S732	0i-MFP Profibus DP Slave Function
A02B-0353-J313	30i/31i/32i-BP PROFIBUS Slave Board
A02B-0353-S732	30i-BP PROFIBUS Slave Function
A02B-0356-S732	31i-B5P PROFIBUS Slave Function
A02B-0357-S732	31i-BP PROFIBUS Slave Function
A02B-0358-S732	32i-BP PROFIBUS Slave Function
A02B-0359-S732	30i-LB Plus PROFIBUS Slave Function
A02B-0360-S732	31i-LB Plus PROFIBUS Slave Function
A02B-0362-S732	31i-PB Plus PROFIBUS Slave Function
A02B-0364-S732	PM i-A Plus PROFIBUS Slave Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

634
PROFIBUS-DP

Master

PROFIBUS-DP Master

Features

The PROFIBUS-DP Master function and the PROFIBUS-DP Master board for the CNC provide an easy way to setup the CNC system to connect to popular PLCs and I/O devices equipment using PROFIBUS-DP.

Up to 48 PROFIBUS-DP Slave stations can be connected to the Master with a total of 244 bytes per Slave station.

Notes:

- The PROFIBUS-DP functions cannot be used simultaneously with the DeviceNet functions or CC-Link functions
- Refer to the connection manual for additional information on the PROFIBUS-DP functions supported, the size of the data tables, settings, diagnostics and GSD files

Benefits

- Connection to PLCs and equipment by PROFIBUS-DP network
- Acceleration of the system installation and commissionning
- Improvement of machine flexibility and increase of the system efficiency / productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0348-J311	0i-FP Profibus DP Master Board
A02B-0349-S731	0i-TFP Profibus DP Master Function
A02B-0350-S731	0i-MFP Profibus DP Master Function
A02B-0353-J311	30i/31i/32i-BP PROFIBUS Master Board
A02B-0353-S731	30i-BP PROFIBUS Master Function
A02B-0356-S731	31i-B5P PROFIBUS Master Function
A02B-0357-S731	31i-BP PROFIBUS Master Function
A02B-0358-S731	32i-BP PROFIBUS Master Function
A02B-0359-S731	30i-LB Plus PROFIBUS Master Function
A02B-0360-S731	31i-LB Plus PROFIBUS Master Function
A02B-0362-S731	31i-PB Plus PROFIBUS Master Function
A02B-0364-S731	PM i-A Plus PROFIBUS Master Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

635
Communication

EtherNet/IP

EtherNet/IP is an industrial network based on Ethernet. The specification of EtherNet/IP is managed by ODVA (Open DeviceNet Vendor Association) and its globalization and standardization are promoted. Therefore, EtherNet/IP has been adopted by many vendors, and it is possible to connect to various types of industrial devices. Moreover, EtherNet/IP devices can be used together with general-purpose Ethernet devices because a standard Ethernet technology is used.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

636

EtherNet/IP

EtherNet/IP Adapter

Features

The EtherNet/IP Adapter function provides the CNC with the capability to act as an EtherNet/IP Adapter (Slave) to connect the CNC to an EtherNet/IP environment. This function provides an easy way to setup the system installation and the connection to popular PLCs and equipment using EtherNet/IP.

When using multicast between up to 32 CNC, it is possible to realize simple shared memory, which greatly simplifies network management and allows, for instance, an overview of the status of each machine of a line on each CNC.

The EtherNet/IP Adapter function can be used with the following Ethernet hardware:

- The "Fast Ethernet board"
- The "Multi-Function Ethernet module"

Notes:

- Refer to the connection manual for additional information on the EtherNet/IP data type supported, the size of the data tables, settings, EDS files as well as the function specifications.
- The Ethernet hardware of the CNC supports several concurrent protocols and connections. Refer to the connection manuals for details and limitations that may exist.
- It is possible to run the EtherNet/IP Scanner and Adapter function on the same Ethernet hardware module or on different modules. Refer to the connection manuals for details and limitations that may exist.
- If the EtherNet/IP Adapter function and the EtherNet/IP PORT2 function are specified, the EtherNet/IP Adpater function can be operated on different hardware boards at the same time.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Benefits

- Connection to PLCs and machines by EtherNet/IP network
- Acceleration of the system installation and commissionning
- Improvement of the system uptime and efficiency

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R967	0i-TFP Ethernet/IP Adapter Function
A02B-0350-R967	0i-MFP Ethernet/IP Adapter Function
A02B-0353-R967	30i-BP ETHERNET / IP Adapter Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

637

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R974	30i-BP ETHERNET / IP Adapter Port-2 Function
A02B-0356-R967	31i-B5P ETHERNET / IP Adapter Function
A02B-0356-R974	31i-B5P ETHERNET / IP Adapter Port-2 Function
A02B-0357-R967	31i-BP ETHERNET / IP Adapter Function
A02B-0357-R974	31i-BP ETHERNET / IP Adapter Port-2 Function
A02B-0358-R967	32i-BP ETHERNET / IP Adapter Function
A02B-0358-R974	32i-BP ETHERNET / IP Adapter Port-2 Function
A02B-0359-R967	30i-LB Plus ETHERNET / IP Adapter Function
A02B-0359-R974	30i-LB Plus ETHERNET / IP Adapter Port-2 Function
A02B-0360-R967	31i-LB Plus ETHERNET / IP Adapter Function
A02B-0360-R974	31i-LB Plus ETHERNET / IP Adapter Port-2 Function
A02B-0362-R967	31i-PB Plus ETHERNET / IP Adapter Function
A02B-0362-R974	31i-PB Plus ETHERNET / IP Adapter Port-2 Function
A02B-0364-R967	PM i-A Plus ETHERNET / IP Adapter Function
A02B-0364-R974	PM i-A Plus ETHERNET / IP Adapter Port-2 Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

638

EtherNet/IP

EtherNet/IP Adapter Safety Function

Features

The EtherNet/IP Adapter Safety function makes it possible for the EtherNet/IP Adapter function to handle safety signals. The communication standard is based on CIP-Safety managed by the ODVA (Open DeviceNet Vendor Association). This function enables the CNC to exchange safety signals with an EtherNet/IP Scanner device that supports CIP-Safety.

Benefits

- Connect the CNC to a Safety PLC via EtherNet/IP
- Improvement of machine flexibility

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R976	0i-TFP Ethernet/IP Adapter Safety Function
A02B-0350-R976	0i-MFP Ethernet/IP Adapter Safety Function
A02B-0353-R976	30i-BP ETHERNET / IP Adapter Safety Function
A02B-0356-R976	31i-B5P ETHERNET / IP Adapter Safety Function
A02B-0357-R976	31i-BP ETHERNET / IP Adapter Safety Function
A02B-0358-R976	32i-BP ETHERNET / IP Adapter Safety Function
A02B-0359-R976	30i-LB Plus ETHERNET / IP Adapter Safety Function
A02B-0360-R976	31i-LB Plus ETHERNET / IP Adapter Safety Function
A02B-0362-R976	31i-PB Plus ETHERNET / IP Adapter Safety Function
A02B-0364-R976	PM i-A Plus ETHERNET / IP Adapter Safety Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

639

EtherNet/IP

EtherNet/IP™

Scanner

EtherNet/IP Scanner

Features

The EtherNet/IP Scanner function provides the CNC with the capability to act as an EtherNet/IP Scanner (Master) to connect the CNC to an EtherNet/IP device environment. This function provides an easy way to setup the system installation and the connection to popular PLCs and I/O devices using EtherNet/IP.

When using multicast between up to 32 CNC, it is possible to realize simple shared memory, which greatly simplifies network management and allows, for instance, an overview of the status of each machine of a line on each CNC.

The EtherNet/IP Scanner function can be used with the following Ethernet hardware:

- The "Fast Ethernet board"
- The "Multi-Function Ethernet module"

Notes:

- Refer to the connection manual for additional information about the EtherNet/IP data type supported, the size of the data tables, programming, EDS file as well as the function specifications.
- The Ethernet hardware of the CNC supports several concurrent protocols and connections. Refer to the connection manuals for details and limitations that may exist.
- It is possible to run the EtherNet/IP Scanner and Adapter function on the same Ethernet hardware module or on different modules. Refer to the connection manuals for details and limitations that may exist.
- If the EtherNet/IP Scanner function and the EtherNet/IP PORT2 function are specified, the EtherNet/IP Scanner function can be operated on different hardware boards at the same time.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Benefits

- Connection to PLCs and equipment by EtherNet/IP network
- Acceleration of the system installation and commissionning
- Improvement of machine flexibility and increase of the system efficiency / productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R966	0i-TFP Ethernet/IP Scanner Function
A02B-0350-R966	0i-MFP Ethernet/IP Scanner Function
A02B-0353-R966	30i-BP ETHERNET / IP Scanner Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

640

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R973	30i-BP ETHERNET / IP Scanner Port-2 Function
A02B-0356-R966	31i-B5P ETHERNET / IP Scanner Function
A02B-0356-R973	31i-B5P ETHERNET / IP Scanner Port-2 Function
A02B-0357-R966	31i-BP ETHERNET / IP Scanner Function
A02B-0357-R973	31i-BP ETHERNET / IP Scanner Port-2 Function
A02B-0358-R966	32i-BP ETHERNET / IP Scanner Function
A02B-0358-R973	32i-BP ETHERNET / IP Scanner Port-2 Function
A02B-0359-R966	30i-LB Plus ETHERNET / IP Scanner Function
A02B-0359-R973	30i-LB Plus ETHERNET / IP Scanner Port-2 Function
A02B-0360-R966	31i-LB Plus ETHERNET / IP Scanner Function
A02B-0360-R973	31i-LB Plus ETHERNET / IP Scanner Port-2 Function
A02B-0362-R966	31i-PB Plus ETHERNET / IP Scanner Function
A02B-0362-R973	31i-PB Plus ETHERNET / IP Scanner Port-2 Function
A02B-0364-R966	PM i-A Plus ETHERNET / IP Scanner Function
A02B-0364-R973	PM i-A Plus ETHERNET / IP Scanner Port-2 Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

641
Communication

DeviceNet

DeviceNet is one of the world's leading device-level networks for industrial automation. DeviceNet offers robust, efficient data handling because it is based on Producer/Consumer technology. This modern communications model offers key capabilities that allow the user to determine effectively what information is needed and when. The specification of DeviceNet is managed by ODVA (Open DeviceNet Vendor Association).

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

642

DeviceNet

DeviceNet Scanner (Master)

Features

The DeviceNet Scanner (Master) function and the DeviceNet Scanner board provide an easy way to setup the installation and the connection of the CNC to popular PLCs and I/O devices using DeviceNet.

Specifications:

- Up to 63 slaves can be addressed
- Up to 128 byte of digital inputs and 128 bytes of digital output per slave (maximum 320 bytes of digital inputs and 320 bytes of digital outputs for the whole network)
- Supports poll I/O connection and bit strobe I/O connection
- MAC ID can be selected between 0 to 63

Benefits

- Connect to PLCs and machines by DeviceNet network
- Acceleration of the system installation and commissionning
- Improvement of machine flexibility and increase of the system efficiency / productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0348-J301	0i-FP Device-Net Master Board
A02B-0349-S723	0i-TFP Device-Net Master Function
A02B-0350-S723	0i-MFP Device-Net Master Function
A02B-0353-J301	30i/31i/32i-BP DEVICENET Master Board
A02B-0353-S723	30i-BP DEVICENET Master Function
A02B-0356-S723	31i-B5P DEVICENET Master Function
A02B-0357-S723	31i-BP DEVICENET Master Function
A02B-0358-S723	32i-BP DEVICENET Master Function
A02B-0359-S723	30i-LB Plus DEVICENET Master Function
A02B-0360-S723	31i-LB Plus DEVICENET Master Function
A02B-0362-S723	31i-PB Plus DEVICENET Master Function
A02B-0364-S723	PM i-A Plus DEVICENET Master Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

643

DeviceNet

DeviceNet Adapter (Slave)

Features

The DeviceNet Adapter (Slave) function and the DeviceNet Adapter board provide an easy way to setup the installation and the connection of the CNC to popular PLCs and I/O devices using DeviceNet.

Specifications:

- Up to 128 byte of digital inputs and 128 bytes of digital output per slave
- Supports poll I/O connection and bit strobe I/O connection
- MAC ID can be selected between 0 to 63

Benefits

- Connect to PLCs and machines by DeviceNet network
- Acceleration of the system installation and commissionning
- Improvement of machine flexibility and increase of the system efficiency / productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0348-J302	0i-FP Device-Net Slave Board
A02B-0349-S724	0i-TFP Device-Net Slave Function
A02B-0350-S724	0i-MFP Device-Net Slave Function
A02B-0353-J302	30i/31i/32i-BP DEVICENET Slave Board
A02B-0353-S724	30i-BP DEVICENET Slave Function
A02B-0356-S724	31i-B5P DEVICENET Slave Function
A02B-0357-S724	31i-BP DEVICENET Slave Function
A02B-0358-S724	32i-BP DEVICENET Slave Function
A02B-0359-S724	30i-LB Plus DEVICENET Slave Function
A02B-0360-S724	31i-LB Plus DEVICENET Slave Function
A02B-0362-S724	31i-PB Plus DEVICENET Slave Function
A02B-0364-S724	PM i-A Plus DEVICENET Slave Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

644

Communication

FL-net

Features

The FL-net network on Ethernet is also known as JEMA Open PLC network - 2 (OPCN-2). The FL-net interface board and function provide an easy way to setup the system installation and the connection to popular PLCs and equipment using FL-net.

FL-net can interconnect various types of controllers such as programmable controllers (PLC), robots, CNC and personal computers of many different manufacturers to control and monitor them.

Function highlights:

- Multi-vendor environment using an open network: FL-net conforms to open standards so that communication devices manufactured by different vendors / manufacturers can communicate with each other.
- Large-scale network: up to 249 communication devices (nodes) can be connected to share data.
- Two communication functions are available: FL-net supports both the common memory and message communication. The common memory communication uses cyclic data transmission to allow the nodes to always share the same data. The message communication allows the nodes to exchange only required information on demand.
- Large-capacity common memory: 8K bits + 8K words (a total of 17K bytes) of large-capacity common memory can be shared among all nodes.
- Fast response: FL-net provides a fast response of 50 ms/32 nodes (at 2K bits + 2K words/32 nodes).
- High reliability: each node can participate in or be disconnected from the FL-net at any time. In this case, the power to each node can be turned on or off without problem and can provide high maintainability. The masterless token method allows communication to be continued without stopping the network by the token management, if a failure occurs in a communication device.
- Low cost: the use of cables for Ethernet can reduce the cost of communication devices such as transceivers and hubs as well as on cabling.
- High maintainability: various types of management tables are available. The management tables can be referenced to identify a faulty node quickly.
- Additional FANUC enhancements to FL-net: increase of the transmission speed from 10Mbps to 100Mbps, simultaneous FL-net and Ethernet communication on the same network (CNC Screen Display, File Transfer, FANUC LADDER-III, etc.)

Notes:

- The Ethernet hardware of the CNC supports several concurrent protocols and connections. Refer to the connection manuals for details and limitations that may exist.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

- The PORT 2 function provides the capability to operate the same function on different hardware boards at the same time. Example: if the FL-net function and the FL-net PORT 2 functions are specified, the FL-net function can be operated on different hardware boards at the same time.
- FL-net supports safety functions. Refer to the "FL-net safety" section further in this catalogue for more information.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Benefits

- Easy connection to Robots, PLCs and equipment using FL-net network
- Acceleration of the system installation and commissionning
- Improvement of machine flexibility and increase of the system efficiency / productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-J692	0i-TFP FL-Net Function
A02B-0350-J692	0i-MFP FL-Net Function
A02B-0353-J692	30i-BP FL-NET Function
A02B-0353-R964	30i-BP FL-NET Port-2 Function
A02B-0356-J692	31i-B5P FL-NET Function
A02B-0356-R964	31i-B5P FL-NET Port-2 Function
A02B-0357-J692	31i-BP FL-NET Function
A02B-0357-R964	31i-BP FL-NET Port-2 Function
A02B-0358-J692	32i-BP FL-NET Function
A02B-0358-R964	32i-BP FL-NET Port-2 Function
A02B-0359-R964	30i-LB Plus FL-NET Port-2 Function
A02B-0360-J692	31i-LB Plus FL-NET Function
A02B-0360-R964	31i-LB Plus FL-NET Port-2 Function
A02B-0362-J692	31i-PB Plus FL-NET Function
A02B-0362-R964	31i-PB Plus FL-NET Port-2 Function
A02B-0364-R964	PM i-A Plus FL-NET Port-2 Function

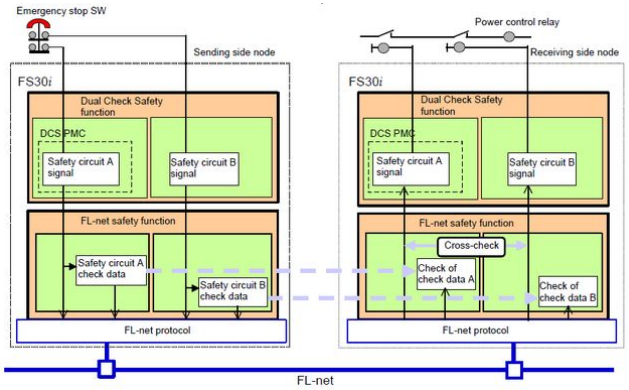
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

646

FL-net



FL-net Safety

Features

In a machining system such as a transfer machine or a networked manufacturing cells, stations are each equipped with an operator's panel having an emergency stop button or other safety rellated signals.

Traditionally, it is necessary to implement a separate hardwired safety circuit for the entire system so that, when the emergency stop button at any station is pressed, the emergency stop signal can be transferred to all CNCs.

When using the Safety function on FL-net, the transmission of safety-related signals connected to safety circuits to multiple CNCs connected via FL-net is provided on a single network. In this case, the system cabling is simplified, the setup and commissioning is accelerated and the total cost of the system is reduced.

The Safety function of FL-net is an additional function of the Dual Check Safety function of the CNC. It operates on two CPUs as the Dual Check Safety function does. Refer to "Dual Check Safety" section of the catalogue for further details on the safety functions of the CNC.

Basic elements of the Safety function by FL-net are redundant nodes on the sending side and the receiving side. A safe circuit for the line is implemented by the combination of these nodes. The sending node adds proofing data to each of the redundant signals of the safety circuit and sends these signals safely. The receiving node checks the proofing data and cross-checks the received signal data to ensure that there is no error in the FL-net communication.

Benefits

- Simplified connection of Robots, CNC and PLCs with Safety Function transmitted over the FL-net network
- Simplification of the architectures
- Acceleration of the system installation and commissionning
- Improvement of machine flexibility and increase of the system efficiency / productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-S851	0i-TFP Safety Function by FL-Net
A02B-0350-S851	0i-MFP Safety Function by FL-Net
A02B-0353-S851	30i-BP Safety Function by FL-NET
A02B-0356-S851	31i-B5P Safety Function by FL-NET
A02B-0357-S851	31i-BP Safety Function by FL-NET
A02B-0358-S851	32i-BP Safety Function by FL-NET
A02B-0359-S851	30i-LB Plus Safety Function by FL-NET
A02B-0360-S851	31i-LB Plus Safety Function by FL-NET
A02B-0362-S851	31i-PB Plus Safety Function by FL-NET

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

647

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-S851	PM i-A Plus Safety Function by FL-NET

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

648

Communication

CC-Link

CC-Link is a family of device-level networks for industrial automation.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

649

CC-Link

CC-Link Remote Device

Features

The CC-Link Remote Device function and CC-Link board can be used to connect to the CNC to the CC-Link fieldbus of Mitsubishi Electric.

The CC-Link functions can be operated as remote device stations (slave stations) and can communicate with control units compliant with CC-Link master stations.

Specification:

- Transfer rate (Baud rate): 156K/625K/2.5M/5M/10M bps.
- Station number: 1 to 64
- Number of occupied stations: 1 to 4
- Maximum transfer data size (when 4 stations are occupied):
  - Remote output RY: 16 bytes (128 bits), user area 14 bytes, system 2 bytes
  - Remote input RY: 16 bytes (128 bits), user area 14 bytes, system 2 bytes
  - Remote register RWw: 16 words (32 bytes)
  - Remote register RWr: 16 words (32 bytes)

Note:

- The CC-Link functions cannot be used simultaneously as the DeviceNet functions or the PROFIBUS-DP functions

Benefits

- Connect to PLCs and equipment using CC-Link network
- Decrease of the time required to design and setup the system
- Improvement of machine flexibility and increase of the system efficiency / productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0348-J320	0i-FP CC-Link Remote Device Station Board
A02B-0349-R954	0i-TFP CC-Link Remote Device Function
A02B-0350-R954	0i-MFP CC-Link Remote Device Function
A02B-0353-J320	30i/31i/32i-BP CC-LINK Remote Device Station Board

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

650

Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R954	30i-BP CC-LINK Remote Device Function
A02B-0356-R954	31i-B5P CC-LINK Remote Device Function
A02B-0357-R954	31i-BP CC-LINK Remote Device Function
A02B-0358-R954	32i-BP CC-LINK Remote Device Function
A02B-0359-R954	30i-LB Plus CC-LINK Remote Device Function
A02B-0360-R954	31i-LB Plus CC-LINK Remote Device Function
A02B-0362-R954	31i-PB Plus CC-LINK Remote Device Function
A02B-0364-R954	PM i-A Plus CC-LINK Remote Device Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

651
CC-Link

CC-Link IE Field

Features

CC-Link IE Field is a field network to transfer DI/DO signals with high speed (1Gbps) and large capacity by using Ethernet. It is possible to connect various devices such as CNCs, PLCs and sensors conforming to CC-Link IE Field. FANUC CNCs operate as a slave stations (intelligent device station) and communicate with CC-Link IE master devices.

Specification:

- Communication speed: 1Gbps
- Station number: 1 to 120
- Maximum transfer data size:
  - Remote output RY: 256 bytes (2048 bits)
  - Remote input RX: 256 bytes (2048 bits)
  - Remote register RWw: 1024 words
  - Remote register RWr: 1024 words

Benefits

- Connect to PLCs and equipment using CC-Link network
- Decrease of the time required to design and setup the system
- Improvement of machine flexibility and increase of the system efficiency / productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0348-J321	CC-Link IE Field Board
A02B-0349-R983	CC-Link IE Field Slave Function
A02B-0350-R983	CC-Link IE Field Slave Function
A02B-0353-J321	30i/31i/32i-BP CC-Link IE Field Board
A02B-0353-R983	30i-BP CC-Link IE Field Slave Function
A02B-0356-R983	31i-B5P CC-Link IE Field Slave Function
A02B-0357-R983	31i-BP CC-Link IE Field Slave Function
A02B-0358-R983	32i-BP CC-Link IE Field Slave Function
A02B-0359-R983	30i-LB Plus CC-Link IE Field Slave Function
A02B-0360-R983	31i-LB Plus CC-Link IE Field Slave Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

652

Specification	Description
A02B-0362-R983	31i-PB Plus CC-Link IE Field Slave Function
A02B-0364-R983	PM i-A Plus CC-Link IE Field Slave Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

653
Communication

EtherCAT

Features

EtherCAT is a field network that enables high-speed communication and high-precision synchronization. The communication standard is managed by the EtherCAT Technology Group (ETG).

The EtherCAT Master function and the EtherCAT Master Board for the CNC provide an easy way to setup the CNC system to connect to popular equipment using EtherCAT. Various control devices such as CNC, PLC, and sensors can be connected. It also realizes gap control for laser that has both convenience of connection and control responsiveness.

Benefits

- Connect devices with EtherCAT interface easily
- Realize Gap Control for laser

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0348-J170	0i-FP EtherCAT Master Board
A02B-0349-R985	0i-TFP EtherCat Master Function
A02B-0350-R985	0i-MFP EtherCat Master Function
A02B-0351-R985	0i-LFP EtherCat Master Function
A02B-0353-J170	30i-BP EtherCAT Master Board
A02B-0353-R985	30i-BP EtherCat Master Function
A02B-0356-R985	31i-B5P EtherCat Master Function
A02B-0357-R985	31i-BP EtherCat Master Function
A02B-0358-R985	32i-BP EtherCat Master Function
A02B-0359-R985	30i-LBP EtherCat Master Function
A02B-0360-R985	31i-LBP EtherCat Master Function
A02B-0362-R985	31i-PB Plus EtherCat Master Function
A02B-0364-R985	PM i-A Plus EtherCat Master Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

654
Communication

Modbus/TCP Server

Features

Modbus/TCP Server function enables the connection to PLCs and equipment via the Modbus protocol over Ethernet. Modbus is a very popular protocol which is available on many automation devices. The Modbus/TCP function provides an easy way to setup the system installation and the connection to many PLCs, supervision systems and equipment using Modbus/TCP.

The Modbus/TCP Server function can be used on the following Ethernet hardware:

- The "Embedded Ethernet port"
- The "Fast Ethernet board"
- The "Multi-Function Ethernet port"

Notes:

- When Modbus/TCP is used on the "Embedded Ethernet port" of the CNC, the number of clients connected at the same time to the CNC is limited to 3 instead of 10 for the "Fast Ethernet board" or the "Multi-Function Ethernet port".
- Refer to the connection manual for additional information on the Modbus/TCP data type supported, the size of the data tables as well as the function specifications.
- The Ethernet hardware of the CNC supports several concurrent protocols and connections. Refer to the connection manuals for details and limitations that may exist.
- If using Modbus/TCP with the "Multi-Function Ethernet port" or the "Fast Ethernet board", the "Ethernet Function" (see "Fast Ethernet") is required.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

Benefits

- Connect to PLCs and equipment by ModBus/TCP network over Ethernet
- Acceleration of the system installation and commissionning
- Improvement of machine flexibility and increase of the system efficiency / productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R968	0i-TFP MODBUS/TCP Server Function
A02B-0350-R968	0i-MFP MODBUS/TCP Server Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

655

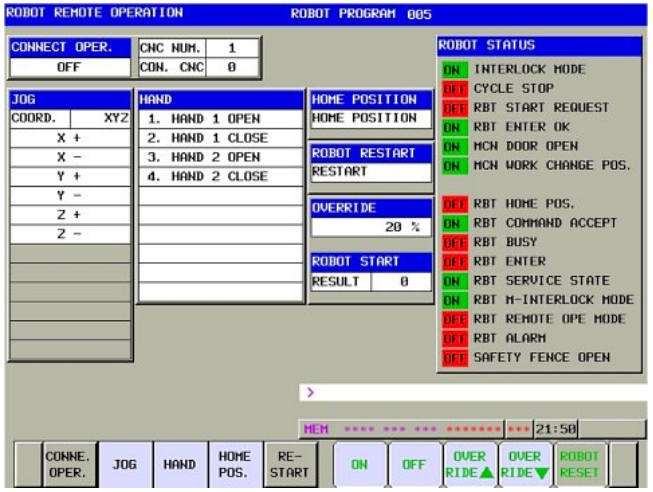
Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R968	30i-BP MODBUS / TCP Server Function
A02B-0356-R968	31i-B5P MODBUS / TCP Server Function
A02B-0357-R968	31i-BP MODBUS / TCP Server Function
A02B-0358-R968	32i-BP MODBUS / TCP Server Function
A02B-0359-R968	30i-LB Plus MODBUS / TCP Server Function
A02B-0360-R968	31i-LB Plus MODBUS / TCP Server Function
A02B-0362-R968	31i-PB Plus MODBUS / TCP Server Function
A02B-0364-R968	PM i-A Plus MODBUS/TCP Server Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

656
Communication



Robot Connection Function

Features

A standard interface between a FANUC robot and any machine tool equipped with a FANUC CNC significantly reduces the integration time and cost. Simple customizable wizards built into the robot pendant step the integrator through the settings for the I/O interface, grippers, programs and positions.

FANUC robots and up to four FANUC CNCs can be easily connected into a system using Ethernet or I/O-Link. Robot operation and monitoring can be performed through one of integrated FANUC CNC screens in a cell without entering the safety zone of the robot. Custom CNC screens can be quickly created by the integrator using FANUC Picture to simplify the cell operation. Similarly, screens on the robot pendant can also be used for complete CNC and robot system operation and monitoring.

NCGuidePro and ROBOGUIDE simulators can be used on a PC to test, debug and program the integrated system. The integrated simulation systems can be used to teach the robot accurate workpiece exchange positions. CNC part programs can be executed and the total system operation can be visualized.

The Robot Connection Function provides the following functionalities:

- Connection of CNC and Robot
- Display of the robot status and operation (jog robot axes in "joint" or "cartesian" modes, issue macro programs for gripper control, etc.) on the CNC screen
- Display of CNC status and operation (jog of the feed axes, adjustment of tool offsets) on the iPendant of the Robot

To speed up the setup of this function on both Robot and CNC, robot connection sample programs are provided; it includes FANUC PICTURE sample screens for robot remote operation for the CNC as well as ladder programs for the CNC and the Robot. All programs can be customised if required.

Benefits

- Easy connection of FANUC CNC and robots
- Time saving during development and setup
- Improvement of the system efficiency
- Decrease of the Total Cost of Ownership (TCO)

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R683	0i-TFP Robot Connection Function
A02B-0350-R683	0i-MFP Robot Connection Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

657

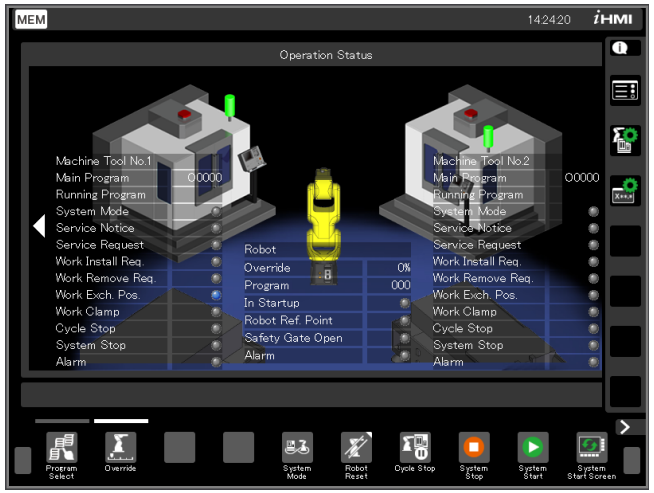
Specification	Description
A02B-0353-R683	30i-BP Robot Connection Function
A02B-0356-R683	31i-B5P Robot Connection Function
A02B-0357-R683	31i-BP Robot Connection Function
A02B-0358-R683	32i-BP Robot Connection Function
A02B-0359-R683	30i-LB Plus Robot Connection Function
A02B-0360-R683	31i-LB Plus Robot Connection Function
A02B-0362-R683	31i-PB Plus Robot Connection Function
A02B-0364-R683	PM i-A Plus Robot Connection Function
A08B-9510-J550	30i/31i/32i-A, 30i/31i/32i/35i-B, PM i-A, 0i-D Robot Connection Function Sample Programs

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

658
Communication



Robot CONNECT

Features

Robot CONNECT is an interface between machine tools with FANUC CNC and FANUC robots.

Loading and unloading machine tools with a robot improves productivity. Using this function, you can combine a FANUC robot and up to 4 machine tools with FANUC CNCs quickly and easily. CNC and robot are connected by an Ethernet cable. Function blocks are provided in order to speed up ladder development. And guidance functions help you to set up everything properly.

You can operate the robot from a machining program by an M code, e.g. to exchange the workpiece in the machine tool. You can jog the robot and check its status from the CNC on dedicated iHMI screens.

Benefits

- Utilize robots to increase machine tool productivity
- Save time and money by speeding up robot integration

Ordering Information

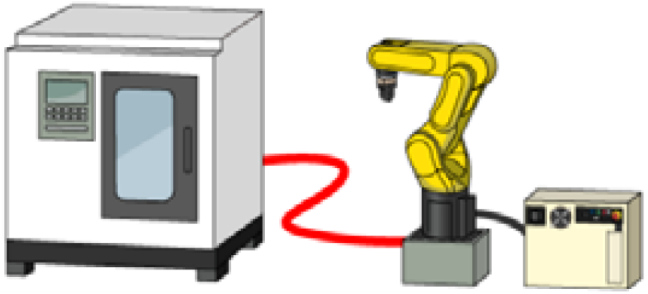
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R011	0i-TFP QSSR CONNECT (QSSR for CNC and Robot)
A02B-0350-R011	0i-MFP QSSR CONNECT (QSSR for CNC and Robot)
A02B-0351-R011	0i-LFP QSSR CONNECT (QSSR for CNC and Robot)
A02B-0353-R011	30i-BP QSSR CONNECT (QSSR for CNC and Robot)
A02B-0356-R011	31i-B5P QSSR CONNECT (QSSR for CNC and Robot)
A02B-0357-R011	31i-BP QSSR CONNECT (QSSR for CNC and Robot)
A02B-0358-R011	32i-BP QSSR CONNECT (QSSR for CNC and Robot)
A02B-0359-R011	30i-LBP QSSR CONNECT (QSSR for CNC and Robot)
A02B-0360-R011	31i-LBP QSSR CONNECT (QSSR for CNC and Robot)
A02B-0362-R011	31i-PB Plus QSSR CONNECT (QSSR for CNC and Robot)
A02B-0364-R011	PM i-A Plus QSSR CONNECT (QSSR for CNC and Robot)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

659
Communication



Robot G-CODE

Features

With Robot G-CODE, you can control a FANUC robot from a FANUC CNC by G-code commands.

Loading and unloading machine tools with a robot improves productivity. Instead of using robot language, it is possible to control the robot using programming methods that are familiar to machine tool users. In addition, using the robot program creation screen on CNC, you can create a robot operation program while positioning the robot with a manual handle.

Benefits

- Utilize robots to increase machine tool productivity
- Save time and money by speeding up robot integration

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R012	0i-TFP Robot G-CODE
A02B-0350-R012	0i-MFP Robot G-CODE
A02B-0351-R012	31i-LFP Robot G-CODE
A02B-0353-R012	30i-BP Robot G-CODE
A02B-0356-R012	31i-B5P Robot G-CODE
A02B-0357-R012	31i-BP Robot G-CODE
A02B-0358-R012	32i-BP Robot G-CODE
A02B-0359-R012	30i-LBP Robot G-CODE
A02B-0360-R012	31i-LBP Robot G-CODE
A02B-0362-R012	31i-PB Plus Robot G-CODE
A02B-0364-R012	PM i-A Plus Robot G-CODE

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

660
Communication

Addition of Macro Variables for Robot Connection

Features

QSSR ON-SITE allows communication between CNC and Robot through macro variables. 25 macro variables are generally available for this purpose. This option increases the number of macro variables to 100, allowing for complex communication between the CNC and Robot, e.g. for loading/unloading. With this option, it is possible to save time, because no search for unused macro variables is necessary.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R077	0i-TFP Additional of Macro Variables für Robot Connection
A02B-0350-R077	0i-MFP Additional of Macro Variables für Robot Connection
A02B-0351-R077	0i-LFP Additional of Macro Variables für Robot Connection
A02B-0353-R077	30i-BP Additional of Macro Variables für Robot Connection
A02B-0356-R077	31i-B5P Additional of Macro Variables für Robot Connection
A02B-0357-R077	31i-BP Additional of Macro Variables für Robot Connection
A02B-0358-R077	32i-BP Additional of Macro Variables für Robot Connection
A02B-0359-R077	30i-LBP Additional of Macro Variables für Robot Connection
A02B-0360-R077	31i-LBP Additional of Macro Variables für Robot Connection
A02B-0362-R077	31i-PB Plus Additional of Macro Variables für Robot Connection

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

661
Communication

QSSR AUTO PATH Manual Handle Feed

Features

This option enables positioning of the Robot by Manual Pulse Generator connected to the CNC instead of teach pendant when connecting online to the actual CNC and Robot with QSSR AUTO PATH. This allows intuitive Robot operation by using the Manual Pulse Generator, which is familiar to machine tool operators. It also enables Robot operations such as changing the manual feed coordinate system and coordinate system number from QSSR AUTO PATH software and Robot program generation without using the teach pendant.

Ordering Information

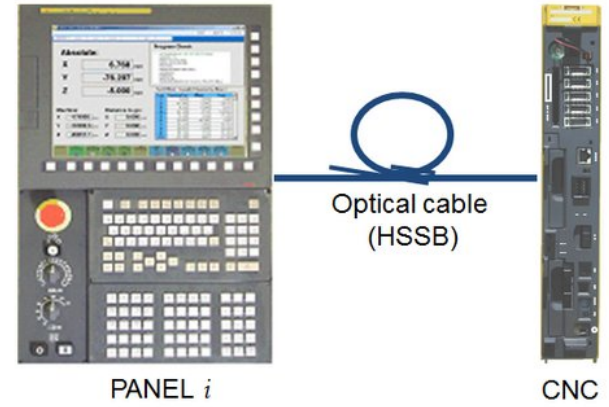
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R039	0i-TFP QSSR Auto Path Manual Handle Feed
A02B-0350-R039	0i-MFP QSSR Auto Path Manual Handle Feed
A02B-0351-R039	0i-LFP QSSR Auto Path Manual Handle Feed
A02B-0353-R039	30i-BP QSSR Auto Path Manual Handle Feed
A02B-0356-R039	31i-B5P QSSR Auto Path Manual Handle Feed
A02B-0357-R039	31i-BP QSSR Auto Path Manual Handle Feed
A02B-0358-R039	32i-BP QSSR Auto Path Manual Handle Feed
A02B-0359-R039	30i-LBP QSSR Auto Path Manual Handle Feed
A02B-0360-R039	31i-LBP QSSR Auto Path Manual Handle Feed
A02B-0362-R039	31i-PB Plus QSSR Auto Path Manual Handle Feed

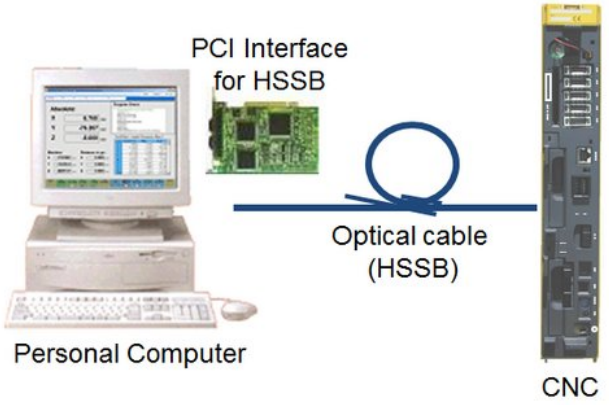
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

662
Communication





Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

High Speed Serial Bus (HSSB)

Features

The FANUC HSSB (High Speed Serial Bus) is a FANUC proprietary communication protocol and hardware designed for point to point communication. It can be used to communicate between a CNC and a PANEL iH Pro or between a CNC and a Personal Computer. The bus is mainly used within the "Open CNC" concept of FANUC.

The HSSB communication uses Fiber Optics cables as transmission media; it is therefore very robust and noise immune.

FANUC provides optional boards for certain CNC models and PCI Express cards for Personal Computers. The PANEL iH Pro PC display units and recent FANUC CNC feature on-board HSSB ports.

The PORT2 function provides the capability to operate the same function on different hardware boards at the same time. Example: if the HSSB function and the HSSB PORT2 function are specified, it is possible to connect 2 Personal Computers to one CNC at the same time.

Related functions:

- FOCAS / FOCAS 2
- Basic Operation Package 2
- Ladder Editing Package
- DNC Management Package
- CNC Screen Display Function

Benefits

- Simple, robust and noise immune connection betwen CNC and Personnal Computers or Panel i
- Simplification of the integration of an "Open CNC" concept
- Improvement of machine flexibility and increase of the system efficiency / productivity

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0207-J900	30i/31i/32i-A, 30i/31i/32i/35i-B, PM i-A Extended Drivers and Libraries
A02B-0348-J202	0i-FP CNC Side HSSB Interface Board A
A02B-0349-S749	0i-TF Plus FOCAS2 / HSSB Port 2 Function
A02B-0350-S749	0i-MF Plus FOCAS2 / HSSB Port 2 Function
A02B-0353-J202	30i/31i/32i-BP CNC Side HSSB Interface Board A
A02B-0353-S749	30i-BP FOCAS2 / HSSB Port-2 Function
A02B-0356-S749	31i-B5P FOCAS2 / HSSB Port-2 Function

663

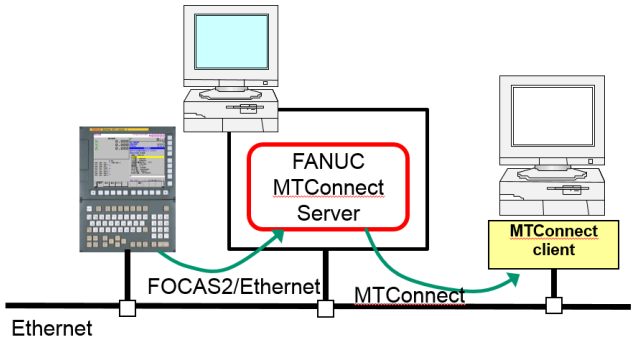
Specification	Description
A02B-0357-S749	31i-BP FOCAS2 / HSSB Port-2 Function
A02B-0358-S749	32i-BP FOCAS2 / HSSB Port-2 Function
A02B-0359-S749	30i-LB Plus FOCAS2 / HSSB Port-2 Function
A02B-0360-S749	31i-LB Plus FOCAS2 / HSSB Port-2 Function
A02B-0362-S749	31i-PB Plus FOCAS2 / HSSB Port-2 Function
A02B-0364-S749	PM i-A Plus FOCAS2 / HSSB Port-2 Function
A13B-0204-C021	PC Side HSSB Interface Board (1 Channel) for PCI Express Bus (Low Profile) - to communicate to CNC Models FS 30i/31i/32i-A/B, 35i-B, Power Motion i-A or 0i-D
A13B-0204-C022	PC Side HSSB Interface Board (1 Channel) for PCI Express Bus (Standard Height) - to communicate to CNC Models FS 30i/31i/32i-A/B, 35i-B, Power Motion i-A or 0i-D

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

664
Communication



MTConnect Server Function

Features

MTConnect is a protocol to retrieve data from factory equipment such as machine tools by client applications used for data analysis and monitoring. With the software "FANUC MTConnect Server", you can read data from machine tools equipped with FANUC CNCs. The software collects data from CNCs and PMCs and provides them to client applications via MTConnect protocol.

This option is required on the CNC in order to use the "FANUC MTConnect Server" software.

Benefits

- Read data from FANUC CNCs and PMCs via MTConnect
- Use client applications from the market that require MTConnect

Ordering Information

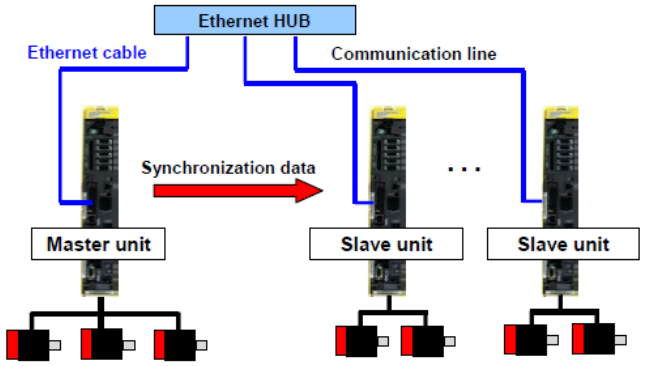
Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R982	0i-TFP MTConnect Server Function
A02B-0350-R982	0i-MFP MTConnect Server Function
A02B-0353-R982	30i-BP MTConnect Server Function
A02B-0356-R982	31i-B5P MTConnect Server Function
A02B-0357-R982	31i-BP MTConnect Server Function
A02B-0358-R982	32i-BP MTConnect Server Function
A02B-0359-R982	30i-LB Plus MTConnect Server Function
A02B-0360-R982	31i-LB Plus MTConnect Server Function
A02B-0362-R982	31i-PB Plus MTConnect Server Function
A02B-0364-R982	PM i-A Plus MTConnect Server Function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

665
Communication



Inter-Unit Synchronization (Power Motion i-A)

Features

With Inter-Unit Synchronization, it is possible to synchronize axes that are controlled by different Power Motion controllers. Up to 7 slave units can be connected to one master unit by an Ethernet-based communication line. Any axis on a slave unit can be synchronized with an axis on the master unit. Up to 256 synchronized axes can be controlled this way.

The Inter-Unit Synchronous Board has to be mounted on each unit. The Multi-Axes Synchronous function and the FL-net function options are required to use Inter-Unit Synchronization.

Benefits

- Synchronize more than 32 axes controlled by Power Motion

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0364-J159	PM i-A Plus Inter-Unit Synchronous Board

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

666
CNC

Software FA

This section of the catalogue describes software tools.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

667

Software FA



PC Software

This section groups all the different software products that are used when dealing with CNC systems such as

- Software for Operator Control (e.g. Manual Guide)
- Development Software (e.g. FANUC Ladder, C-Executor, ...)
- PC Opterating Software (e.g. Windows®)
- HMI Software (e.g. FANUC Picture)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



iHMI

Features

iHMI is FANUC's new user interface. It has been designed to be extremely easy to use. Intuitive menu icons, high-visibility design and animated features take the head-scratching out of complex machining operations, making accessing even the most sophisticated programs and functionalities straightforward. Despite its more intuitive layout, users will nevertheless find that it provides a familiar FANUC user experience.

This disk contains the iHMI software for PANEL iH and PANEL iH Pro. The iHMI disk is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Easy and simple operation
- Intuitive icons and high-visibility design
- Easy troubleshooting

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0207-K779	iHMI Disk - for CNC Series 0i-TF Plus / 0i-MF Plus
A02B-0207-K787	iHMI Disk - for CNC Series 0i-LF Plus
A02B-0207-K788	iHMI Disk - for CNC Series 30i/31i/32i-B Plus
A02B-0207-K789	iHMI Disk - for CNC Series 30i/31i-LB PLUS
A02B-0207-K796	iHMI Disk - for CNC Series 30i/31i/32i-B Plus iHMI Step 2
A02B-0207-K797	iHMI Disk - for CNC Series 0i-TF Plus / 0i-MF Plus iHMI Step 2
A08B-9110-J728#ZZ12	iHMI Disk (for Standard IPC)

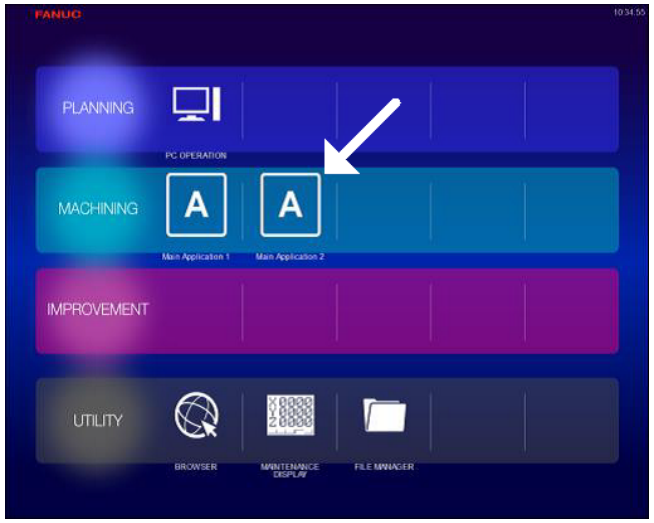
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

669

PC Software



iHMI Application SDK for PANEL iH

Features

The iHMI Application SDK for Panel iH is a software development kit for the development of iHMI applications on Windows Embedded Compact 7. The necessary documents and libraries for the development of iHMI applications with Visual Studio 2008 are included.

The iHMI Application SDK for PANEL iH is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Personalize iHMI on Panel iH with customer-specific applications easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9110-J713#ZZ11	iHMI Application SDK (Software Development Kit) for PANEL iH

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

670

PC Software



CNC GUIDE

Features

CNC GUIDE and CNC GUIDE Academic Package are FANUC's CNC software running on a PC. They are available with single or multiseat licences. This is the ideal solution for a dedicated training room or development team.

CNC GUIDE provides a realistic operation and part programming environment at a fraction of the cost of using a production machine tool. This translates into lower training costs. It supports both conventional G-code programming, including canned cycles and custom macros, and FANUC's conversational programming, MANUAL GUIDE i.

Comprehension and retention is enhanced as students perform repetitive hands-on exercises in an ergonomically friendly environment - away from the noise of the factory floor. Operators, programmers, and maintenance engineers can all practice common procedures and develop optimized processes without risks to people, tooling or machines.

- The simulation emulates the CNC exactly, which means programs can be written, tested and optimized on the PC bringing productivity gains by working offline and keeping the machine in production.
- Simulators fit to a classroom situation and so both educational and industrial training is easily implemented resulting in better educated and highly motivated staff.

CNC GUIDE provides a superior software development environment for FANUC CNCs, by adding the PMC ladder and machine signal simulation capabilities, and support for the standard FANUC operator panel. When combined with other FANUC software development tools (FANUC LADDER III, FANUC PICTURE, C- and MACRO EXECUTOR), CNC GUIDE provides a more efficient development environment that an actual CNC.

CNC GUIDE 2 is FANUC's CNC simulation software with additional functions for Digital Twins. It simulates an accurate tool path and speed, taking smoothing functions like Smooth Tolerance^{+} Control into account. With Surface Estimation for SERVO VIEWER, it is possible to evaluate the machining surface before actual machining.

Ordering Information (Electronic Licenses)

The software can be downloaded from MyFANUC. The license is available in the FANUC E-Store.

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J790#ZZ99	CNC GUIDE (Software License 1 User)
A08B-9010-J791#ZZ99	CNC GUIDE (Software License 10 Users)
A08B-9010-J792#ZZ99	CNC GUIDE (Software License 20 Users)
A08B-9010-J793#ZZ99	CNC GUIDE (Software License Site License)
A08B-9010-J840#ZZ99	CNC GUIDE 2 (1 User)
A08B-9010-J873#ZZ99	Servo Simulation Data Interface (for CNC GUIDE 2)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0158-C200	FANUC MOP Simulator
A08B-9010-J770#ZZ12	FANUC CNC GUIDE (1 User)
A08B-9010-J771#ZZ12	FANUC CNC GUIDE (10 Users)
A08B-9010-J772#ZZ12	FANUC CNC GUIDE (20 Users)
A08B-9010-J773#ZZ12	FANUC CNC GUIDE (Site License)
A08B-9010-J774#ZZ12	FANUC CNC GUIDE (Update) - for Updating A08B-9010-J770#ZZ12 - ...-J773#ZZ12

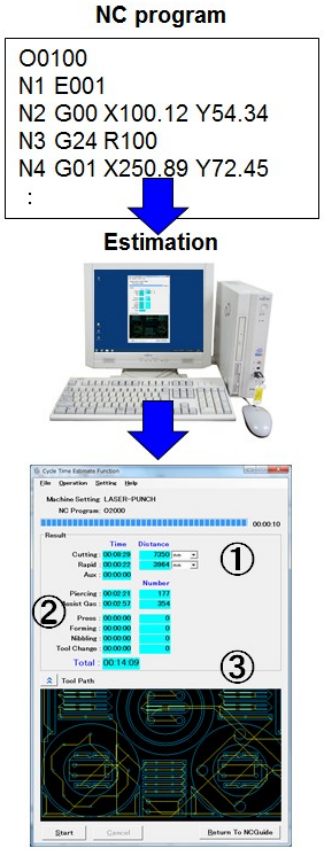
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

672

CNC GUIDE



Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Cycle Time Estimate Function for CNC GUIDE

Features

The Cycle Time Estimation Function is a Personal Computer tool that can quickly estimate the machining cycle time of NC program. With this function, the following estimations are delivered by the software (refer to illustration):

- Travel distance (1)
- Cycle time (2)
- Path drawing (3)

Key highlights

- The accuracy of the estimation made is higher than estimations made with 3rd party software; the reason of this higher accuracy is that the cycle time is calculated including the acceleration / deceleration
- The target program can be selected and the NC parameter can be set as on a real machine and CNC using CNC GUIDE
- The machining time of a complex program can be estimated, for example from a 5-axis machining cycle

Details of the estimated data

Because not only the entire cycle time of specified NC program but also time of rapid traverse and cutting, as well as distance are calculated, the tool provides a very efficient method to optimize machining cycles, decrease the processing time and extend the tool life.

The Estimation Function is available for the program of machining center and one path and provides the following details:

- Entire processing time
- Rapid traverse time
- Cutting feed time (calculated with the time of acceleration / deceleration but without taking in consideration the lag provided by the servo motors, the spindle and the machine time)
- Processing time of miscellaneous functions (the total of the time of each M/S/T/B code set beforehand is multiplied at the entire processing time
- Macro processing time (Custom Macro and Execution Macro can be executed except that the macro processing time is not included in the entire processing time)
- Rapid traverse distance
- Cutting feed distance (traveled distance of the tool center point is calculated)

673

Accuracy

The accuracy of the estimation time depends on many factors, but essentialy is linked to the type of machining process. The estimation reaches a higher accuracy under the following conditions:

- When the processing time of the estimated machining duration is longer
- When the ratio of cutting and rapid traverse is higher
- When the ratio of miscellaneous function is lower

Benefits

- Optimization of machining cycles (reduction of time, increase of accuracy and reduction of tool wear)
- Increase of the machine productivity
- Reduction of trials with real cutting, especially for expensive materials

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J753#ZZ12	Disk for Cycle Time Estimate Function (for NCGuide), DVD
A08B-9010-J757#ZZ12	Disk for Cycle Time Estimate Function (for NCGuide), DVD - Update

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

674
CNC GUIDE



CNC GUIDE Academic Package

Features

The CNC GUIDE Academic Package is a special variant of CNC GUIDE for schools and universities. It's the ideal tool for individual or group training. To suit educational purposes, the Functionality has been reduced and the license model has been adapted.

Ordering Information (Electronic Licenses)

The software can be downloaded from MyFANUC. The license is available in the FANUC E-Store.

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J764#ZZ99	CNC GUIDE Academic Package (Software License Classroom / 16 Users)
A08B-9010-J765#ZZ99	CNC GUIDE Academic Package (Software License Classroom / 32 Users)
A08B-9010-J766#ZZ99	CNC GUIDE Academic Package (Software License Homework / 1 Year)
A08B-9010-J767#ZZ99	CNC GUIDE Academic Package (Software License Homework / 3 Years)

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J751#ZZ12	FANUC NCGuide Academic Package (Classroom) - License for 16 PCs Connected to Network (DVD)
A08B-9010-J752#ZZ12	FANUC NCGuide Academic Package (Student) - License for 1 PC Not Connected to Network, Valid for 1 Year (DVD)
A08B-9010-J761#ZZ12	FANUC NCGuide Academic Package (Classroom) - Licence for 32 Users
A08B-9010-J762#ZZ12	FANUC NCGuide Academic Package (Homework) - Licence for 1 User, Valid for 3 Years

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

675

PC Software

CNC GUIDE 2

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R874	0i-TFP CNC GUIDE 2 Library
A02B-0350-R874	0i-MFP CNC GUIDE 2 Library
A02B-0353-R874	30i-BP CNC GUIDE 2 Library
A02B-0356-R874	31i-B5P CNC GUIDE 2 Library
A02B-0357-R874	31i-BP CNC GUIDE 2 Library
A02B-0358-R874	32i-BP CNC GUIDE 2 Library

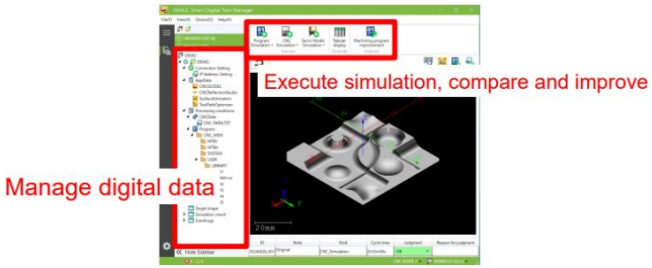
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

676

PC Software



FANUC Smart Digital Twin

Features

FANUC Smart Digital Twin Manager is a PC software that supports machining process improvement by FANUC Digital Twin software. The following functions reduce the workload of machining process improvement in digital space:

- Execute simulation that combine each software with simple operations, and compare and improve execution results
- Manage related data for machining process improvement work all at once
- Easy to manage execution conditions and results, assisting in finding optimal processing conditions and applying them on site

Ordering Information (Electronic Licenses)

The software can be downloaded from MyFANUC. The license is available in the FANUC E-Store.

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-K872#ZZ99	FANUC Smart Digital Twin Manager (1 User)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

677

PC Software



CNC Reflection Studio

Features

FANUC CNC Reflection Studio is a Windows application which is used for CNC part program creation, editing and CNC machine animation which gives a visual representation of the machine, work piece, fixtures, and tooling. The software allows for viewing the running program and viewing the machine simulation. This virtual machining and visualization software is ideal for part program verification before sending the part program to the production process. FANUC CNC Reflection Studio also contains an online mode which allows connection to FANUC CNC controllers or CNC GUIDE 2 to simulate the machine motion and cutting.

The software allows inputting machine models, work piece models and tool assemblies to be used in the simulation. Programs can be automatically stopped in the event of software limit over travels, tool-part impact, breakpoint, text match and unrecognized commands. Part programs can be created, edited and modified by cutting and pasting, deleting, or modifying texts. The finished part can also be output in STL format to check program integrity.

Also included with FANUC CNC Reflection Studio is a utility which allows the construction of machine kinematic files used with FANUC CNC Reflection Studio simulations.

Ordering Information (Electronic Licenses)

The software can be downloaded from MyFANUC. The license is available in the FANUC E-Store.

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J820#ZZ99	FANUC CNC Reflection Studio Essential (1 User)
A08B-9010-J821#ZZ99	FANUC CNC Reflection Studio Complex Milling Extension (1 User)
A08B-9010-J822#ZZ99	FANUC CNC Reflection Studio Machine Simulator Extension (1 User)
A08B-9010-J823#ZZ99	FANUC CNC Reflection Studio Milling Professional Package (1 User)
A08B-9010-J824#ZZ99	FANUC CNC Reflection Studio (1 User, Trial license)

Benefits

- Easier parameter tuning on a computer in combination with CNC GUIDE 2
- Promotion of sales of machines by providing geometric models of machines to users
- Easier improvement of processing conditions and machining programs on a computer

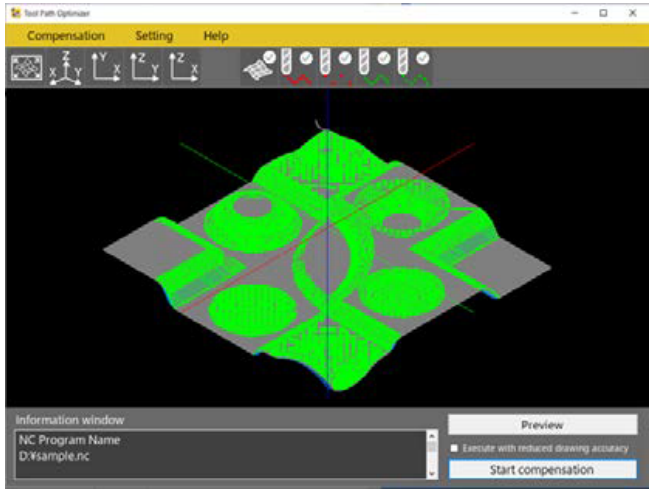
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

678

PC Software



Tool Path Optimizer

Features

Tool Path Optimizer is a software that optimizes machining programs in order to improve surface quality, especially in die/mold machining.

CAM systems typically create machining programs for freeform surfaces using linear interpolation for the approximation of the surface. If the settings of the CAM system were not optimal, this may cause cutter marks on the surface. And sometimes command points do not align at an edge of the machining shape, so the edge will not be a clean line or curve.

Tool Path Optimizer rearranges, adds or removes command points in the machining program in order to make it run smoothly and improve surface quality. It takes the machining program and the CAD file of the workpiece as input and uses the CAD data to make the compensations in the machining program. As a result, the surface quality is improved.

Ordering Information (Electronic Licenses)

The software can be downloaded from MyFANUC. The license is available in the FANUC E-Store.

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J816#ZZ99	Tool Path Optimizer

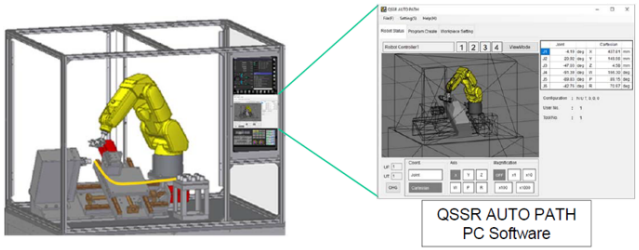
Notice

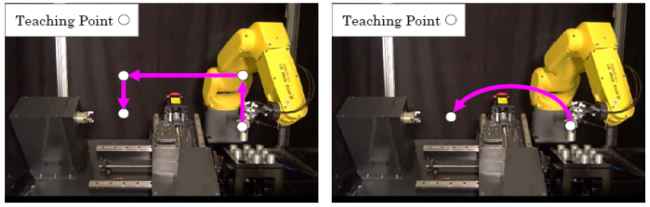
Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

679

PC Software





When using a teach pendant

When using QSSR AUTO PATH

Robot Auto Path Generation (former name: QSSR AUTO PATH)

Features

QSSR AUTO PATH supports automatic generation of a robot program from start position to end position that does not interfere with machine tools, peripherals and robots. Robot programs are stored on the robot controller and can be called from CNC by M code.

The robot program can be generated offline on a PC with CNC GUIDE and ROBOGUIDE, without a machine tool and robot.

A workcell file created by ROBOGUIDE is required.

Ordering Information (Electronic Licenses)

The software can be downloaded from MyFANUC. The license is available in the FANUC E-Store.

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J844#ZZ99	QSSR AUTO PATH (1 User)

Benefits

- No knowledge of robot programming necessary
- Intuitive robot positioning with Manual Pulse Generator
- Check the generated path with an animation

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0349-R027	0i-TFP QSSR Auto Path
A02B-0364-R027	PM i-A Plus QSSR Auto Path

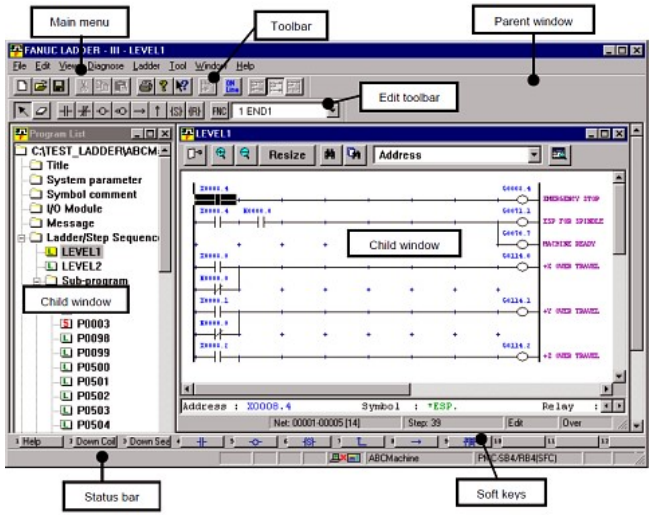
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

680

PC Software



FANUC LADDER-III

Features

FANUC LADDER-III is the standard programming system for developing, diagnosing and maintaining sequence programs for CNC PMC ladder, FANUC's integrated PLC.

Key functions

- Creating, displaying, editing and printing ladder sequence programs
- Monitoring and debugging ladder sequence programs
- Support of the creation, debugging and management of Function Blocks
- Program monitoring
- PMC signal status display
- PMC signal trace
- Writing to flash ROM
- Connection to the CNC via Ethernet
- Works with NCGuidePro on one or multiple PCs

FANUC LADDER-III is available only to machine tool builders.

Ordering Information (Electronic Licenses)

The software can be downloaded from MyFANUC. The license is available in the FANUC E-Store.

Specification	Description
A08B-9210-J550#ZZ99	FANUC LADDER-III (Software License, 1 User)
A08B-9210-J551#ZZ99	FANUC LADDER-III (Software License, 10 Users)
A08B-9210-J552#ZZ99	FANUC LADDER-III (Software License, 20 Users)
A08B-9210-J553#ZZ99	FANUC LADDER-III (Software License, Site License)
A08B-9210-J555#ZZ11	FANUC LADDER-III (Software License, Installer)

Benefits

- Creation of the machine PMC program, startup and debug
- Modification of the PMC program to follow machine and production evolution

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

- Rich maintenance and diagnostics capabilities of the PMC and machine control

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0200-K814	RS232C Cable for Programm Transmission and Online Monitor: PC (SUB-D 9 Pins) <--> Punch Panel (SUB-D 25 Pins), Length 7 m
A08B-9210-J505	FANUC LADDER III - for Windows Vista / 7 / 8 / 8.1 / 10
A08B-9210-J541	FANUC LADDER III (10 Users) Japanese / English
A08B-9210-J542	FANUC LADDER III (20 Users) Japanese / English
A08B-9210-J543	FANUC LADDER III (Site License) Japanese / English
A08B-9210-J544	FANUC LADDER III (Update) Japanese / English

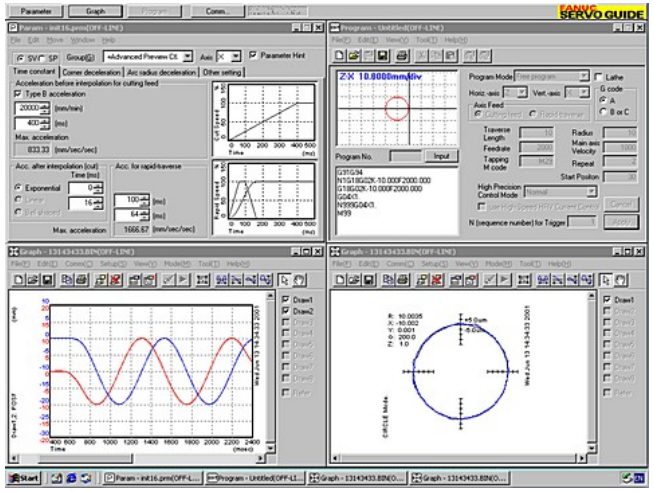
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

682

PC Software



FANUC SERVO GUIDE

Features

FANUC SERVO GUIDE is a Windows® application that allows a quick and easy optimization of servos and spindles axes.

This software provides the integrated environment to test programs, set parameters and data measurement, needed for servo and spindle tuning.

Direct connection is possible between the Personal Computer and CNC through Ethernet.

Key functions

- Easy connection to the CNC
- Integrated working environment for tuning machine servo and spindles
- Integrated and optimized environment for creating, tuning and optimizing programs, measuring data and changing parameters
- Measurement of servo and spindle data as well as external triggering events from the PMCat once
- many automatic adjustment functions

3-D View function

With this function, it is possible to view the result X, Y and Z coordinate data of the 3-D graph captured by SERVO GUIDE. 3-D graph and time-based waveform are displayed in the same window, and a point on 3-D graph easily corresponds to the point on time axis.

For example, it is possible to display tool path of machining center by capturing position data of X, Y and Z axis. By selecting points on the tool path, you can check waveforms of each servo axis, which corresponds to the selected area. 5-axis machining is also supported. Position of 5 axes are converted to tool center point, and 3-D path of tool is visualized. In addition, axis configuration including Cs axis(spindle axis) is also supported.

SERVO GUIDE is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

Effective and easy-to-use PC tool for:

- Setup support for servo and spindle functions
- Optimization of servo and spindle control
- Display of path error for troubleshooting machining quality issues
- Finding potential to reduce machining cycle time

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

- Troubleshooting of servo and spindle related alarms

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J522#ZZ11	FANUC SERVO GUIDE MATE Display
A08B-9010-J900	FANUC SERVO GUIDE Servo Tuning Tool - 1 User
A08B-9010-J904	FANUC SERVO GUIDE Servo Tuning Tool - 3-D View Function (Also Contains Upgrade for FANUC SERVO GUIDE A08B-9010-J900)
A08B-9010-J910	FANUC SERVO GUIDE Servo Tuning Tool - 10 Users
A08B-9010-J919	FANUC SERVO GUIDE Servo Tuning Tool - Upgrade
A08B-9010-J920	FANUC SERVO GUIDE Servo Tuning Tool - 20 Users
A08B-9010-J930	FANUC SERVO GUIDE Servo Tuning Tool - Site License

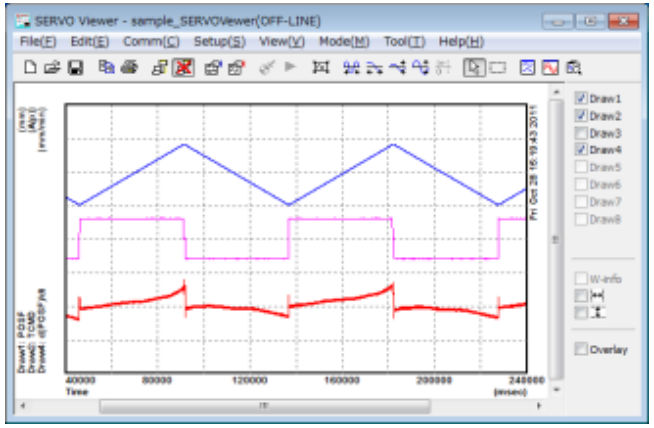
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

684

PC Software



FANUC SERVO VIEWER

Features

SERVO Viewer is a Windows® application software that enables to measure and display various kinds of data from a machine tool with a FANUC CNC. It is possible to acqiure and view servo/spindle data such as position, speed and torque, PMC signals, or CNC status information such as program number, sequence number or M/S/T codes.

Benefits

- Analyze the axis movement and CNC operation timing
- Optimize the CNC program to reduce cycle times
- Monitor the machine's condition by periodical measurements

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J940	Servo Viewer
A08B-9010-J949	Servo Viewer (Update)

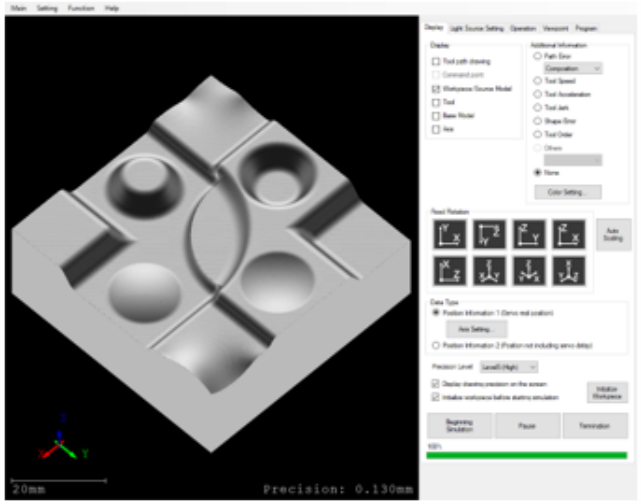
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

685

FANUC SERVO VIEWER



Surface Estimation

Features

Surface Estimation is software that can simulate the machined surface on PC. The machining results can be simulated before actual machining to reduce trial machining. Surface estimation is based on servo data, including machine characteristics.

The application can use data for simulation from an NC program, SERVO VIEWER data, or SERVO GUIDE data for 3-axis linear and 5-axis machining center. Measurement of servo position data during air cutting with SERVO VIEWER.

Servo Position Data can also be measured from CNC GUIDE 2 simulation with SERVO VIEWER. This allows visualization of the estimated surface before actual machining by CNC GUIDE 2 with its embedded Servo Model.

Ordering Information (Electronic Licenses)

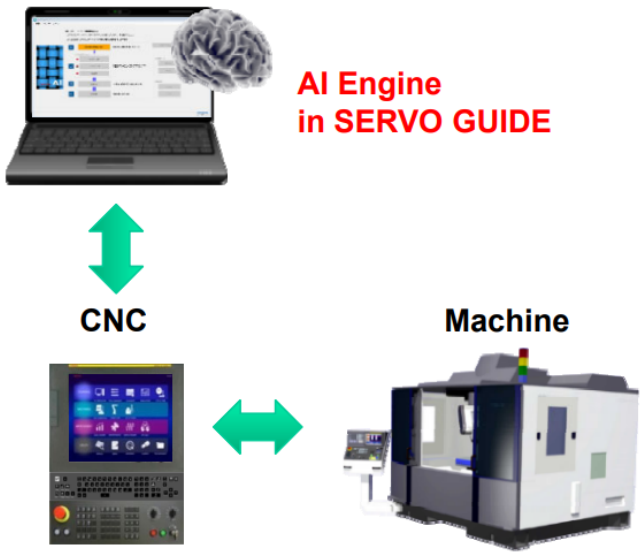
The software can be downloaded from MyFANUC. The license is available in the FANUC E-Store.

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J941#ZZ99	Surface Estimation (Software License, 1 User)
A08B-9010-J943#ZZ99	Surface Estimation Update (Software License, 1 User)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



AI Servo Tuning

Features

AI Servo Tuning is an optional function for SERVO GUIDE. It optimizes the parameters related to axis control using machine learning (AI). You can achieve optimal tuning results in a short time. AI Servo Tuning suppots initial machine tuning as well as on-site adjustments.

AI Servo Tuning consits of 3 tuning items: Gain/Filter tuning improves the responsiveness of the servo system. Feedforward enhances contouring accuracy. And AICC Acc/Dec tuning reduces cycle time.

Ordering Information (Electronic Licenses)

The software can be downloaded from MyFANUC. The license is available in the FANUC E-Store.

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J905#ZZ99	AI Servo Tuning

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

CNC Application Development Kit

Features

The CNC Application Development Kit is a software package that contaions various tools and applications that are useful to machine tool builders. This package contains the following applications:

- FANUC PICTURE
- FOCAS2 Library
- CNC Screen Display Function (HSSB / Ethernet)
- Basic Operation Package 2
- Ladder Editing Package
- Machining Status Monitor Package (HSSB / Ethernet)
- Machine Operation Menu Making Tool
- Main Menu Screen Customization Tool
- Guidance Table for Machine Alarm Diagnosis
- Macro Library (30i / 0i-F / 0i-D / Power Motion i)
- C-Language Library (30i/0i-F / 30i-B CPU-D / 0i-D / Power Motion i)
- Acceptance Test Assist Tool
- Electronic Cam Support Tool
- Operation History Converter Tool
- iHMI Library for PANEL iH Pro
- Execution Macro Converter
- G-code Guidance Customization Tool

The CNC Application Development Kit is available only to machine tool builders.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J555#ZZ12	CNC Application Development Kit

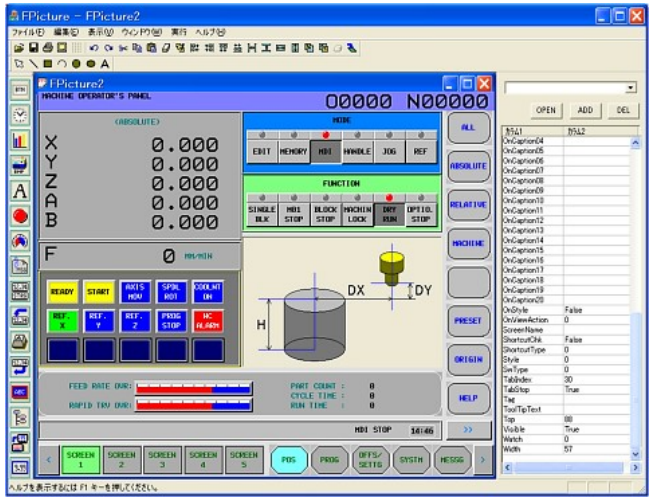
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

688

CNC Application Development Kit



FANUC PICTURE

Features

The FANUC PICTURE software provides a rich set of functions and tools to design and implement customized Human Machine Interfaces (HMI) on the FANUC CNC.

The projects created by FANUC PICTURE are compiled to a format that can be executed directly by the CNC and displayed on the standard LCD screen without requiring additional Personnal Computer display.

FANUC PICTURE is part of the CNC Application Development Kit.

Key functions

- Support of many screen sizes and resolutions
- Support of touch screens, including virtual keypads
- WYSIWYG editor
- Rich set of controls such as keys, switches, push buttons, touch buttons, lamps, scales, etc.
- Many parameters can be adjusted for each of the objects
- No need to program, just draw and parameter
- Support of multi-language HMI application
- Easy import-export of projects, variables, descriptions and translations
- Script language (scheduled or event driven) to execute complex tasks

FANUC PICTURE is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Creation of customized HMI on the FANUC CNC
- Powerful HMI without the requirement of PC hardware
- Simple modification of the HMI to follow machine and production evolution

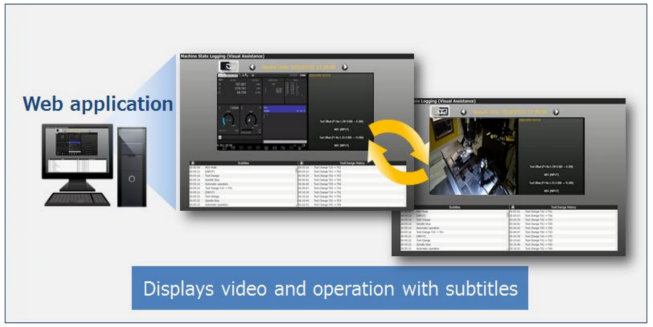
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

689

CNC Application Development Kit



Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)

Features

Solving troubles such as machining surface defects and accuracy defects takes time. Having information about the operation details and the machine state of the machine tool can simplify troubleshooting and save time.

Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance) provides CNC screen and CNC data including operation history and the Web application records the machine tool operation on video with subtitles based on the operation history. This Web Application has functions to receive CNC screen and CNC data (operation history) from CNC, to record it on a PC, and to display it in a Web browser.

An option on the CNC is necessary to enable Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance).

Ordering Information

The software can be downloaded from MyFANUC.

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J541#ZZ99	Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)

Benefits

- Simplify troubleshooting of machine tools for maximizing uptime
- Checking machine status on video remotely

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

690

CNC Application Development Kit

FANUC

FOCAS2 Library

CNC/PMC Data window library

FOCAS Library

Features

FOCAS2 (FANUC Open CNC API Specification) is the protocol used to be able to interact with the FANUC CNC from an external Personal Computer (PC).

The FOCAS2 library provides all required functions to be able to develop Windows® applications which can communicate with a FANUC CNC via either Ethernet or HSSB (fiber optics).

Key functions

- Reading/writing data related to controlled axes/spindle
- Operations related to CNC program
- Reading/writing CNC file data
- Reading/writing tool life management data
- Reading history data
- Reading servo/spindle data
- Reading/writing data related to Data Server, DNC1, DNC2, OSI-Ethernet (HSSB version only)
- Reading/writing waveform diagnosis data
- Reading/writing data related to PUNCH PRESS CNC
- Reading/writing data related to LASER CNC
- Reading/writing data related to servo learning data (HSSB version only)
- Reading/writing of other data (diagnostic data, alarm information, operator messages,etc.)
- Reading/writing data related to PMC
- Reading/writing data related to PROFIBUS-DP

Benefits

- Creation of customized functions and applications under Windows®
- Modification of Macro Programs to follow machine and production evolution
- Easy access to many ressources of the FANUC CNC to create advanced applications

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

691

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0207-K737	FOCAS 1/2 Library Disk
A02B-0207-K747	FOCAS 2 / Ethernet Library Disk for Linux
A02B-0207-K748	FOCAS 1/2 Library Disk for Others than MTB

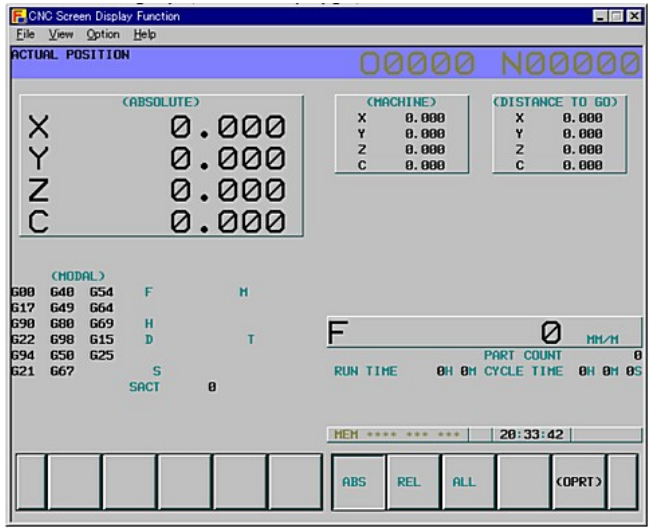
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

692

CNC Application Development Kit



CNC Screen Display Function (SDF)

Features

The CNC Screen Display Function (SDF) Windows® application provides a straight-forward tool to display the CNC screens on PC. The CNC can be connected to the PC running the SDF application via Ethernet or HSSB.

Because of the special structure of the SDF application, it is not necessary to update SDF if some new functions are added to the CNC. This makes SDF the best tool for CNC maintenance and setup on Open CNC systems.

This function is a basic function in FANUC Series 30i-B Plus.

The CNC Screen Display function installation files are also part of the CNC Application Development Kit.

Benefits

- Simplified access to the CNC screen from a Personal Computer
- Simple and efficient remote maintenance tool

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0207-J858	CNC Screen Display Function - Specify "Extended Drivers and Libraries" for HSSB Connection, or Specify "Ethernet Function" for Fast Ethernet Connection
A02B-0207-J896	30i/31i/32i-B Windows Embedded Compact 7 - CNC Screen Display Function
A02B-0207-K775	CNC Screen Display Function Disk (HSSB) - Specify for Each PANEL i / PC when Using SDF via HSSB
A02B-0207-K776	CNC Screen Display Function Disk (FOCAS2 / Ethernet) - Specify for Each PANEL i / PC when Using SDF via Ethernet

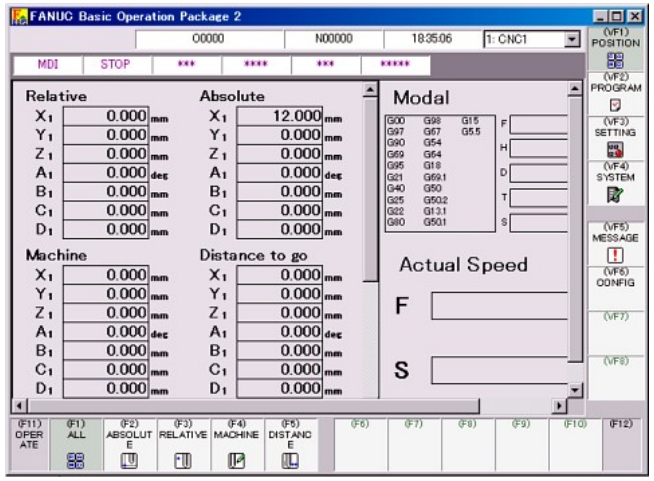
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

693

CNC Application Development Kit



Basic Operation Package 2

Features

The Basic Operation Package 2 is a native Windows® software which allows the CNC operations on a PC.

It offers the same comfort and operability in order that users of FANUC CNC can quickly become familiar with the system. Basic Operation Package 2 can be customized to even increase the operability and efficiency and match the machine requirement. Screens can be added, modified or removed.

The Basic Operation Package 2 is designed to be used with a Personal Computer display connected via HSSB or Ethernet to a FANUC CNC.

Basic Operation Package 2 is based on Microsoft® .NET Framework®. Screens can be created / modified using simple XML configuration.

The Basic Operation Package 2 installation files are also part of the CNC Application Development Kit.

Benefits

- Simplified implementation of the CNC operation for a Personal Computer
- Simple and efficient customization

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0207-J816	Basic Operation Package 2 Function (BOP 2)

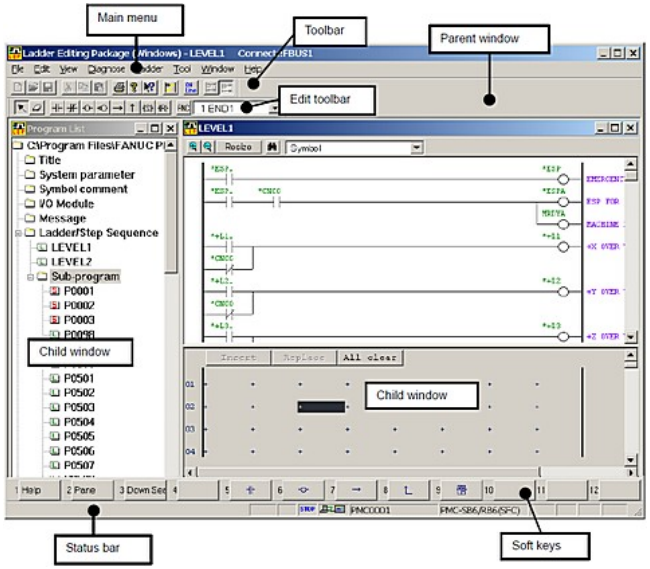
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

694

CNC Application Development Kit



LADDER Editing Package

Features

LADDER Editing Package is a programming system for developing, diagnosing and maintaining sequence programs for CNC PMC ladder, FANUC's integrated PLC.

The LADDER Editing Package has been designed as a Windows® application which can reside on the Personal Computer display unit connected to a FANUC CNC (Open CNC).

Key functions

- Creating, displaying, editing and printing ladder sequence programs
- Monitoring and debugging ladder sequence programs
- Program monitoring
- PMC signal status display
- PMC signal trace
- Writing to flash ROM
- Connection to the CNC via Ethernet
- Works with NCGuidePro on one or multiple PCs

The LADDER Editing Package installation files are part of the CNC Application Development Kit. LADDER Editing Package is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Creation of the machine PMC program, startup and debug
- Modification of the PMC program to follow machine and production evolution
- Rich maintenance and diagnostics capabilities of the PMC and machine control

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0207-J820	FANUC LADDER Editing Package - Ethernet

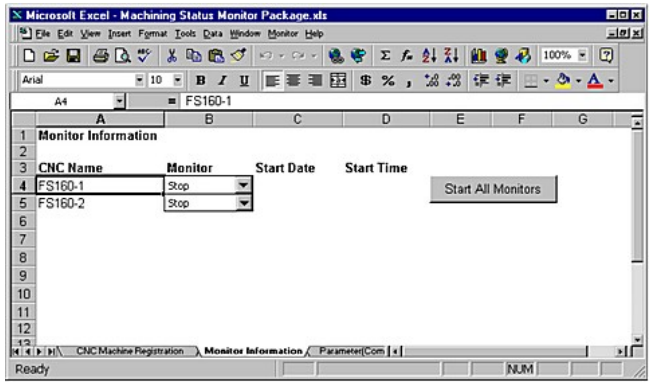
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

695

CNC Application Development Kit



Machining Status Monitor Package Disk

Features

The Machining Status Monitor Package provides a simple connection capability between the CNC and Microsoft® Excel.

Key functions

- The machining status monitor package outputs the logging data in the form of Microsoft Excel. All the functions of Excel can be used (spreadsheet functions or charts).
- The running results of the program and the number of processed parts can be monitored and output as the logging data.
- The data acquired from the CNC machine and the logging data output can be customized
- Maximum number of CNC machines that canb be monitored: up to 8 machines (HSSB) or 32 machines (Ethernet)

The Machining Status Monitor Package installation files are part of the CNC Application Development Kit.

Benefits

- Realisation of simple data logging and monitoring application
- Increase of the efficiency (Machine Tool Efficiency)

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0207-J870	Machine Status Monitor Package Function

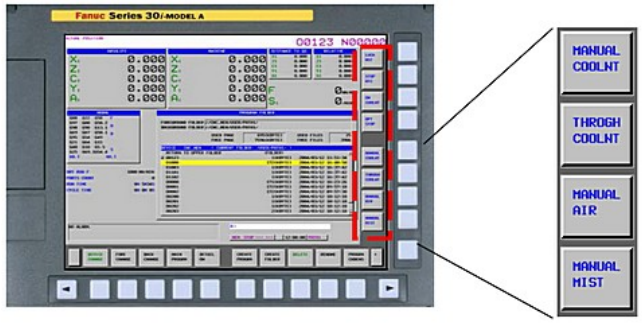
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

696

CNC Application Development Kit



Machine Operation Menu Making Tool

Features

The softkey displayed on the CNC screen can be also used as keys for the operation of the machine. The machine operation such as turning on or off the coolant, that is usually done with the machine operator's panel, can be done with a softkey on the CNC screen instead.

Using this function, it is not required to add additional hardware to add additional operation function to the CNC; it is realized with software.

The hierarchy of the menus, the operation and the displayed text strings can be easily set with the "Machine Operation Menu Making Tool" on the Personal Computer.

The Machine Operation Menu Making Tool is part of the CNC Application Development Kit.

Benefits

- Simple customization of the CNC softkeys
- Realization of simple machine control menus

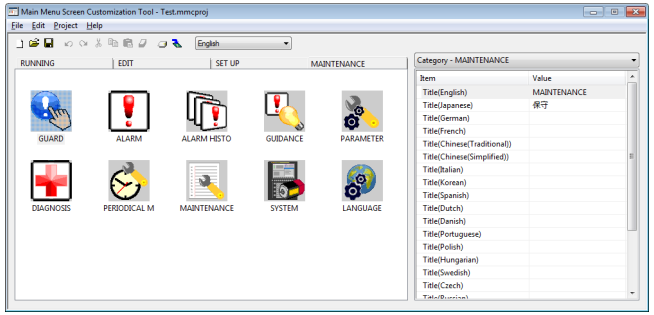
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

697

CNC Application Development Kit



Main Menu Screen Customization Tool

Features

The Main Menu Screen Customization Tool can customize the main menu screen of a CNC by personal computer. This software can perform the following customization:

- Edit of multi language title of categories
- Moving, addition, deletion of an icon
- Edit of multi language title of icons
- Edit of image of icons

The Main Menu Screen Customization Tool is part of the CNC Application Development Kit.

Benefits

- Easy customization on PC
- To use customization by this software on CNC a option is required.

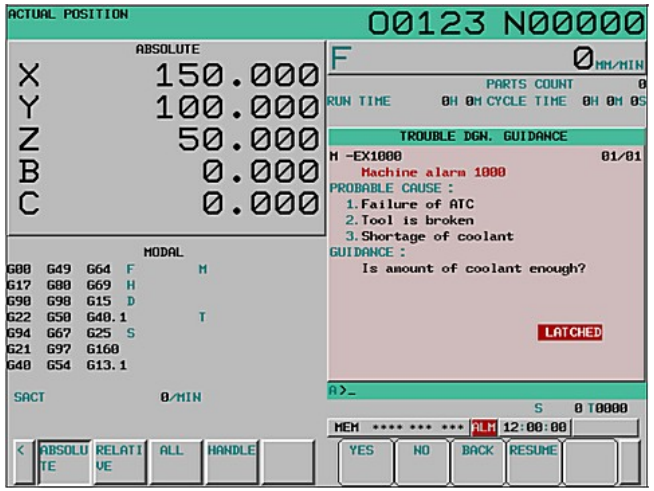
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

698

CNC Application Development Kit



Guidance Table for Machine Alarm Diagnosis

Features

The machine alarms (external alarm messages, external operator messages and macro alarms) can be diagnosed on the "trouble diagnosis guidance screen" in addition to standard CNC alarms.

In addition to the alarm, the CNC will propose a list of possible causes of the problem and propose a guidance. The guidance can be answered with YES / NO, and depending on the answers, other hints and guidance will appear.

The Guidance Table for Machine Alarm Diagnosis is a Windows® application for the Personal Computer that provides a set of tool to create the guidance parts and the structure of the questions / answers that will guide the operator. Once this data has been created, it can be transferred to the CNC with the tool.

The Guidance Table for Machine Alarm Diagnosis application is part of the CNC Application Development Kit.

Benefits

- Creation of a powerful guidance system to diagnose the machine
- The diagnosis Q and A / guidance application in directly integrated in the CNC and does required any additional hardware
- Decrease of the time required to diagnose problems at the operator level
- General increase of the productivity of the machine

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

699

CNC Application Development Kit

Macro Library

Features

Some NC programs such as technology functions or programs created using custom macros do not need to be modified once created. Other NC programs, such as machining programs, evolve during machining.

The Macro Executor function can convert a Custom Macro program created by the machine tool builder to an executable macro program, load the executable macro program (P-CODE macro) into F-ROM (CNC Flash Memory), and execute it.

The Macro Library is neccessary in order to convert a Custom Macro program into an Executable Macro program with the Macro Compiler.

Benefits

- High execution speed of the code, since a custom macro program is loaded after conversion and compilation to an executable so that the machining time can be reduced and the machining precision can be improved
- Custom Macro used in Technology Modules cannot be destroyed because they are loaded into the FROM (CNC Flash Memory)
- A program converted to execution format is not displayed on the program screen, so that the know-how and the technology can be protected
- An execution format macro program is registered in the F-ROM, so that the program storage space can be efficiently used
- The user can call the execution format macro program with an easy call procedure without being conscious of the complexity of the program itself
- Extension of the CNC control function set (machining functions, interactive screens, RS232 (reader/puncher) interface control, PMC data read/write , etc.)

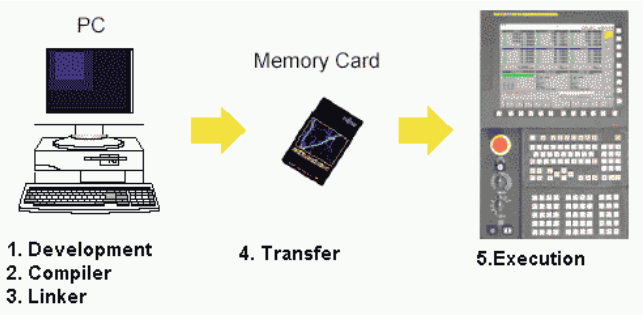
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

700

CNC Application Development Kit



C-Language Library for C-Language Executor

Features

FANUC CNC provides a powerful set of tools to allow custom software developed in C to access the CNC functions.

Using the C-Language Executor functionality it is possible to develop customized CNC screens and powerful Human Machine Interfaces (HMI). It is also possible to add new functionality to the CNC, as well as machine control functions written in C.

The C-Language Library for C-Language Executor is a software library that allows custom software to access the CNC functions and be executed by the C-Language Executor functionality.

The C-Language Executor Library is for the conversion of FS16i/18i/21i-B PMC C-language board applications to C-Language Executor applications. The C-Language Library for C-Language Executor is required.

The C-Language Library for C-Language Executor is part of the CNC Application Development Kit.

Benefits

- Creation of customized functions and programs using C-Language
- Modification of Macro Programs to follow machine and production evolution
- Powerful programming language for machining or machine management purpose

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9210-J719#ZZ11	C-Language Executor Library

Notice

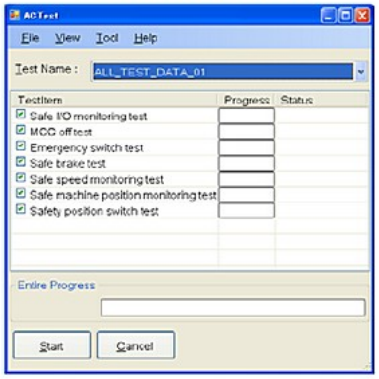
Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

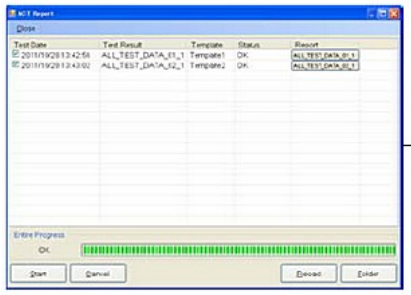
701

CNC Application Development Kit

Test running screen



Report making screen



Report



Acceptance Test Assist Tool

Features

The Acceptance Test Assist Tool is a Windows® application running on a Personal Computer which can assist the machine builder during the acceptance test procedure of Dual Check Safety through automated tests and report generation. This application provides the following two functions:

- Execution of the acceptance tests connected to the CNC
- Generation of test reports for the test result to create the final test certificate

The application provides a set of templates to enter the required data and generates a report which can be then further enhanced with Microsoft® Word (.docx format).

The Acceptance Test Assist Tool is part of the CNC Application Development Kit.

Benefits

- Decrease of the time required to proceed the Dual Check Safety acceptance test
- Automated generation of key report data to save time on the redaction of the final acceptance test documents

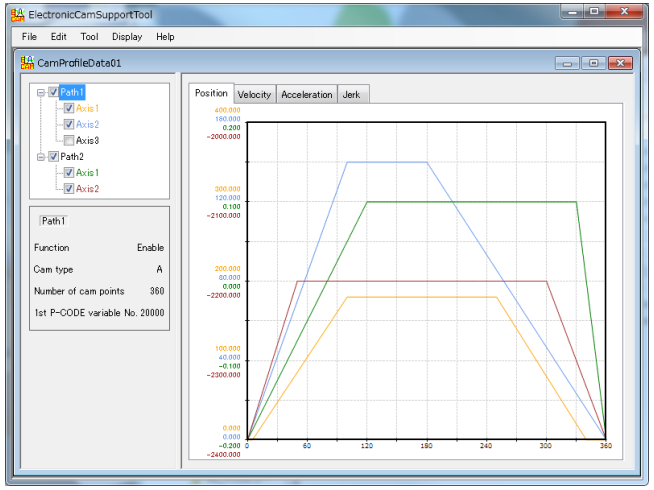
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

702

CNC Application Development Kit



Electronic Cam Support Tool

Features

The cam shape data for the electronic cam function can be created easily with the electronic cam support tool. The cam shape data is defined by setting the stroke position and the curve shape for each phase. It is possible to confirm the position, velocity, acceleration and jerk of the cam shape data visually by a graphical display. The cam shape data is output to a file, which has to be read in by the CNC via memory card.

The Electronic Cam Support Tool is part of the CNC Application Development Kit.

Benefits

- Simplifies the creation of cam shape data for the electronic cam function

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

703

CNC Application Development Kit

Operation History Converter Tool

Features

If the operation history save function is active in a CNC, older operation history data is saved to a Compact Flash card as a binary file. The operation history converter tool is a Windows® application which converts this binary file into a human-readable text file.

The Operation History Converter Tool is part of the CNC Application Development Kit. It is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Facilitates long-term operation data analysis

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

704

CNC Application Development Kit

G-code Guidance Customization Tool

Features

G-Code Guidance Customization Tool creates input screens for iHMI G-Code Guidance. This allows machine tool builders to integrate their custom cycles into iHMI G-Code Guidance. Input screens created with this tool are stored in a customization file and can be installed to a PANEL iH or PANEL iH Pro to be displayed as custom cycle input screens.

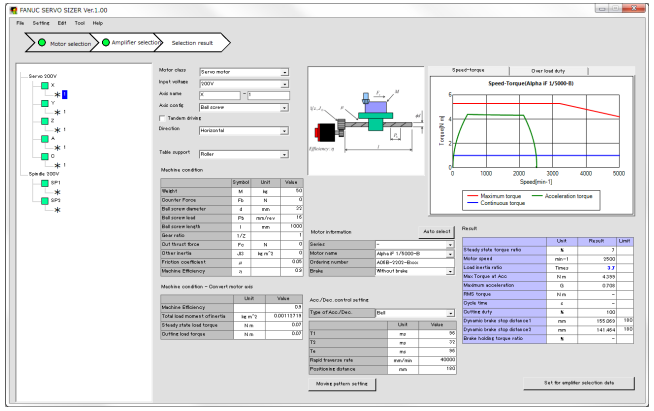
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

705

PC Software



SERVO SIZER

Features

SERVO SIZER lets you easily select the right motors and amplifiers for your application. Simply input machine specifications and operating conditions and let SERVO SIZER choose the right motor and amplifier for you. SERVO SIZER supports standard servo and spindle motors as well as linear and torque motors and build-in spindle motors.

SERVO SIZER is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Select the optimal motors and amplifiers for your application easily

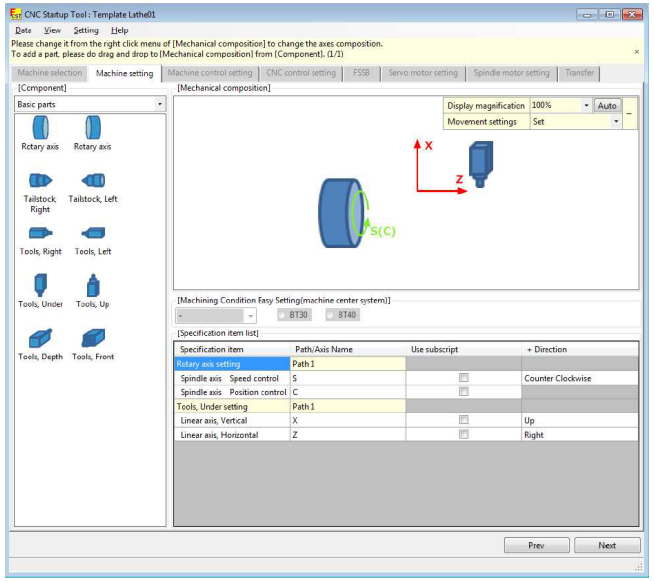
Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J950	Servo Sizer

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



CNC Startup Tool

Features

CNC Start-up Tool is a PC software that creates parameters required for the start-up of a CNC. It creates parameters for FS0i-F and FS0i-F Plus. The parameters can be transferred from the software directly to a CNC connected to the same network.

It is possible to input the machine configuration as well as the motor and amplifier setup graphically. Just drag and drop predefined elements from a library.

With CNC Start-up Tool, you can easily create parameters for start-up at your desk and speed up the start-up of your machine.

CNC Startup Tool is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Create parameters for start-up easily
- Speed up the start-up of your machines

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J707#ZZ11	CNC Start-up Tool (CD-R) - FS 0i-TF/MF, FS 0i-TFP/MFP

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

707
PC Software

CNC Setting Tool

Features

CNC Setting Tool is a Windows® application software that can be used to display and edit parameter files. The software consists of different setting tools and a file management function for the parameter files. The setting tools included in the software package are:

- CNC Parameter Setting Tool (part of CNC Setting Tool)
- FL-net Setting Tool (part of CNC Setting Tool)
- PROFIBUS Setting Tool (part of CNC Setting Tool)
- EtherNet/IP Setting Tool (part of CNC Setting Tool)
- PROFINET Configuration Tool (stand-alone application)

Please refer to the following pages for details on a particular tool.
CNC Setting Tool is available only to machine tool builders.

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9510-J540	CNC Setting Tool, 1 User
A08B-9510-J541	CNC Setting Tool, 10 Users
A08B-9510-J542	CNC Setting Tool, 20 User
A08B-9510-J543	CNC Setting Tool, Site License
A08B-9510-J544	CNC Setting Tool, Update - Updating CNC Setting Tool A08B-9510-J540 ... -J543

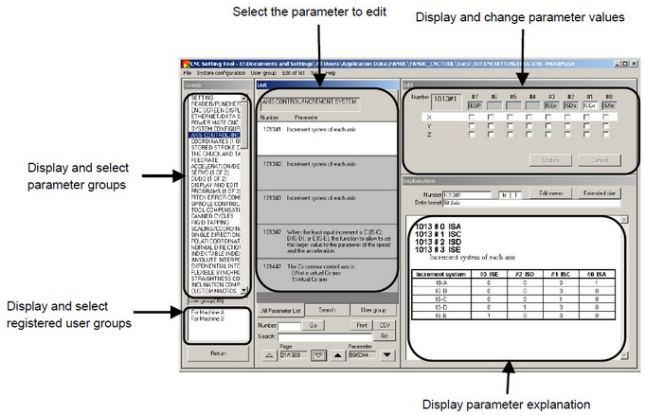
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

708

CNC Setting Tool



CNC Parameter Setting Tool

Features

CNC Parameter Setting Tool is part of the CNC Setting Tool and it can be used to display and edit CNC parameter files on Personal Computer.

Key functions

- Display and edit of a parameter file
- All parameters can be displayed in order
- Parameters can be displayed in the order of function
- Explanation of selected parameters
- Range check when changing limited parameters
- Comparison of master file and edited file
- Management of parameter files operated by CNC setting tool (Copy, Delete)
- Transfer of parameter files between CNC and PC (Ethernet or Memory card)
- Extract parameters and save them to the file
- Combine parameter files to create new parameter file

Benefits

- Simplified management of the CNC parameter setting
- Increase of the efficiency in managing multiple machine seetings

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

709

CNC Setting Tool

EtherNet/IP Setting Tool

Features

The EtherNet/IP Setting Tool is part of the CNC Setting Tool and is used to efficiently set EtherNet/IP parameters in the CNC from a Personal Computer. The tool simplifies the management of large EtherNet/IP network sets.

This tool generates EtherNet/IP parameters for the CNC using the definition-data file of a slave devices (EDS files supplied by the device vendor). The generated parameters are transferred to the CNC via Ethernet.

Benefits

- Simplified management of EtherNet/IP network settings
- Increase of the efficiency in managing multiple machine seetings and large networking projects

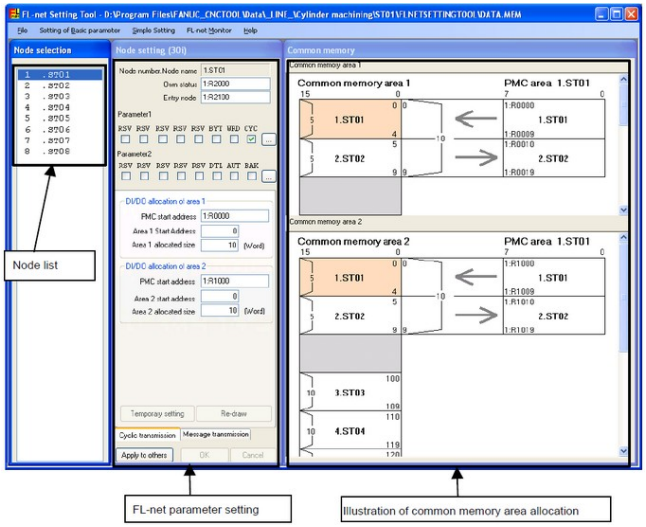
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

710

CNC Setting Tool



FL-net Setting Tool

Features

The FL-net Setting Tool is part of the CNC Setting Tool and is used to efficiently set FL-net parameters in the CNC from a Personal Computer. The tool simplifies the management of large FL-net network sets.

This software tool can generate FL-net parameters for the CNC using configuration screens, especially focused on providing a clear definition of the shared memory across the different devices. The generated parameters are transferred to the CNC via Ethernet.

Benefits

- Simplified management of FL-net network settings
- Increase of the efficiency in managing multiple machine seetings and large networking projects

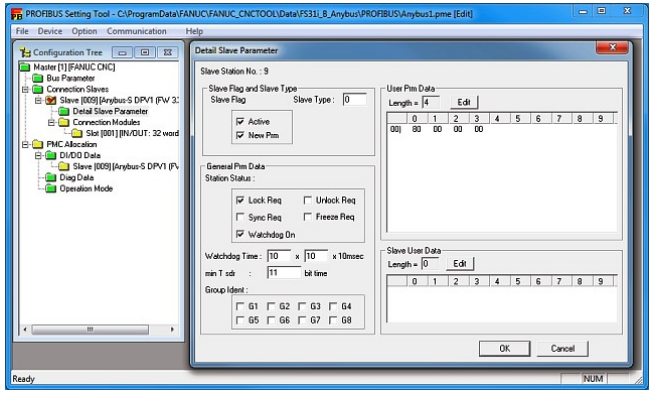
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

711

CNC Setting Tool



PROFIBUS Setting Tool

Features

The PROFIBUS Setting Tool is part of the CNC Setting Tool and is used to efficiently set PROFIBUS parameters in the CNC from a Personal Computer. The tool simplifies the management of large PROFIBUS network sets.

This software tool can generate PROFIBUS parameters for the CNC using the definition-data file of slave devices (GSD files supplied by the device vendor). The generated parameters are transferred to the CNC via Ethernet.

Benefits

- Simplified management of PROFIBUS network settings
- Increase of the efficiency in managing multiple machine seetings and large networking projects

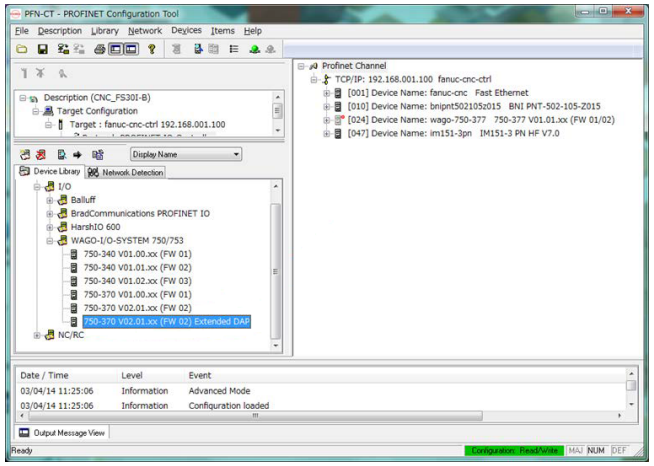
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

712

CNC Setting Tool



PROFINET Configuration Tool

Features

The PROFINET Configuration Tool is a Windows® application used to efficiently set PROFINET parameters in the CNC from a Personal Computer. The tool simplifies the management of large PROFINET network sets.

This software tool can generate PROFINET parameters for the CNC using the definition-data file of slave devices (GSDML files supplied by the device vendor). The generated parameters are transferred to the CNC via Ethernet.

Benefits

- Simplified management of PROFINET network settings
- Increase of the efficiency in managing multiple machine seetings and large networking projects

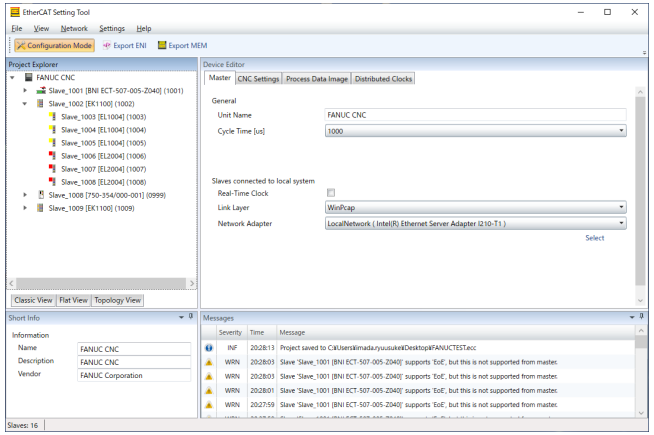
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

713

PC Software



FANUC EtherCAT Setting Tool

Features

The EtherCAT Setting Tool is a Windows® application used to efficiently set EtherCAT parameters in the CNC from a Personal Computer. The tool simplifies the management of large EtherCAT network sets.

This software tool can generate EtherCAT parameters for the CNC using the definition-data file of slave devices (ESI files supplied by the device vendor). The generated parameters are transferred to the CNC.

EtherCAT Setting Tool is available only to machine tool builders.

Ordering Information Electronic Licenses)

The software is available on DVD. The license can be ordered in the FANUC E-Store.

Specification	Description
A08B-9510-J721#ZZ99	EtherCAT Setting Tool (1 User)

Benefits

- Simplified management of EtherCAT network settings
- crease of the efficiency in managing multiple machine seetings and large networking projects

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9510-J720#ZZ12	EtherCAT Setting Tool

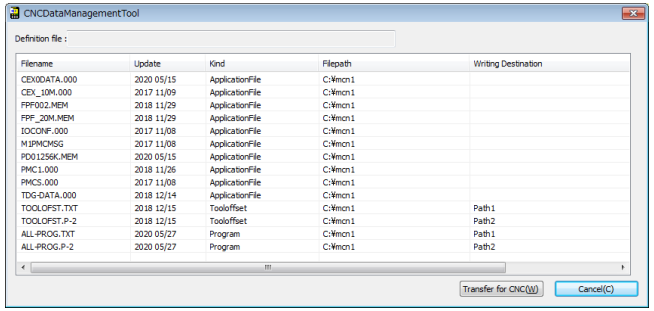
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

714

PC Software



CNC Data Management Tool

Features

CNC Data Management Tool is a PC software that manages machine data and writes it to the CNC. The data that can be written comprises all kinds of data such as application data (e.g. PMC ladder or FANUC PICTURE files), programs, parameter files, tool data, or compensation data. The data is written to the CNC via an Ethernet connection between PC and CNC.

CNC Data Management Tool supports FS0i-D, FS0i-F/F Plus, FS30i/31i/32i-A/B/B Plus, FS35i-B, and Power Motion i-A.

CNC Data Management Tool is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Simplify commissioning of machine tools

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J814#ZZ11	CNC Data Management Tool (CD-R)

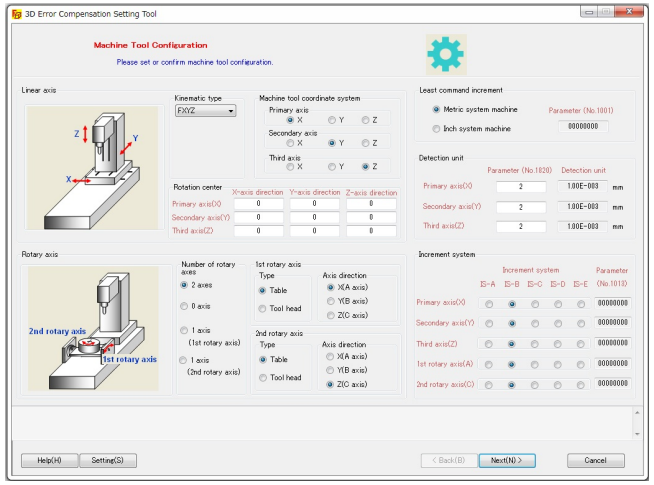
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

715

PC Software



3D Error Compensation Setting Tool

Features

Every machine tool is afflicted with some kind of geometric errors. These errors affect the machine's precision and hence the quality of the machined parts. They can be compensated according to position in 3-dimensional space by using one of the following functions:

- 3-Dimensional Error Compensation
- 3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation

This Windows® software converts measured errors as defined in ISO 230-1 into 3-dimensional error compensation data. The compensation data can be transferred to a CNC directly via HSSB or Ethernet, or it can be stored into a compensation data file and transferred to a CNC by e.g. a CF card.

The 3D Error Compensation Setting Tool is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Simplify the creation of compensation data for 3-Dimensional Error Compensation and 3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J727#ZZ11	3-D Error Compensation Setting Tool

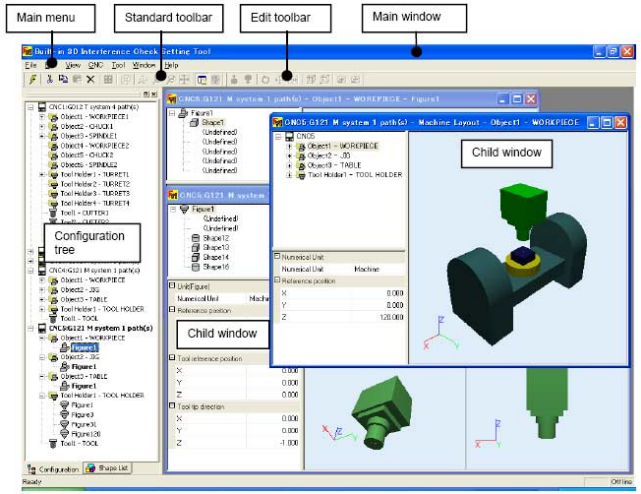
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

716

PC Software



Built-In 3D Interference Check Setting Tool

Features

The Build-in 3D Interference Check Setting Tool is a Windows® application that allows the setting of the Built-In 3D Interference Check functions through a Personal Computer

Key functions

- Creation, setting and display of the 3D objects and figures representing the work piece, the fixtures and the tools
- Object moving and axis settings
- Real-time 3D interference check monitoring
- Setting of the NC parameters 10931 to 10958 related to the Built-In 3D Interference Check Function

The Built-In 3D Interference Check Setting Tool is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Simplified management of the 3D Interference Check Project
- Import of 3D shapes to accelerate the setup
- Increase of the efficiency in managing multiple machine seetings and large projects
- Simplified startup through online functions

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J726#ZZ11	Built-in 3-D Interference Check Setting Tool

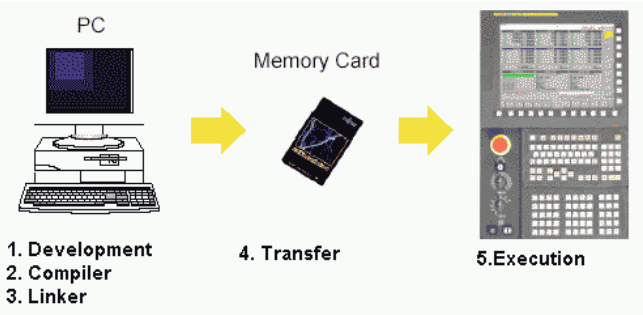
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

717

PC Software



MACRO Compiler

Features

Some NC programs such as technology functions or programs created using custom macros do not need to be modified once created. Other NC programs, such as machining programs, evolve during machining.

The Macro Executor function can convert a Custom Macro program created by the machine tool builder to an executable macro program, load the executable macro program (P-CODE macro) into F-ROM (CNC Flash Memory), and execute it.

The function which converts a Custom Macro program to an Executable Macro program is called the Macro Compiler. The function which reads and executes a P-CODE macro is called the Macro Executor.

Key functions

- High execution speed of the code, since a custom macro program is loaded after conversion and compilation to an executable so that the machining time can be reduced and the machining precision can be improved.
- Custom Macro used in Technology Modules cannot be destroyed because they are loaded into the FROM (CNC Flash Memory)
- A program converted to execution format is not displayed on the program screen, so that the know-how and the technology can be protected
- An execution format macro program is registered in the F-ROM, so that the program storage space can be efficiently used
- The user can call the execution format macro program with an easy call procedure without being conscious of the complexity of the program itself
- Custom screens can be created using the graphic display functions
- Extension of the CNC control function set (machining functions, interactive screens, RS232 (reader/puncher) interface control, PMC data read/write , etc.)

Macro Compiler is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Creation of customized functions and programs
- Modification of Macro Programs to follow machine and production evolution
- Powerful programming language for machining or machine management purpose

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J604#EN11	Macro Compiler, CNC Series 30i/31i/32i, 0i-D/0i-Mate-D
A08B-9010-J605#EN11	Macro Compiler Upgrade, CNC Series 30i/31i/32i, 0i-D/0i-Mate-D, 0i-F

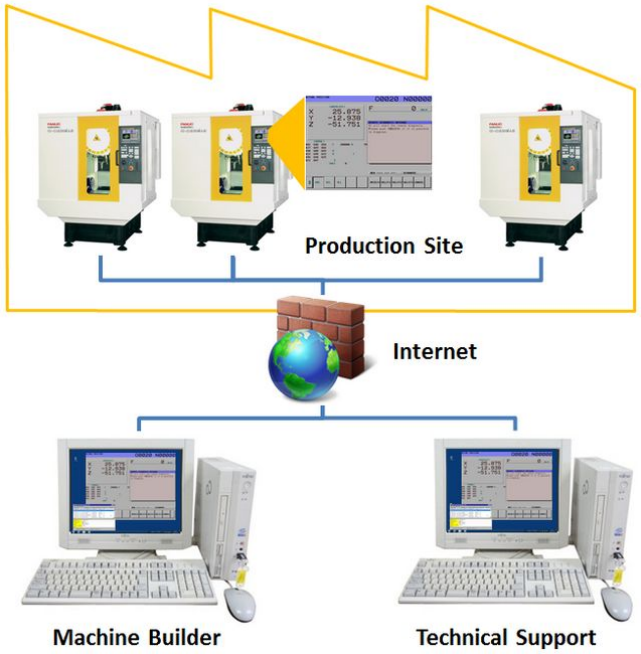
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

719

PC Software



Machine Remote Diagnosis Package

Features

The Machine Remote Diagnosis Package application is a tool designed for the machine tool builder to provide remote support of machines easily.This software is designed to use Internet technology to investigate the internal states of remote CNCs and PMCs.

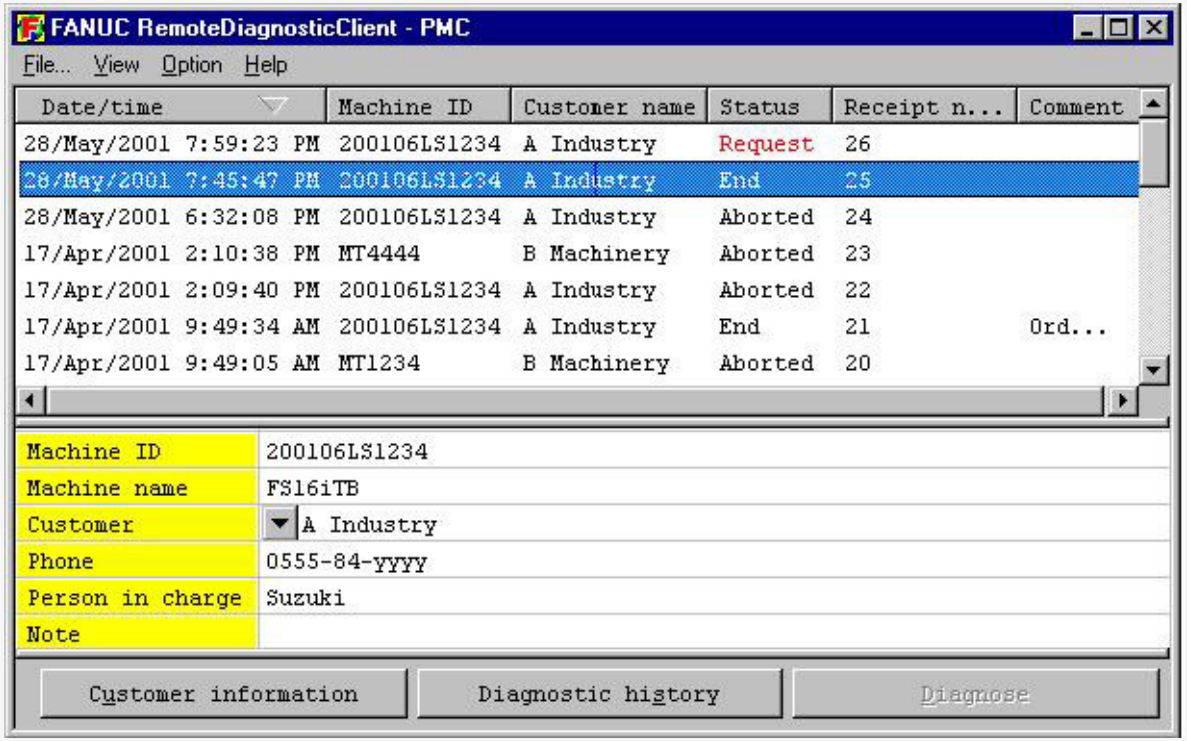
Key functions

- Communication with a CNC machine tool of an end user over the Internet (or a LAN) to investigate the internal state of the CNC
- Elimination of the need to travel to the machine installation site to check problems; increasing service efficiency
- Server functions to enable quick reception and processing
- Enhanced CNC/PMC operation functions to diagnose problems remotely (sequence program, NC program, and NC parameter corrections can be made for recovery)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



Machine Remote Diagnosis Package is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Direct connection between the machine and machine builder through remote operation
- Improvement of the efficiency of the machine service
- Decrease of the ownership costs

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A02B-0207-J854	CNC Screen Display Function for Machine Remote Diagnosis Package (Fast Ethernet Required)
A08B-9210-J515	Machine Remote Diagnosis Package (CD-ROM)
A08B-9210-J516	Machine Remote Diagnosis Package (Update for A08B-9210-J515) - Requires a Valid Serial Number Contained in Machine Remote Diagnosis Package (A08B-9210-J515)

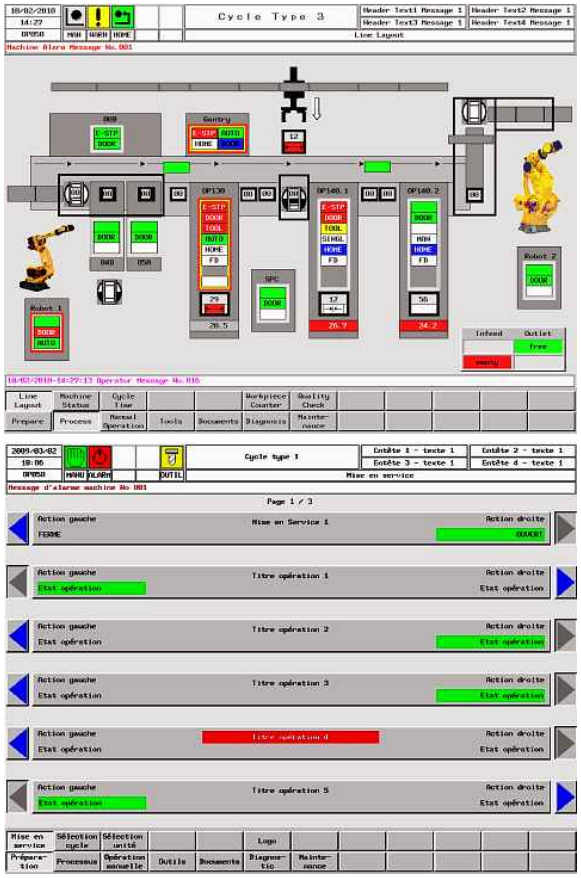
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

721

PC Software



Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

FANUC Auto HMI/T and Auto HMI-NC

Features

FANUC Auto HMI-NC is an application composed of a set of HMI templates, objects, tables and scripts to create standardized user interfaces in automotive applications or machining applications producing large batches of products.

Refer to the "FANUC Auto HMI-NC" section of this catalogue for further information about this application.

The disk contains the template files for various configurations and screen sizes, variable maps as well as documentation.

FANUC Auto HMI is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

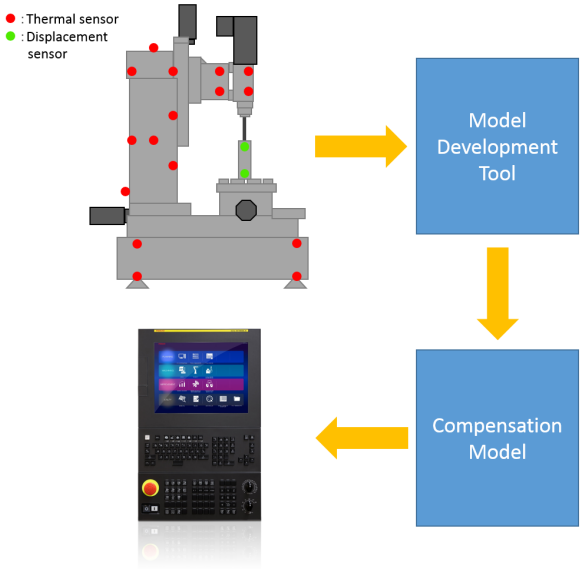
- Powerful ready-made application templates and variable tables
- Customizable through FANUC PICTURE

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J519#ZZ11	FANUC Auto HMI-NC, CD-ROM - Development of Machine Operation Screens
A08B-9010-J524#ZZ11	FANUC Auto HMI/T, CD-ROM - Development of Machine Operation Panel Screens
A08B-9510-J931	FANUC Auto HMI PC Application for Proficy Machine Edition - Standard

722

PC Software



AI Thermal Displacement Compensation Model Development Tool

Features

Temperature changes affect the accuracy of machine tools. It is possible to compensate this effect, but finding the right dependency between temperature and displacement is a difficult task that has to be performed by experts. AI Thermal Displacement Compensation Model Development Tool uses Machine Learning to create a model of the machine's thermal behavior, making it much easier to find that dependency between temperature and displacement. Thus AI Thermal Displacement Compensation Model Development Tool reduces time to market and saves R&D resources. The model's estimations are used to compensate thermal displacement during operation, improving machine accuracy.

AI Thermal Displacement Compensation Model Development Tool is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Reduce time to market
- Save R&D resources
- Improve machine accuracy

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J810#ZZ12	AI Thermal Displacement Compensation Model Development Tool (DVD)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

723

PC Software

CNC Lock Setting Data Preparation Tool

Features

Use the CNC Lock Setting Data Preparation Tool to set up the "CNC Lock function" on CNCs. The CNC Lock function enables you to set password-protected expiration dates. The CNC will not execute automatic operation anymore after the expiration date has passed. You can prepare a message for the end user to inform him about the blocking of the CNC and give further instructions.

The CNC Lock function is intended for leased machines or machines sold on installment plan. It allows to restrict operation of machines if payments are held off by the end user.

CNC Lock Setting Data Preparation Tool is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Facilitates machine sales on installment plan
- Facilitates machine leasing

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J706#ZZ11	CNC Lock Setting Data Preparation Tool (DVD)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

724

PC Software

Disk for Cycle Time Estimate Function

Features

Cycle Time Estimate is a function that can quickly estimate the execution cycle time of an NC program. It delivers estimations for cutting and rapid traverse times, time spent on the execution of auxiliary codes (e. g. M codes), as well as cutting and rapid traverse travel distances.

The accuracy of the estimation is higher than estimations made with 3rd party software. All estimations are calculated in consideration of the real machine's acceleration and deceleration. It is possible to estimate the machining time of complex programs, for example programs for 5-axis machining.

With the Cycle Time Estimate Library contained in this disk, it is possible to create custom applications that incorporate the Cycle Time Estimate function. In order to use the library, the "Cycle Time Estimate Library function" option has to be effective in the CNC.

Benefits

- Decrease processing time by optimizing programs
- Improve the utilization of machines by enhanced and reliable machine schedule planning

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J758#ZZ12	Disk for Cycle Time Estimate Function (for CNC), DVD

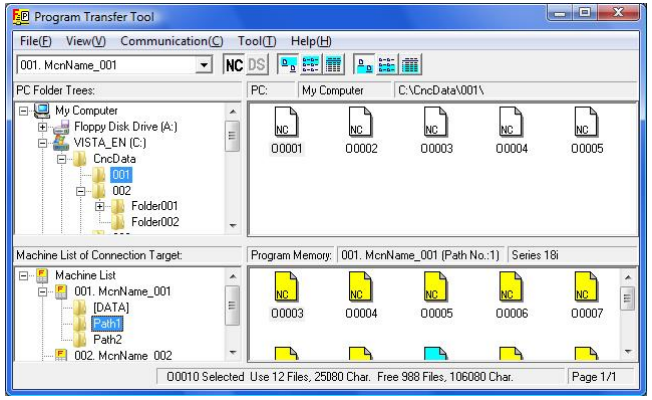
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

725

PC Software



Program Transfer Tool

Features

The Program Transfer Tool is a Windows® application to manage part programs, tool offsets, custom Macro value, workpiece origin offset and tool management data. The data can easiely transfered by Ethernet between the CNC memory or data server and a PC. The software allows the operator to delete and rename files/folders or create folders in the CNC or the PC.

Benefits

- Effcient administration
- Easy and faster managing of programs
- Store and organize backups of CNC data

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9510-J515	Program Transfer Tool (via Ethernet), Site License

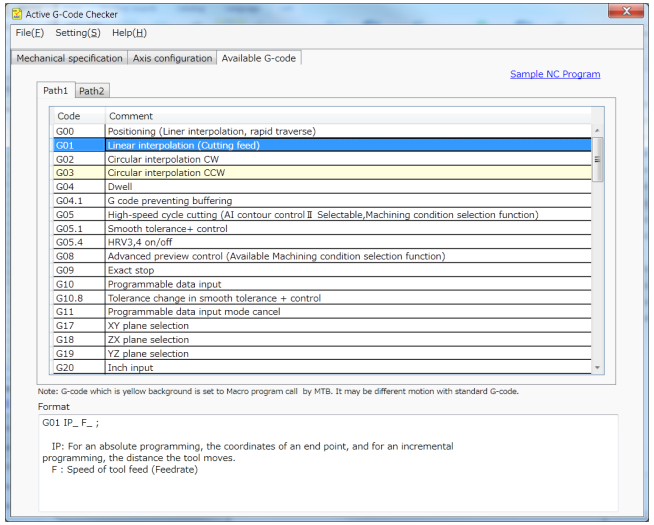
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

726

PC Software



Active G-Code Checker

Features

Active G-Code Checker is a PC software that displays a machine's available G-codes, specification and axis configuration based on the CNC's parameter, system configuration and CNC ID information. The software facilitates the development of post processors for specific machines.

Benefits

- Create post processors that utilize all available functions of a machine

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J811#ZZ11	Active G-Code Checker (CD-R) - for CNC Series 30i/31i/32i-B

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

727

PC Software

Interactive Programming

The following section contains software related to interactive programming.

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

728

Interactive Programming

iCAP T for PC

Features

iCAP T for PC is a conversational programming software for lathes. It is a standalone software which allows you to create NC programs by just inputting blanks and part shapes and by selecting machining processes.

Generally, creating part programs requires programming knowledge of G and M codes. With iCAP T, part programs can be created automatically without any programming knowledge.

It is possible to create part programs for X-Z axes (turning) and C-Y axes (milling). Two-spindle machining is also supported. CAD data can be read in by the function. The 2-Path function allows to create part programs for controlling a second path. Milling machining with Tilted Working Plane by B axis is supported by the B-Axis function.

iCAP T for PC is a standalone software which has almost the same functionality as the iCAP T option for iHMI. With the PC software, it is possible to create part programs without blocking a machine for programming.

Benefits

- Create part programs for complex lathes easily without any programming knowledge
- Reduce the time from drawing to cutting
- Reduce downtime due to programming

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9310-J900#ZZ12	Interactive Programming Function for Complex Lathe (for PC) - FS 3xi-A/B, 0i-TF, 0i-TD (Upgrade for A08B-9310-J900#ZZ12)
A08B-9310-J910#ZZ12	iCAP T for PC
A08B-9310-J911#ZZ12	iCAP T Trial Version 1.9

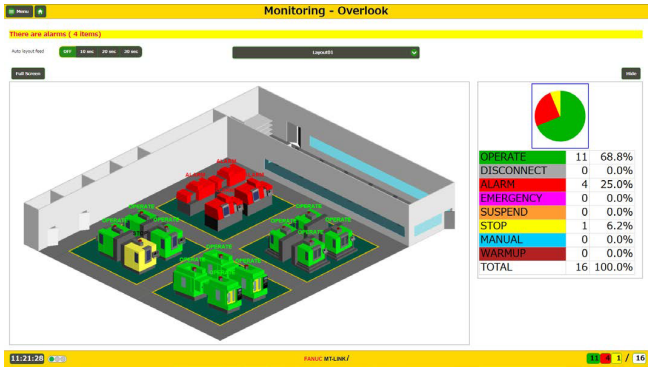
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

729

PC Software



MT-LINKi - CNC Data Collection Software for PC

Features

MT-LINKi is a suite of operation management software running on personal computers. The suite enables you to monitor multiple equipment units such as CNCs, Robots and PLCs, and to collect and visualize their operational data and production results easily, supporting you to manage your factory efficiently.

MT-LINKi enables you to monitor the state of the whole factory at a glance in real-time. Recognize abnormal states of the equipment quickly, allowing you to start countermeasures immediately.

MT-LINKi allows you to review the operational results on machine level and machine group level. You can review the production results and compare them against the production plan. You also can check machine utilization and find machines that are under-utilized. This enables you to optimize the factory's resource planning.

With MT-LINKi, it is possible to view various diagnostic data such as alarm history, program history, signal history and macro value history. With this, you are able to identify bottlenecks and optimize the production process. MT-LINKi also enables you to schedule automatically generated reports in Excel file format. The report templates can be customized to suit your needs.

The File Transfer function allows you to manage CNC data of all machines in factory easily from a central location. The backups can be used for various purposes such as archival or disaster recovery.

Ordering Information (Electronic Licenses)

The software can be downloaded from MyFANUC. The license is available in the FANUC E-Store.

Specification	Description
A08B-9510-J509#ZZ99	MT-LINKi (Software License, 5 Machines)
A08B-9510-J702#ZZ99	MT-LINKi (Software License, 20 Machines)
A08B-9510-J703#ZZ99	MT-LINKi (Software License, 50 Machines)
A08B-9510-J704#ZZ99	MT-LINKi (Software License, 100 Machines)

Benefits

- Reduce downtime by reacting quickly to abnormal states
- Identify alarm causes quickly, identify and cut off recurrent alarm causes
- Check machine utilization and machine productivity, detect unused production capacity
- Identfy deviations from the production plan easily
- Check the condition of batteries, fans and motors' leakage resistances, replace worn-out components in time

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9510-J507#ZZ12	FANUC MT-LINKi (Update) - Requires Embedded Ethernet or Fast Ethernet (recommended) in the CNC
A08B-9510-J508#ZZ12	FANUC MT-LINKi (20 Machines) - Requires Embedded Ethernet or Fast Ethernet (recommended) in the CNC

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

731
PC Software

AI Servo Monitor

Features

AI Servo Monitor detects and visualizes anomalies in drive systems unsing machine learning, wihout any additional sensors. MT-LINKi communicates with the CNCs and collects the data, while AI Servo Monitor performs the analysis. Up to 20 machines can be connected.

Ordering Information (Electronic Licenses)

The software can be downloaded from MyFANUC. The license is available in the FANUC E-Store.

Specification	Description
A08B-5020-J140#ZZ99	AI Servo Monitor (5 machines license)
A08B-5020-J145#ZZ99	AI Servo Monitor (Additional 1 machine license)

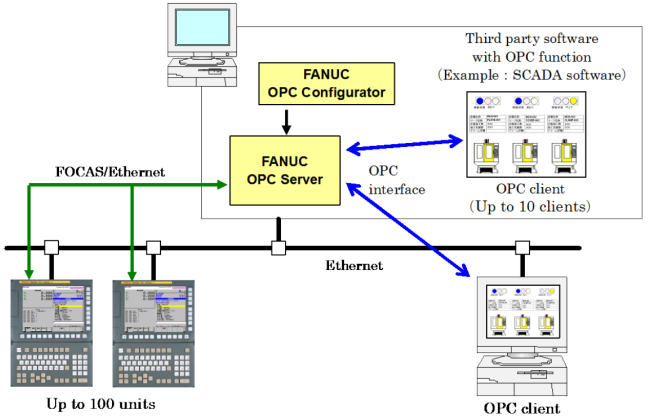
Benefits

- Easily find defects caused by equipment

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026



OPC Server

Features

OPC is a communication standard for industrial automation. The FANUC OPC Server is a Windows® application software for PCs that converts the communication protocol between OPC and FOCAS. Devices with an OPC client functionality can communicate with FANUC CNCs via this software.

Benefits

- Connect to a third party application software that has OPC client functionality easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9510-J521	FANUC OPC Server - CNC Series 30i/31i/32i-A/B, 35i-B, Power Motion i-A, 0i-D/F
A08B-9510-J522	FANUC OPC Server (Update) - CNC Series 30i/31i/32i-A/B, 35i-B, Power Motion i-A, 0i-B/C/D/F, 16i/18i/21i-A/B, Power Mate i-D/H

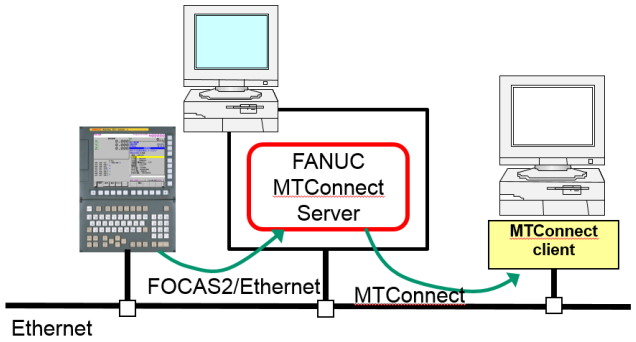
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

733

PC Software



MTConnect Server

Features

MTConnect is a protocol to retrieve data from factory equipment such as machine tools by client applications used for data analysis and monitoring. With FANUC MTConnect Server, you can read data from machine tools equipped with FANUC CNCs. MTConnect Server collects data from CNCs and PMCs and provides them to client applications via MTConnect protocol.

The option "MTConnect Server Function" is required on the CNC in order to use this software.

Benefits

- Read data from FANUC CNCs and PMCs via MTConnect
- Use client applications from the market that require MTConnect

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9510-J528	FANUC MTConnect Server

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Parameter Conversion Support Tool

Features

The Parameter Conversion Tool provides the possibility to convert parameter files created for legacy systems to actual / new CNC systems automatically.

The tool converts for instance parameter files of the Series 16i CNC to the Series 30i CNC, or from Series 0i-MODEL C to Series 0i-MODEL D.

Benefits

- Simplifies the migration of machines from legacy CNC systems to current CNC systems

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J709#ZZ11	Parameter Conversion Assist Tool for FS 0i-D / 0i-Mate-D - PC-Software for Conversion of FS 0i-C / 0i-Mate-C Parameters to FS 0i-D / 0i-Mate-D Parameters, Specify for each PC

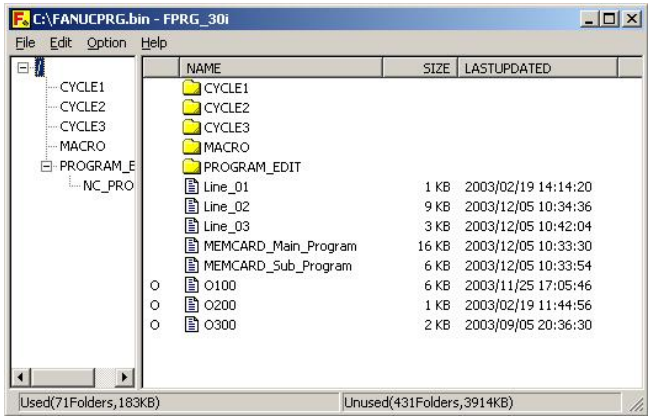
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

735

PC Software



PC Tool for Memory Card Program Operation/ Editing

Features

The "Memory Card Program Operation/Editing" function of Series 30i/31i/32i Model A requires a memory card program file on a FAT formatted memory card. This PC tool is used to prepare the memory card program file for this function. The maximum size of the memory card program file is 2048 Mbytes (2 Gbytes).

Key functions

- Browsing the folders of the memory card program file
- Adding a program to the memory card program file
- Extracting a program in the memory card program file as a text file
- Renaming a program in the memory card program file
- Deleting a program in the memory card program file
- Creating a new folder into the memory card program file
- Renaming a folder in the memory card program file
- Deleting a folder in the memory card program file
- Display of free space on the memory card program file
- Sorting list view of the memory card program file

Benefits

- Simplified management of parts programs

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J700#ZZ11	PC Tool for Memory Card Program Editing / Operation

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Windows Embedded SDK

Features

The Windows Embedded Compact SDK is a software development kit for the development of applications on CNCs that are equipped with the "Personal Computer function with Windows CE". The necessary documents and libraries for the development of applications with Visual Studio are included.

The Windows Embedded Compact SDK is available only to machine tool builders.

Benefits

- Personalize CNCs with customer-specific applications easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9110-J708#ZZ11	Windows Embedded CE 6.0 - SDK (Software Development Kit), CD-ROM
A08B-9110-J709#ZZ11	Windows Embedded Compact 7 - SDK (Software Development Kit), CD-ROM

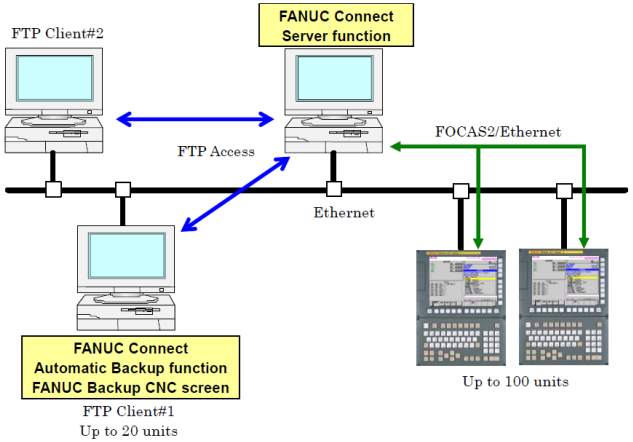
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

737

PC Software



FANUC Connect

Features

FANUC Connect is a Windows® application software that makes it easy to access and backup various kinds of CNC data from FANUC CNCs through an Ethernet network. FANUC Connect has the functionality of an FTP server, it can be accessed from any software that has an FTP client function. The communication between the FANUC Connect server and the CNC is done via FOCAS/Ethernet. With the automatic backup function, it is possible to backup CNC data automatically according to a specified schedule.

Benefits

- Simplify and automate the backup of CNC data
- Clients can connect to a CNC without the need of a FOCAS library

Ordering Information

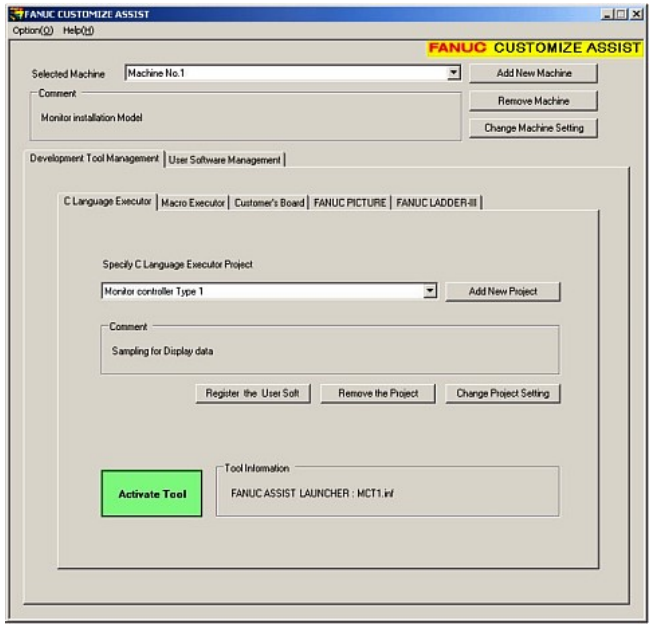
Specification	Description
A08B-9510-J525	FANUC Connect
A08B-9510-J526	FANUC Connect (Update)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

FANUC Customize Assist



Features

The FANUC Customize Assist tool simplifies the management of software development for a given machine or project. It provides a launcher for the different customization tools provided by FANUC and also a management capabilities for the different files and programming ressources.

Benefits

- Simplification of the management of complex projects
- All tools required are easily accessible from a launcher
- Ease of the files, data and ressources management

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J550#ZZ11	FANUC Customize Assist - CNC Series 30i/31i/32i-A

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

739

PC Software

Custom Macro Variable Listing Tool

Features

Custom Macro Variable Listing Tool is a PC software that creates a list of custom macro variables that are used in CNC programs. When creating a new program, it can be used to confirm whether there are any conflicts with variables used in existing programs. It is possible to connect to the CNC by Ethernet. If the program files are available on the PC, the tool can also be used without CNC connection.

The function QSSR ON-SITE creates a connection between a machine tool and robot. It uses custom macro variables to link the robot and creates CNC programs and robot programs. Custom Macro Variable Listing Tool helps to easily find unused custom macro variables for that purpose.

Benefits

- Find unused custom macro variables for e.g. QSSR ON-SITE easily

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J848#ZZ11	Custom Macro Variable Listing Tool (CD-R)

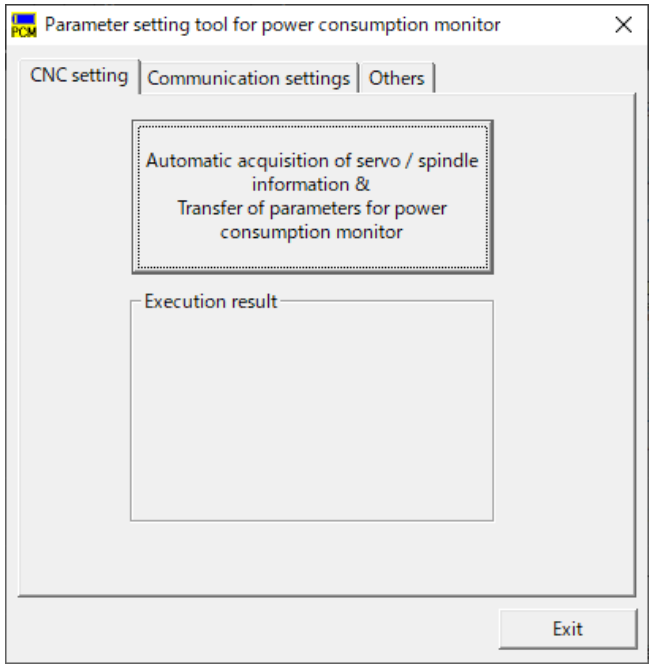
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

740

PC Software



Parameter Setting Tool for Power Consumption Monitor

Features

Parameter Setting Tool for Power Consumption Monitor is a PC application that automatically sets parameters for the Power Consumption Monitor screen. It sets those parameters according to the model of the motor, amplifier, and power supply connected to the CNC. It is possible to connect to the CNC by Ethernet.

- Simplifies the set-up of the Power Consumption Monitoring screen

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J847#ZZ11	Parameter Setting Tool for Power Consumption Monitor (CD-R)

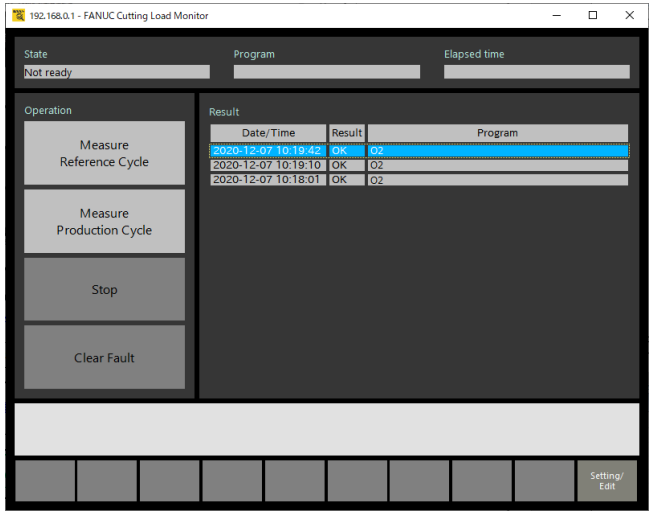
Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

741

PC Software



Cutting Load Monitor Function

Features

Cutting Load Monitor is a PC application that detects tool breakage by monitoring the cutting load in mass production machining. It automatically generates assessment criteria by measuring cutting load during reference machining. The monitored cutting load and the detection results are recorded and can be exported into a log file. CNC and PC can communicate via PMC interface. Up to 5 CNC can be connected to a PC.

Ordering Information (Electronic Licenses)

The software is available on CD. The license can be ordered in the FANUC E-Store.

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J528#ZZ99	Cutting Load Monitor (1 Connection)

Benefits

- Detect tool breakage and reduce rejects in mass production
- Easy implementation with automatically generated assessment criteria
- Cutting load log helps to investigate the tool breakage cause
- No external sensor necessary

Ordering Information

Specification	Description
A08B-9010-J527#ZZ11	Cutting Load Monitor Function (CD-R)

Notice

Certain functions may require additional hardware, different CPU type or additional memory capacity or may cause compatibility issue with other functions. In case of doubt, contact your FANUC sales representative for additional information and support.

The information given in the FANUC manuals or original manufacturer documentation shall prevail. Technical data is subject to change without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form. All rights reserved. © FANUC 2026

Index

2

2nd Auxiliary Function....354
2nd Feedrate Override....239
2nd Geometry Tool Offset....395

3

3-Dimensional Circular Interpolation....185
3-Dimensional Coordinate System Conversion....291
3-Dimensional Cutter Compensation....404
3-Dimensional Error Compensation....438
3-Dimensional Machine Position Compensation....441
3-Dimensional Manual Feed....146
3-Dimensional Rotary Error Compensation....442
3-Dimensional Tool Compensation....392
3D Error Compensation Setting Tool....715
3D Interference Check with PC Function....106

4

4th/5th Axis Offset....390

5

5-Axis Kit....613
5-Axis Machining Condition Setting Function....565

A

AI Contour Control I....249
AI Contour Control II....250
AI Feedforward....121
AI Servo Monitor....731
AI Servo Tuning....686
AI Thermal Displacement Compensation....443
AI Thermal Displacement Compensation Model Development Tool....722
Acceptance Test Assist Tool....701
Accuracy Compensation Functions....427
Active Block Cancel....158
Active G-Code Checker....726
Actual Spindle Speed Output....360
Addition of Custom Macro Common Variables 1000....277
Addition of Cutting Condition Data....477
Addition of Loader Control Path....045
Addition of Macro Variables for Robot Connection....660
Addition of Piercing Condition Data....495
Addition of Tool Pairs for Tool Life Management....409
Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System 300 Pairs....269
Addition of Workpiece Coordinate System 48 Pairs....268
Adjustable Type Embedded Safety Circuit....512
Advanced Preview Control....248
Angular Axis Switching Function in Arbitrary Angular Axis Control....128
Angular Axis Synchronous Control....127
Arbitrary Angular Axis Control....057
Arbitrary Command Multiply....080
Arbitrary Position Reference Setting for Cs Axis....368
Arbitrary Shape Specification in Work Support Axis Control....497
Arbitrary Speed Threading....376
Attitude Control....485
Automatic Alteration of Tool Position Compensation....412
Automatic Corner Override....287
Automatic Data Backup....580
Automatic Exact Stop Check....500
Automatic Phase Synchronization for Flexible Synchronous Control....454
Automatic Tool Nose Radius Compensation....391
Automatic Tool Offset....398
Auxiliary / Spindle Speed Functions....353
Auxiliary Function Output in Moving Axis....355
Auxiliary Function Output in Program Restart....133

Axis Immediate Stop Function....119
Axis Synchronous Control....053

B

Balanced Cutting....186
Basic Operation Package 2....693
Basic Option....601
Bevel Cutting Compensation Function....488
Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation....430
Buffer Expansion....483
Built-In 3D Interference Check....103
Built-In 3D Interference Check Setting Tool....716

C

C Language Executor Additional SRAM....302
C-Axis Control....461
C-Language Library for C-Language Executor....700
CC-Link....648
CC-Link IE Field....651
CC-Link Remote Device....649
CNC....021
CNC Application Development Kit....687
CNC Data Management Tool....714
CNC GUIDE....670
CNC GUIDE 2....675
CNC GUIDE Academic Package....674
CNC Lock Function....546
CNC Lock Setting Data Preparation Tool....723
CNC Parameter Setting Tool....708
CNC Reflection Studio....677
CNC Screen Display Function (SDF)....692
CNC Screen Display for 19" LCD....558
CNC Screen Dual Display Function....557
CNC Screen Web Server Function....560
CNC Setting Tool....707
CNC Startup Tool....706
CNC Status Notification Function....621
Canned Cycle for Grinding....308
Chamfering / Corner Rounding....275
Changing Active Offset Value with Manual Move....402
Chopping....064
Chopping Function by Flexible Synchronous Control....065
Chopping Setting Screen....066
Chuck and Tail Stock Barrier....099
Circular Thread Cutting....226
Circular Thread Cutting B....227
Clamp Zone Avoidance Function....466
Communication....622
Conical/Spiral Interpolation....173
Constant Surface Speed Control....359
Continuous Dressing....190
Continuous High-Speed Skip....188
Continuous Positional Data Output Function....582
Control Axis Detach....062
Control Function for Link Type Press....076
Controllable Axes Expansion....037
Controlled Axis....023
Coordinate System Rotation....290
Corner Control by Feedrate....503
Cross Rail Axis Control....221
Cs Contour Control....043
Cs Contour Control Speed Command Switching Function....373
Custom Macro Variable Listing Tool....739
Custom Macro Variable Name 31 Characters....278
Custom Software Size....304
Customized Data Expansion....425
Cutting Load Monitor Function....741
Cutting Point Command....385
Cutting Point Interpolation for Cylindrical Interpolation....393
Cutting/Rapid Switching Function for Path Table Operation....212
Cycle Table Operation Function for Path Table Operation....206

Cycle Time Estimate Function for CNC GUIDE....672
Cycle Time Estimate Library Function....526
Cycle Time Estimate for iHMI....345
Cycle Time Estimation 2 Library....527
Cylindrical Interpolation....166
Cylindrical Interpolation by Plane Distance Command....167

D

Data Input/Output....573
Data Server Explorer Connection....577
Delay Time Setting Function of Auxiliary Function Output for PTO....207
Designation of Control Paths....035
Designation of Controlled Axes....025
Designation of Machine Control Type....024
Designation of Machine Groups....033
Designation of Servo Axes for Spindle Use....042
Designation of Spindle Axes....040
DeviceNet....641
DeviceNet Adapter (Slave)....643
DeviceNet Scanner (Master)....642
Die Sinking EDM Function....507
Direct Drawing Dimension Programming....271
Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B....399
Direct Input of Offset Value Measured B for 2-Spindle Lathe....407
Direction Change Movement in Auxiliary Function Output Block Function....155
Direction-Dependent Type of High-Speed Position Switch....114
Disk for Cycle Time Estimate Function....724
Dual Check Safety (DCS)....595
Dual Control Axes Switching....063
Dual Feedrate Command....311
Dual Position Feedback....090
Dwell / Auxiliary Function Time Override Function....160
Dynamic Graphic Display Function....549
Dynamic Switching of Diameter/Radius Specification....264

E

EDM Functions....506
EDM Power Supply Communication Control (HSSB)....508
Eccentric Grinding....234
Eccentric Turning....223
Eccentric Turning / Orbit Cutting Learning Control....233
Editing Operation....513
Editing for Manual Handle Retrace....153
Electronic Cam Function....077
Electronic Cam Support Tool....702
Electronic Gear Box (EGB)....447
Electronic Gear Box (EGB) - 2 pairs....449
Electronic Gear Box (EGB) Automatic Phase Synchronization....450
Embedded Macro....306
Energy Saving Level Selection Function....561
Enlarged CNC Screen Display for 19" LCD....559
EtherCAT....653
EtherNet/IP....635
EtherNet/IP Adapter....636
EtherNet/IP Adapter Safety Function....638
EtherNet/IP Scanner....639
EtherNet/IP Setting Tool....709
Ethernet Display Function....554
Ethernet Display Sharing Function....555
Execution Macro of Measurement Cycle....316
Expansion of Axis Command in Tool Center Point Control....388
Expansion of Servo Axes Number....039
Exponential Interpolation....164
Extended Bi-Directional Pitch Error Compensation....431
Extended Conversational Macro Function....299
Extended P-Code Variables Size....315
Extended Program Memory (CF Card)....515
Extended Program Memory (PC)....516
External Deceleration....245
External Touch Panel Interface....551

F

FANUC Auto HMI-NC....533
FANUC Auto HMI-NC Screen Enhancement 1....535
FANUC Auto HMI/T and Auto HMI-NC....721
FANUC Connect....737
FANUC Customize Assist....738
FANUC EtherCAT Setting Tool....713
FANUC LADDER-III....680
FANUC PICTURE....688
FANUC SERVO GUIDE....682
FANUC SERVO VIEWER....684
FANUC Smart Digital Twin....676
FL-net....644
FL-net Safety....646
FL-net Setting Tool....710
FOCAS Library....690
Fast Data Server....576
Fast Ethernet....623
Feed Control by EDM Power Supply....509
Feed Functions....236
Feed Stop....246
Feedrate Change Function....258
Figure Copying....295
Fine Torque Sensing....110
Flexible Path Axis Assignment....052
Flexible Path Spindle Assignment (Spindle Switching Function)....374
Flexible Synchronization Control....452
Floating Reference Position Return....182
Full Closed Kit....615
Functions....022
Functions for Gas Cutting Machine....499

G

G-Code System B/C....272
G-code Guidance Customization Tool....704
Gap Control....505
Gap Control Axis Selection Function....496
Gap Control for Laser....482
Gas Cutting Machine Functions....498
Gear Cutting Package....608
General Purpose Retract....201
Gentle Curve Cutting....502
Gentle Normal Direction Control....189
Grinder Package....607
Grinding Functions....459
Groove Cutting Function by Continuous Circle Movement....314
Guidance Table for Machine Alarm Diagnosis....698

H

HRV3 Control....092
HRV4 Control....093
Helical Interpolation....168
Helical Interpolation B....169
Helical Involute Interpolation....171
High Speed Serial Bus (HSSB)....662
High-Precision Learning Control A....081
High-Precision Learning Control B....082
High-Precision Learning Control C....083
High-Precision Oscillation Function....067
High-Speed Binary Program Operation....217
High-Speed Binary Program Operation Retract Function....219
High-Speed Binary Program Operation on 2-Path Control....218
High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables A....195
High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables B....196
High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables C....197
High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables D....198
High-Speed Cycle Cutting Additional Variables E....199
High-Speed Cycle Machining....192
High-Speed Cycle Machining Operation Information Output Function....200
High-Speed Cycle Machining Retract Function....193

High-Speed Cycle Machining Skip Function... 194
High-Speed Feedrate Override... 240
High-Speed Measuring Position Reach Signal Input... 396
High-Speed Position Switch... 113
High-Speed Processing... 253
High-Speed Program Check... 159
High-Speed Signal Output Function for Path Table Operation... 209
High-Speed Skip... 181
High-Speed Smooth TCP... 387
High-Speed and High-Quality Machining Package... 176
Hob Command by Flexible Synchronous Control... 457
Hobbing / Electronic Gear Box... 446
Hypothetical Axes Interpolation... 172
Hypothetical Linear Axis Interpolation... 220

I

In-Acceleration/Deceleration Signal... 261
In-Position Check Switching Function for Drilling Canned Cycle... 285
Inclination Compensation... 434
Inclined Rotary Axis Control... 058
Increment System D... 078
Increment System E... 079
Incremental Command for Path Table Operation... 210
Index Table Indexing... 187
Infeed Control... 191
Integrated Operation & Programming Guidance Functions... 318
Inter-Path Flexible Synchronization Control... 455
Inter-Unit Synchronization (Power Motion i-A)... 665
Interaction Control... 486
Interactive Programming... 727
Interface Functions... 620
Interference Check Function for Automatic Lathe... 102
Interference Check for Each Path... 100
Interference Check for Rotary Area... 101
Interpolated Straightness Compensation 3072 Points... 437
Interpolation Functions... 162
Interpolation Type Pitch Error Compensation... 429
Interpolation Type Straightness Compensation... 436
Interruption Type Custom Macro... 281
Inverse Time Feed... 242
Involutes Interpolation... 170

J

Jerk Control... 255

K

Key and Program Encryption... 518

L

LADDER Editing Package... 694
Laser Command External Input Function... 494
Laser Control Function... 476
Laser Functions... 475
Laser High-Speed Control Function 2... 479
Laser Machining Package... 492
Laser Oscillator Communication Control (FSSB Connection)... 481
Laser Oscillator Communication Control (HSSB Connection)... 480
Laser Trend Function... 493
Lathe / Machining Center G-Code System Switching Function... 274
Learning Control - Memory Expansion... 088
Learning Control for Parts Cutting A... 084
Learning Control for Parts Cutting B... 085
Learning Memory Size 10Mbyte... 089
Linear Inclination Compensation Function... 440
Linear Scale I/F Expansion with Absolute Address Reference Mark... 117
Linear Scale Interface with Absolute Address Reference Mark... 115
Linear/Circular Punch Command... 468
Live Tool Kit... 618
Loader Control Function... 044
Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion... 254
Look-Ahead Blocks Expansion of AICC II... 251

M

M-Code Group Check Function....369
M-Code Protect Function....313
MACRO Compiler....717
MANUAL GUIDE....330
MANUAL GUIDE 0i....331
MANUAL GUIDE i Advanced Guidance Function....333
MANUAL GUIDE i Basic Software....334
MANUAL GUIDE i Extended Axis Name Function....336
MANUAL GUIDE i Handle Machining Function....337
MANUAL GUIDE i Material Position Check Cycle....338
MANUAL GUIDE i Multi-Path Support....339
MANUAL GUIDE i Tilted Working Plane (TWP) Machining Function....340
MANUAL GUIDE i Windows Call Function....342
MDI Reset Key Invalidation....568
MT-LINKi - CNC Data Collection Software for PC....729
MTConnect Server....733
MTConnect Server Function....664
Machine Alarm Diagnosis....528
Machine Configuration Selecting Function....564
Machine Operation Menu....531
Machine Operation Menu Making Tool....696
Machine Operation Panel Screen Display....511
Machine Remote Diagnosis Package....719
Machine Safety Functions....594
Machine Setting Switching Function....569
Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)....689
Machine State Logging (Visual Assistance)....563
Machine State Monitoring Function....562
Machining Condition Selecting Function....547
Machining Quality Level Adjustment....548
Machining Simulation with PC Function....107
Machining Status Monitor Package Disk....695
Machining Time Stamp....519
Macro Executor....297
Macro Executor + C-Language Executor....300
Macro Library....699
Macro for Multi-Axes High-Response Function....282
Main Menu Screen Customization Tool....697
Main Menu Screen Customizing Function....566
Manual 2nd/3rd/4th Reference Position Return....140
Manual Handle Feed - Multiple 10 Million....145
Manual Handle Feed 2/3 Units....143
Manual Handle Feed 4/5 Units....144
Manual Handle Interface for BETA i Series with I/O-Link....148
Manual Handle Retrace....152
Manual Handle Retrace for Multi-Path....154
Manual Interruption of 3-D Coordinate System Conversion....147
Manual Intervention and Return....137
Manual Linear/Circular Interpolation....156
Manual Numerical Command....149
Maximum Look-Ahead Blocks 400....252
Memory Card Program Entry Count Extension....520
Middle-Level Task for C-Language Executor....303
Milling Package....605
Minimum Command 1% Duty Override....478
Mirror Image for Double Turret....286
Modbus/TCP Server....654
Multi-Axes High-Response Function....071
Multi-Language Display....537
Multi-Path Editing Function....523
Multi-Path Kit....611
Multi-Path PMC Function....586
Multi-Path Program Management Function....524
Multi-Piece Machining....470
Multi-Piece Machining End Area Command....471
Multi-Point Compensation....445
Multi-Repetitive Cycles....283
Multi-Repetitive Cycles II....284
Multi-Spindle Control....365

Multi-Step Skip.... 180
Multi-axes synchronous function.... 070
Multiple Tool Control.... 473
Multitasking Kit.... 619

N

NURBS Interpolation.... 184
Nano Smoothing.... 175
Nonvolatile PMC Data Table Area Expansion (40kB).... 593
Nonvolatile PMC Extra Relay Function.... 592
Normal Direction Control.... 183
Number of Custom Macro Variable Name 1000.... 279
Number of Custom Macro Variable Name 4000.... 280
Number of Registerable Programs Expansion.... 517
Nutating Rotary Head Tool Length Compensation.... 411

O

OPC Server.... 732
OT Area Access Avoidance Function.... 098
One Touch Macro Call.... 579
One-Digit F-Code Feed.... 241
Operation.... 131
Operation History Converter Tool.... 703
Optimum Torque Acceleration/Deceleration.... 237
Optimum Torque Acceleration/Deceleration for Rigid Tapping.... 256
Option Packages and Kits.... 600
Optional Block Skip.... 263
Optional Chamfering / Corner Rounding.... 276
Orbit Cutting.... 222

P

PC Software.... 667
PC Tool for Memory Card Program Operation/Editing.... 735
PMC Axis Control - Acceleration/Deceleration Specification Feed.... 068
PMC Axis Control Speed Command for ECU (M).... 126
PMC Ladder Function.... 584
PMC Symbol, Comment and Message Capacity Expansion.... 588
PMC System.... 583
PROFIBUS Setting Tool.... 711
PROFIBUS-DP.... 632
PROFIBUS-DP Master.... 634
PROFIBUS-DP Slave.... 633
PROFINET Configuration Tool.... 712
PROFINET IO.... 625
PROFINET IO Controller.... 626
PROFINET IO Controller 2.... 628
PROFINET IO Controller Safety Function.... 629
PROFINET IO Device.... 630
PROFINET IO Device Safety Function.... 631
Parallel Axis Control.... 055
Parameter Conversion Support Tool.... 734
Parameter Setting Tool for Power Consumption Monitor.... 740
Part Program Storage Size.... 514
Path Table Direct Conversion Function.... 208
Path Table Operation (PTO).... 202
Path Table Operation Execution Data Size 20Mbyte.... 215
Path Table Operation Execution Format Data Capacity 60MB.... 214
Path Table Operation History Function.... 216
Pattern Data Input.... 312
Periodical Secondary Pitch Error Compensation.... 432
Peripheral Axis Control.... 046
Personal Authentication Function.... 545
Pivot Axis Control.... 059
Plane Conversion Function.... 265
Polar Coordinate Command.... 266
Polar Coordinate Interpolation.... 165
Pole Position Detection Function.... 061
Polygon Machining with Two Spindles.... 179
Polygon Turning.... 178
Polygon Turning Function for Path Table Operation.... 204
Polygon Turning by Cs Contour Control.... 235

Position Control Keep Function....075
Position Definition Type Synchronous Function....073
Position Feedback Dynamic Switching Function....091
Positioning by Optimum Acceleration....238
Positioning in Machine Coordinate System with Feedrate....270
Power Mate CNC Manager....578
Pressure and Position Control Function....074
Program Input....262
Program Restart....132
Program Transfer Tool....725
Programmable Mirror Image....294
Programmable Rapid Traverse Overlap....257
Protection of Data at Eight Levels....544
Proximity Point Search....489
Pulse Superimposed Function....161
Punch Press Function for Compound Cutting....484
Punch Press Functions....460
Punch Tapping Function....317
Punching Package....610

Q

QSSR AUTO PATH Manual Handle Feed....661
Quick Program Restart....134

R

RAM-Axis Control....467
RS232C Interface....574
RS232C Interface Expansion of Receiving Buffer....575
Rate Feed....243
Real Time Custom Macro....309
Reference Point Setting with Mechanical Stopper by Grid Method....142
Reference Point Setting with Mechanical Stopper for Feed Axis Synchronization Control....141
Reference Position Return Simultaneously Controlled Axes Expansion Function....125
Reference Position Signal Output....150
Relocation Detection Support Function....571
Restart Point Keeping of Quick Program Restart....135
Retrace....151
Retraction for 3-Dimensional Rigid Tapping....139
Retraction for Rigid Tapping....138
Reverse Motion Function for Restart....157
Rigid Tapping by Manual Handle....367
Robot Auto Path Generation (former name: QSSR AUTO PATH)....679
Robot CONNECT....658
Robot Connection Function....656
Robot G-CODE....659
Rotary Axis Control....112
Rotary Table Dynamic Fixture Offset....400
Rotary Table Kit....617

S

SERVO SIZER....705
Safety I/O Signal History Function....597
Safety Spindle Speed Limit Override....598
Safety Zone Area Expansion....465
Safety Zone Check....464
Scaling....288
Scaling for each Axis....289
Selection of Five Optional Languages....543
Serial/Analog Spindle Control....366
Servo Learning Oscillation....122
Servo Learning Oscillation Multi-Turret Function....124
Servo Learning Oscillation Threading Function....130
Servo Learning Oscillation with Servo Rotation Axis....129
Servo-On Synchronize Function....069
Servo/Spindle Waveform Data Output Function....530
Setting and Display....525
Simple Spindle Synchronous Control....364
Single Direction Positioning....163
Skip Function for Electronic Gear Box (EGB) Axis....448
Skip Function for Flexible Synchronization Control....456
Skip Function for Multi-Axes High-Response Function....072

Small Hole Peck Drilling Cycle....307
Smart Corner Control....232
Smart Spindle-Load Control....260
Smooth Interpolation....174
Smooth TCP....386
Smooth Tolerance Control....177
Software FA....666
Spatial Corner Rounding....490
Speed Control with Acceleration in Circular Interpolation....247
Spindle Analog Output....358
Spindle Axes Expansion....038
Spindle Control Switching Function for High-Speed Machining....375
Spindle Control with Cs Contour Control....372
Spindle Control with Servo Motor....370
Spindle Electronic Gear Box (EGB)....451
Spindle Learning Control....086
Spindle Learning Control in High-Precision Learning Control A/B....087
Spindle Orientation....361
Spindle Orientation Expansion (Extended Spindle Orientation)....362
Spindle Serial Output....357
Spindle Speed Fluctuation Detection for Path Table Operation....203
Spindle Synchronous Control....363
Spindle Synchronous Control for Guide Bush....123
Spindle Unit Compensation....410
Step Sequence Function....590
Stored Limit Check Before Move....095
Stored Pitch Error Compensation....428
Stored Stroke Check 1 Area Expansion....094
Stored Stroke Limit Range Switching Function by Signal....097
Straightness Compensation....435
Stroke Limit Area Changing Function....096
Sub-Table Call for Path Table Operation....211
Superimposed Control....048
Superimposed Control A....049
Superimposed Control for High-Speed Cycle Machining....050
Surface Estimation....685
Synchronous and Composite Control....047
Synchronous, Composite and Superimposed Control by Program Command....051

T

T- and C-Axes Simultaneous Control....463
TURN MATE i....346
TURN MATE i Basic Software....347
TURN MATE i Expanded Function....349
TURN MATE i Expansion of Machining Cycles....350
TURN MATE i MDI Key Operation Function....351
TURN MATE i NC Program Conversion Function....352
TWP Kit....612
Tandem Disturbance Elimination Control....060
Tandem Kit....616
Tape Format for Series 15 CNC....296
Teaching Support Screen....570
Template Program Function....521
Temporary Absolute Coordinate Setting....118
Test Mode Function for Dual Check Safety Acceptance Test....599
Thermal Growth Compensation Along Tool Vector....439
Thread Cutting....224
Thread Cutting Retract....229
Thread Cutting, Synchronous Cutting....225
Thread Start Position Compensation for Changing Spindle Speed....230
Threading Start Position Shift Function for Path Table Operation....231
Tilted Working Plane (TWP)....292
Time Constant of Acc./Dec. After Interpolation Switching Function by Signal....259
Tool Attachment/Detachment Management Function....421
Tool Center Point Control....383
Tool Data Setting Function....472
Tool Functions / Tool Compensation....377
Tool Geometry Size Data....416
Tool Geometry Size Data - Additional Tool Type....417
Tool Geometry/Wear Compensation....394

Tool Length / Work Zero Point Measurement....397
Tool Length Compensation in Tool Axis Direction....403
Tool Life Management....408
Tool Life Management....474
Tool Management Expansion....422
Tool Management Expansion B....423
Tool Management Function....418
Tool Management Function for Multi-Edge Tools....424
Tool Offset....382
Tool Offset B....504
Tool Offset Conversion Function....415
Tool Offset Function for Path Table Operation....205
Tool Offset Memory B....380
Tool Offset Memory C....381
Tool Offset Pairs....378
Tool Offset for Milling and Turning Function....413
Tool Pairs for Tool Management Function....419
Tool Path Optimizer....678
Tool Posture Control....384
Tool Posture Turning....426
Tool Retract and Recover....136
Torch Swing for Gas Cutting Machine....501
Touch Panel Control....550
Transfer Line Functions....510
Turning Package 1....603
Turning Package 2....604
Twin Display Function with Ethernet....556
Twin Table Control....054
Two Laser Control Function....491
Two Touch Panels Control for Stand-Alone Type CNC....552

U

U-Axis Control 2 Pairs....458
Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection Function....108
Unexpected Disturbance Torque Detection for BETA i I/O-Link....109

V

Variable Lead Thread Cutting....228
Virtual MDI Key....553

W

W-Axis Gap Control....487
Waiting Function by Specifying Start Point....356
Warning Function Against Modification of Setting....567
Wheel Wear Compensation....401
Windows Embedded SDK....736
Workpiece Coordinate System....267
Workpiece Setting Error Compensation....406

Y

Y-Axis Crack Cancel....469
Y-Axis Offset....389

i

iCAP T....343
iCAP T for PC....728
iHMI....668
iHMI....319
iHMI Application SDK for PANEL iH....669
iHMI Basic Function....320
iHMI Cutting Load Monitor....328
iHMI Driver for IPC....322
iHMI Kit....614
iHMI Machining Cycle....323
iHMI Machining Program Preview....325
iHMI Machining Simulation Extension....326
iHMI Remote Monitoring Function....329
iHMI Set-Up Guidance....324
iHMI for Laser / Punch Press....321

FANUC

Automation has a name.



FA
CNCs, Drives, Accessories and Software

ROBOTS
Industrial and Collaborative Robots, Accessories and Software

ROBODRILL
Compact CNC Machining Centres

ROBOSHOT
Electric CNC Injection Moulding Machines

ROBOCUT
CNC Wire-Cut Electric Discharge Machines

IoT
Industry 4.0 solutions

Discover the world's widest range of products for industrial automation:

FANUC.EU

MBR-05506-EN -04/2026

Technical information subject to change without prior notice. All rights reserved. © 2026 FANUC Europe Corporation